Operating instructions Compax3 I12T11

Positioning via digital I/Os& COM port

192-120113 N7 C3I12T11

June 2008

Release R08-0

Windows NT®, Windows 2000™, Windows XP™, Windows Vista are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Nonwarranty clause

We checked the contents of this publication for compliance with the associated hard and software. We can, however, not exclude discrepancies and do therefore not accept any liability for the exact compliance. The information in this publication is regularly checked, necessary corrections will be part of the subsequent publications.

Production site:

Reg. Nr. 36 38

Parker Hannifin GmbH & Co. KG
Electromechanical Automation Europe [EME]
Robert-Bosch-Strasse 22
77656 Offenburg (Germany)
Tel.: + 49 (0781) 509-0
Fax: + 49 (0781) 509-98176
Internet: **www.parker-automation.com** http://www.parker-automation.com
E-mail: **sales.automation@parker.com** mailto:sales.automation@parker.com

Parker Hannifin GmbH & Co. KG - registered office: Bielefeld - Amtsgericht: Bielefeld HRA 14808
Personally liable shareholder: Parker Hannifin Management GmbH - Amtsgericht: Bielefeld HRB 35489
executive board: Dr. Gerd Scheffel, Günter Schrank, Christian Stein, Kees Veraart, Hans Wolfs - Chairman of the board: Hansgeorg Greuner

Headquarters:

England:

Parker Hannifin plc
Electromechanical Automation
Arena Business Centre
Holy Rood Close
Poole, Dorset BH17 7FJ UK
Tel.: +44 (0)1202 606300
Fax: +44 (0)1202 606301
E-mail:
sales.automation@parker.com
mailto:sales.automation@parker.com
Internet:
www.parker-automation.com
http://www.parker-automation.com

USA:

Parker Hannifin Corporation
Electromechanical Automation
5500 Business Park Drive
Rohnert Park, CA 94928
Phone #: (800) 358-9068
FAX #: (707) 584-3715

E-mail:
CMR_help@parker.com
mailto:emn_support@parker.com
Internet:
www.compumotor.com
http://www.compumotor.com

Worldwide sales
http://apps.parker.com/divapps/eme/EME/Contact_sites/Sales%20Channel_Parker-EME.pdf

Contents

1. Introduction

In this chapter you can read about:

1.1 Device assignment

This manual applies to the following devices:

- Compax3S025V2 + supplement
- Compax3S063V2 + supplement
- Compax3S100V2 + supplement
- Compax3S150V2 + supplement
- Compax3S015V4 + supplement
- Compax3S038V4 + supplement
- Compax3S075V4 + supplement
- Compax3S150V4 + supplement
- Compax3S300V4 + supplement
- Compax3H050V4 + supplement
- Compax3H090V4 + supplement
- Compax3H125V4 + supplement
- Compax3H155V4 + supplement
- Compax3M050D6 + supplement
- Compax3M100D6 + supplement
- Compax3M150D6 + supplement
- Compax3M300D6 + supplement
- Compax3MP10D6
- Compax3MP20D6

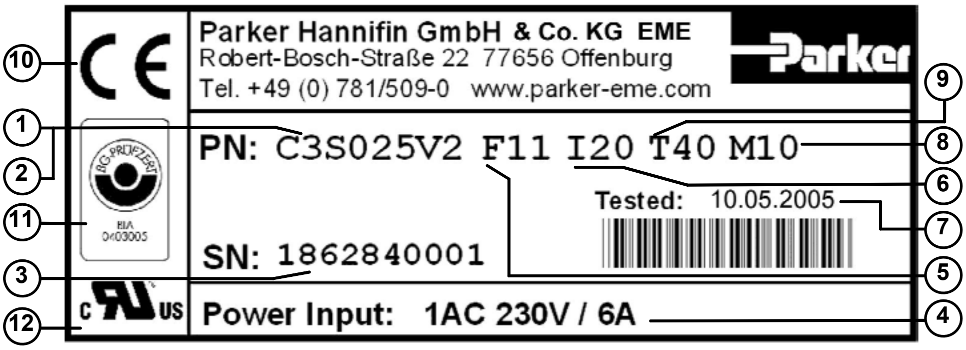
With the supplement:

- F10 (Resolver)
- F11 (SinCos©)
- F12 (linear and rotary direct drives)
- I12 T11

1.2 Type specification plate

You will find the exact description of the device on the type specification plate, which can be found on the device:

Compax3 - Type specification plate:



Explanation:

1	Type designation The complete order designation of the device (2, 5, 6, 9, 8).
2	**C3:** Abbreviation for Compax3 **S025:** Single axis device, nominal device current in 100mA (025=2.5A) **M050:** Multi-axis device, nominal device current in 100mA (050=5A) **H050:** High power device, nominal device current in 1A (050=50A) **MP10:** Mains module 3AC230...480V, nominal power in 1kW (10=10kW)
	D6: Nominal supply voltage (6=560VDC) **V2:** Mains supply voltage (2=230VAC/240VAC, 4=400VAC/480VAC)
3	Unique number of the particular device
4	Nominal supply voltage Power Input: 1AC = single phase, 3AC = three phase / input current
5	Designation of the feedback system **F10:** Resolver **F11:** SinCos© / Single- or Multiturn **F12:**Feedback module for direct drives
6	Device interface **I10:** Analog, step/direction and encoder input **I11 / I12:** Digital Inputs / Outputs and RS232 / RS485 **I20:** Profibus DP / **I21:** CANopen / **I22:** DeviceNet / **I30:** Ethernet Powerlink / **I31:** EtherCAT **C10:**integrated controller C3 *power*PL*m*C **C13:**integrated controller C3 *power*PL*m*C with Profibus
7	Date of factory test
8	Options **Mxx:**I/O extension, HEDA **Sx:** optional safety technology on the C3M
9	Technology function **T10:** Servo controller **T11:** Positioning **T30:** Motion control programmable according to IEC61131-3 **T40:** Electronic cam generation
10	CE compliance
11	Certified safety technology
12	UL certification

1.3 Packaging, transport, storage

Packaging material and transport

Caution! ***The packaging material is inflammable, if it is disposed of improperly by burning, lethal fumes may develop.***

The packaging material must be kept and reused in the case of a return shipment. Improper or faulty packaging may lead to transport damages.
Make sure to transport the drive always in a safe manner and with the aid of suitable lifting equipment (**Weight** (see page 388, see page 378)). Do never use the electric connections for lifting. Before the transport, a clean, level surface should be prepared to place the device on. The electric connections may not be damaged when placing the device.

First device checkup

- Check the device for signs of transport damages.
- Verify, if the indications on the **Type identification plate** (see page 12) correspond to your requirements.
- Check if the consingment is complete.

Storage

If you do not wish to mount and install the device immediately, make sure to store it in a dry and clean **environment** (see page 390). Make sure that the device is not stored near strong heat sources and that no metal chippings can get into the device.

Disposal

This product contains materials that fall under the special disposal regulation from 1996, which corresponds to the EC directory 91/689/EEC for dangerous disposal material. We recommend to dispose of the respective materials in accordance with the respectively valid environmental laws. The following table states the materials suitable for recycling and the materials which have to be disposed of separately.

Material	suitable for recycling	Disposal
Metal	yes	no
Plastic materials	yes	no
Circuit boards	no	yes

Please dispose of the circuit boards according to one of the following methods:

- Burning at high temperatures (at least 1200°C) in an incineration plant licensed in accordance part A or B of the environmental protection act.
- Disposal via a technical waste dump which is allowed to take on electrolytic aluminium condensers. Do under no circumstances dump the circuit boards at a place near a normal waste dump.

1.4 Safety Instructions

In this chapter you can read about:

1.4.1. General hazards

General Hazards on Non-Compliance with the Safety Instructions
The device described in this manual is designed in accordance with the latest technology and is safe in operation. Nevertheless, the device can entail certain hazards if used improperly or for purposes other than those explicitly intended.
Electronic, moving and rotating components can

- constitute a hazard for body and life of the user, and
- cause material damage

Usage in accordance with intended purpose

The device is designed for operation in electric power drive systems (VDE0160). Motion sequences can be automated with this device. Several motion sequences can be combined by interconnecting several of these devices. Mutual interlocking functions must be incorporated for this purpose.

1.4.2. Safety-conscious working

This device may be operated only by qualified personnel.
Qualified personnel in the sense of these operating instructions consists of:

- Persons who, by virtue to their training, experience and instruction, and their knowledge of pertinent norms, specifications, accident prevention regulations and operational relationships, have been authorized by the officer responsible for the safety of the system to perform the required task and in the process are capable of recognizing potential hazards and avoiding them (definition of technical personnel according to VDE105 or IEC364),
- Persons who have a knowledge of first-aid techniques and the local emergency rescue services.
- Persons who have read and will observe the safety instructions.
- Those who have read and observe the manual or help (or the sections pertinent to the work to be carried out).

This applies to all work relating to setting up, commissioning, configuring, programming, modifying the conditions of utilization and operating modes, and to maintenance work.
This manual and the help information must be available close to the device during the performance of all tasks.

1.4.3. Special safety instructions

- Check the correct association of the device and its documentation.
- Never detach electrical connections while voltage is applied to them.
- Safety devices must be provided to prevent human contact with moving or rotating parts.
- Make sure that the device is operated only when it is in perfect condition.
- Implement and activate the stipulated safety functions and devices.
- Operate the device only with the housing closed.
- Make sure that all axes are sufficiently fixed.
- Attention during configuration downloads with master - slave couplings (electronic gear, cam)
  Deactivate the drive before starting the configuration download: Master and Slave axis
- Check that all live terminals are secured against contact. Fatal voltage levels of to 850V occur.
- Do not bypass power direct current

Due to movable machine parts and high voltages, the device can pose a lethal danger. Danger of electric shock in the case of non-respect of the following instructions. The device corresponds to DIN EN 61800-3, i.e. it is subject to limited sale. The device can emit disturbances in certain local environments. In this case, the user is liable to take suitable measures.

- The device must be permanently grounded due to high earth leakage currents.
- The drive motor must be grounded with a suitable protective lead.
- The devices are equipped with high voltage DC condensers. Before removing the protective cover, the discharging time must be awaited. After switching off the energy, it may take up to 5 minutes to discharge the capacitors. Danger of electric shock in case of non respect.
- Before you can work on the device, the supply voltage must be switched off at the L1, L2 and L3 clamps. Wait at least 3 minutes so that the power direct current may sink to a secure value (<50V). Check with the aid of a voltmeter, if the voltage at the DC+ and DC- clamps has fallen to a value below 50V (not possible on the Compax3M).
- Do never perform resistance tests with elevated voltages (over 690V) on the wiring without separating the circuit to be tested from the drive.
- In the event of a device exchange it is absolutely necessary to transfer the configuration determining the correct operation of the drive to the device, before the device is put into operation.
- The device contains electrostatically sensitive components. Please heed the electrostatic protection measures while working at/with the device as well as during installation and maintenance.

Attention hot surface!

The heat dissipator can reach very high temperatures (>70°C)

Protective covers

The user is responsible for protective covers and/or additional safety measures in order to prevent damages to persons and electric accidents.

1.5 Warranty conditions

- The device must not be opened.
- Do not make any modifications to the device, except for those described in the manual.
- Make connections to the inputs, outputs and interfaces only in the manner described in the manual.
- Fix the devices according to our **mounting instructions.** (see page 69)
  We cannot provide any guarantee for any other mounting methods.

Note on exchange of options

Compax3 options must be exchanged in the factory to ensure hardware and software compatibility.

- When installing the device, make sure the heat dissipators of the device receive sufficient air and respect the recommended mounting distances of the devices with integrated ventilator fans in order to ensure free circulation of the cooling air.
- Make sure that the mounting plate is not exposed to external temperature influences.

1.6 Conditions of utilization

In this chapter you can read about:

1.6.1. Conditions of utilization for CE-conform operation

- Industry and trade -

The EC guidelines for electromagnetic compatibility 2006/95/EC and for electrical operating devices for utilization within certain voltage limits 2004/108/EC are fulfilled when the following boundary conditions are observed:

Operation of the devices only in the condition in which they were delivered, i.e. with all housing panels.

In order to ensure contact protection, all mating plugs must be present on the device connections even if they are not wired.

Mains filter: A mains filter is required in the mains input line if the motor cable exceeds a certain length. Filtering can be provided centrally at the plant mains input or separately at the mains input to each device or with C3M for each axis combination.

Devices in a commercial and residential area (limit values of Class C2 in accordance with EN 61800-3)

The following mains filters are available for independent utilization:

Device: Compax3	Order No.:	Condition:
S0xxV2	NFI01/01	Only for motor lines > 10m
S1xxV2, S0xxV4, S150V4	NFI01/02	Only for motor lines > 10m
S300V4	NFI01/03	independent of the length of the motor cable (always required)

Device: Compax3	Order No.:	Condition:
H050V4	NFI02/01	Only for motor lines > 10m
H090V4	NFI02/02	Only for motor lines > 10m
H1xxV4	NFI02/03	Only for motor lines > 10m

Industrial area (limit values class C3 in accordance with EN 61800-3)

Longer motor cable lengths are possible in industrial areas.

Devices in the industrial area (limit values class C3 in accordance with EN 61800-3)

The following mains filters are available for independent utilization:

Device: Compax3	Order No.:	Condition:
MP10	NFI03/01	Reference axis combination 6x10m
MP10	NFI03/02	Reference axis combination 6x50m
MP20	NFI03/03	Reference axis combination 6x50m

Connection length: Connection between mains filter and device:

unshielded: < 0.5m
shielded: < 5m (fully shielded on ground – e.g. ground of control cabinet)

Motor and Feedback cable:

Operation of the devices only with motor and feedback cables whose plugs contain a special full surface area screening.

Requirements for Compax3S motor cable

<100 m (the cable must not be rolled up!)
A **motor output filter** (see page 340) is required for motor cables >20m :

- MDR01/04 (max. 6.3A rated motor current)
- MDR01/01 (max. 16A rated motor current)
- MDR01/02 (max. 30A rated motor current)

Requirements for Compax3H motor cable

A motor output filter is required for motor cables >50m. Please contact us.

Requirements for Compax3M motor cable

<80m per axis (the cable must not be rolled up!
The entire length of the motor cable per axis combination may not exceed 300m.
A **motor output filter** (see page 340) is required for motor cables >20m :

- MDR01/04 (max. 6.3A rated motor current)
- MDR01/01 (max. 16A rated motor current)
- MDR01/02 (max. 30A rated motor current)

Shielding connection of the motor cable

The cable should be fully screened and connected to the Compax3 housing. We offer a special Shield connecting terminal as accessory item (ZBH./...).
The shield of the cable must also be connected with the motor housing. The fixing (via plug or screw in the terminal box) depends on the motor type.

Requirements for encoder cable Compax3:

<100m

Requirements for Compax3M encoder cable:

<80m

Requirements for other cables

Corresponding to the specifications of the terminal clamp with a temperature range of up to 60°C.

Motors:

Operation with standard motors.

Control:

Use only with aligned controller (to avoid control loop oscillation).

Grounding:

Connect the filter housing and the Compax3 to the cabinet frame, making sure that the contact area is adequate and that the connection has low resistance and low inductance.
Never mount the filter housing and the device on paint-coated surfaces!

Cable installation: Signal lines and power lines should be installed as far apart as possible.
Signal leads should never pass close to excessive sources of interference (motors, transformers, contactors etc.).

Accessories: Make sure to use only the accessories recommended by Parker

Connect all cable shields at both ends, ensuring large contact areas!

Warning:

This is a product in the restricted sales distribution class according to EN 61800-3. In a domestic area this product can cause radio frequency disturbance, in which case the user may be required to implement appropriate remedial measures.

1.6.2. Conditions of utilization for UL certification Compax3S

UL certifiction for Compax3S

conform to UL:	◆ according to UL508C
Certified	◆ E-File_No.: E235 342

The UL certification is documented by a ”UL” logo on the device (type specification plate).

”UL” logo

Conditions of utilization

- The devices are only to be installed in a degree of contamination 2 environment (maximum).
- The devices must be appropriately protected (e.g. by a switching cabinet).
- The X2 terminals are not suitable for field wiring.
- Tightening torque of the field wiring terminals (green Phoenix plugs)

◆ C3S0xxV2	0.57 - 0.79Nm	5 - 7Lb.in
◆ C3S1xxV2, C3S0xxV4, C3S150V4	0.57 - 0.79Nm	5 - 7Lb.in
◆ C3S300V4	1.25 - 1.7Nm	11 - 15Lb.in

- Temperature rating of field installed conductors shall be at least 60°C Use copper lines only
  Please use the cables described in the **accessories chapter** (see page 327, see page 329), they do have a temperature rating of at least 60°C.
- Maximum ambient temperature: 45°C.
- Suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 5000 rms symmetrical amperes and 480 volts maximum.

ATTENTION
Danger of electric shock.
Discharge time of the bus capacitator is 5 minutes.

- The drive provides internal motor overload protection.
  This must be set so that 200% of the motor nominal current are not exceeded.
- Cable cross-sections
  - Mains input: corresponding to the recommended fuses.
  - **Motor cable:** (see page 346) corresponding to the **nominal output currents** (see page 380, see page 379)
  - Maximum cross-section limited by the terminals mm^2 / AWG

◆ C3S0xxV2	$2.5mm^2$	AWG 12
◆ C3S1xxV2, C3S0xxV4, C3S150V4	$4.0mm^2$	AWG 10
◆ C3S300V4	$6.0mm^2$	AWG 7

- Fuses
  In addition to the main fuse, the devices must be equipped with a S 201 K or S 203 K fuse made by ABB.
  - C3S025V2: ABB, nominal 480V 10A, 6kA
  - C3S063V2: ABB, nominal 480V, 16A, 6kA
  - C3S100V2: ABB, nominal 480V, 16A, 6kA
  - C3S150V2: ABB, nominal 480V, 20A, 6kA
  - C3S015V4: ABB, nominal 480V, 6A, 6kA
  - C3S038V4: ABB, nominal 480V, 10A, 6kA
  - C3S075V4: ABB, nominal 480V, 16A, 6kA
  - C3S150V4: ABB, nominal 480V, 20A, 6kA
  - C3S300V4: ABB, nominal 480V, 25A, 6kA

1.6.3. Conditions of utilization for UL certification Compax3M

UL certifiction for Compax3M

conform to UL:	◆ according to UL508C
Certified	◆ E-File_No.: E235 342

The UL certification is documented by a "UL" logo on the device (type specification plate).

c UL US LISTED

Conditions of utilization

- The devices are only to be installed in a degree of contamination 2 environment (maximum).
- The devices must be appropriately protected (e.g. by a switching cabinet).
- Tightening torque of the field wiring terminals (green Phoenix plugs)

Device	X40: Braking Resistor	X41: Mains connector	X9: 24VDC
C3MP10	0.5 (4.43Lb.in)	1.2Nm (10.62Lb.in)	1.2Nm (10.62Lb.in)
C3MP20	0.5 (4.43Lb.in)	1.7Nm (15Lb.in)	1.2Nm (10.62Lb.in)

Device	X43: Motor connector	X15: Temperature monitoring
C3M050-150	0.5 (4.43Lb.in)	0.22Nm (1.95Lb.in)
C3M300	1.2Nm (10.62Lb.in)	0.22Nm (1.95Lb.in)

- Temperature rating of field installed conductors shall be at least 60°C Use copper lines only
  Please use the cables described in the **accessories chapter** (see page 327, see page 329), they do have a temperature rating of at least 60°C.
- Maximum ambient temperature: 40°C.
- Suitable for use on a circuit capable of delivering not more than 5000 rms symmetrical amperes and 480 volts maximum.

ATTENTION
Danger of electric shock.
Discharge time of the bus capacitator is approx. 5 minutes.

- The drive provides internal motor overload protection.
  This must be set so that 200% of the motor nominal current are not exceeded.
- Cable cross-sections
  - Mains input: corresponding to the recommended fuses.
  - **Motor cable:** (see page 346) corresponding to the **nominal output currents** (see page 380, see page 379)
- Maximum cross-section limited by the terminals mm^2 / AWG

Line cross-sections of the power connections (on the device bottoms)

Compax3 device:	Cross-section: Minimum... Maximum[mm^2 with contactor sleeve]
M050, M100, M150	0,25 ... 4 (AWG: 23 ... 11)
M300	0,5 ... 6 (AWG: 20 ... 10)
MP10	Mains supply: 0,5 ... 6 (AWG: 20 ... 10) Braking resistor: 0,25 ... 4 (AWG: 23 ... 11)
MP20	Mains supply: 0,5 ... 16 (AWG: 20 ... 6) Braking resistor: 0,25 ... 4 (AWG: 23 ... 11)

1.6.4. Current on the mains PE (leakage current)

This product can cause a direct current in the protective lead. If a residual current device (RCD) is used for protection in the event of direct or indirect contact, only a type B (all current sensitive) RCD is permitted on the current supply side of this product . On the other hand a different protective measure must be taken, such as for example separation from the environment by double or enforced insulation or separation from the supply network by a transformer.
Please heed the connection instructions of the RCD supplier.
Mains filters do have high leakage currents due to their internal capacity. An internal mains filter is usually integrated into the Compax3 servo controllers. Additional leakage currents are caused by the capacities of the motor cable and of the motor windings. Due to the high clock frequency of the power output stage, the leakage currents do have high-frequency components. Please check if the FI protection switch is suitable for the individual application.
If an external mains filter is used, an additional leakage current will be produced.
The figure of the leakage current depends on the following factors:

- Length and properties of the motor cable
- Switching frequency
- Operation with or without external mains filter
- Motor cable with or without shield network
- Motor housing grounding (how and where)

Remark:

- The leakage current is important with respect to the handling and usage safety of the device.
- A pulsing leakage current occurs if the supply voltage is switched on.

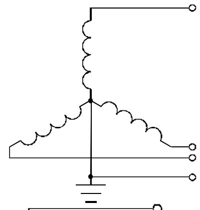
Please note:

The device must be operated with effective grounding connection, which must comply with the local regulations for high leakage currents (>3.5mA).
Due to the high leakage currents it is not adviseable to operate the servo controller with an earth leakage circuit breaker.

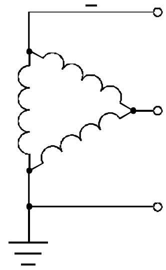
1.6.5. Supply networks

The Compax3 servo controller series is designed for fixed connection to TN networks (TN-C, TN-C-S or TN-S). Please note that the line-earth voltage may not exceed 300VAC.

- When grounding the neutral conductor, mains voltages of up to 480VAC are permitted.



- When grounding an external conductor (delta mains, two-phase mains), mains voltages (external conductor voltages) of up to 300VAC are permitted.



Servo controllers which are to be connected to an IT network must be provided with a separating transformer. Then the Compax3 device is operated locally like in a TN network. The secondary sided center of the separating transformer must be grounded and connected to the PE connector of the Compax3.

2. C3I12T11 Function overview

Positioning via I/Os and RS232 / RS485.

Due to its high functionality, the Positioning version of Compax3 forms an ideal basis for many applications in high-performance motion automation.
Up to 31 motion profiles with the motion functions:

- Absolute or relative positioning,
- electronic gearing
- register-related positioning,
- speed control,
- Stop - Set
- ...

can be created with the help of the PC software.

The positioning is triggered via the parallel interface (digital interfaces; Option M10 or M12 required) or via RS232 / RS485 / USB.
The signal inputs reg input, limit switch and machine zero proximity switch lie fixed on Compax3 standard inputs.
As a rule there are 2 possible usages:

Access via Compax3 inputs and outputs

The functions are triggered via the Compax3 inputs (standard and optional inputs). Therefore the input/output option M12 resp. M10 (with HEDA) is required.
The status information is sent out via the digital Compax3 outputs (standard and optional outputs).

Access via RS232 / RS485

The functions are triggered via a control word and also in part ”by hardware” via the Compax3 inputs (standard inputs).
The status information is sent out via a status word and also in part via the digital Compax3 outputs (standard).
Here the input/output option M12 / M10 is not required for control.

Compax3 control technology

High-performance control technology and openness for various sender systems are fundamental requirements for a fast and high-quality automation of movement.

Model / standards / auxiliary material

The structure and size of the device are of considerable importance. High-quality electronics are a fundamental requirement for the particularly small and compact form of the Compax3 devices. All connectors are located on the front of the Compax3S.

Partly ingegrated mains filters permit connection of motor cables up to a certain length without requiring additional measures. EMC compatibility is within the limits set by EN 61800-3, Class A. The Compax3 is CE-conform.

The intuitive user interface familiar from many applications, together with the oscilloscope function, wizards and online help, simplifies making and modifying settings via the PC.
The optional **Operator control module (BDM01/01** (see page 365)) for Compax3S/F makes it possible to exchange devices quickly without requiring a PC.

Configuration

Configuration is made on a PC using the Compax3 ServoManager.
General proceeding (see page 101)

3. Compax3 device description

In this chapter you can read about:

3.1 Meaning of the status LEDs - Compax3 axis controller

Device status LEDs	Right LED (red)	Left LED (green)
Voltages missing	off	off
During the booting sequence	alternately flashing	
◆ No configuration present. ◆ SinCos© feedback not detected. ◆ Compax3 IEC61131-3 program not compatible with Compax3 Firmware. ◆ no Compax3 IEC61131-3 program ◆ For F12: Hall signals invalid.	Flashes slowly	off
Axis without current excitation	off	Flashes slowly
Power supplied to axis; commutation calibration running	off	Flashes quickly
Axis with current excitation	off	on
Axis in fault status / fault present / axis energized (error reaction 1)	Flashes quickly	on
Axis in fault status / fault present / axis deenergized (error reaction 2)	on	off
Compax3 faulty: Please contact us.	on	on

Note on Compax3H: The **internal** device status LEDs are only connected to the **external** housing LEDs, if the RS232 jumper at X10 is fitted to the control and the upper dummy cover is fitted.

3.2 Meaning of the status LEDs - Compax3MP (mains module)

C3MP Status LEDs	Left LED (green)	Right LED (red)
Control voltage 24 VDC iss missing**	off	off
Error of mains module*	off	on
DC power voltage is built up	-	Flashes quickly
Phase failure / mains power supply undervoltage	on	Flashes slowly
Address assignment CPU active	Flashes quickly	-
Address assignment CPU completed	Flashes slowly	-
C3MPxx Ready - State	on	off
Incorrect wiring of internal communication X30/31	Flashes slowly	Flashes quickly

*can be read out in each axis controller

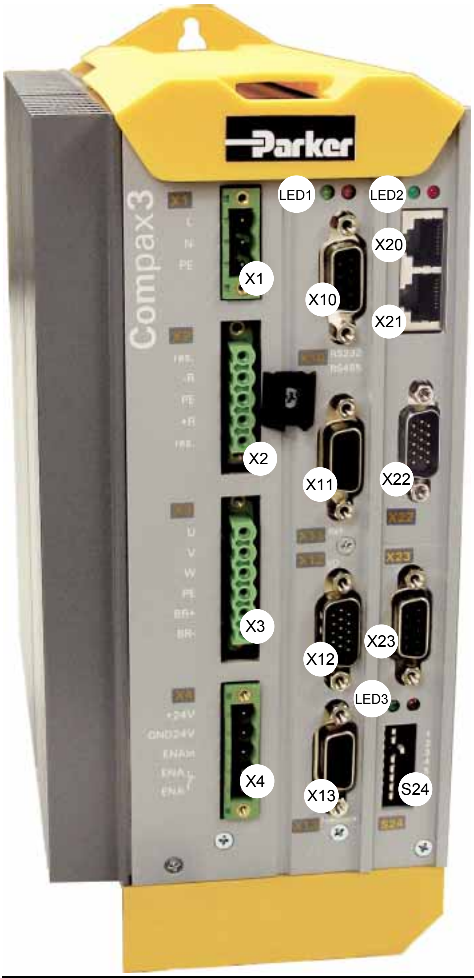
Caution!

When the control voltage is missing there is no indication whether or not high voltage supply is available.

3.3 Connections of Compax3S

In this chapter you can read about:

3.3.1. Compax3S connectors



X1	AC Supply	**X20**	HEDA in (Option)	
X2	Ballast / DC power voltage	**X21**	HEDA out (Option)	
X3	Motor / Brake	**X22**	Inputs Outputs (Option M10/12)	
X4	24VDC / Enable	**X23**	Bus (Option)	connector type depends on the bus system!
X10	RS232/RS485	**S24**	bus settings	
X11	Analog/Encoder	**LED1**	Device status LEDs	
X12	Inputs/Outputs	**LED2**	HEDA LEDs	
X13	Motor position feedback	**LED3**	Bus LEDs	

Always switch devices off before wiring them!

Dangerous voltages are still present until 5 minutes after switching off the power supply!

Caution!

When the control voltage is missing there is no indication whether or not high voltage supply is available.

PE connection

The PE connection is made with 10mm² via a grounding screw at the bottom of the device.

Attention hot surface!

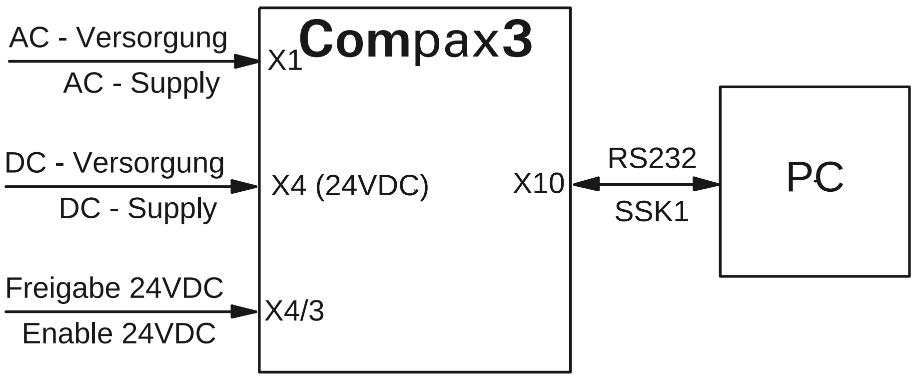
The heat dissipator can reach very high temperatures (>70°C)

Line cross sections of the line connections X1, X2, X3

Compax3 device:	Cross-section: Minimum... Maximum[mm²]
S025V2, S063V2	0,25 ... 2.5 (AWG: 24 ... 12)
S100V2, S150V2 **S015V4, S038V4, S075V4, S150V4**	0,25 ... 4 (AWG: 24 ... 10)
S300V4	0,5 ... 6 (AWG: 20 ... 7)

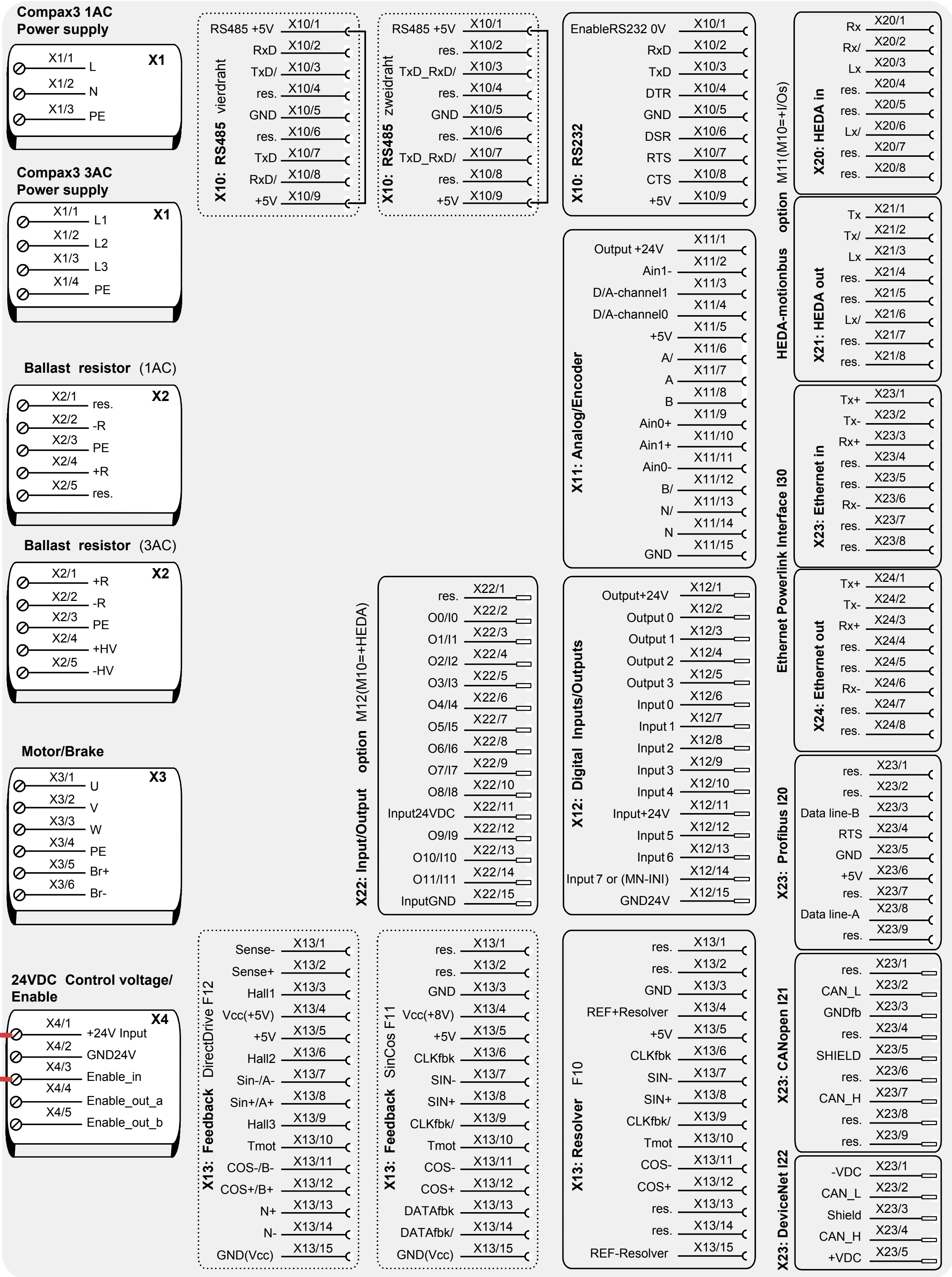
3.3.2. Connector and pin assignment C3S

Overview:



Further information on the assignment of the plug mounted at the particular device can be found below!

In detail: The fitting of the different plugs depends on the extension level of Compax3.
In part, the assignment depends on the Compax3 option implemented.



The jumper drawn in at X4 (at the left side in red) is used to enable the device for testing purposes.

During operation, the enable input is in most cases swtiched externally.

3.3.3. Control voltage 24VDC / enable connector X4 C3S

PIN	Description
1	+24V (supply)
2	Gnd24 V
3	Enable_in
4	Enable_out_a
5	Enable_out_b

Line cross sections:
minimum: 0.25mm²
maximum: 2.5mm²
(AWG: 24 ... 12)

Control voltage 24VDC Compax3S and Compax3H

Controller type	Compax3
Voltage range	21 - 27VDC
Mains module	with switch-on current limitation, due to capacitive load
Fuse	MCB miniature circuit breaker or "delayed action fuse", due to capacitive load
Current drain of the device	0.8A
Total current drain	0.8 A + Total load of the digital outputs + current for the motor holding brake
Ripple	0.5Vpp
Requirement according to safe extra low voltage (SELV)	yes
Short-circuit proof	conditional (internally protected with 3.15AT)

Hardware - enable (input X4/3 = 24VDC)

This input is used as safety interrupt for the power output stage.
Tolerance range: 18.0V - 33.6V / 720Ω

Safe standstill (X4/3=0V)

For implementation of the "Safe standstill" safety feature in accordance with the ”protection against unexpected start-up” described in EN1037. Observe instructions in the corresponding **section** (see page 78) with the circuitry examples!
The energy supply to the drive is reliably shut off, the motor has no torque.
A relay contact is located between X4/4 and X4/5 (normally closed contact)

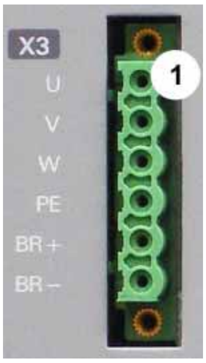
Enable_out_a - Enable_out_b	Power output stage is
Contact opened	activated
Contact closed	disabled

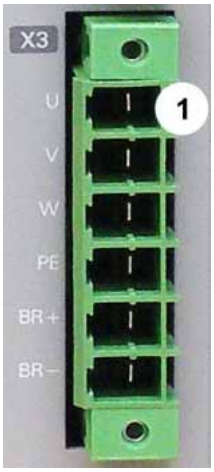
Series connection of these contacts permits certain determination of whether all drives are de-energized.

Relay contact data:

Switching voltage (AC/DC): 100mV -60V
Switching current: 10mA - 0.3A
Switching power: 1mW...7W

3.3.4. Motor / Motor brake (C3S connector X3)





PIN	Designation	
1	U (motor)	
2	V (motor)	
3	W (motor)	
4	PE (motor)	
5	BR+	Motor holding brake *
6	BR-	Motor holding brake *

*** Please note that Compax3 will report error "open circuit at holding brake" (5481h / 2163d) if the current is < 150mA.**
If needs be, use a parallel resistor of 150Ohm for relay control!

Requirements for motor cable

<100 m (the cable must not be rolled up!)
A **motor output filter** (see page 340) is required for motor cables >20m :

Shielding connection of the motor cable

The cable should be fully screened and connected to the Compax3 housing. We offer a special Shield connecting terminal as accessory item (ZBH./...).
The shield of the cable must also be connected with the motor housing. The fixing (via plug or screw in the terminal box) depends on the motor type.

Motor holding brake!

Connect the brake only on motors which have a holding brake! Otherwise make no brake connections at all.

Requirements cables for motor holding brake

If a motor holding brake is present, **a cable** of the motor holding brake must be fed on the device side through the toroidal core ferrite provided as accessory ZBH0x/xx (63Ω @1MHz, di=5.1mm), in order to ensure error-free switching on and off of the motor holding brake.

Motor holding brake output

Motor holding brake output	Compax3
Voltage range	21 – 27VDC
Maximum output current (short circuit proof)	1.6A
Minimum output current	150 mA

Motor cable (see page 346)

3.3.5. C3Sxxx V2

In this chapter you can read about:

3.3.5.1 Main voltage supply C3S connector X1

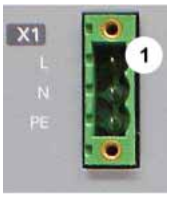
In this chapter you can read about:

Device protection

By cyclically switching on and off the power voltage, the input current limitation can be overloaded, which will cause a device error.

Therefore please wait at least 2 minutes after switching off before you switch the device on again!

Power supply plug X1 for 1 AC 230VAC/240VAC devices



PIN	Designation
1	L
2	N
3	PE

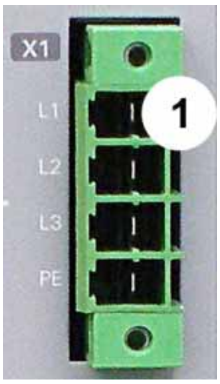
Mains connection Compax3S0xxV2 1AC

Controller type	S025V2	S063V2
Supply voltage	Single phase 230VAC/240VAC 80-253 VAC/50-60Hz	
Input current	6Aeff	13Aeff
Maximum fuse rating per device (=short circuit rating)	10 A (MCB miniature circuit breaker)	16 A (MCB miniature circuit breaker)

Always switch devices off before wiring them!

Dangerous voltages are still present until 5 minutes after switching off the power supply!

Power supply plug X1 for 3AC 230VAC/240VAC devices



PIN	Designation
1	L1
2	L2
3	L3
4	PE

Mains connection Compax3S1xxV2 3AC

Controller type	S100V2	S150V2
Supply voltage	Three phase 3* 230VAC/240VAC 80-253 VAC/50-60Hz	
Input current	10Aeff	13Aeff
Maximum fuse rating per device (=short circuit rating)	16 A (MCB miniature circuit breaker)	20 A (MCB miniature circuit breaker)

Caution!

The 3AC V2 – devices must only be operated with three phases!

Always switch devices off before wiring them!

Dangerous voltages are still present until 5 minutes after switching off the power supply!

3.3.5.2 Braking resistor / high voltage DC C3S connector X2

In this chapter you can read about:

The energy generated during braking operation is absorbed by the Compax3 storage capacity.
If this capacity is too small, the braking energy must be drained via a braking resistor.

Braking resistor / high voltage supply plug X2 for 1AC 230VAC/240VAC devices

PIN	Designation
1	Reserved
2	- braking resistor (not short-circuit protected!)
3	PE
4	+ braking resistor (not short-circuit protected!)
5	Reserved

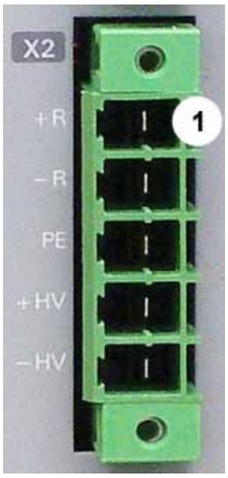
Braking operation Compax3S0xxV2 1AC

Controller type	S025V2	S063V2
Capacitance / storable energy	560μF / 15Ws	1120μF / 30Ws
Minimum braking- resistance	100Ω	56Ω
Recommended nominal power rating	20 ... 60W	60 ... 180W
Maximum continuous current	8A	15A

Caution!

The power voltage DC of two Compax3 1AC V2 devices (230VAC/240VAC devices) must not be connected.

Braking resistor / high voltage supply plug X2 for 3AC 230VAC/240VAC devices



PIN	Description	
1	+ Braking resistor	no short-circuit protection!
2	- Braking resistor	
3	PE	
4	+ DC high voltage supply	
5	- DC high voltage supply	

Braking operation Compax3S1xxV2 3AC

Controller type	S100V2	S150V2
Capacitance / storable energy	780µF / 21Ws	1170µF / 31Ws
Minimum braking- resistance	22Ω	15Ω
Recommended nominal power rating	60 ... 450W	60 ... 600W
Maximum continuous current	20A	20A

Connection of a braking resistor

Mimimum line cross section: 1.5mm^2
Maximum line length: 2m
Maximum output voltage: 400VDC

3.3.6. C3Sxxx V4

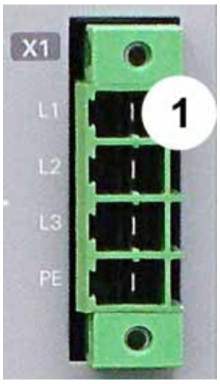
In this chapter you can read about:

3.3.6.1 Power supply connector X1 for 3AC 400VAC/480VAC-C3S devices

Device protection

By cyclically switching on and off the power voltage, the input current limitation can be overloaded, which will cause a device error.

Therefore please wait at least 2 minutes after switching off before you switch the device on again!



PIN	Designation
1	L1
2	L2
3	L3
4	PE

Mains connection Compax3SxxxV4 3AC

Controller type	**S015V4**	**S038V4**	**S075V4**	**S150V4**	**S300V4**
Supply voltage	Three phase 3*400VAC/480VAC 80-528VAC / 50-60Hz				
Input current	3Aeff	6Aeff	10Aeff	16Aeff	22Aeff
Maximum fuse rating per device(=short circuit rating)	6A	10A	16A	20A	25A
	MCB miniature circuit breaker				D*

* for **UL conform operation** (see page 20): MCB miniature circuit breaker S273-K.

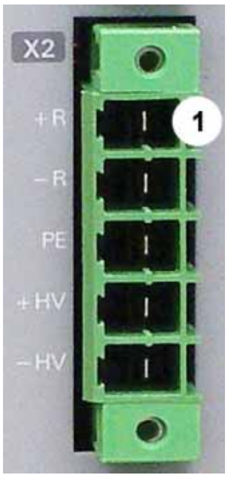
Caution!

The 3AC V4 – devices must only be operated with three phases!

Always switch devices off before wiring them!

Dangerous voltages are still present until 5 minutes after switching off the power supply!

3.3.6.2 Braking resistor / high voltage supply connector X2 for 3AC 400VAC/480VAC_C3S devices



PIN	Description	
1	+ Braking resistor	no short-circuit protection!
2	- Braking resistor	
3	PE	
4	+ DC high voltage supply	
5	- DC high voltage supply	

Braking operation Compax3SxxxV4 3AC

Controller type	S015V4	S038V4	S075V4	S150V4	S300V4
Capacitance / storable energy	235µF / 37Ws	235µF / 37Ws	470µF / 75Ws	690µF / 110Ws	1100µF / 176Ws
Minimum braking- resistance	100Ω	100Ω	56Ω	33Ω	15Ω
Recommended nominal power rating	60 ... 100W	60 ... 250W	60 ... 500 W	60 ... 1000 W	60 ... 1000 W
Maximum continuous current	10A	10A	15A	20A	30A

Connection of a braking resistor

Mimimum line cross section: 1.5mm²
Maximum line length: 2m
Maximum output voltage: 800VDC

3.3.6.3 Connection of the power voltage of 2 C3S 3AC devices

Caution!

The power voltage DC of the single phase Compax3 servo axes must not be connected!

In order to improve the conditions during brake operation, the DC power voltage of 2 servo axes may be connected.
The capacity as well as the storable energy are increased; furthermore the braking energy of one servo axis may be utilized by a second servo axis, depending on the application.

It is not permitted to connect the power voltage in order to use one brake circuit for two servo axes, as this function cannot be ensured reliably.

Note the following:

Caution! In case of non-compliance with the following instructions, the device may be destroyed!

- You can only connect two similar servo axes (same power supply; same rated currents)
- Connected servo axes must always be fed separately via the AC power supply.

If the external pre-fuse of one of the servo axes takes action, the second servo axis must also be disconnected automatically.

Please connect as follows:

Servo axis 1 X2/4 to servo axis 2 X2/4
Servo axis 1 X2/5 to servo axis 2 X2/5

3.4 Installation instructions Compax3M

General introductory notes

- Operation of the Compax3M multi-axis combination is only possible in connection iwth a Compax3MP (mains module).
- Axis controllers are aligned at the right of the mains module.
- Alignment within the multi-axis combination sorted by power (with the same device types according to device utilization), the axis controller with the highest power directly at the right of the mains module.
  e.g. first the device type with high utilization, at the right of this the same device type with a lower utilization.
- Max. 15 Compax3M (axis controllers) per Compax3MP (mains module) are permitted (please respect the total capacity of max. 2400µF).
- The continuation of the current rail connection outside the axis combination is not permitted and will lead to a loss of the CE and UL approbation.
- External components **may not** be connected to the rail system.

Required tools:

- Allen key M5 for fixing the devices in the control cabinet.
- Crosstip screwdriver M4 for connection rails of the DC rail modules.
- Crosstip screwdriver M5 for grounding screw of the device.
- Flat-bladed screwdriver 0.4x2.5 / 0.6x3.5 / 1.0x4.0 for wiring and mounting of the phenix clamps.

Order of installation

- Fixing the devices in the control cabinet.
  - Predrilling the mounting plate in the control cabinet according to the specifications. dimensions. Fit M5 screws loosely in the bores.
  - Fit device on the upper screws and place on lower screw. Tighten screws of all devices. The tightening torque depends on the screw type (e.g. 5.9Nm for M5 screw DIN 912 8.8).
- Connection of the internal supply voltage.
  The Compax3M axis controllers are connected to the supply voltages via the rail modules. **Details** (see page 44).
  - Deblocking the yellow protective cover with a flat-bladed screwdriver on the upper surface (click mechanism). Remove the closing devices (contact protection) that are not required from between the devices.
  - Connecting the rail modules, beginning with the mains module.
    For this, loosen crossheadscrews (5 screws at the right in the mains module, all 10 screws in the next axis controller), push the rails one after the other against to the left and tighten screws. Proceed accordingly for all adjacent axis controllers in the combination.
    Max. tightening torque: 1.5Nm.
  - Close all protective covers. The protective covers must latch audibly.

Please Note:
Insufficiently fixed screw connections of the DC power voltage rails may lead to the destruction of the devices.

Protective covers

In order to secure the contact protection against the alive rails, it is absolutely necessary to respect the following:

- Insert the yellow plastic device at the left or right of the rails.
  Make sure that the yellow plastic device is placed at the left of the first device and at the right of the last device in the combination and have not been removed.
- Setup of the devices only with closed protective covers.

- Connect protective earth to mains module (M5 crossheadscrew on front of device bottom).
- Connecting the internal communication. **Details** (see page 63).
- Connecting the signal and fieldbus connectors. **Details** (see page 65).
- Connection of mains power supply **Details** (see page 47) ballast resistor **Details** (see page 49) and motor **Details** (see page 50).
- Connecting the configuration interface to the PC. **Details** (see page 63).

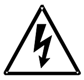
3.5 Compax3MP/Compax3M connections

In this chapter you can read about:

3.5.1. Front connector

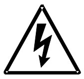
MP	**Power module**
LED1	Status LEDs Mains module
S1	Basic address
X3	Configuraiton interface (USB)
X9	Supply voltage 24VDC
M	**Axis controller**
LED2	Status LEDs of the axis
S10	Function
X11	Analog/Encoder
X12	Inputs/Outputs
X13	Motor position feedback
X14	Safety technology (option)
X15	Motor temperature monitoring
LED3	HEDA LEDs
X20	HEDA in (Option)
X21	HEDA out (Option)
X22	Inputs Outputs (Option M10/12)
X23	Bus (option) connector type depends on the bus sy-stem!
X24	Bus (option) depends on the bus system!
LED4	Bus LEDs
S24	bus settings
1	Behind the yellow protective covers you can find the rails for the supply voltage connection. ◆ Supply voltage 24VDC ◆ DC power voltage supply

3.5.2. Connections on the device bottom



Always switch devices off before wiring them!

Dangerous voltages are still present until 5 minutes after switching off the power supply!



Caution!

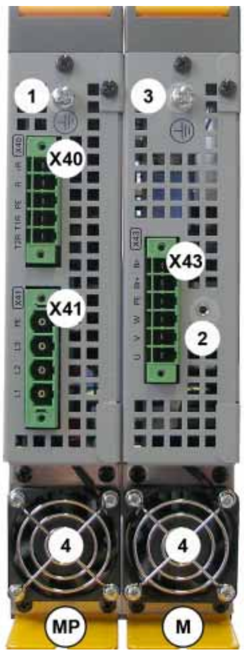
When the control voltage is missing there is no indication whether or not high voltage supply is available.

PE connection

The PE connection is made with 10mm^2 via a grounding screw at the bottom of the device.

Attention hot surface!

The heat dissipator can reach very high temperatures (>70°C)



MP	Power module
X40	Braking Resistor
X41	Mains supply VAC/PE
1	Central ground connection for the axis combination, with 10mm^2 to the ground screw on the housing.
4	Fan*
M	**Axis controller**
X43	Motor / Brake
2	Fixing for motor shield clamp
4	Fan*
3	optinally, the axis controller features a ground screw on the housing, if the grounding is not possible via the back plate.

* is internally supplied.

Line cross-sections of the power connections (on the device bottoms)

Compax3 device:	Cross-section: Minimum... Maximum[mm^2 with contactor sleeve]
M050, M100, M150	0,25 ... 4 (AWG: 23 ... 11)
M300	0,5 ... 6 (AWG: 20 ... 10)
MP10	Mains supply: 0,5 ... 6 (AWG: 20 ... 10) Braking resistor: 0,25 ... 4 (AWG: 23 ... 11)
MP20	Mains supply: 0,5 ... 16 (AWG: 20 ... 6) Braking resistor: 0,25 ... 4 (AWG: 23 ... 11)

3.5.3. Connections of the axis combination

The Compax3M axis controllers are connected to the supply voltages via rails.

- Supply voltage 24VDC
- DC power voltage supply

The rails are located behind the yellow protective covers. In order to connect the rails of the devices, you may have to remove the yellow plastic device inserted at the side.

CAUTION: Risk of Electric Shock

Please respect before opening:

- **Warning** - RISK OF SHOCK - Disconnect Power Before Removing Cover.
- **Caution** - Risk of Electric Shock! Energy for 5 minutes after "Power Off"!

Always switch devices off before wiring them!

Dangerous voltages are still present until 5 minutes after switching off the power supply!

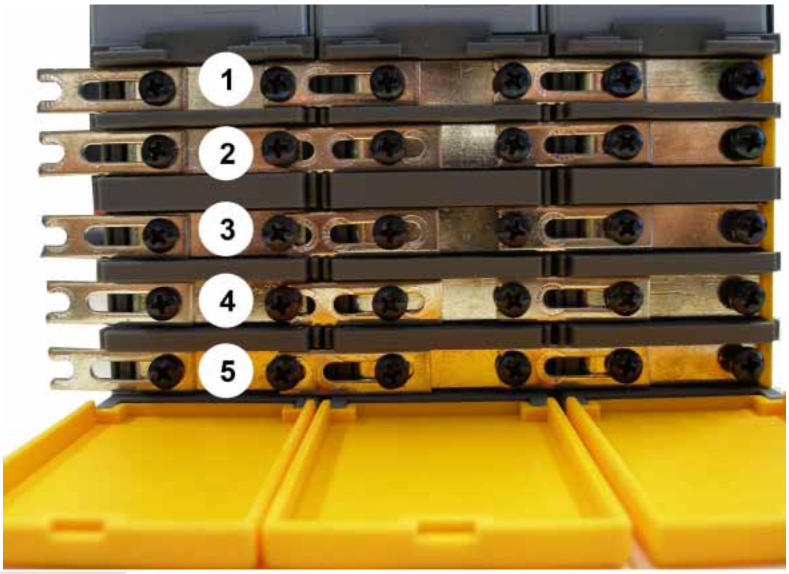
Caution!

When the control voltage is missing there is no indication whether or not high voltage supply is available.

Protective covers

In order to secure the contact protection against the alive rails, it is absolutely necessary to respect the following:

- Insert the yellow plastic device at the left or right of the rails.
  Make sure that the yellow plastic device is placed at the left of the first device and at the right of the last device in the combination and have not been removed.
- Setup of the devices only with closed protective covers.



1	24VDC
2	Gnd 24 V
3	-HV DC
4	PE
5	+HV DC

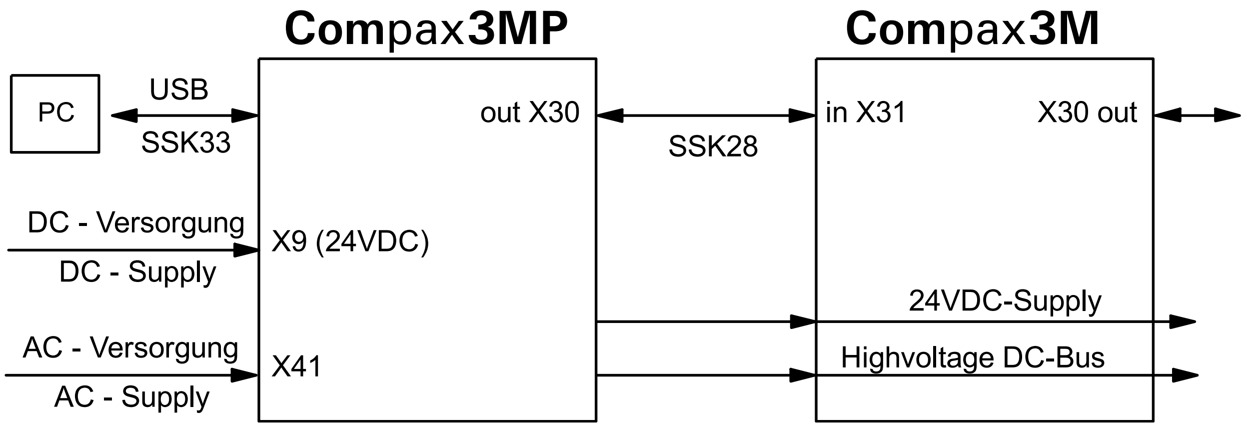
Note: External components **may not** be connected to the rail system.

Protective covers

The user is responsible for protective covers and/or additional safety measures in order to prevent damages to persons and electric accidents.

3.5.4. Connector and pin assignment

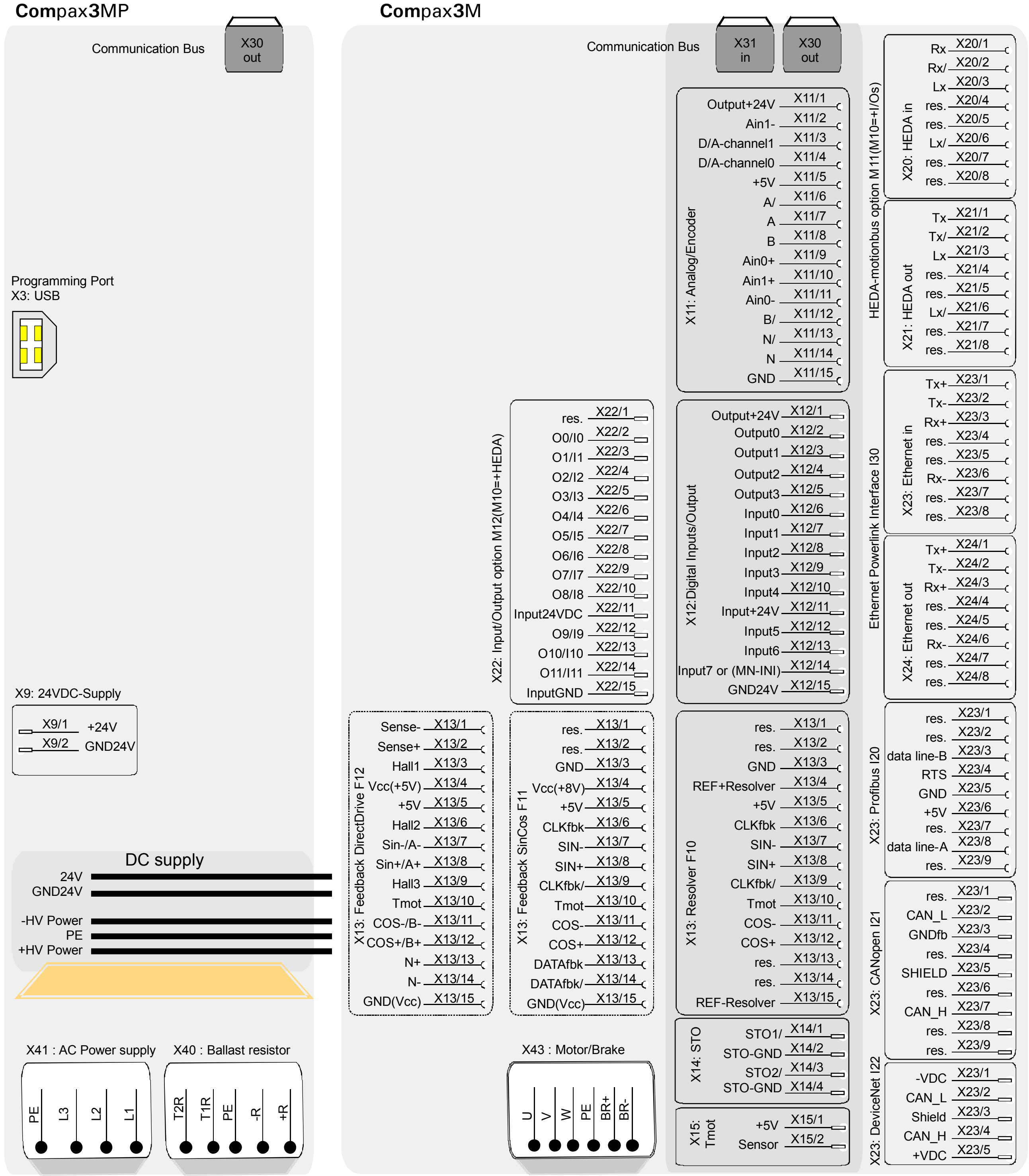
Overview:



Maximum no. of C3M axes in a combination: 15 axes (max. 2400µF)

Further information on the assignment of the plug mounted at the particular device can be found below!

In detail: The fitting of the different plugs depends on the extension level of Compax3. In part, the assignment depends on the Compax3 option implemented.



Protective covers

The user is responsible for protective covers and/or additional safety measures in order to prevent damages to persons and electric accidents.

3.5.5. Control voltage 24VDC Compax3MP (mains module)

connector X9

PIN	Designation
1	+24V
2	Gnd 24 V

Line cross sections:
minimum: 0.5mm² with contactor sleeve
maximum: 6mm² with contactor sleeve
(AWG: 20 ... 10)

Control voltage 24VDC Compax3MP / Compax3M

Device type	Compax3MP / Compax3M
Voltage range	21 - 27VDC
Mains module	with switch-on current limitation, due to capacitive load
Fuse	MCB miniature circuit breaker or "delayed action fuse", due to capacitive load
Current drain of the device	C3MP10D6: 0.2A C3MP20D6: 0.3A
Total current drain	C3M050D6: 0.85A C3M100D6: 0.85A C3M150D6: 0.85A C3M300D6: 1.0A + Total load of the digital outputs + current for the motor holding brake
Ripple	0.5Vpp
Requirement according to safe extra low voltage (SELV)	yes
Short-circuit proof	conditional (internally protected with 3.15AT)

3.5.6. Mains supply Compax3MP (mains module)

Device protection

By cyclically switching on and off the power voltage, the input current limitation can be overloaded, which may cause damage to the device.

Wait at least one minute between two switching on processes!

Connector X41

Pin designation
PE
L3
L2
L1

Mains connection Compax3MP10D6

Device type Compax3MP10	230V	400V	480V
Supply voltage	230VAC ±10% 50-60Hz	400VAC ±10% 50-60Hz	480VAC ±10% 50-60Hz
Rated voltage	3AC 230V	3AC 400V	3AC 480V
Input current	22Aeff	22Aeff	18Arms
Output voltage	325VDC ±10%	565VDC ±10%	680VDC ±10%
Output power	6kW	10 kW	10 kW
Maximum fuse rating per device (=short circuit rating)	MCB miniature circuit breaker according to DIVQ.GuideInfo Recommendation: (ABB) S203 UP-25K (480VAC)		

Mains connection Compax3MP20D6

Device type Compax3MP20	230V	400V	480V
Supply voltage	230VAC ±10% 50-60Hz	400VAC ±10% 50-60Hz	480VAC ±10% 50-60Hz
Rated voltage	3AC 230V	3AC 400V	3AC 480V
Input current	44Arms	44Arms	35Arms
Output voltage	325VDC ±10%	565VDC ±10%	680VDC ±10%
Output power	12kW	20kW	20kW
Maximum fuse rating per device (=short circuit rating)	MCB miniature circuit breaker 50A according to DIVQ.GuideInfo Recommendation: (ABB) S203-U50K (440VAC) Fuses 80A / 660VAC per supply leg according to UL-Guide JFHR2 Recommendation: Bussmann 170M		

Caution!

The Compax3MPxxD6 devices must only be operated with three phases!

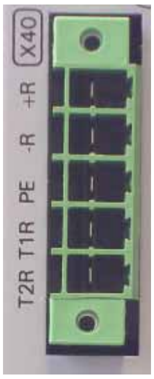
Always switch devices off before wiring them!

Dangerous voltages are still present until 5 minutes after switching off the power supply!

3.5.7. Braking resistor / temperature switch Compax3MP (mains module)

The energy generated during braking operation must be dissipated via a braking resistor.

Connector X40



PIN	Description	
+R	+ Braking resistor	no short-circuit protection!
-R	- Braking resistor	
PE	PE	
T1R	Temperature Switch	
T2R	Temperature Switch	

Braking operation Compax3MPxxD6 (mains module)

Device type Compax3	MP10	MP20
Capacitance / storable energy	550µF/ 92Ws at 400V 53Ws at 480V	1175µF/ 197Ws at 400V 114Ws at 480V
Minimum braking- resistance	27Ω	15Ω
Recommended nominal power rating	500 ... 1500W	500 ... 3500W
Pulse power rating for 1s	22kW	40kW
Maximum permissible continuous current	13A	15A

Braking operation Compax3MxxxD6 (axis controller)

Device type Compax3	M050	M100	M150	M300
Capacitance / storable energy	110µF/ 18Ws at 400V 10Ws at 480V	220µF/ 37Ws at 400V 21Ws at 480V	220µF/ 37Ws at 400V 21Ws at 480V	440µF/ 74Ws at 400V 42Ws at 480V

Maximum capacity in the axis combination: 2400µF

Connection of a braking resistor on Compax3MP (mains module)

Mimimum line cross section:	$1.5mm^2$
Maximum line length:	2m
Maximum intermediate circuit voltage:	810VDC
Switch-on threshold:	780VDC

3.5.7.1 Temperature switch Compax3MP (mains module)

Connector X40 Pin T1R, T2R

Temperature monitoring:

The temperature switch (normally closed contact) must be connected, unless an error message will be issued.

Temperature switch/relay

No galvanic separation, the temperature sensor (normally closed contact) must comply with the safe separation according to EN 60664.
If there is no temperature monitoring due to the connected braking resistor, the T1R and T2R connections must be connected by a jumper.
Without temperature monitoring, the braking resistor might be destroyed.

3.5.8. Motor / motor brake Compax3M (axis controller)

Connector X43

PIN	Designation
BR+	Motor holding brake *
BR-	Motor holding brake *
PE	PE (motor)
W	W (motor)
V	V (motor)
U	U (motor)

*** Please note that Compax3 will report the error "open circuit at holding brake" (5481h / 2163d) if the current is < 150mA.**

Requirements for Compax3M motor cable

<80m per axis (the cable must not be rolled up!
The entire length of the motor cable per axis combination may not exceed 300m.
A **motor output filter** (see page 340) is required for motor cables >20m :

- MDR01/04 (max. 6.3A rated motor current)
- MDR01/01 (max. 16A rated motor current)
- MDR01/02 (max. 30A rated motor current)

Shielding connection of the motor cable

The cable should be fully screened and connected to the Compax3 housing. We offer a special Shield connecting terminal as accessory item (ZBH./...).
The shield of the cable must also be connected with the motor housing. The fixing (via plug or screw in the terminal box) depends on the motor type.
Motor cables (see page 346) can be found in the accessories chapter of the device description.

Motor holding brake output

Motor holding brake output	Compax3
Voltage range	21 – 27VDC
Maximum output current (short circuit proof)	1.6A
Minimum output current	150 mA
Securing of brake Compax3M	3.15A

Motor holding brake!

Connect the brake only on motors which have a holding brake! Otherwise make no brake connections at all.

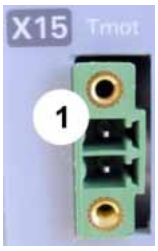
Requirements cables for motor holding brake

If a motor holding brake is present, **a cable** of the motor holding brake must be fed on the device side through the toroidal core ferrite provided as accessory ZBH0x/xx (63Ω @1MHz, di=5.1mm), in order to ensure error-free switching on and off of the motor holding brake.

3.5.8.1 Measurement of the motor temperature of Compax3M (axis controller)

Connector X15

The acquisition of the motor temperature by the axis controller can either take place via the connection of X15 (Tmot) or via the feedback cable and the corresponding connection on X13 PIN10.



PIN	Description
1	+5V
2	Sensor

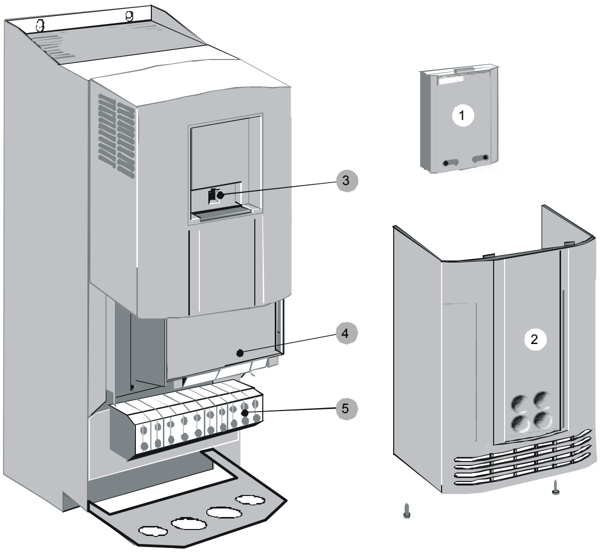
The temperature acquisition on X15 Tmot can not be connected at the same time as X13 Pin 10.

3.6 Connections of Compax3H

In this chapter you can read about:

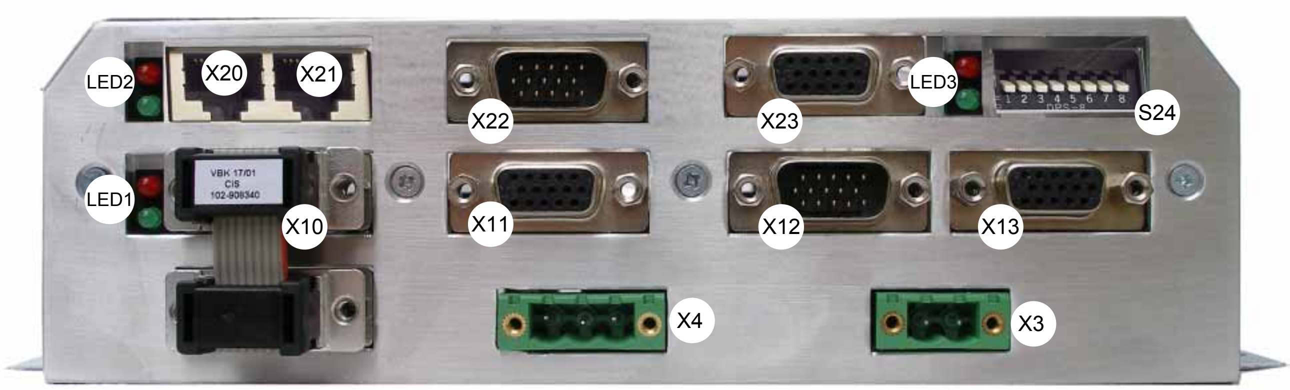
3.6.1. Compax3H plugs/connections

The following figure is an example for all sizes.
The fitting of the different controller plugs depends on the extension level of Compax3.



(1): Dummy cover with display of the **external** device status LEDs.
(2): lower clamp cover, fixed by 2 screws at the device bottom.
(3): RS232 programming interface
Connection to the PC via adapter cable SSK32/20 (furnished with the device) and standard RS232 cable SSK1.
(4): Controlling
(5): Power connections

Controller front plate



X3	Motor brake	**X20**	HEDA in (Option)	
X4	24VDC	**X21**	HEDA out (Option)	
X10	RS232/RS485 with jumper to the programming interface	**X22**	Inputs Outputs (Option M10/12)	
X11	Analog/Encoder	**X23**	Bus (Option)	connector type depends on the bus system!
X12	Inputs/Outputs	**S24**	bus settings	
X13	Motor position feedback	**LED1**	Device status LEDs	
		LED2	HEDA LEDs	
		LED3	Bus LEDs	

Note on Compax3H: The **internal** device status LEDs are only connected to the **external** housing LEDs, if the RS232 jumper at X10 is fitted to the control and the upper dummy cover is fitted.

The RS232 programming interface under the upper dummy cover is only available if the X10 jumper at the controller is fitted.

Always switch devices off before wiring them!

Dangerous voltages are still present until 5 minutes after switching off the power supply!

Caution!

If the control voltage is missing and if the X10-X10 jumper is not fitted (VBK17/01) on the control part, the availability of power voltage is not displayed.

PE connection

The PE connection is made with 10mm² via a grounding screw at the bottom of the device.

Attention hot surface!

Metal parts can heat up to a temperature of 90°C during operation.

3.6.2. Terminal clamps – max. line cross section C3H

Terminal clamps – max. line cross section

The line cross sections must correspond to the locally valid safety regulations. The local regulations have always priority.

	Power clamps (minimum/maximum section)		Control lines
C3H050V4	2.5 / 16mm^2		2.5mm^2
	massive	multiwire	
C3H090V4	16 / 50mm^2	25 / 50mm^2	2.5mm^2
C3H1xxV4	25 / 95mm^2	35 / 95mm^2	2.5mm^2

The standard connection clamps of Compax3H090V4 and Compax3H1xxV4 are not suitable for flat line bars.

Cover plate for cable feedthrough

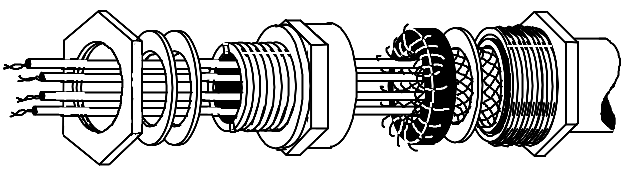
The cable feedthrough holes have the following dimensions:	
C3H050V4	28.6mm for M20, PG16 and ½" NPT (America). 37.3mm for M32, PG29 and 1" NPT (America).
C3H090V4	22.8mm for M20, PG16 and ½" NPT (America). 28.6mm for M25, PG21 and ¾" NPT (America). 47.3mm for M40, PG36 and 1¼"" NPT (America). 54.3mm for M50, PG42and 1½" NPT (America).
C3H1xxV4	22.8mm for M20, PG16 and ½" NPT (America) 28.6mm for M25, PG21 and ¾" NPT (America)

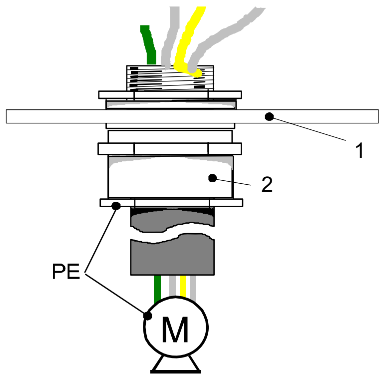
Recommended tightening torques

	High voltage supply	Braking Resistor	Grounding
C3H050V4	4Nm / 15.88kg-in	4Nm / 15.88kg-in	4.5Nm / 18.14kg-in
C3H090V4	6-8Nm / 53-70lb-in	6-8Nm / 53-70lb-in	6-8Nm / 53-70lb-in
C3H1xxV4	15-20Nm / 132-177lb-in	0.7Nm / 2.77kg-in	42Nm / 375lb-in

Cable joints

Use metallic cable joints permitting a 360° shielding in order to comply with the EMC directive.





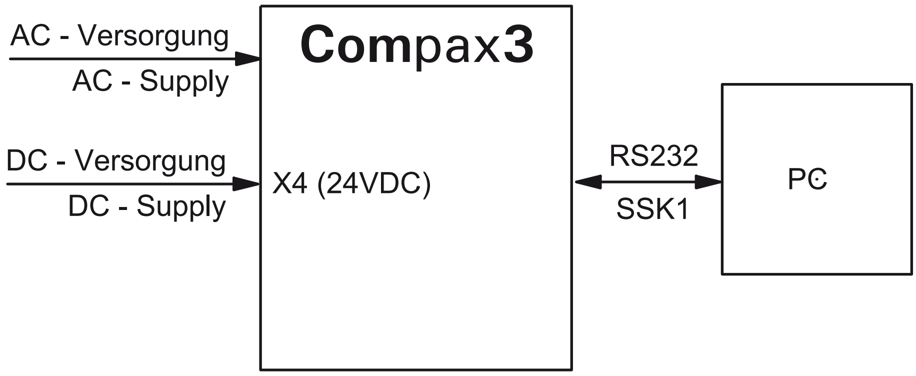
1: Cable feedthrough plate
2: metallic joint with 360° shielding for EMC compliant design

The device must be grounded without interruption according to EN 61800-5-1. The mains supply lines must be protected with a suitable fuse or a circuit breaker (FI switches or earth fault fuses ar e not recommended).
For installation in accordance with EN 61800-5-1 mm Europe:

- For grounding without interruption, two separate protective leads (<10mm² cross-section) or one lead (>10mm² cross-section) are required. Each protective lead must meet the requirements according to EN 60204.

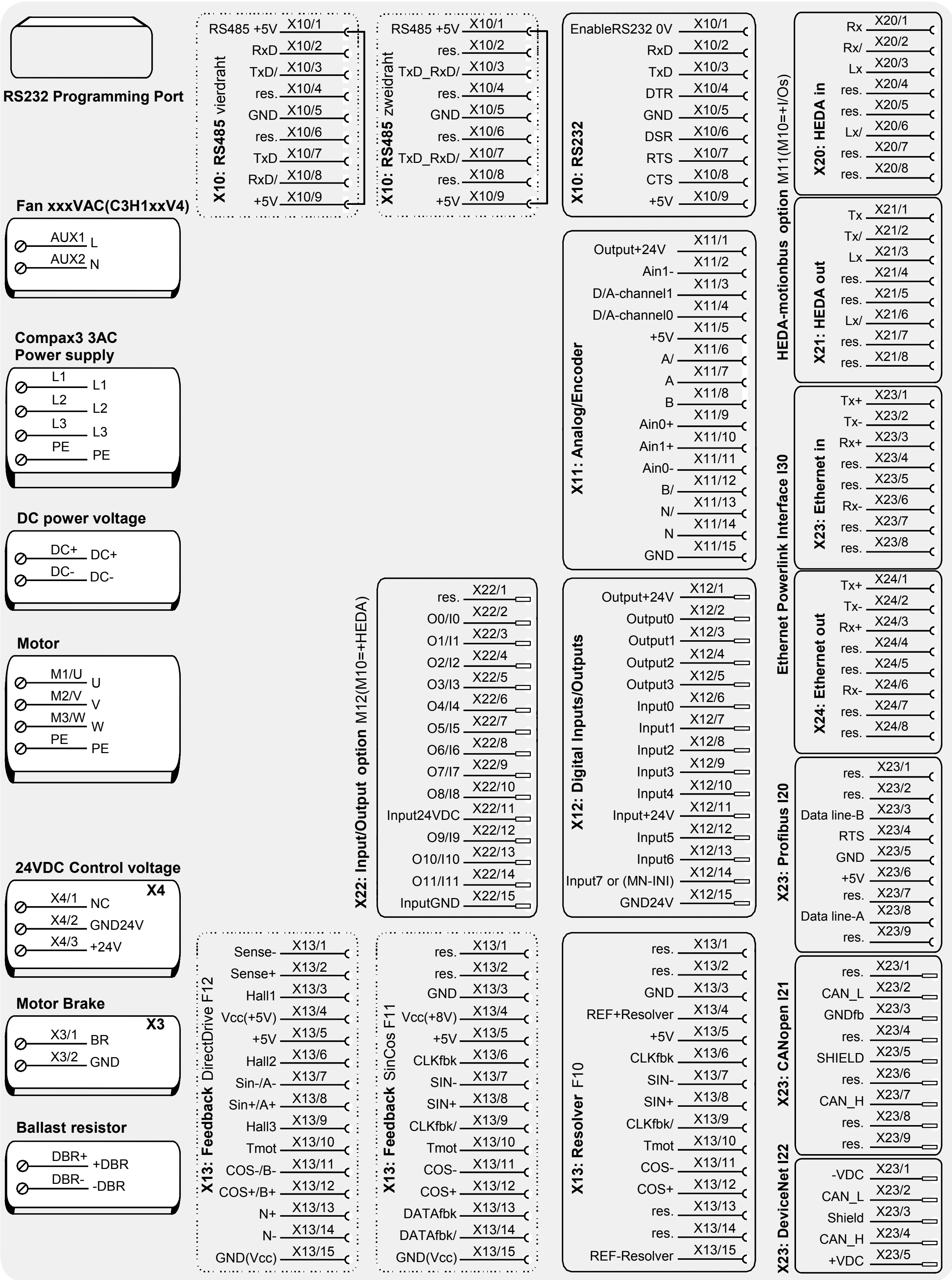
3.6.3. Plug and pin assignment C3H

Overview



Further information on the assignment of the plug mounted at the particular device can be found below!

In detail: The fitting of the different plugs depends on the extension level of Compax3. In part, the assignment depends on the Compax3 option implemented.



The RS232 programming interface under the upper dummy cover is only available if the X10 jumper at the controller is fitted.

Please note C3H1xxV4 uses a ventilator fan which must be externally supplied via separate connections. The ventilator fan is available in two versions for single phase feed: 220/240VAC; 110/120VAC

3.6.4. Motor / Motor brake C3H

Motor connection clamps

PIN	Designation
M1/U	U (motor)
M2/V	V (motor)
M3/W	W (motor)
PE	PE (motor)

Requirements for Compax3H motor cable

A motor output filter is required for motor cables >50m. Please contact us.

Shielding connection of the motor cable

The motor cable should be fully screened and connected to the Compax3 housing. The shield of the motor cable must also be connected with the motor housing. The fixing (via plug or screw in the terminal box) depends on the motor type.

Motor holding brake!

Connect the brake only on motors which have a holding brake! Otherwise make no brake connections at all.

Requirements cables for motor holding brake

If a motor holding brake is present, **a cable** of the motor holding brake must be fed on the device side through the toroidal core ferrite provided as accessory ZBH0x/xx (63Ω @1MHz, di=5.1mm), in order to ensure error-free switching on and off of the motor holding brake.

Connection of motor brake X3

PIN	Designation
1	BR
2	GND

Motor holding brake output

Motor holding brake output	Compax3
Voltage range	21 – 27VDC
Maximum output current (short circuit proof)	1.6A
Minimum output current	150 mA

3.6.5. Control voltage 24 VDC C3H

Connector X4 Pin	Description	
1	NC	NC
2	Gnd 24 V	GND
3	+24V	24 VDC (power supply)

Control voltage 24VDC Compax3S and Compax3H

Controller type	**Compax3**
Voltage range	21 - 27VDC
Mains module	with switch-on current limitation, due to capacitive load
Fuse	MCB miniature circuit breaker or "delayed action fuse", due to capacitive load
Current drain of the device	0.8A
Total current drain	0.8 A + Total load of the digital outputs + current for the motor holding brake
Ripple	0.5Vpp
Requirement according to safe extra low voltage (SELV)	yes
Short-circuit proof	conditional (internally protected with 3.15AT)

3.6.6. Mains connection Compax3H

Device protection

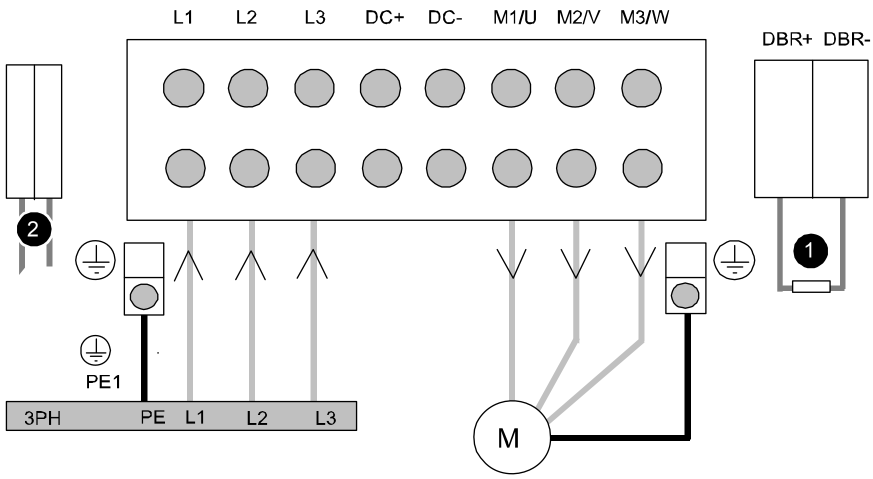
Avoid permanent switching on and off so that the charging connection is not overloaded.

Mains connection Compax3HxxxV4

Controller type	H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
Supply voltage	Three phase 3*400VAC/480VAC 350-528VAC / 50-60Hz			
Input current	54Aeff	93Aeff	118Aeff	140Aeff
Maximum fuse rating per device(=short circuit rating)	60A	100A	125A	150A
	JDDZ class K5, JDRX class H	JDDZ class H5, JDRX class H		

The terminal block of the drive can be found under the front cover. It is secured with 2 screws at the bottom of the device. Remove the bottom cover in order to access the conection clamps.
Make sure that all live parts are covered by the housing after installation.

Illustration of the connection clamps exemplarily for all sizes:



L1, L2, L3: 3 phase mains connection
M1, M2, M3: Motor connections
DC+, DC-: DC link voltage
(1) DBR+ und DBR-: Connection of external braking resistor
(2) AUX1, AUX2: only with C3H1xxV4 external supply (AC) for device ventilator L, N

- **All** shields must be connected via a cable joint to the cable feedthrough plate.
- Braking resistor and cable must be shielded if they are not installed in a control cabinet.
- The standard connection clamps of C3H090V4 and C3H1xxV4 are **not** suitable for flat line bars.

3.6.7. Braking resistor / supply voltage C3H

The energy generated during braking operation is absorbed by the Compax3 storage capacity.
If this capacity is too small, the braking energy must be drained via a braking resistor.

3.6.7.1 Connect braking resistor C3H

Connecting the braking resistor:

PIN	Designation
DBR+	+ Braking resistor
DBR-	- Braking resistor

Braking operation of Compax3HxxxV4

Controller type	H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
Capacitance / storable energy	2600µF / 602Ws	3150µF / 729Ws	5000µF / 1158Ws	5000µF / 1158Ws
Minimum braking- resistance	24Ω	15Ω	8Ω	8Ω
Maximum continuous current	30A	45A	83A	83A

Mimimum line cross section: 2.5mm²
Maximum line length: 2m
Maximum output voltage: 830VDC

3.6.7.2 Power supply voltage DC C3H

DC high voltage supply

PIN	Description
DC+	+ DC high voltage supply
DC-	- DC high voltage supply

Warning!

*Do not connect any **braking resistor on DC+/DC- .***

3.6.7.3 Connection of the power voltage of 2 C3H 3AC devices

In order to improve the conditions during brake operation, the DC power voltage of 2 servo axes may be connected.
The capacity as well as the storable energy are increased; furthermore the braking energy of one servo axis may be utilized by a second servo axis, depending on the application.

It is not permitted to connect the power voltage in order to use one brake circuit for two servo axes, as this function cannot be ensured reliably.

Note the following:

Caution! In case of non-compliance with the following instructions, the device may be destroyed!

- You can only connect two similar servo axes (same power supply; same rated currents)
- Connected servo axes must always be fed separately via the AC power supply.
- If the external pre-fuse of one of the servo axes takes action, the second servo axis must also be disconnected automatically.

Please connect as follows:

Servo axis 1 DC+ with servo axis 2 DC+
Servo axis 1 DC- with servo axis 2 DC-

3.7 Communication interfaces

In this chapter you can read about:

3.7.1. RS232 / RS485 interface (plug X10)

Interface selectable by contact functions assignment of X10/1:
X10/1=0V RS232
X10/1=5V RS485

PIN X10	RS232 (Sub D)
1	(Enable RS232) 0V
2	RxD
3	TxD
4	DTR
5	GND
6	DSR
7	RTS
8	CTS
9	+5V

RS485 2-wire

PIN X10	RS485 two wire (Sub D) Pin 1 and 9 jumpered externally
1	Enable RS485 (+5V)
2	res.
3	TxD_RxD/
4	res.
5	GND
6	res.
7	TxD_RxD
8	res.
9	+5V

RS485 4-wire

PIN X10	RS485 four wire (Sub D) Pin 1 and 9 externally jumpered
1	Enable RS485 (+5V)
2	RxD
3	TxD/
4	res.
5	GND
6	res.
7	TxD
8	RxD/
9	+5V

USB - RS232/RS485 converter

The following USB - RS232 converters were tested:

- ATEN UC 232A
- USB GMUS-03 (available under several company names)
- USB / RS485: **Moxa Uport 1130** http://www.moxa.com/product/UPort_1130.htm
- Ethernet/RS232/RS485: **NetCom 113** http://www.vscom.de/666.htm

3.7.2. Communikation Compax3M

In this chapter you can read about:

3.7.2.1 PC - Compax3MP (mains module)

Connector X3

USB2.0
Connect your PC to the USB sleeve X3 of the mains module via an USB cable (SSK33/03).

3.7.2.2 Communication in the axis combination (connector X30, X31)

The communication in the axis combination is implemented via a SSK28 cable and double RJ45 sleeves on the device top.
Beginning with the Compax3MP (mains module) the connection is always made from X30 to X31 of the next device. On the first device (X31) and the last device (X30) in the multi-axis combination, a bus termination plug (BUS07/01) is required.

Orientation to the back side

Orientation to the front plate

	Compax3MP (mains module)
X30	out
X31	in
res.	Reserved
	Compax3M (axis)
X30	out
X31	in
res.	Reserved

3.7.2.3 Adjusting the basic address

On the mains module, the basic address of the device combination is set in steps of 16 with the aid of the first three dip switches.
The mains module contains the set basic address while the axes placed at the right in the combination contain the following addresses.

Switch S1

Address setting

Basic addresses

Switch	Value upon ON
1	16
2	32
3	64

Settings:

left: OFF
right: ON

Settable value range: 0, 16, 32, 48, 64, 80, 96, 112

Address of the 1st Compax3M = basic address+1
The addresses of the axis controllers are newly assigned after PowerOn.

Example:

Basic address = 48; mains module with 6 Compax3M axes in the combination.
1. Axis right: Address = 49
2. Axis right: Address = 50
...
6. Axis right: Address = 54

3.7.2.4 Setting the axis function

Switch S10

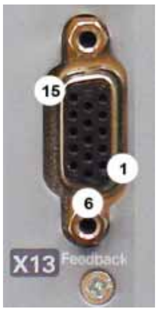
Function settings for T30 and T40

The value of switch S10 on the axis controller is stored in object O110.1 C3plus.Switch_DeviceFunction and can be evaluated with the aid of a program. This helps realize a more simple function selection.

3.8 Signal interfaces

In this chapter you can read about:

3.8.1. Resolver / Feedback (connector X13)



PIN X13	Feedback /X13 High Density /Sub D (depending on the Feedback module)		
	Resolver (F10)	**SinCos (F11)**	**EnDat 2.1 (F12)**
1	Reserved	Reserved	Sense -*
2	Reserved	Reserved	Sense +*
3	GND	GND	Reserved
4	REF-Resolver+	Vcc (+8V)	Vcc (+5V) * max. 350mA load
5	+5V (for temperature sensor)		
6	Reserved	Reserved	CLKfbk
7	SIN-	SIN-	SIN- / A- (Encoder)
8	SIN+	SIN+	SIN+ / A+ (Encoder)
9	Reserved	Reserved	CLKfbk/
10	Tmot*	Tmot*	Tmot*
11	COS-	COS-	COS- / B- (Encoder)
12	COS+	COS+	COS+ / B+ (Encoder)
13	Reserved	DATAfbk	DATAfbk
14	Reserved	DATAfbk/	DATAfbk/
15	REF-Resolver-	GND (Vcc)	GND (Vcc)

*X13 Pin10 Tmot may not be connected at the same time as X15 (on Compaxx3M).

Resolver cables (see page 343) can be found in the accessories chapter of the device description.
SinCos© - **cables** (see page 344) can be found in the accessories chapter of the device description.
EnDat cable GBK38 (see page 345) can be found in the accessories chapter of the device description

PIN X13	Feedback /X13 High Density /Sub D
	Direct drives (F12)
1	Sense -*
2	Sense +*
3	Hall1 (digital)
4	Vcc (+5V) * max. 350mA load
5	+5V (for temperatureand Hall Sensors)
6	Hall2 (digital)
7	SIN-, A- (Encoder) or analog Hall sensor
8	SIN+, A+, (Encoder) or analog Hall sensor
9	Hall3 (digital)
10	Tmot*
11	COS-, B- (Encoder) or analog Hall sensor
12	COS+, B+ (Encoder) or analog Hall sensor
13	N+
14	N-
15	GND (Vcc)

*X13 Pin10 Tmot may not be connected at the same time as X15 (on Compaxx3M).

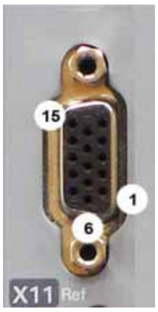
Note on F12:

*+5V (Pin 4) is measured and controlled directly at the end of the line via Sense – and Sense +.
Maximum cable length: 100m

Caution!

- Pin 4 and Pin 5 must under no circumstances be connected!
- Plug in or pull out feedback connector only in switched off state (24VDC switched off).

3.8.2. Analog / Encoder (plug X11)

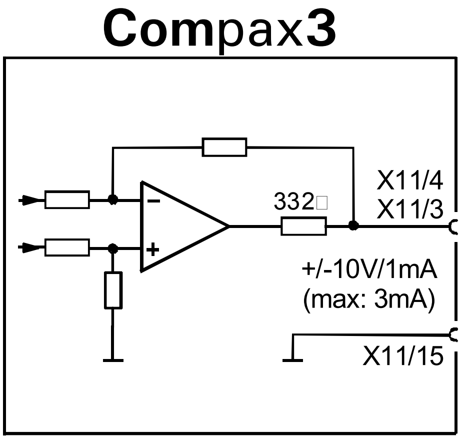


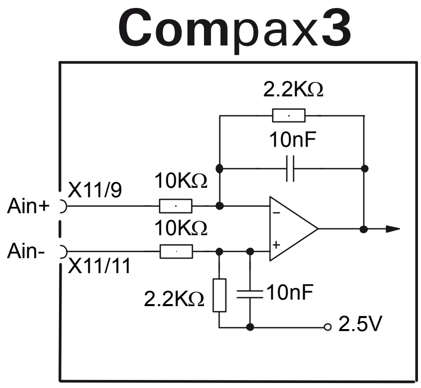
PIN X11	Reference High Density Sub D	Encoder	SSI
1	+24V (output) max. 70mA		
2	Ain1 -: analog input - (14Bit; max. +/-10V)		
3	D/A monitor channel 1 (±10V, 8-bit resolution)		
4	D/A monitor channel 0 (±10V, 8-bit resolution)		
5	+5V (output for encoder) max. 150mA		
6	- Input: steps RS422 (5V - level)	**A/** (Input / simulation)	Clock-
7	+ Input: steps RS422 (5V - level)	**A** (Input / simulation)	Clock+
8	+ Input: direction RS422 (5V - level)	**B** (Input / simulation)	
9	Ain0 +: analog input + (14Bit; max. +/-10V)		
10	Ain1 +: analog input + (14Bit; max. +/-10V)		
11	Ain0 -: analog input - (14Bit; max. +/-10V)		
12	- Input: direction RS422 (5V - level)	**B/** (Input / simulation)	
13	Reserved	**N/** (Input / simulation)	DATA-
14	Reserved	**N** (Input / simulation)	DATA+
15	GND		

Technical data X11 (see page 385)

3.8.2.1 Wiring of analog interfaces

Output **Input**

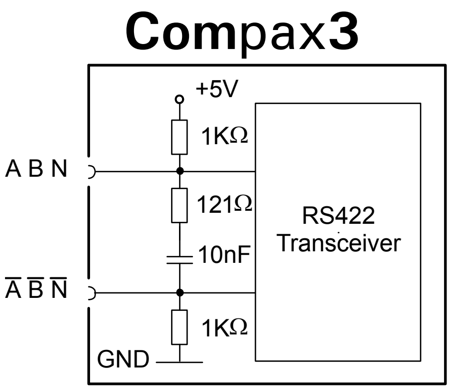




Please note: with Ain- on earth and Ain+ open, 2.02V are read in.

Structure image of the internal **signal processing of the analog inputs**, Ain1 (X11/10 and X11/2) has the same wiring!

3.8.2.2 Connections of the encoder interface



The input connection is available in triple (for A & /A, B & /B, N & /N)

3.8.3. Digital inputs/outputs (plug X12)

PIN X12	Input/output	High density/Sub D	
1	A	+24VDC output (max. 400mA)	
2	O0	No Error	**Only for "fixed assignment"** Functions are available, if "Fixed assignment" was selected for the I/O assignment in the configuration wizard
3	O1	Position / speed / gear synchronization attained (max. 100mA)	
4	O2	No power output stage current (max. 100mA)	
5	O3	Axis stationary with current, with setpoint 0 (max. 100mA)	
6	I0="1":	Quit (positive edge) / Energize the axis The address of the current motion set is read in new.	
	I0="0"	Deenergize axis with delay	
7	I1	No stop	
8	I2	JOG +	
9	I3	JOG -	
10	I4	Reg input	
11	E	24V input for the digital outputs Pins 2 to 5	
12	I5	Limit switch 1	
13	I6	Limit switch 2	
14	I7	Machine reference initiator	
15	A	Gnd 24 V	

All inputs and outputs have 24V level.
Maximum capacitive loading of the outputs: 30nF (max. 2 Compax3 inputs can be connected)
Input-/Output extension (see page 137, see page 374)

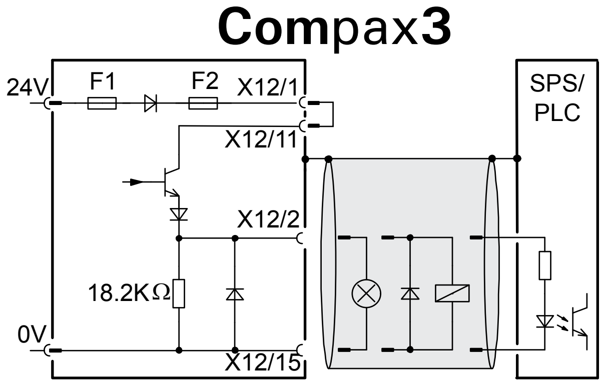
Optimization window display

The display of the digital inputs in the optimization window of the C3 ServoManager does not correspond to the physical status (24Volt=on, 0Volt=off) but to the logic status: If the function of an input or output is inverted (e.g. limit switch, negatively switching), the corresponding display (LED symbol in the optimization window) is OFF with 24Volts at the input and ON with 0 Volts at the input.

In operation via RS232 / RS485 the inputs I0 ... I3 as well as the outputs O0 ... O3 can be freely assigned as an option.
Configurable via the C3 ServoManager (configuration: Operating mode / I/O assignment)

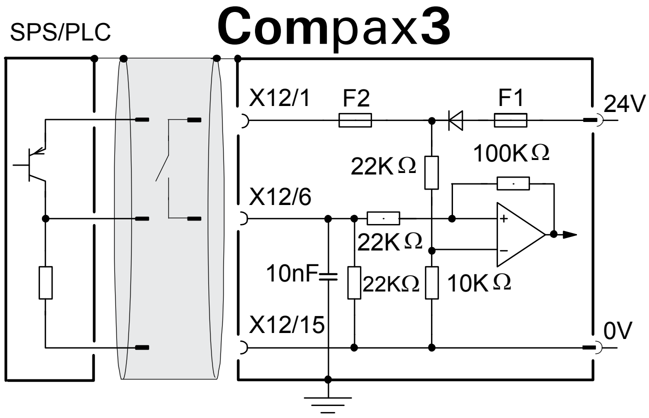
3.8.3.1 Connection of the digital Outputs/Inputs

Wiring of digital outputs



The circuit example is valid for all digital outputs!
The outputs are short circuit proof; a short circuit generates an error.

Status of digital inputs



The circuit example is valid for all digital inputs!
Signal level:

- > 9.15V = "1" (38,2% of the control voltage applied)
- > 8.05V = "0" (33.5% of the control voltage applied)

F1: delayed action fuse
F2: quick action electronic fuse; can be reset by switching the 24VDC supply off and on again.

3.9 Installation and dimensions Compax3

In this chapter you can read about:

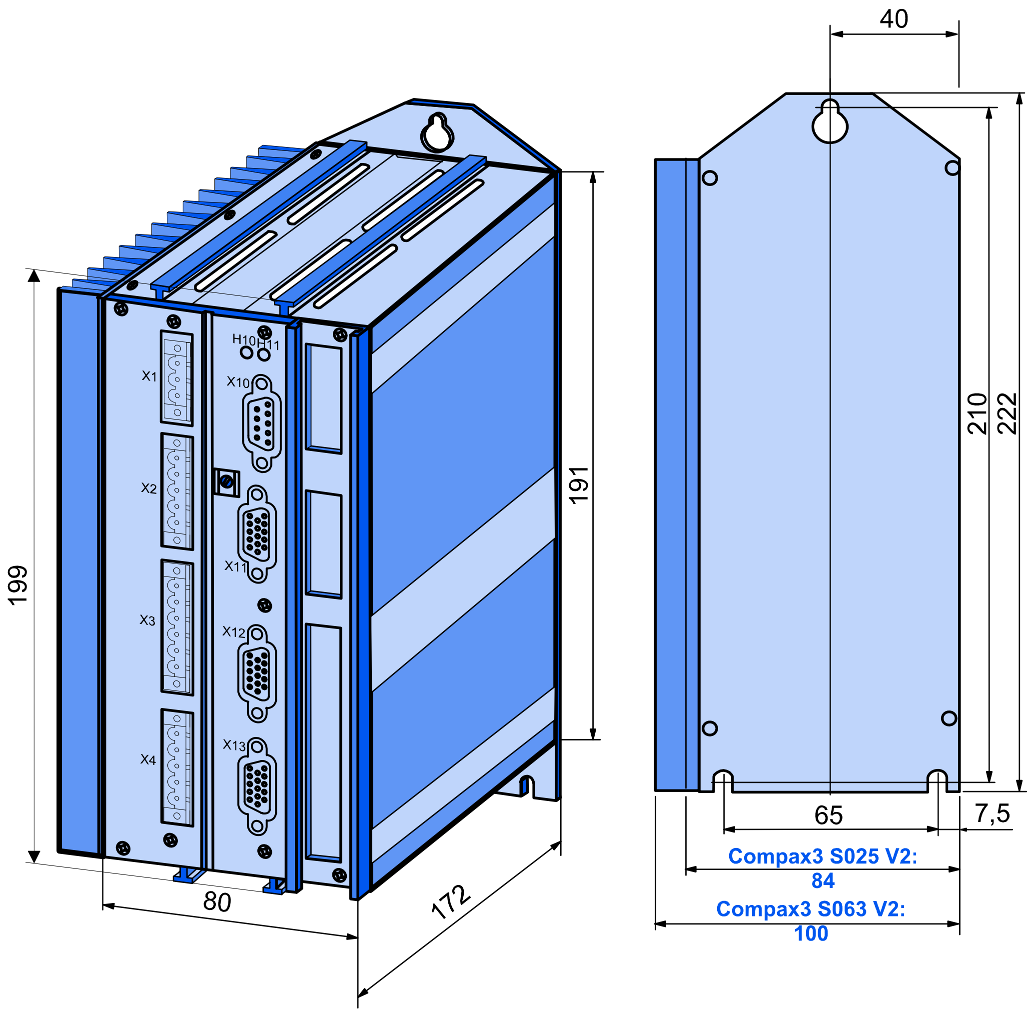
3.9.1. Mounting and dimensions Compax3S

In this chapter you can read about:

3.9.1.1 Mounting and dimensions Compax3S0xxV2

Mounting:

3 socket head screws M5



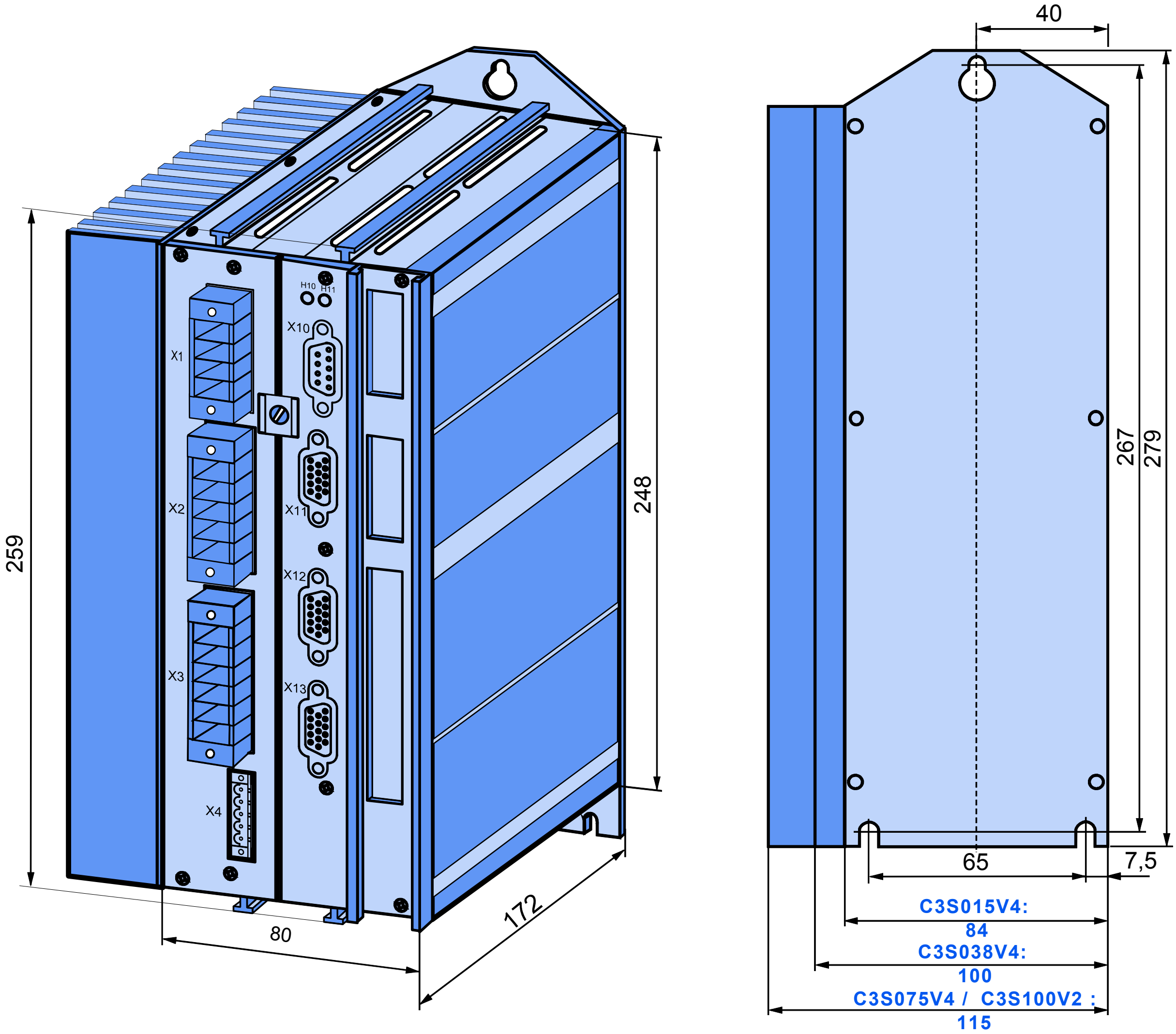
Please respect an appropriate mounting gap in order to ensure sufficient convection:

- At the side: 15mm
- At the top and below: at least 100mm

3.9.1.2 Monting and dimensions Compax3S100V2 and S0xxV4

Mounting:

3 socket head screws M5



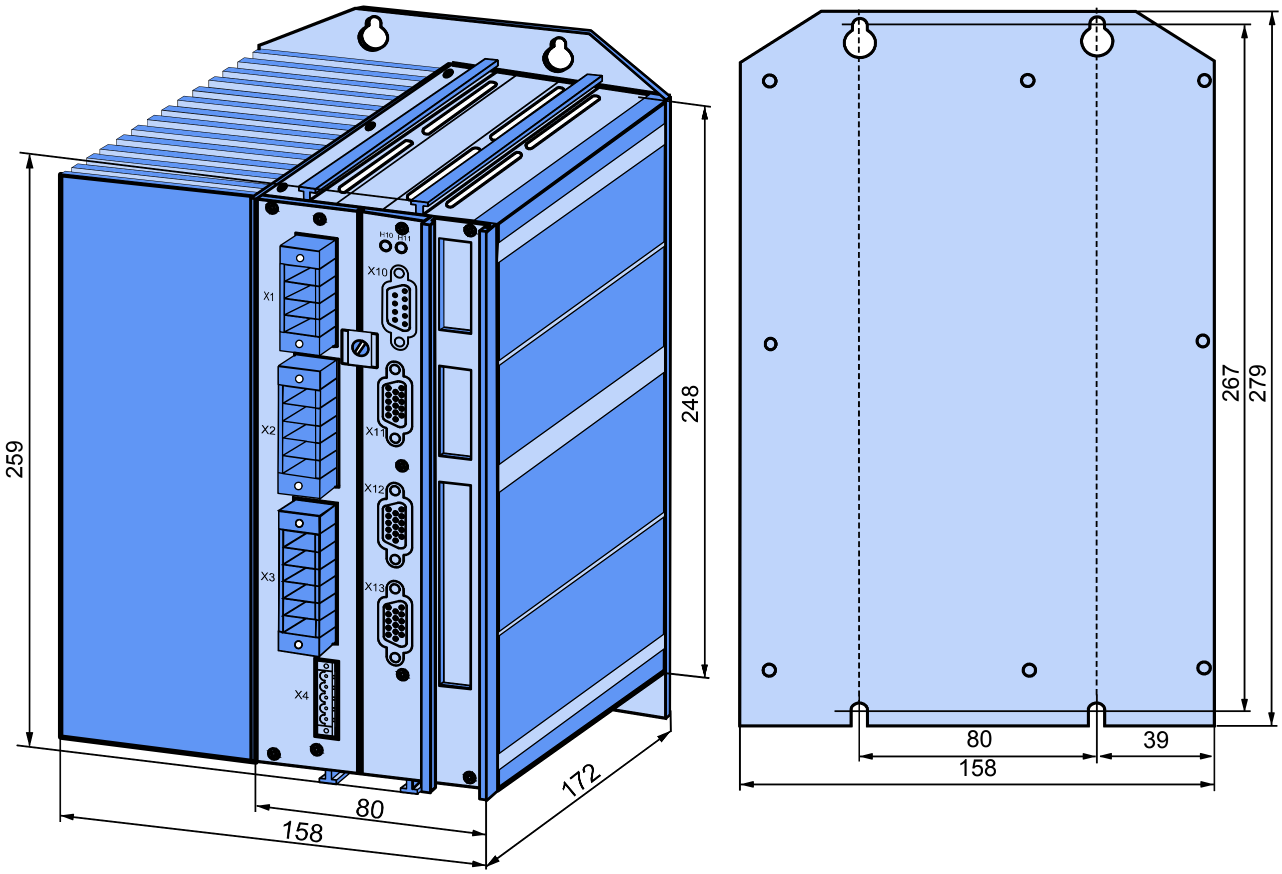
Please respect an appropriate mounting gap in order to ensure sufficient convection:

- At the side: 15mm
- At the top and below: at least 100mm

3.9.1.3 Monting and dimensions Compax3S150V2 and S150V4

Mounting:

4 socket head screws M5



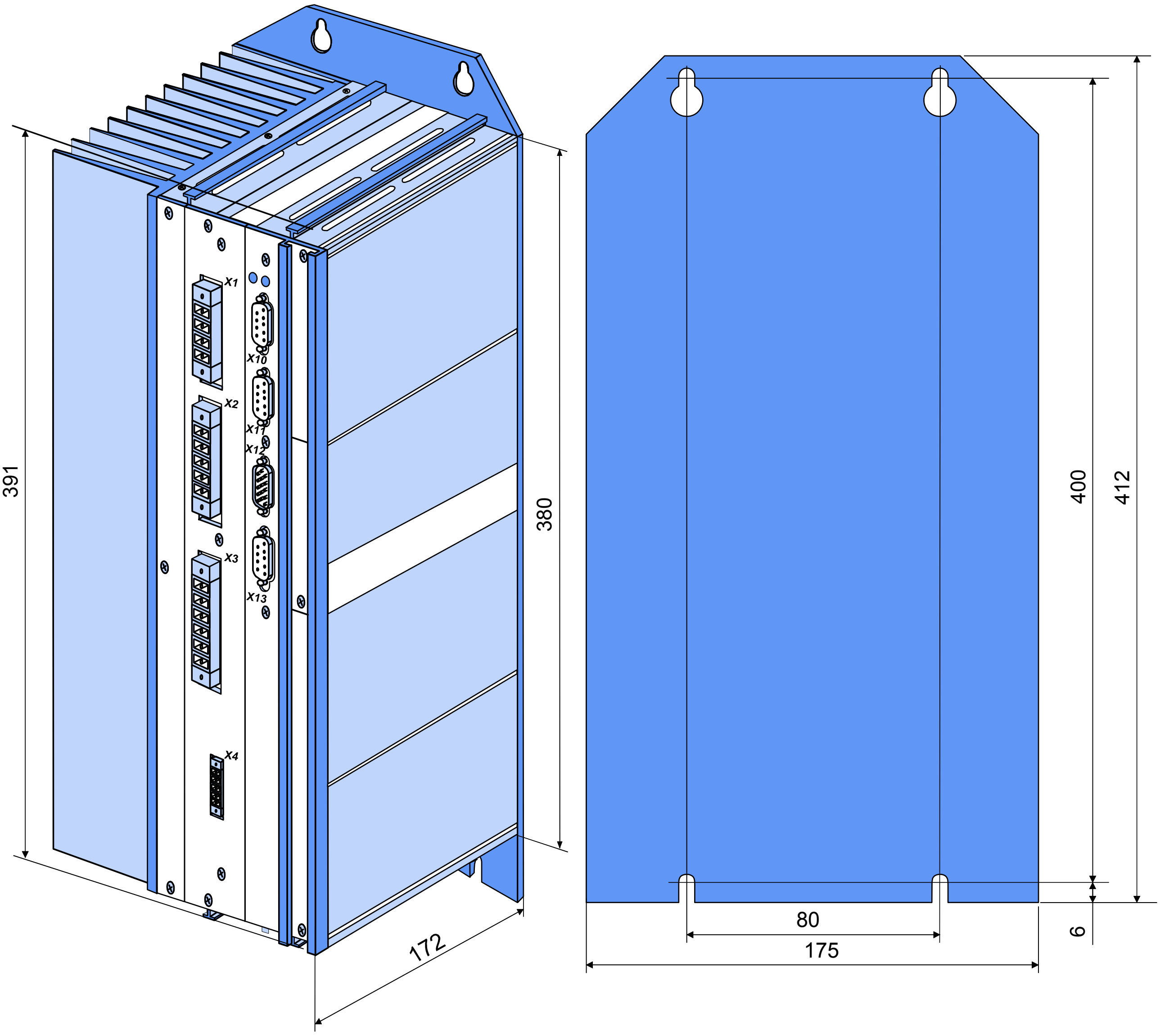
Please respect an appropriate mounting gap in order to ensure sufficient convection:

- At the side: 15mm
- At the top and below: at least 100mm

3.9.1.4 Mounting and dimensions Compax3S300V4

Mounting:

4 socket head screws M5



Please respect an appropriate mounting gap in order to ensure sufficient convection:

- At the side: 15mm
- At the top and below: at least 100mm

Compax3S300V4 is force-ventilated via a fan integrated into the heat dissipator!

3.9.2. Mounting and dimensions C3MP/C3M

Ventilation: During operation, the device radiates heat (power loss). Please provide for a sufficient mounting distance below and above the device in order to ensure free circulation of the cooling air. Please do also respect the recommended distances of other devices. Make sure that the mounting plate is not exhibited to other temperature influences than that of the devices mounted on this very plate.
The devices must be mounted vertically on a level surface. Make sure that all devices are sufficiently fixed.

3.9.2.1 Mounting and dimensions Compax3MP10/M050-150

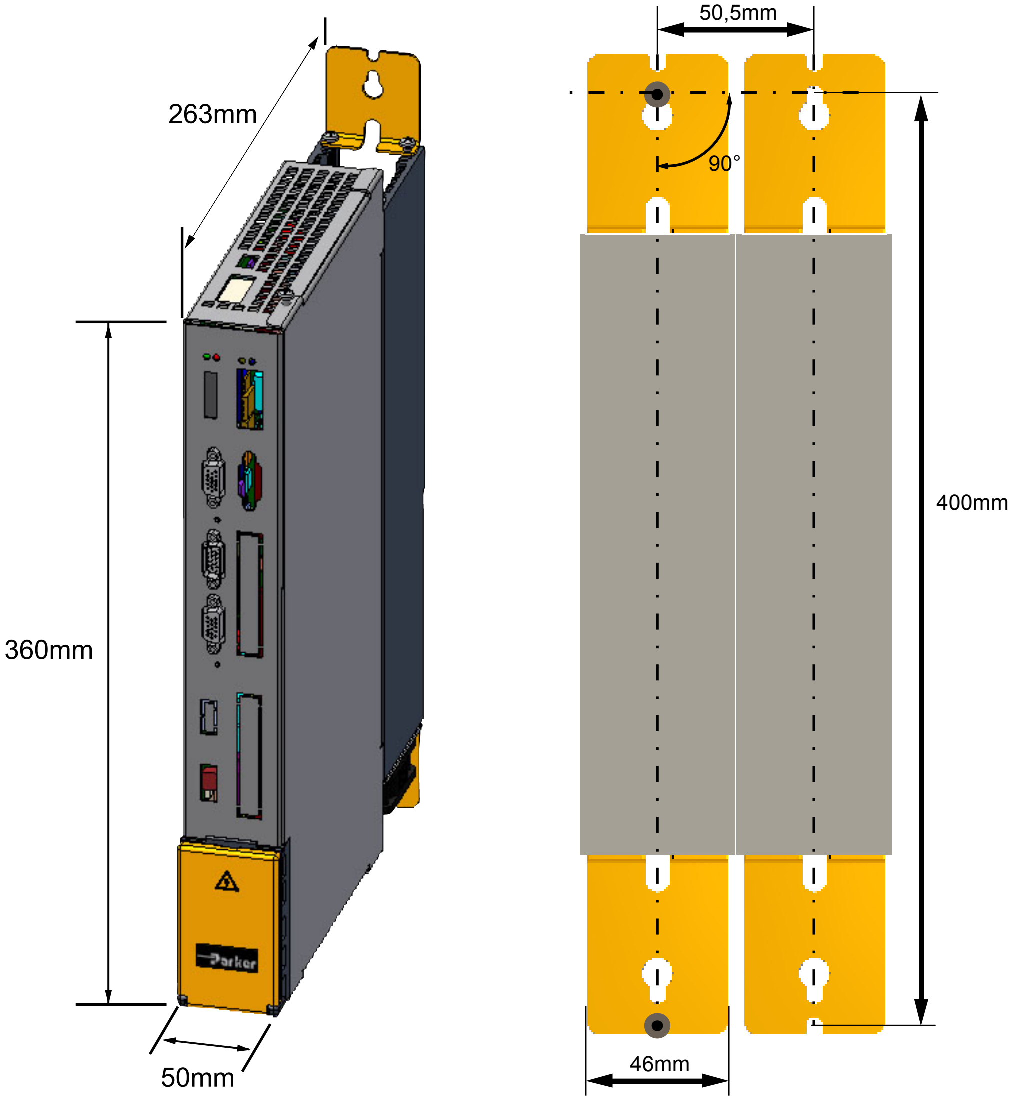
Compaxa3MP and Compax3M are force-ventilated via a ventilator fan fixed to the lower part of the heat dissipator!

Mounting spacing: At the top and below: at least 100mm

Information on	C3MP (mains module)	C3M (axis)
	◆C3MP10D6	◆C3M050D6 ◆C3M100D6 ◆C3M150D6

Mounting:

2 socket head screws M5



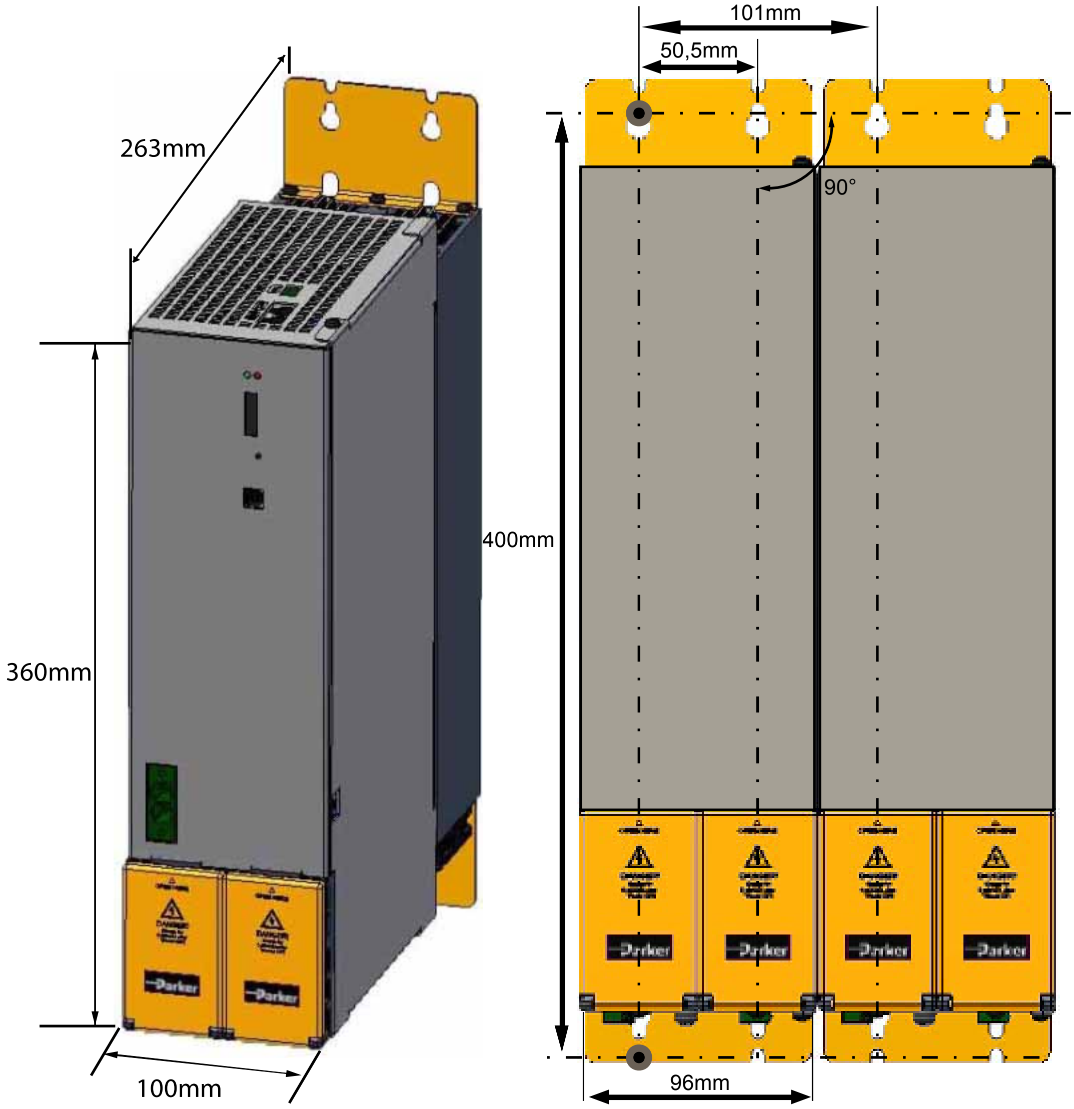
Tolerances: DIN ISO 2768-f

3.9.2.2 Installation and dimensions Compax3MP20/M300

Information on	C3MP (mains module)	C3M (axis)
	◆C3MP20D6	◆C3M300D6

Mounting:

4 socket head screws M5

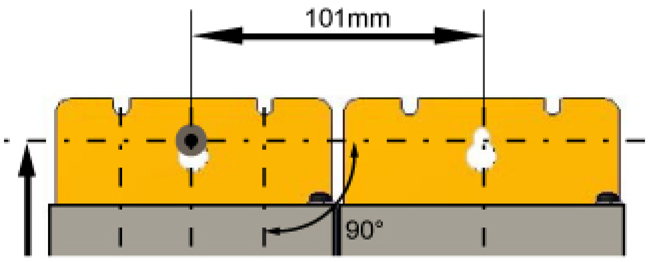


Tolerances: DIN ISO 2768-f

3.9.2.3 With upper mounting, the housing design may be different.

Mounting:

3 socket head screws M5

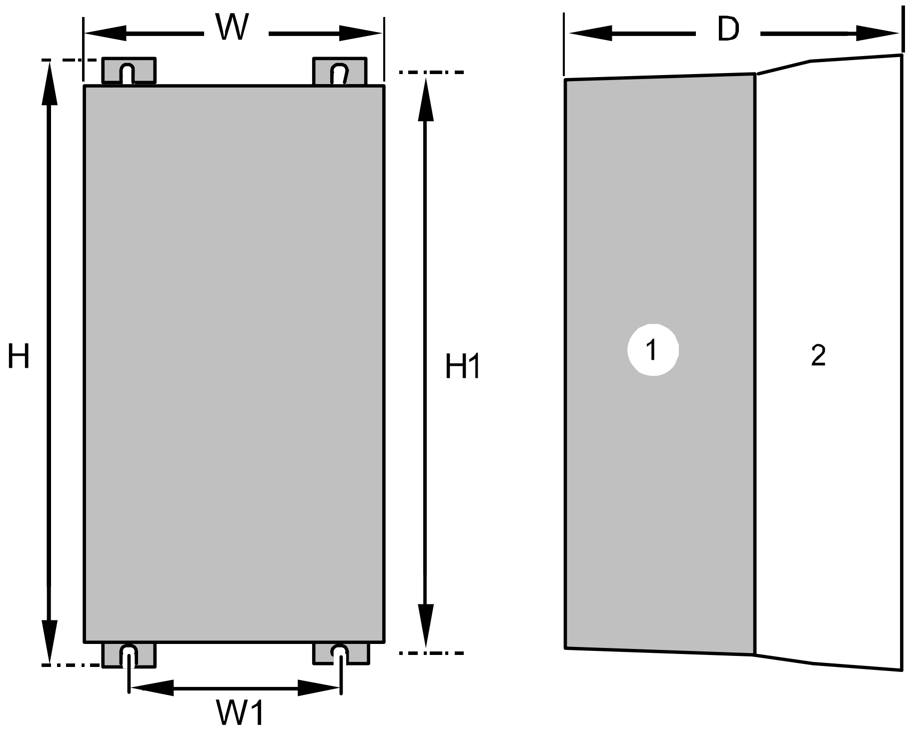


3.9.3. Mounting and dimensions C3H

In this chapter you can read about:

The devices must be mounted vertically on a level surface in the control cabinet.

Dimensions:



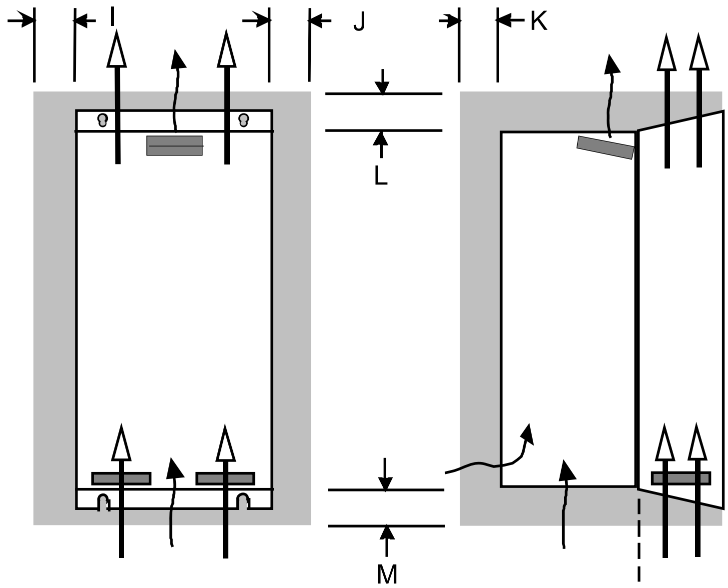
(1): Electronics
(2): Head dissipator

	H	H1	D	W	W1
C3H050V4	453mm	440mm	245mm	252mm	150mm
C3H090V4	668.6mm	630mm	312mm	257mm	150mm
C3H1xxV4	720mm	700mm	355mm	257mm	150mm

Mounting: 4 screws M6

Ventilation: During operation, the device radiates heat (power loss). Please provide for a sufficient mounting distance below and above the device in order to ensure free circulation of the cooling air. Please do also respect the recommended distances of other devices. Make sure that the mounting plate is not exhibited to other temperature influences than that of the devices mounted on this very plate.
If two or more devices are combined, the mounting distances are added.

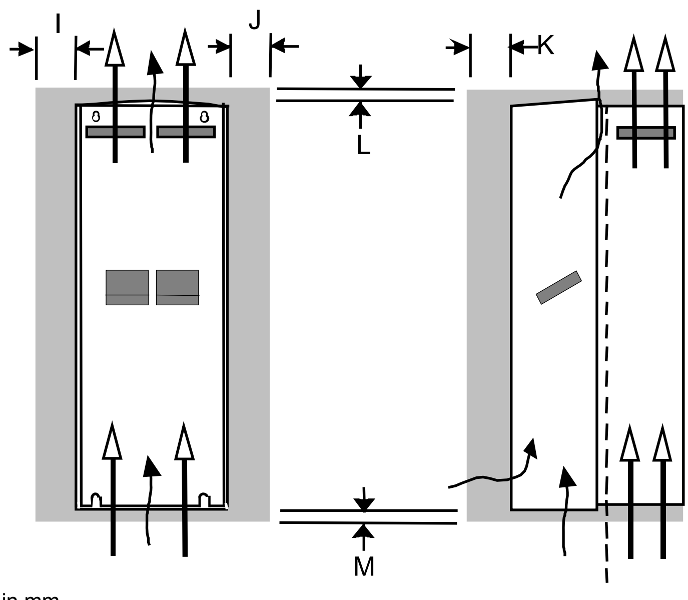
3.9.3.1 Mounting distances, air currents Compax3H050V4



in mm

	I	J	K	L	M
C3H050V4	15	5	25	70	70

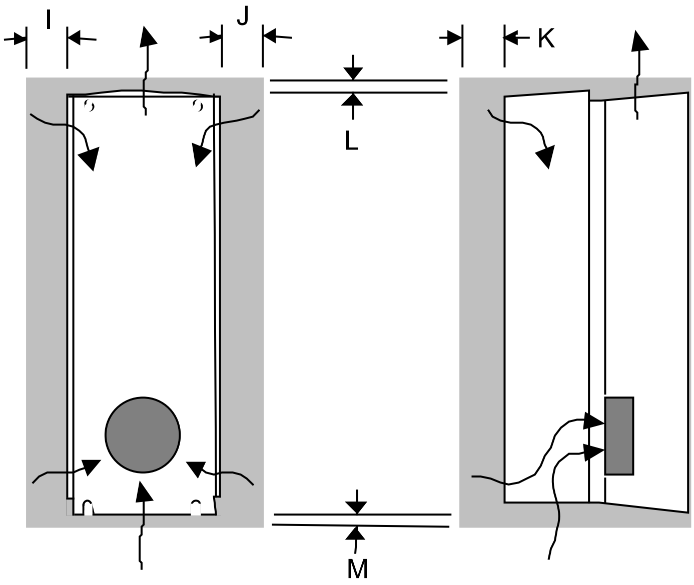
3.9.3.2 Mounting distances, air currents Compax3H090V4



in mm

	I	J	K	L	M
C3H090V4	0	0	25	70	70

3.9.3.3 Mounting distances, air currents Compax3H1xxV4



in mm

	I	J	K	L	M
C3H1xxV4	0	0	25	70	70

3.10 Safety function – safety torque off – Compax3S

In this chapter you can read about:

Compax3S is equipped with the "safety torque off" safety feature.
The "protection against unexpected start-up" described in EN1037 can be implemented with this feature.

3.10.1. Safe standstill with Compax3 principle

To ensure safe protection against a motor starting up unexpectedly, the flow of current to the motor and thus to the power output stage must be prevented.
This is accomplished for Compax3 with two measures independent of each other (Channel 1 and 2), without disconnecting the drive from the power supply:

Channel 1:

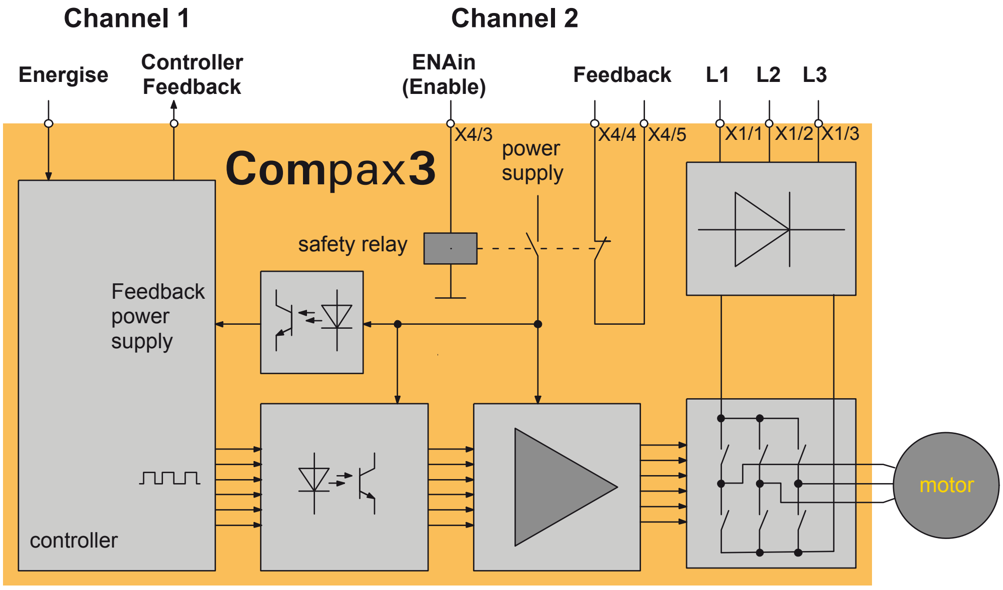
Activation of the power output stage can be disabled in the Compax3 controller by means of a digital input or with a fieldbus interface (depending on the Compax3 device type) (deactivation of the energize input).

Channel 2:

The power supply for optocouplers and drivers of power output stage signals is disconnected by a safety relay activated by the enable input "ENAin"(X4/3) and equipped with force-directed contacts. This prevents control signals from being transferred to the power output stage.

The "Safe Standstill" safety function as defined by EN 954-1 Category 3 is only possible if both channels are used.

Circuit diagram illustrating working principle:



Notes

- In normal operation of Compax3, 24 V DC of power is supplied to the "Enable" input (X4/3). The drive is then controlled by the digital inputs/outputs or the field-bus.

When used properly, the ”Safe standstill” safety function is only used when the motor is at a standstill, since it is not capable of braking a motor or bringing it to a standstill by itself.

3.10.2. Devices with the "Safe Standstill" safety function

The ”safety torque off” safety function is implemented in the following devices:

Compax3 technology function

- I10T10, I11T11
- I11T30, I20T30, I21T30, I22T30, I30T30, I31T30, I11T40, I20T40, I21T40, I22T40, I30T40, I31T40
- I12T11, I20T11, I21T11, I22T11, I30T11, I31T11
- C10T11, C10T30, C10T40, C13T11, C13T30, C13T40

with the device power

S025V2, S063V2, S100V2, S150V2, S015V4, S038V4, S075V4, S150V4, S300V4
and does apply only for the safety switching devices used in the application exam-ples.

3.10.3. Safety instructions for the ”safety torque off” function

- Safety functions must be tested 100%.
- Only qualified staff members are permitted to install the “Safe Standstill” feature and place it in service.
- For all applications in which the first channel of the “Safe Standstill” is implemented by means of a PLC, care must be taken that the part of the program that is responsible for current flowing to or not flowing to the drive is programmed with the greatest possible care. The “Safe Standstill” application example of Compax3 with fieldbus should be considered.
  The designer and operator responsible for the system and machine must refer programmers who are involved to these safety-related points.
- Terminal X4/2 (GND 24 V and at the same time the reference point for the safety relay bobbin) must be connected with the PE protective lead. This is the only way to ensure protection against incorrect operation through earth faults (EN60204-1 Section 9.4.3)!
- All conditions necessary for **CE conform operation** (see page 17) must be observed.
- It should be noted in connection with the “Safe Standstill” application example illustrated here that after the Emergency Power-off switch has been activated, no galvanic isolation in accordance with EN 60204-1 Section 5.5 is guaranteed. This means that the entire system must be disconnected from the mains power supply with an additional main switch or mains power contactor for repair jobs. Please note in this regard that even after the power is disconnected, dangerous electrical voltages may still be present in the Compax3 drive for about 5 minutes.
- When using an external Emergency power-off module with adjustable delay time, (as illustrated in the “Safe Standstill” application example), it must be ensured that the delay time cannot be adjusted by persons not authorized to do so (for example by applying a lead seal).
  The adjustable delay time on the Emergency Power-off module must be set to a value greater than the duration of the braking ramp controlled by the Compax3 with maximum load and maximum speed.
  If the setting range for the specified Emergency power-off module is not sufficient, the Emergency power-off module must be replaced by another comparable module.
- All safety-related external leads (for example the control lead for the safety relay and feedback contact) must absolutely be laid so they are protected, for example in a cable duct. Short circuits and crossed wires must be reliably excluded!
- If there are external forces operating on the drive axes, additional measures are required (for example additional brakes). Please note in particular the effects of gravity on suspended loads!
- If the power fails, the possibility must be considered that for the application with stop category K1, such as is described in the application example, it will no longer be possible to execute the braking ramp controlled to speed 0.
- It is important to note that if the drive is being activated (Energize) by the RS232 (RS485) interface, it may not be possible to execute switch-off by a controlled braking ramp. For example, this is true when the set-up window of the C3 ServoManager is used. If set-up mode is turned on, the digital I/O interface and fieldbus interface are automatically disabled.

3.10.4. Application example for "safe standstill"

In this chapter you can read about:

The application example described here corresponds to Stop Category 1 as defined by EN60204-1.

A Stop Category 0 in accordance with EN 60204-1 can be implemented, for example by setting the delay time on the Emergency power-off switch to 0. The Compax3 drive will then be turned off immediately in 2 channels and will not be able to generate any more torque. Please take into consideration that the motor will not brake and a coasting down of the motor may result in hazards. If this is the case, a "Safe Standstill" in the stop category 0 is not permitted.

3.10.4.1 Note:

If the "safe standstill" function of Compax3 is required or used for a machine or system, the errors:

- "Motor_Stalled" and
- "Tracking"

is not to be switched off **(see page 155, see page 136).**

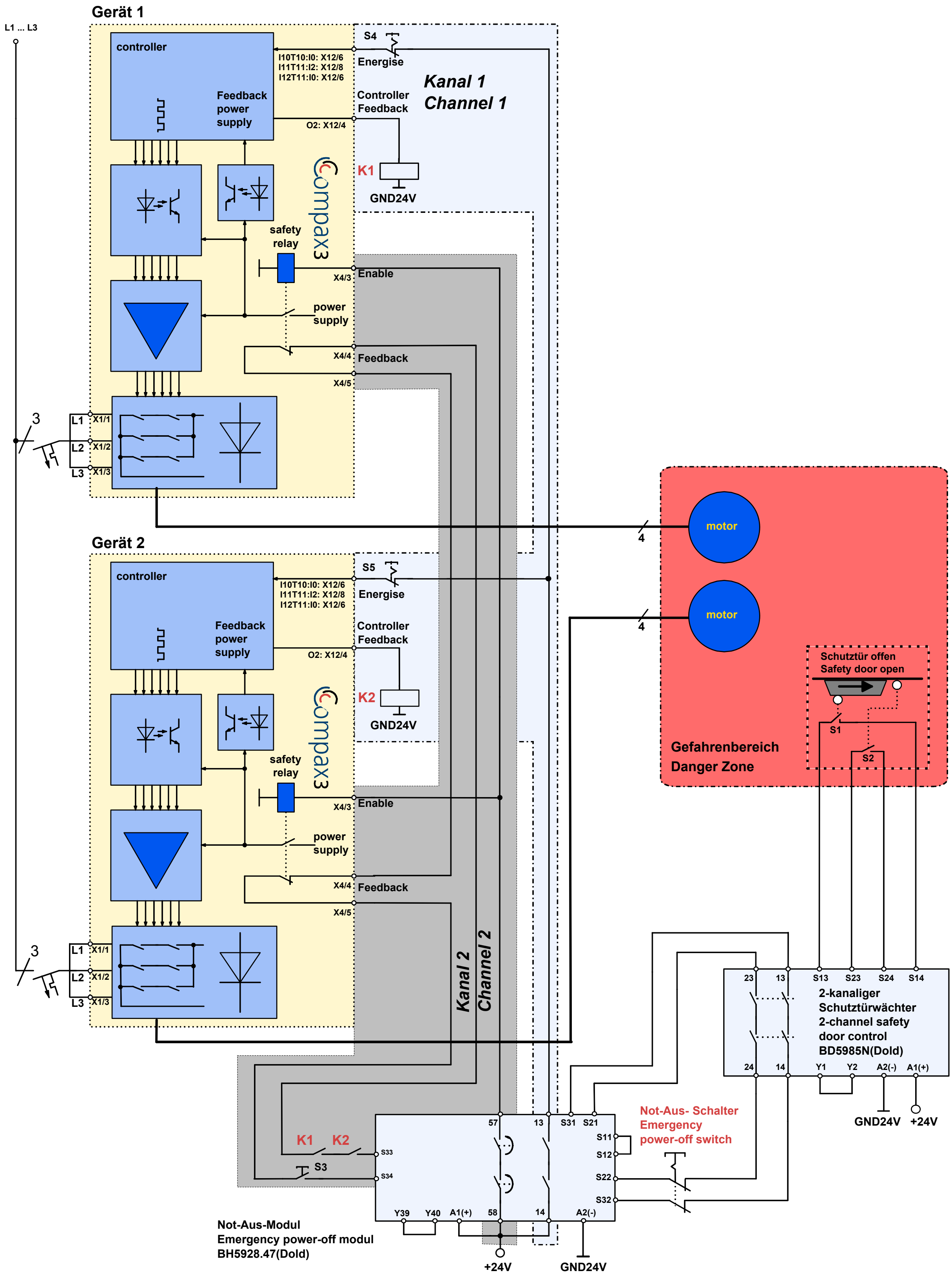
3.10.4.2 Layout:

- 2 Compax3 devices (the circuit example is also valid for one or multiple devices, if it is adapted accordingly)
- 1 Emergency Power-off module (BH5928.47 manufactured by Dold)
  With adjustable delayed deactivation of the Compax3 enable input.
  The time must be set so that all axes are at a standstill before the Compax3 controllers are deactivated.
- 1 safety door monitor (BD5985N made by Dold)
  Note: With safety door monitor BD5985N, the safety door must be opened and closed again every time after turning on the 24 V power supply so that the Emergency power-off module can be acknowledged and reset. To avoid this, safety door monitors with an additional simulation entry or a corresponding reset circuit can also be used.
- 1 Emergency power-off switch
- Hazardous area accessible via a safety door with safety door switch S1 and S2
- 3 buttons (S3, S4, S5)
- 1 relay per Compax3

3.10.4.3 Note on the implementation via RS485

- The "Energize" function (channel 1) can be implemented via the RS485 bus interface (X10) via a corresponding programming of the Compax3.
  If, in this case, the motor current is to be disabled via channel 1, the Bit0 of the DeviceControl (Control word_1) must be set to "LOW" via the RS485 bus interface.

3.10.4.4 Circuit:



Switches and buttons:

S1:	Closed when the safety door is closed
S2:	Closed when the safety door is closed
S3:	Activate Emergency power-off module
S4:	Guide Device 1 to a currentless state (error acknowledge)
S5:	Guide Device 2 to a currentless state (error acknowledge)

3.10.4.5 Description

In this chapter you can read about:

Basic function

Compax3 devices disabled by:

Channel 1: Energize input to "0" through open contacts of Emergency power-off module (13 -14)
Channel 2: Enable input to "0" through open contacts of Emergency power-off module (57 -58)

Activate Emergency power-off module

Before the Compax3 can be placed in operation, the Emergency power-off module must be activated by a pulse to Input S33/S34.
Prerequisite:

- S3 closed
- Safety door closed: only in this case the safety door monitor enables the emergency power off module via two channels.
- K1 and K2 energized
  - K1: receives current if Compax3 Device 1 is currentless (output = ”1” in currentless state) = Channel 1 feedback
  - K2: receives current if Compax3 Device 2 is currentless (output = ”1” in currentless state) = Channel 1 feedback
- The feedback contact of all Compax3 devices must be closed (channel 2).

If S33 & S34 of the Emergency power-off module are briefly connected (pulse) the contacts will be closed (between 13 & 14 and between 57 & 58)

Energize Compax3 (Motor and power output stage)

- Compax3 devices are enabled by the Energize input and the Enable input via the Emergency power-off module. (If an error is still pending on Compax3, it must previously be reset. The acknowledge/reset function depends on the type of the Compax3 device).
- The motors are energized with current.

Summary: Compax3 is only energized if the feedback functions are capable of functioning via two channels.

Access to the hazardous area

Activate Emergency power-off switch

The two-channel disconnecting at the emergency power-off switch deactivates the emergency power-off module – the contacts 13 – 14 will open immediately.
Channel 1: Compax3 devices receive the command via the Energize input to guide the drive to a currentless state (using the ramp configured in the C3 ServoManager for "drive disable").
Channel 1 feedback: The "Controller Feedback" Compax3 outputs supply current to Relays K1 and K2.
Channel 2: After the delay time set in the Emergency power-off module, (this time must be set so that all drives are stopped after it has elapsed) the contacts between 57 & 58 open, which in turn deactivates the Enable inputs of the Compax3 devices.
Channel 2 feedback: Via the series circuit of all feedback contacts, the ”Safe Standstill” status (all Compax3 devices without current) is reported.
Only if the drives are all at a standstill, the safety door may be opened and the hazardous area may be accessed.

If the safety door is opened during operation and the emergency-power-off switch was not triggered before, the Compax3 drives will also trigger the stop ramp.

Caution! The drives may still move.

If danger to life and limb of a person entering cannot be excluded, the machine must be protected by additional measures (e.g. a safety door locking).

3.11 Compax3M with safety option S1: Safe torque off

In this chapter you can read about:

3.11.1. General Description

In this chapter you can read about:

The present documentation assumes a basic knowledge of our drive controllers as well as an understanding of safety-oriented machine design. References to standards and other regulations are only rudimentarily expressed.
For complementary information, we recommend the respective technical literature, e.g.:
BIA Report 6/97 and BIA Report 5/2003 (Information issued by the german government safety organization)
Download under: **http://www.hvbg.de/d/bia/pub/rep/index.html**
http://www.hvbg.de/d/bia/pub/rep/index.html

3.11.1.1 Important terms and explanations

Term	Explanation
Safety category 3 according to EN 954-1 or EN ISO 13849-1:2007	Definition according to standard: Circuit with safety function against individual faults Some, but not all faults are detected. An accumulation of faults may lead to a loss of the safety function. The remaining risk is accepted. The determination of the safety category required for an application (risk analysis) lies within the responsibility of the machine manufacturer. It can take place according to the method described in EN ISO 13849-1:2007, appendix A.
"Safe torque off" **or abbreviated:** **STO=Safe torque off**	With the "safe torque off", the energy supply of the drive is safely interrupted according to EN 1037, paragraph 4.1. The drive is not to be able to produce a torque and thus dangerous movements (see EN 1037, paragraph 5.3.1.3). The standstill position must not be monitored. If an external force effect, e.g. a drop of hanging loads, is possible with the "safe torque off", additional measures to safely prevent those must be provided (e.g. additional mechanical brakes). The following measures are appropriate for a "safe torque off": Contactor between mains and drive system (mains contactor) Contactor between power section and motor (motor contactor) Safe blocking of the power semiconductor control (start inhibitor)
Start inhibitor	Safe blocking of the power semiconductor control. With the aid of this function, you can obtain a "safe torque off".

Stop categories according to EN60204-1 (9.2.2)

Stop category	Safety function	Requirement	System behaviour	Remark
0	Safe torque off (STO)	Stopping by immediately switching off the energy supply of the machine drive elements	Uncontrolled stop	Uncontrolled stop is the stopping of a machine movement by switching off the energy of the machine drive elements. Available brakes and/or other mechanical stopping components are applied.
1	Safe stop 1 (SS1)	Stop where the energy of the machine drive elements is maintained in order to reach a stop. The energy supply is only interrupted, if the standstill is attained.	Controlled stop	Controlled stop is the stopping of a machine movement by for instance resetting the electrical command signal to zero, as soon as the stop signal has been detected by the controller, the electrical energy for the machine drive elements remains however during the stopping prodecure.
2	Safe stop 2 (SS2)	Stop where the energy to the machine drive elements is maintained.	Controlled stop	This category is not covered.

3.11.1.2 Intended use

The Compax3M drive controller supports the "safe torque off" (STO) safety function, with protection against unexpected startup according to the requirements of EN 954-1 category 3, EN ISO 13849-1 PL=d and EN 1037.
Together with the external safety control device, the "safe stop 1" (SS1) safety function according to the requirements of EN 954-1 category 3 can be used. As the function is however realized with the aid of an individually settable time delay on the safety switching device, you must take into account that, due to a fault in the drive system during the active braking phase, the axis trundles to a stop unguidedly or may even accelerate actively in the worst case until the expiry of the preset switch-off time.

According to a risk evaluation which must be carried out according to the machine standard 98/37/EG or EN ISO 12100, EN ISO 13849-1 and EN ISO 14121-1, the machine manufacturer must project the safety system for the entire machine including all integrated components. This does also include the electrical drives.

When using the S1 option, a protocol describing the orderly working of the safety function must be made upon the setup and in defined maintenance intervals (see protocol proposal).

Qualified personnel

Projecting, installation and setup require a detailed understanding of this description.
Standards and accident prevention regulation associated with the application must be known and respected as well as risks, protective and emergency measures.

3.11.1.3 Advantages of using the "safe torque off" safety function.

Safety category 3 according to EN 954-1 and EN ISO 13849-1:

Requirements performance feature	Use of the safe torque off function	Conventional soution: Use of external switching elements
Reduced switching overhead	Simple wiring, certified application examples Groupling of drive controllers on a mains contactor is possible.	Two safety-oriented power contactors in series connection are required.
Use in th production process High operating cycles, high reliability, low wear	Extremely high operating cycles thanks to almost wear-free technology (low-voltage relay and electronic switch). The "safe torque off" status is attained due to the use of wear-free electronic switches (IGBTs).	This performance feature cannot be reached with conventional technology.
Use in th production process High reaction speed, fast restart	Drive controller remains performance- and control-oriented in connectted state. No significant waiting times due to restart.	When using power contactors in the supply, a long waiting time for the energy discharge of the DC link circuit is required. When using two power contactors on the motor side, the reaction times may increase, you must however take into consideration other disadvantages: a) Securing that switching takes only place in powerless state (Direct current! Constant electric arcs must be prevented). b) Increased overhead for EMC conform wiring.
Emergency-stop function	According to the german version of the standard: Permitted without control of mechanical power switching elements 1)	Switch-off via mechanical switching elements is required

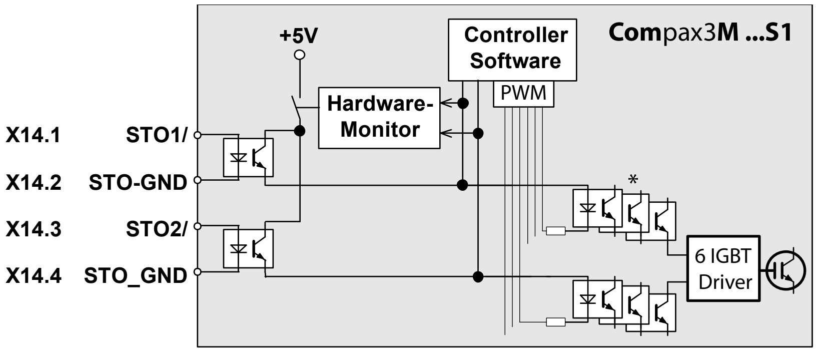
1) According to the preface of the german version of the EN 60204-1/11.98, electronic equipment for emergency-stop devies are also permitted, if they comply with the safety categories as described in EN954-1.

3.11.2. STO function on the Compax3M

In this chapter you can read about:

3.11.2.1 Safety switching circuits

The current flow in the motor windings is controlled by a power semiconductor bridge (6-fold IGBT). A processor circuit and PWM circuit will switch the IGBT with rotary field orientation. Between control logic and power module, optocouplers or pulse transmitters are used for potential separation
On the Compax3M drive controller with S1 option, the X14 (STO) connector can be found on the front plate. 2 optocouplers are controlled on two channels via the STO1/ and STO2/ terminals of this connector. When requesting the STO via an external safety switching device, the two auxiliary voltage supply channels of the power stage control circuits are switched off on two channels. Therefore the power transistors (IGBTs) for the motor current can not longer be switched on.
The hardware monitor detects a failure of the optocoupler circuit of a channel by always checking both channels for similarity. If the hardware monitor detects a discrepancy for a defined time (max. 20s), the error will be stored in the hardware latch The processor signals this error externally via the 0x5493 error code. An acti-vation of the coupler supply can then only take place via a hardware reset (swit-ching off and on again) of the device.



* Potential separation with optocoupler.

3.11.2.2 Safety notes and limitations of the STO function in the Compax3M

- The STO safety function must be tested and protocoled **as described** (see page 97). The safety function must be requested at least once a week. In safety door applications, the weekly testing interval must not be observed, as you can assume that the safety doors will be opened several times during the operation of the machine.
- The CompaxeM with integrated STO safety function as well as the utilized safety control devices must be mounted protectedly (IP54 control cabinet).
- Only qualified staff members are permitted to install the STO function and place it in service.
- The X9/2 (GND24V) terminal on the Compax3MPxx mains module must be connected to the PE protective lead. This is the only way to ensure protection against incorrect operation through earth faults (EN60204-1 Section 9.4.3)!
- All conditions necessary for **CE conform operation** (see page 17) must be observed.
- It should be noted in connection with the STO application examples illustrated here that after the Emergency Power-off switch has been activated, no galvanic isolation in accordance with EN 60204-1 Section 5.5 is guaranteed. This means that the entire system must be disconnected from the mains power supply with an additional main switch or mains power contactor for repair jobs. Please note in this regard that even after the power is disconnected, dangerous electrical voltages may still be present in the Compax3 drive for about 5 minutes.
- When using an external Emergency power-off module with adjustable delay time, (as illustrated in the STO application example), it must be ensured that the delay time cannot be adjusted by persons not authorized to do so (for example by applying a lead seal). With the UE410-MU3T5 safety control, this is not necessary, if the anti manipulation measures are respected.
  The adjustable delay time on the Emergency Power-off module must be set to a value greater than the duration of the braking ramp controlled by the Compax3 with maximum load and maximum speed.
- If there are external forces operating on the drive axes, additional measures are required (for example additional brakes). Please note in particular the effects of gravity on suspended loads! This must be respected above all for vertical axes without self-locking mechanical devices or weight balance.
- During the active braking phase of Stop category 1 (controlled bringing to a stop with safely monitored delay time according to EN60204-1) or safe stop 1, faulty function must be expected. If a fault in the drive system occurs during the active braking phase, the axis may trundle to a stop unguidedly or might even actively accelerate until the expiry of the defined switch-off time.
- When using synchronous motors, a short movement over a small angle is possible, if two faults occur simultaneously in the power section. This depends on the number of pole pairs of the motor (rotary types: 2 poles = 180°, 4 poles = 90°, 6 poles = 60°, 8 poles = 45 °, Linear motors: 180° electrically).
- For synchronous motors operated in the field weakening range, the operation of the STO function may lead to overspeed and destructive, life-threatening overvoltages as well as explosions in the servo controller. Therefore, NEVER use the STO function with synchronous drives in the field-weakening range.
- It is important to note that if the drive is being activated (Energize) by the USB / RS485 interface, it may not be possible to execute switch-off by a controlled braking ramp. For example, this is true when the set-up window of the C3 ServoManager is used. If set-up mode is turned on or with the imput simulator, the digital I/O interface and fieldbus interface are automatically disabled.

3.11.2.3 Technical details of the Compax3M S1 option

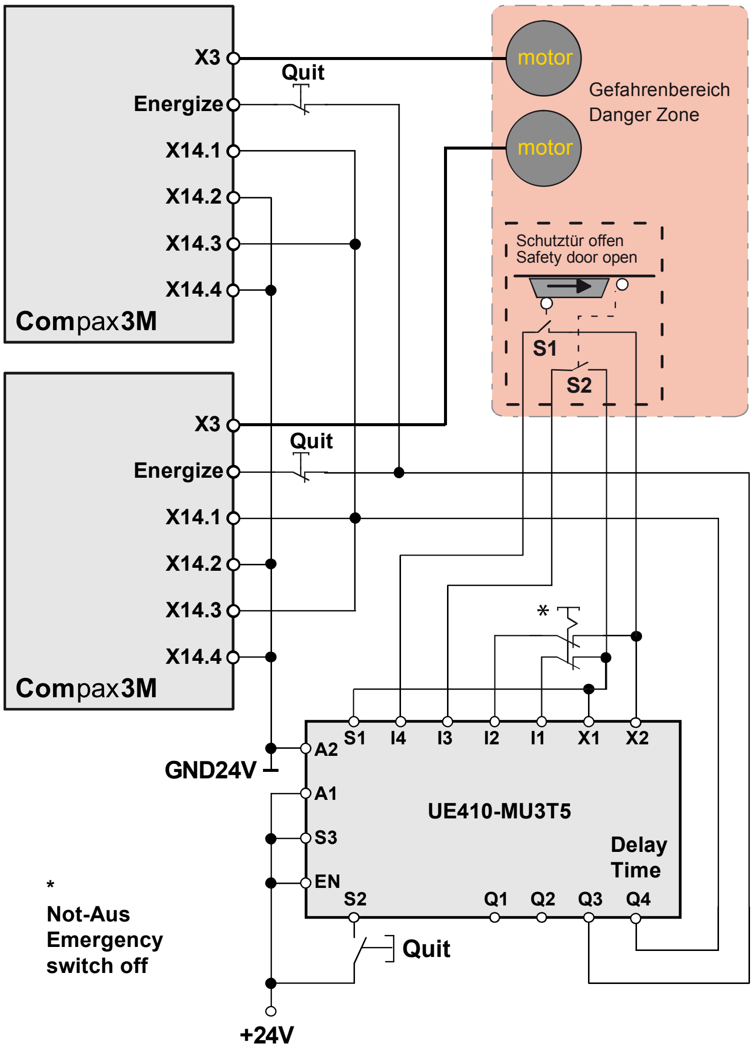
Compax3M S1 Option: Signal inputs for connector X14

Nominal voltage of the inputs	24V
Required isolation of the 24V control voltage	Grounded protective extra low voltage, PELV
Protection of the STO control voltage	1A
Number of inputs **Signal inputs via opto-coupler**	2 Low = 0...7V DC or open High = 15...30V DC I_{in} at 24V DC: 8mA
STO1/	Low = STO activated High = STO deactivated
STO2/	Low = STO activated High = STO deactivated
Switch-off time with unequal input statuses (max. reaction time)	20 seconds
Grouping of safety level	Category 3 PL=d PFH=1.01 x 10-7h-1

3.11.3. Compax3M STO application description

In this chapter you can read about:

3.11.3.1 STO function with safety control device via Compax3M inputs



The acknowledement via the safety control UE410-MU3T5 is only necessary, if after the disabling of the STO function, a danger to any person or to the machine could arise. During the **Configuration des Compax3M** (see page 131)you must see to a debouncing time >3ms being configured.

The operating instructions of the UE410-MU3T5 safety control must be observed.

The Compax3M devices and the UE410-MU3T5 safety control must be mounted in the same control cabinet.

3.11.3.2 STO function description

When opening the protective door or after actuating the emergency power-off switch, the singal of the "energize" input of the Compax3M drive modules is interrupted via the Q3 output on the UE410-MU3T5 safety control. This triggers an immediate braking ramp on the drives. Then after the delay time set on the UE410-MU4T5 safety control, the STO function in the drives is triggered via the Q4 output. The servo drives are then in safe torqueless state. The delay time must be set on the safety control so that the braking ramp in the drives has run off and the drives are at standstill when the delay time has elapsed.

The described application example corresponds to the stop category 1 according to EN 60204-1. Together with the external safety switching device, the "Safe Stop 1" safety function can also be implemented.
A Stop Category 0 in accordance with EN 60204-1 can be implemented, for example by setting the delay time on the Emergency power-off module to 0. The Compax3M will then be turned off immediately in 2 channels and will not be able to generate any more torque. Please take into consideration that the motor will not brake and a coasting down of the motor may result in hazards. If this is the case, the STO function in stop category 0 is not permitted.
Depending on the interface Ixx or technology function Txx of the Compax3M, the "energize" input can be a digital input or for instance a defined bit of a fieldbus control word (see the overview table below).

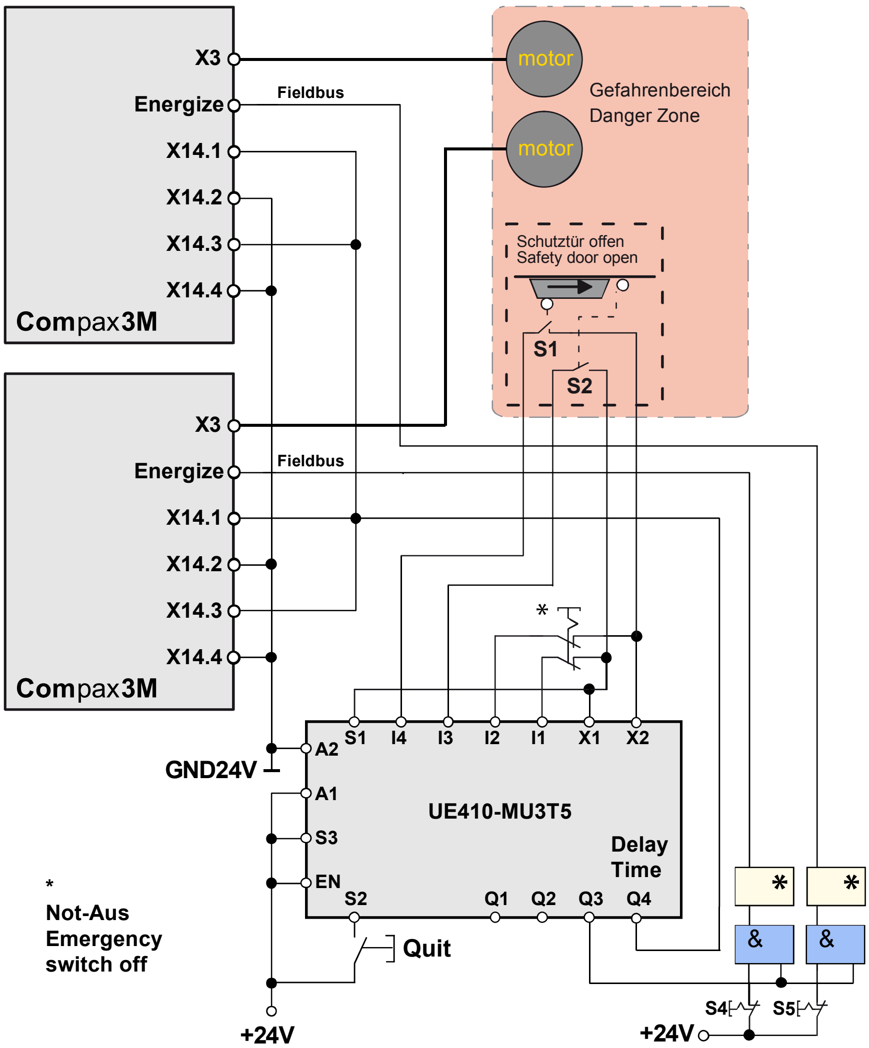
Interface/Technology	"Energize"
I10T10	Digital input X12.6
I11T11	Digital input X12.8
I12T11	Digital input X12.6
I2xT11	**Applications with fieldbusses** (see page 94)
I1xT30 and I1xT40	Debounced digital input defined in the IEC program, which leads to the enable input of the MCpower function module
I2xT30, I2xT40, I3xT30 and I3xT40	Bit defined in the IEC program which is linked to the enable input of the MCpower function module
C1xT30 and C1xT40	Debounced digital input defined in the IEC program, which leads to the enable inputs of several MCpower function modules for different axes. The information is passed on via the CANbus.

The acknowledement via the safety control UE410-MU3T5 is only necessary, if after the disabling of the STO function, a danger to any person or to the machine could arise.

3.11.3.3 STO function with safety switching device for applications with fieldbusses

In this chapter you can read about:

Energize and deenergize circuitry



*** With Profibus:**

Status change in:	
0 -> 1	SB1 SC1
1 -> 0	SA2

*** with CANopen, Devicenet, Ethernet Powerlink and Ethercat:**

Status change in:	
0 -> 1	Operation enable
1 -> 0	Switched On Disabled

The operating instructions of the UE410-MU3T5 safety control must be observed. The Compax3M devices and the UE410-MU3T5 safety control must be mounted in the same control cabinet.

Function description for fieldbus applications:

When opening the safety door or after actuating the emergency power-off switch, it is ensured via output Q3 and the external control that the Compax3M servo drives will enter the following state immediately:

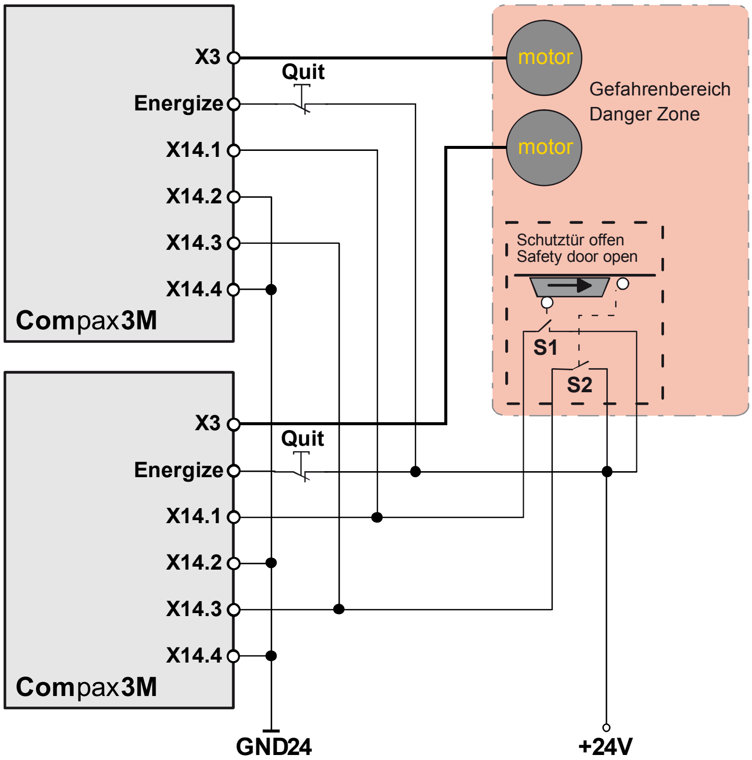
- "SA2"
  (for Profibus) or
- "Switched On Disabled"
  for fieldbusses based on the CANopen profile

(braking ramp followed by software switch-off)

In the programmable Compax3 devices (T30, T40), this switch-off is realized with the MC_power function module. Then after the delay time set on the UE410-MU4T5 safety control, the STO function in the drives is triggered via the Q4 output. The servo drives are afterwards in safe torqueless state. The delay time must be set on the safety control so that the braking ramp in the drives has run off and the drives are at standstill when the delay time has elapsed.
The described application example corresponds to the stop category 1 according to EN 60204-1. Together with the external safety switching device, the "Safe Stop 1" safety function can also be implemented.
A Stop Category 0 in accordance with EN 60204-1 can be implemented, for example by setting the delay time on the Emergency power-off module to 0. The Compax3M will then be turned off immediately in 2 channels and will therefore not be able to generate any more torque. Please take into consideration that the motor will not brake and a coasting down of the motor may result in hazards. If this is the case, the STO function in stop category 0 is not permitted.
The acknowledement via the safety control UE410-M is only necessary, if after the disabling of the STO function, a danger to any person or to the machine could arise.

3.11.3.4 Emergency power-off and protective door monitoring without safety switching devices

With Compax3M, a 2-channel protective door monitoring switch or a 2 channel emergency power-off switch can be directly connected. The figure below visualizes an application with 2 channel protective door monitoring switch.
The Compax3M drive modules with Compax3MPxx mains rectifier must be located in a protected area (IP54 control cabinet). Outside this protected area, the line guiding to the external switches must be separated channelwise or must be especially protected (screened).
It is also permitted to use one acknowledgement switch for both servo drives at a time. In both cases the acknowledgement does only correspond to category B (no longer category 3), therefore this acknowledgement should not be used if there is any possibility of stepping in the dangerous area. In this case, an external acknowledgement device must be used.



3.11.4. STO function test

The STO function must be checked in the event of:

- Commissioning
- After each exchange of any equipment within the system
- After each intervention into the system wiring
- In defined maintenance intervals (at least once per week) and after a longer standstill of the machine
  If the STO function was triggered by opening a protective door and if this door is opened serveral times a week, the weekly testing interval is not required.

The check must be made by qualified personnel adhering to all necessary safety precautions.

The following testing steps must be performed:

STO test	Action, activity	Expected reaction and effect
1	24V DC voltage on terminal X14.1 and X14.3	
2	Switch on power and 24V supply voltage	No error must be present
3	Configuring the device	No error must be present
4	Testing active STO on terminal X14.1 and X14.3: Remove 24V DC on terminal X14.1 and X14.3 at the same time	Error message 0x5492 must be present 1)
5	Re-apply 24V DC voltage on terminals X14.1 and X14.3 and then acknowledge error	No error must be present
6	Then switch off and on again 24V voltage supply	No error must be present

1) In order to automize the test, it is sufficient here to monitor the general error output with an external logic.
A manual check of the torqueless drive is here also sufficient.
The triggering of the STO can also be made by actuating the emergency power-off switch. During the automated test, the STO can also be triggered via the contacts of an external relay

Following the test steps

The performance of the individual test steps of the STO function must be logged. A protocol specimen can be found in the following section.
Depending on the machine version, additional or other test steps may be required.

3.11.4.1 STO test protocol specimen

General information:

Project/machine: ______________________________

Servo axis: ______________________________

Name of the tester: ______________________________

STO function test:

Test specifiction according to the Compax3 release: ______________________________

STO function test steps 1-6:	o successfully tested
Acknowledgement safety switching device:	o successfully tested o is not used
Safe stop 1:	o successfully tested o is not used

Initial acceptance on:	Repeat check on:
______________________	______________________
______________________	______________________
Signature of the tester	Signature of the tester

4. Setting up Compax3

In this chapter you can read about:

4.1 Configuration

In this chapter you can read about:

The general proceeding in order to operate an empty-running motor is described **here** (see page 101).

Configuration sequence:

Installation of the C3 ServoManager

The Compax3 ServoManager can be installed directly from the Compax3 DVD. Click on the appropriate hyperlink or start the installation program "C3Mgr_Setup_V.... .exe" and follow the instructions.

PC requirements

Recommendation:

Operating system:	MS Windows XP SP2 / MS Windows 2000 as from SP4 / (MS Vista)
Browser:	MS Internet Explorer 6.x
Processor:	Intel Pentium 4 / Intel Core 2 Duo / AMD Athlon class as from >=2GHz
RAM memory:	>= 1024MB
Hard disk:	>= 20GB available memory
Drive:	DVD drive
Monitor:	Resolution 1024x768 or higher
Graphics card:	on onboard graphics (for performance reasons)
Interface:	USB

Minimum requirements:

Operating system:	MS Windows XP SP2 / MS Windows 2000 as from SP4
Browser:	MS Internet Explorer 6.x
Processor:	>= 1.5GHz
RAM memory:	512MB
Hard disk:	10GB available memory
Drive:	DVD drive
Monitor:	Resolution 1024x768 or higher
Graphics card:	on onboard graphics (for performance reasons)
Interface:	USB

Note:

- For the installation of the software you need administrator authorization on the target computer.
- Several applications running parallelly, reduce the performance and operability.
- especially customer applications, exchanging standard system components (drivers) in order to improve their own performance, may have a strong influence on the communication performance or even render normal use impossible.
- Operation under virtual machines such as Vware Workstation 6/ MS Virtual PC is not possible.
- Onboard graphics card solutions reduce the system performance by up to 20% and cannot be recommended.
- Operation with notebooks in current-saving mode may lead, in individual cases, to communication problems.

Connection between PC - Compax3

Your PC is connected with Compax3 via a RS232 cable (**SSK1** (see page 369)).
Cable **SSK1** (see page 369) (COM 1/2-interface on the PC to X10 on the Compax3 or via adapter SSK32/20 on programming interface of Compax3H).
Start the Compax3 servo manager and make the setting for the selected interface in the menu"**Options Communication settings RS232/RS485...**".

Device Selection

In the menu tree under device selection you can read the device type of the connected device (Online Device Identification) or select a device type (Device Selection Wizard).

Configuration

Then you can double click on "Configuration" to start the configuration wizard. The wizard will lead you through all input windows of the configuration.

Input quantities will be described in the following chapters, in the same order in which you are queried about them by the configuration wizard.

4.1.1. Test commissioning of a Compax3 axis

In the device online help, we show you at this place an animation of a test setup with the aim to move an unloaded motor.

- Simple and independent of the Compax3 device variant*
- Without overhead for configuration
- Without special knowledge in programming

* for device specific functions, please refer to the corresponding device description.

Due to continuous optimization, individual monitor displays may have changed. This does however hardly influence the general proceeding.

4.1.2. Selection of the supply voltage used

Please select the mains voltage for the operation of Compax3.
This influences the choice of motors available.

4.1.3. Motor Selection

The selection of motors can be broken down into:

- Motors that were purchased in Europe and
- Motors that were purchased in the USA.
- You will find non-standard motors under "Additional motors" and
- Under "User-defined motors" you can select motors set up with the C3 MotorManager.

For motors with holding brake SMH**A** or MH**A** brake delay times can be entered.
For this see also **Brake delay times** (see page 289).

Please note the following equivalence that applies regarding terms to linear motors**:**

- **Rotary motors / linear motors**
- **Rotations ≡ Pitch**
- **rotational speed ≡ speed**
- **torque ≡ force**
- **moment of inertia ≡ load**

Notes on direct drives **(see page 333) (Linear and Torque – Motors)**

4.1.4. Optimize motor reference point and switching frequency of the motor current

Optimization of the motor reference point

The motor reference point is defined by the reference current and the reference (rotational) speed.
Standard settings are:

- Reference current = nominal current
- Reference (rotational) speed = nominal (rotational) speed

These settings are suitable for most cases.

The motors can, however, be operated with different reference points for special applications.

- By reducing the reference (rotational) speed, the reference current can be increased. This results in more torque with a reduced speed.
- For applications where the reference current is only required cyclically with long enough breaks in between,you may use a reference current higher than I_0. The limit value is however reference current = max. 1.33*I_0. The reference (rotational) speed must also be reduced.

The possible settings or limits result from the respective motor characteristics.

Caution!
Wrong reference values (too high) can cause the motor to switch off during operation (because of too high temperature) or even cause damage to the motor.

Optimization of the switching frequency

The switching frequency of the power output stage is preset to optimize the operation of most motors.
It may, however, be useful to increase the switching frequency especially with direct drives in order to reduce the noise of the motors. Please note that the power output stage must be operated with reduced nominal currents in the case of increased switching frequencies.
The switching frequency may only be increased.

Caution!
By increasing the motor current switching frequency, the nominal current and the peak current are reduced.
This must already be observed in the planning stage of the plant!

The preset motor current switching frequency depends on the performance variant of the Compax3 device.
The respective Compax3 devices can be set as follows:

Resulting nominal and peak currents depending on the switching frequency

Compax3S0xxV2 at 1*230VAC/240VAC

Switching frequency*		S025V2	S063V2
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**2.5A_{eff}**	**6.3A_{eff}**
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**5.5A_{eff}**	**12.6A_{eff}**
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	2.5A_{eff}	5.5A_{eff}
	I_{peak} (<5s)	5.5A_{eff}	12.6A_{eff}

Compax3S1xxV2 at 3*230VAC/240VAC

Switching frequency*		S100V2	S150V2
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**-**	**15A_{eff}**
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**-**	**30A_{eff}**
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**10A_{eff}**	12.5A_{eff}
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**20A_{eff}**	25A_{eff}
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	8A_{eff}	10A_{eff}
	I_{peak} (<5s)	16A_{eff}	20A_{eff}

Compax3S0xxV4 at 3*400VAC

Switching frequency*		S015V4	S038V4	S075V4	S150V4	S300V4
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	-	-	-	**15A_{eff}**	**30A_{eff}**
	I_{peak} (<5s)	-	-	-	**30A_{eff}**	**60A_{eff}**
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**1.5A_{eff}**	**3.8A_{eff}**	**7.5A_{eff}**	10.0A_{eff}	26A_{eff}
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**4.5A_{eff}**	**9.0A_{eff}**	**15.0A_{eff}**	20.0A_{eff}	52A_{eff}
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	1.5A_{eff}	2.5A_{eff}	3.7A_{eff}	5.0A_{eff}	14A_{eff}
	I_{peak} (<5s)	3.0A_{eff}	5.0A_{eff}	10.0A_{eff}	10.0A_{eff}	28A_{eff}

Compax3S0xxV4 at 3*480VAC

Switching frequency*		S015V4	S038V4	S075V4	S150V4	S300V4
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	-	-	-	**13.9A_{eff}**	**30A_{eff}**
	I_{peak} (<5s)	-	-	-	**30A_{eff}**	**60A_{eff}**
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**1.5A_{eff}**	**3.8A_{eff}**	**6.5A_{eff}**	8.0A_{eff}	21.5A_{eff}
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**4.5A_{eff}**	**7.5A_{eff}**	**15.0A_{eff}**	16.0A_{eff}	43A_{eff}
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	1.0A_{eff}	2.0A_{eff}	2.7A_{eff}	3.5A_{eff}	10A_{eff}
	I_{peak} (<5s)	2.0A_{eff}	4.0A_{eff}	8.0A_{eff}	7.0A_{eff}	20A_{eff}

The values marked with grey are the pre-set values (standard values)!
*corresponds to the frequency of the motor current

Resulting nominal and peak currents depending on the switching frequency

Compax3HxxxV4 at 3*400VAC

Switching frequency*		H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$50A_{eff}$	$90A_{eff}$	$125A_{eff}$	$155A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$75A_{eff}$	$135A_{eff}$	$187.5A_{eff}$	$232.5A_{eff}$
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$33A_{eff}$	$75A_{eff}$	$82A_{eff}$	$100A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$49.5A_{eff}$	$112.5A_{eff}$	$123A_{eff}$	$150A_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$19A_{eff}$	$45A_{eff}$	$49A_{eff}$	$59A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$28.5A_{eff}$	$67.5A_{eff}$	$73.5A_{eff}$	$88.5A_{eff}$

Compax3HxxxV4 at 3*480VAC

Switching frequency*		H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$43A_{eff}$	$85A_{eff}$	$110A_{eff}$	$132A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$64.5A_{eff}$	$127.5A_{eff}$	$165A_{eff}$	$198A_{eff}$
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$27A_{eff}$	$70A_{eff}$	$70A_{eff}$	$84A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$40.5A_{eff}$	$105A_{eff}$	$105A_{eff}$	$126A_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$16A_{eff}$	$40A_{eff}$	$40A_{eff}$	$48A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$24A_{eff}$	$60A_{eff}$	$60A_{eff}$	$72A_{eff}$

The values marked with grey are the pre-set values (standard values)!
*corresponds to the frequency of the motor current

Resulting nominal and peak currents depending on the switching frequency

Compax3MxxxD6 at 3*400VAC

Switching frequency*		M050D6	M100D6	M150D6	M300D6
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$5A_{eff}$	$10A_{eff}$	$15A_{eff}$	$30A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$10A_{eff}$	$20A_{eff}$	$30A_{eff}$	$60A_{eff}$
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$3.8A_{eff}$	$7.5A_{eff}$	$10A_{eff}$	$20A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$7.5A_{eff}$	$15A_{eff}$	$20A_{eff}$	$40A_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$2.5A_{eff}$	$3.8A_{eff}$	$5A_{eff}$	$11A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$5A_{eff}$	$7.5A_{eff}$	$10A_{eff}$	$22A_{eff}$

Compax3MxxxD6 at 3*480VAC

Switching fre-quency*		M050D6	M100D6	M150D6	M300D6
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$4A_{eff}$	$8A_{eff}$	$12.5A_{eff}$	$25A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$8A_{eff}$	$16A_{eff}$	$25A_{eff}$	$50A_{eff}$
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$3A_{eff}$	$5.5A_{eff}$	$8A_{eff}$	$15A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$6A_{eff}$	$11A_{eff}$	$16A_{eff}$	$30A_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$2A_{eff}$	$2.5A_{eff}$	$4A_{eff}$	$8.5A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$4A_{eff}$	$5A_{eff}$	$8A_{eff}$	$17A_{eff}$

The values marked with grey are the pre-set values (standard values)!
*corresponds to the frequency of the motor current

4.1.5. Braking Resistor

If the regenerative brake output exceeds the amount **storable energy of the servo controller** (see page 386), an error will be generated. To ensure safe operation, it is then necessary to either

- reduce the accelerations resp. the decelerations,
- or you will need an **external braking resistor** (see page 350) .

Please select the connected braking resistor or enter the characteristic values of your braking resistor directly.

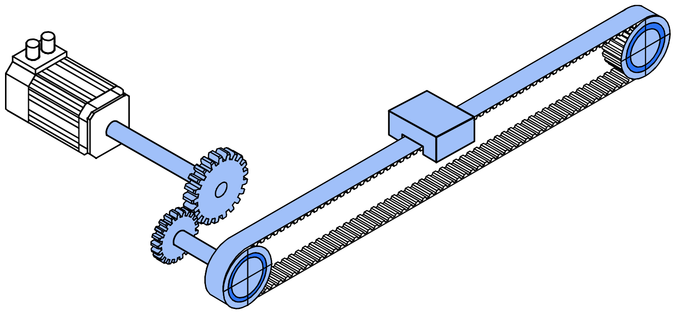
Please note that with resistance values greater than specified, the power output from the servo drive can no longer be dissipated in the braking resistor.

4.1.6. General Drive

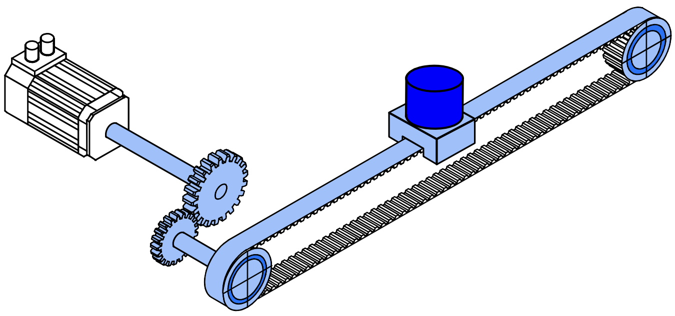
External moment of inertia / load

The external moment of inertia is required for adjusting the servo controller. The more accurately the moment of inertia of the system is known, the better is the stability and the shorter is the settle-down time of the control loop.
It is important to specify the minimum and maximum moment of inertia for best possible behavior under varying load.
If you do not know the moment of inertia, klick on "Unknown: using default values". You have then the possibility to determine the moment of inertia by means of automatic **load identification** (see page 247).

Minimum moment of inertia / minimum load



Maximum moment of inertia / maximum load



Enter minimum = maximum moment of inertia when the load does not vary.

4.1.7. Defining the reference system

The reference system for positioning is defined by:
- a unit,
- the travel distance per motor revolution,
- a machine zero point with true zero,
- positive and negative end limits.

4.1.7.1 Measure reference

In this chapter you can read about:

Unit of Travel

You can select from among the following for the unit:
- mm,
- icrements *
- angle degrees or
- Inch.

The unit of measure is always [mm] for linear motors.

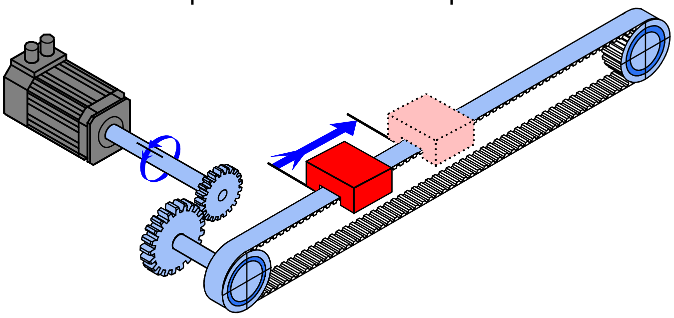
*

The unit "increments" is valid only for position values!

speed, acceleration and jerk are specified in this case in revolutions/s, revolutions/s^2 and revolutions/s^3 (resp. pitch/s, pitch/s^2, pitch/s^3).

Travel distance per motor revolution / pitch

The measure reference to the motor is created with the value:
"travel distance per motor revolution / pitch" in the selected unit.

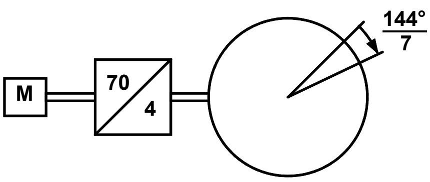


Input as numerator and denominator

You can enter the "travel distance per motor revolution" as a fraction (numerator divided by denominator). This is useful in the case of continuous operation mode or in reset mode if the value cannot be specified as a rational number. This makes it possible to avoid long-term drifts.

Example 1:

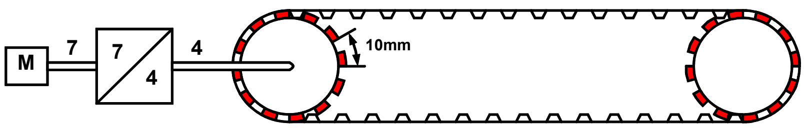
Rotary table control



Unit: Degrees
Gear transmission ratio 70:4 => 4 load revolutions = 70 motor revolutions
Travel distance per motor revolution = 4/70 * 360° = 20.571 428 5 ...° (number cannot be represented exactly)
Instead of this number, you have the option of entering it exactly as a numerator and denominator:
Travel distance per motor revolution = 144/7
This will not result in any drift in continuous operation mode or in reset mode, even with relatively long motion in one direction.

Example 2:

Conveyor belt



Unit: mm
Gear transmission ratio 7:4 => 4 load revolutions = 7 motor revolutions
Number of pinions: 12
Tooth separation: 10mm
Travel path per motor revolution = 4/7 * 12 * 10mm = 68.571 428 5 ... mm (this number cannot be expressed exactly)
Instead of this number, you have the option of entering it exactly as a numerator and denominator:
Travel distance per motor revolution = 480/7 mm
For "travel distance per motor revolution" that can be represented exactly, enter 1 as the denominator.

Travel distance per motor revolution / pitch

Numerator

Unit: Unit of Travel	Range: depending on the chosen unit	Standard value: depending on the chosen unit
Resolution: 0.000 000 1 (7 decimal places)		
Unit of Travel	**Division**	**Standard value**
Increments*	10 ... 1 000 000	1024
mm	0,010 000 0 ... 2000,000 000 0	1,000 000 0
Degrees	0,010 000 0 ... 720,000 000 0	360,000 000 0
Inch	0,010 000 ... 2000,000 000	1,000 000

Denominator

Unit: -	Range: 1 ... 1 000 000	Standard value: 1
Integer value		

*

The unit "increments" is valid only for position values!

speed, acceleration and jerk are specified in this case in revolutions/s, revolutions/s^2 and revolutions/s^3 (resp. pitch/s, pitch/s^2, pitch/s^3).

Invert Motor Rotation/Direction Polarity

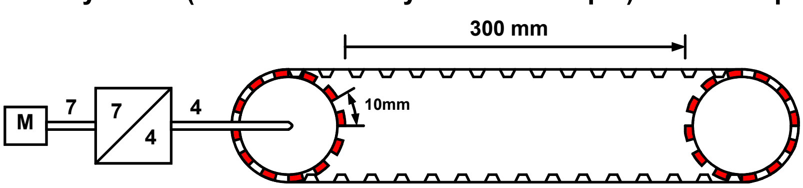
Unit: -	Range: no/yes	Standard value: no
Reverse direction inverts the sense of rotation, i.e. the direction of movement of the motor is reversed in the case of equal setpoint.		

Reset mode

Reset mode is available for applications in which the positioning range repeats; some examples are: Rotary table applications, belt conveyor, ...
After the reset travel distance (can be specified exactly as **numerator and denominator** (see page 107))) the position values in Compax3 are reset to 0.

Example:

Conveyor belt (from the "Conveyor belt" example) with reset path



A reset path of 300 mm can be entered directly with numerator = 300 mm and denominator = 1.
Reset mode is not possible for linear motors.

Reset distance

Numerator

Unit: Unit of Travel	Range: depending on the chosen unit	Standard value: depending on the chosen unit
Unit of Travel	**Division**	**Standard value**
Increments	10 ... 1 000 000	0
mm	1 ... 2000	0
Degrees	1 ... 720	0

Denominator

Unit: -	Range: 1 ... 1 000 000	Standard value: 0
Integer value		

Turn off reset mode

Reset mode is turned off for numerator = 0 and denominator = 0.

4.1.7.2 Machine Zero

In this chapter you can read about:

The Compax3 machine zero modes are adapted to the CANopen profile for Motion Control CiADS402.

Position reference point

Essentially, you can select between operation with or without machine reference. The reference point for positioning is determined by using the machine reference and the machine reference offset.

Machine reference run

In a homing run the drive normally moves to the position value 0 immediately after finding the home switch. The position value 0 is defined via the homing offset.

A machine reference run is required each time after turning on the system for operation with machine reference.

Please note:

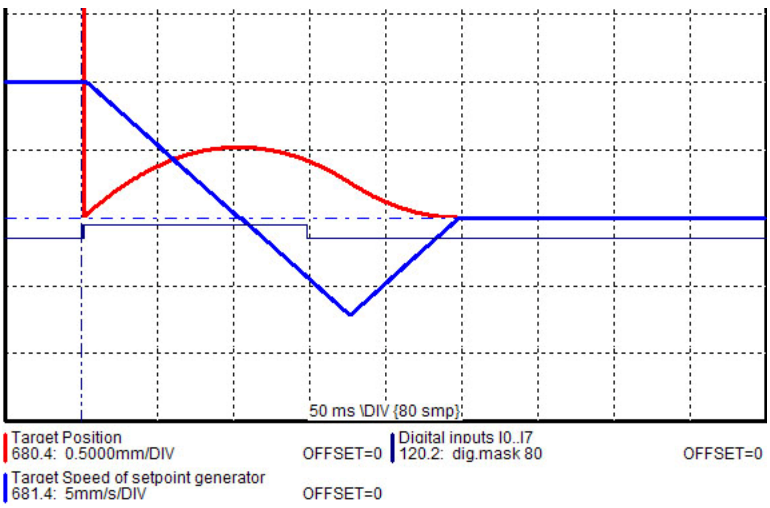
During homing run the software end limits are not monitored.

Positioning after homing run

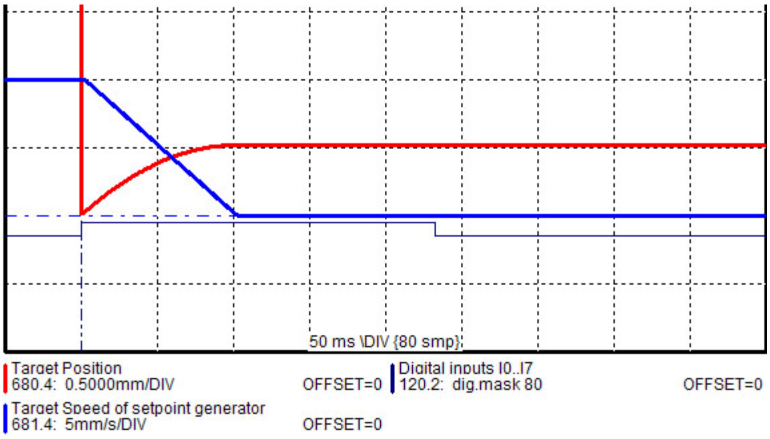
The positioning made after the home switch has been found can be switched off. For this enter in the "machine zero" window in the configuration wizard "no" under "approach MN point after MN run".

Example Homing mode 20 (Home on homing switch) with T40 by homing offset 0

With positioning after homing run The motor stands then on 0:



Without positioning after homing run The position reached is not exactly on 0, as the drive brakes when detecting the home and stops:



If the homing mode is active, there will always be a **homing run** (see page 146) with the first start after each configuration download (with the aid of the C3 Servo-Manager).

Absolute encoder

Using a SinCos© or EnDat Multiturn absolute value sensor as feedback system, the absolute position can be read in over the entire travel range when switching on the Compax3. This means that a machine zero run is not necessary after the switchig on (feedback may not be shifted by the absolute range while switched off).
In this case the reference only needs to be established once

- at initial commissioning time
- after an exchange of motor / feedback system
- after a mechanical modification and
- after an exchange of device (Compax3); does not apply for the "Store absolute position in feedback" function.
- after a configuration download

by carrying out a machine zero run.
The homing mode 35 "**MN at the current position** (see page 122)" is appropriate for this, because it is therewith possible to operate without proximity switch, but any other homing mode is possible too - if the hardware prerequisites are fulfilled.
When you have once re-established the reference, reset the homing mode to "without homing run".

Operation with MultiTurn emulation

You can simulate the function of a Multiturn over the entire travel distance by the aid of a Multiturn emulation. A resolver or a SinCos© / EnDat Singleturn feedback is sufficient as a feedback signal from the motor.
It differs from the physical Multiturn in the way that the motor may not be moved by more than half a turn if Compax3 (24VDC) is switched off – unless the absolute position is lost.
Besides that, the Multiturn emulation offers the same function as the physical Multiturn feedback.
You can switch on the Multiturn emulation directly in the wizard.
You can assign the maximum permissible motor angle via the Multiturn validity window
If Compax3 states after switching on that this value is not exceeded, then the"Referenced" is set status word Bit 12 or output M.O8).
Compax3 restores nevertheless the absolute position, the motor angle is correct, the absolute position is however not correct, if the motor was moved by more than the validity window while currentless.

Machine reference run

For a unique machine zero run the same conditions apply as for the use of an absolute encoder (Multiturn).

Machine zero modes overview

Selection of the machine zero modes (MN-M)

Machine home switch on X12/14: **MN-M 3 ... 14, 19 ... 30**	Without motor reference point MN-M 19 ...30	without direction reversal switches: **MN-M 19, 20** (see page 115), **MN-M 21, 22** (see page 116)
		with reversal switches: **MN-M 23, 24, 25, 26** (see page 117), **MN-M 27, 28, 29, 30** (see page 118)
	With motor reference point MN-M 3 ... 14	without direction reversal switches: **MN-M 3, 4** (see page 119), **MN-M 5, 6** (see page 120)
		with reversal switches: **MN-M 7, 8, 9, 10** (see page 121), **MN-M 11,12,13, 14** (see page 121)
Without machine zero initiator on X12/14: **MN-M 1, 2, 17, 18, 33 .. 35, 128, 129, 130 ... 133**	Without motor reference point MN-M 17, 18, 35, 128, 129	**MN-M 35: at the current Position** (see page 122) **MN-M 128, 129: while moving to block** (see page 122)
		With limit switch as machine zero: **MN-M 17, 18** (see page 123)
	With motor reference point	Only motor reference: **MN-M 33, 34** (see page 124), **MN-M 130, 131** (see page 124)
	MN-M 1, 2, 33, 34, 130 ... 133	With limit switch as machine zero: **MN-M 1, 2** (see page 125), **MN-M 132, 133** (see page 126)

Definition of terms / explanations:

Motor zero point

Zero pulse of the feedback

Motor feedback systems such as resolvers or SinCos© / EnDat give one pulse per revolution.

Some motor feedback systems of direct drives do also have a zero pulse, which is generated once or in defined intervals.

By interpreting the motor zero point (generally in connection with the machine zero initiator) the machine zero can be defined more exactly.

Machine zero initiator:

For creating the mechanical reference

Has a defined position within or on the edge of the travel range.

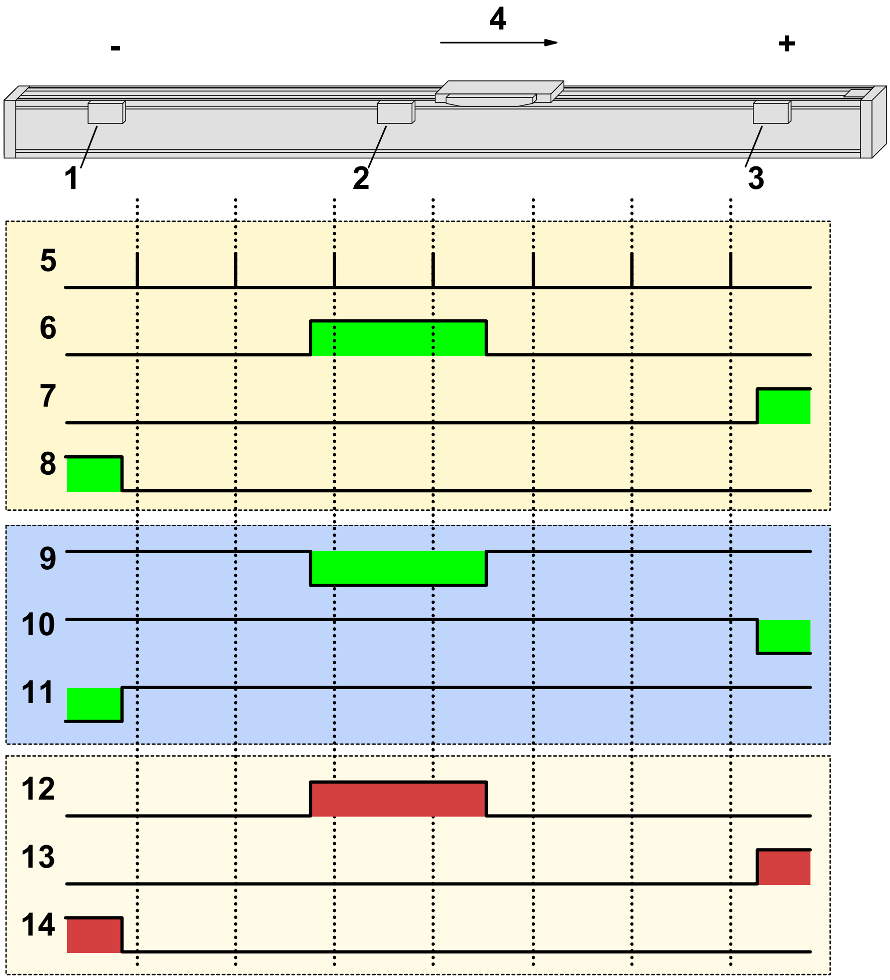
Direction reversal switches:

Initiators on the edge of the travel range, which are used only with a machine zero run in order to detect the end of the travel range.

In some cases, the function " direction reversal via Current threshold" is also possible, then you will need no initiator, Compax3 detects the end of the travel range via the threshold. Please observe the respective notes.

During operation, the direction reversal switches are often used as limit switches.

Example axis with the initiator signals



1: Direction reversal / end switch on the negative end of the travel range (the **assignment of the reversal / end switch inputs** (see page 131) to travel range side can be changed).

2: Machine zero initiator (can, in this example, be released to 2 sides)

3: Direction reversal / end switch on the positive end of the travel range (the **assignment of the reversal / end switch inputs** (see page 131) to travel range side can be changed).

4: Positive direction of movement

5: Signals of the motor zero point (zero pulse of the motor feedback)

6: Signal of the machine zero initiator (**without inversion of the initiator logic** (see page 131)).

7: Signal of the direction reversal resp. end switch on the positive end of the travel range (without inversion of the initiator logic).

8: Signal of the direction reversal / resp. end switch on the negative end of the travel range (without inversion of the initiator logic).

9: Signal of the machine zero initiator (**with inversion of the initiator logic** (see page 131)).

10: Signal of the direction reversal / resp. end switch on the positive end of the travel range (with inversion of the initiator logic).

11: Signal of the direction reversal / resp. end switch on the negative end of the travel range (with inversion of the initiator logic).

12: Logic state of the home switch (independent of the inversion)

13: Logic state of the direction reversal resp. end switch on the positive end of the travel range (independent of the inversion)

14: Logic state of the direction reversal resp. end switch on the negative end of the travel range (independent of the inversion)

The following principle images of the individual machine zero modes always refer to the logic state (12, 13, 14) of the switches.

Homing modes with home switch (on X12/14)

In this chapter you can read about:

Without motor reference point

In this chapter you can read about:

Without direction reversal switches

In this chapter you can read about:

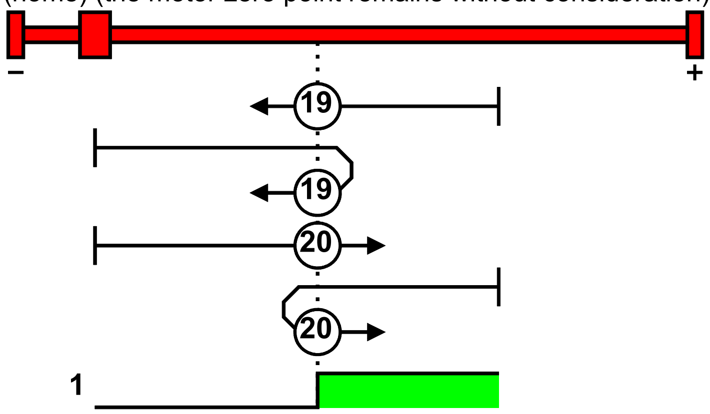
In this chapter you can read about:

MN-M 19.20: MN-Initiator = 1 on the positive side

The MN initiator can be positioned at any location within the travel range. The travel range is then divided into 2 contiguous ranges: one range with deactivated MN initiator (left of the MN initiator) and one range with activated MN initiator (right of the MN initiator).
When the MN initiator is inactive (signal = 0) the search for the machine reference is in the positive travel direction.

Without motor zero point, without direction reversal switches

MN-M 19: The negative edge of the MN proximity switch is used directly as MN (home) (the motor zero point remains without consideration).
MN-M 20: The positive edge of the MN proximity switch is used directly as MN (home) (the motor zero point remains without consideration).



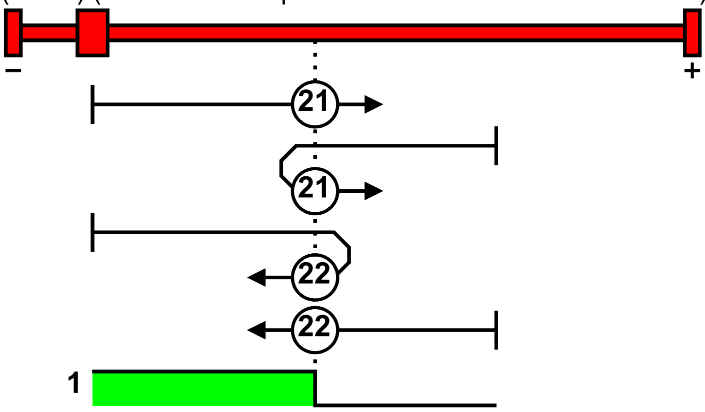
1: logic state

MN-M 21.22: MN initiator = 1 on the negative side

The MN initiator can be positioned at any location within the travel range. The travel range is then divided into 2 contiguous ranges: one range with deactivated MN initiator (positive part of the travel range) and one range with activated MN initiator (negative part of the travel range).
When the MN initiator is inactive (signal = 0) the search for the machine reference is in the negative travel direction.

Without motor zero point, without direction reversal switches

MN-M 21: The negative edge of the MN proximity switch is used directly as MN (home) (the motor zero point remains without consideration).
MN-M 22: The positive edge of the MN proximity switch is used directly as MN (home) (the motor zero point remains without consideration).



1: logic state

With direction reversal switches

Machine zero modes with a home switch which is activated in the middle of the travel range and can be deactivated to both sides.
The **assignment of the direction reversal switches** (see page 131) can be changed.

Function Reversal via Current threshold

If no direction reversal switches are available, the reversal of direction can also be performed during the machine zero run via the function ”direction reversal via Current threshold"
Here the drive runs towards the mechanical limit mounted at the end of the travel range.
When the settable Current threshold is reached, the drive is braked and changes the travel direction.

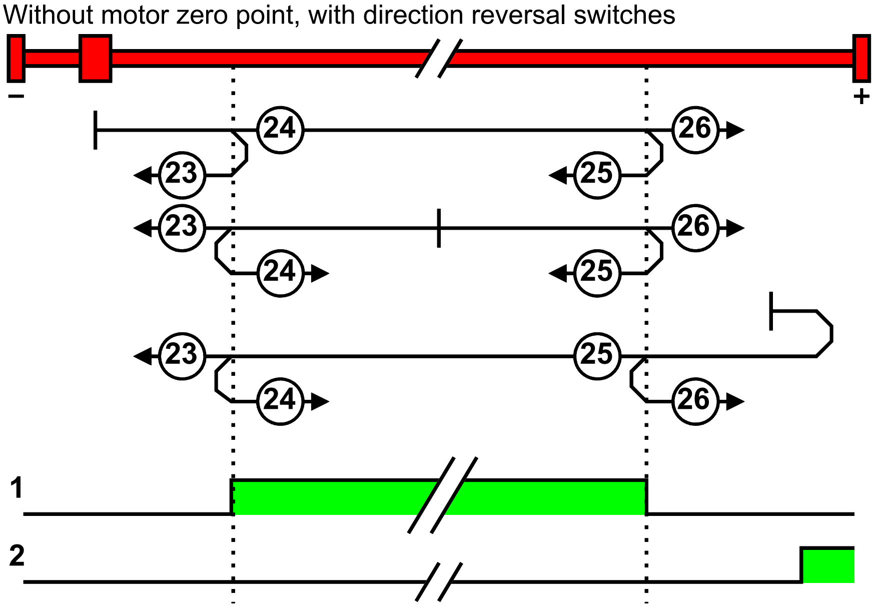
⚠	**Caution!** Wrong settings can cause hazard for man and machine.

It is therefore essential to respect the following:

- Choose a low machine zero speed.
- Set the machine zero acceleration to a high value, so that the drive changes direction quickly, the value must, however, not be so high that the limit threshold is already reached by accelerating or decelerating (without mechanical limitation).
- The mechanical limitation as well as the load drain must be set so that they can absorb the resulting kinetic energy.

MN-M 23...26: Direction reversal switches on the positive side

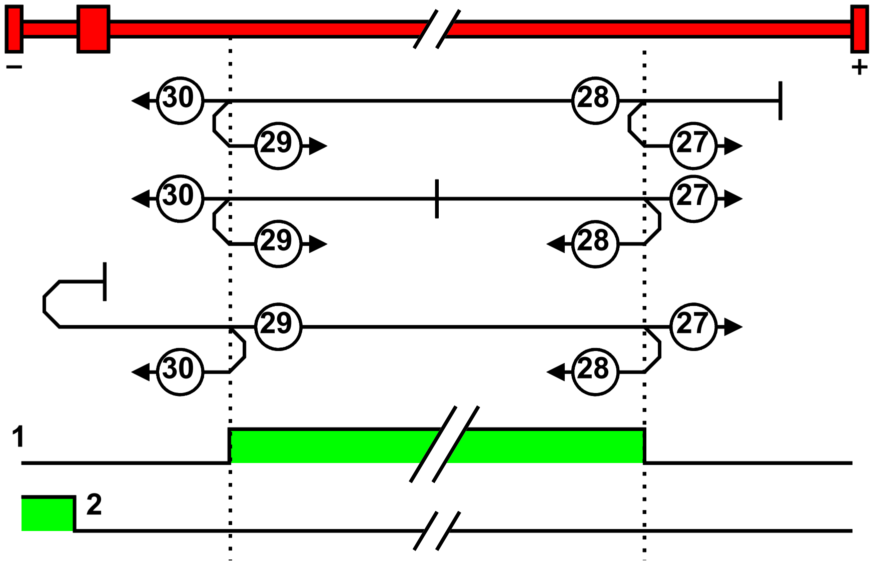
Without motor zero point, with direction reversal switches



1: Logic state of the home switch
2: Logic state of the direction reversal switch

MN-M 27...30: With direction reversal switches on the negative side

Without motor zero point, with direction reversal switches



1: Logic state of the home switch
2: Logic state of the direction reversal switch

With motor reference point

In this chapter you can read about:

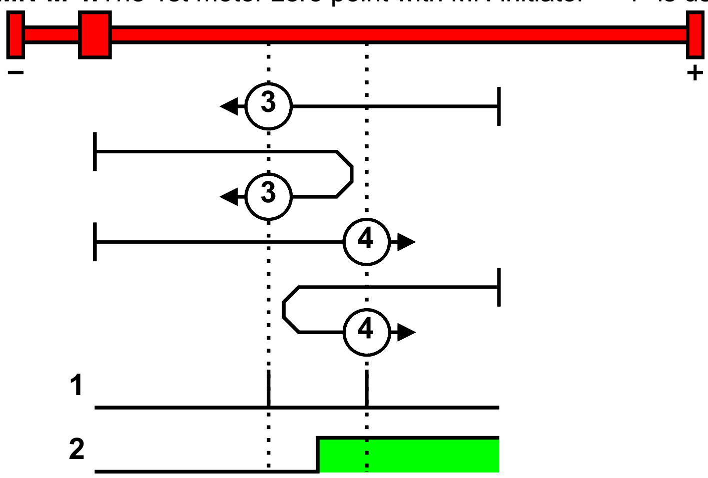
Without direction reversal switches

MN-M 3.4: MN-Initiator = 1 on the positive side

The MN initiator can be positioned at any location within the travel range. The travel range is then divided into 2 contiguous ranges: one range with deactivated MN initiator (left of the MN initiator) and one range with activated MN initiator (right of the MN initiator).
When the MN initiator is inactive (signal = 0) the search for the machine reference is in the positive travel direction.

With motor zero point, without direction reversal switches

MN-M 3: The 1st motor zero point with MN initiator = "1" is used as MN.
MN-M 4: The 1st motor zero point with MN initiator = "1" is used as MN.



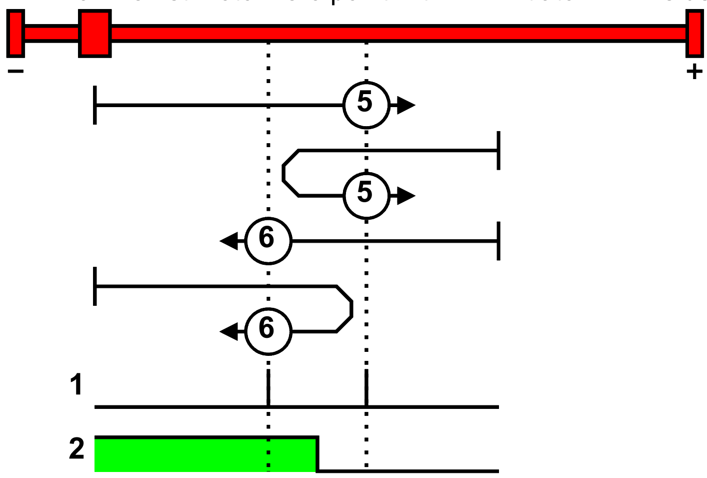
1: Motor zero point
2: Logic state of the home switch

MN-M 5.6: MN initiator = 1 on the negative side

The MN initiator can be positioned at any location within the travel range. The travel range is then divided into 2 contiguous ranges: one range with deactivated MN initiator (positive part of the travel range) and one range with activated MN initiator (negative part of the travel range).
When the MN initiator is inactive (signal = 0) the search for the machine reference is in the negative travel direction.

With motor zero point, without direction reversal switches

MN-M 5: The 1st motor zero point with MN proximity switch = "0" is used as MN.
MN-M 6: The 1st motor zero point with MN initiator = "1" is used as MN.



1: Motor zero point
2: Logic state of the home switch

With direction reversal switches

Machine zero modes with a home switch which is activated in the middle of the travel range and can be deactivated to both sides.
The **assignment of the direction reversal switches** (see page 131) can be changed.

Function Reversal via Current threshold

If no direction reversal switches are available, the reversal of direction can also be performed during the machine zero run via the function ”direction reversal via Current threshold"
Here the drive runs towards the mechanical limit mounted at the end of the travel range.
When the settable Current threshold is reached, the drive is braked and changes the travel direction.

⚠	**Caution!** Wrong settings can cause hazard for man and machine.

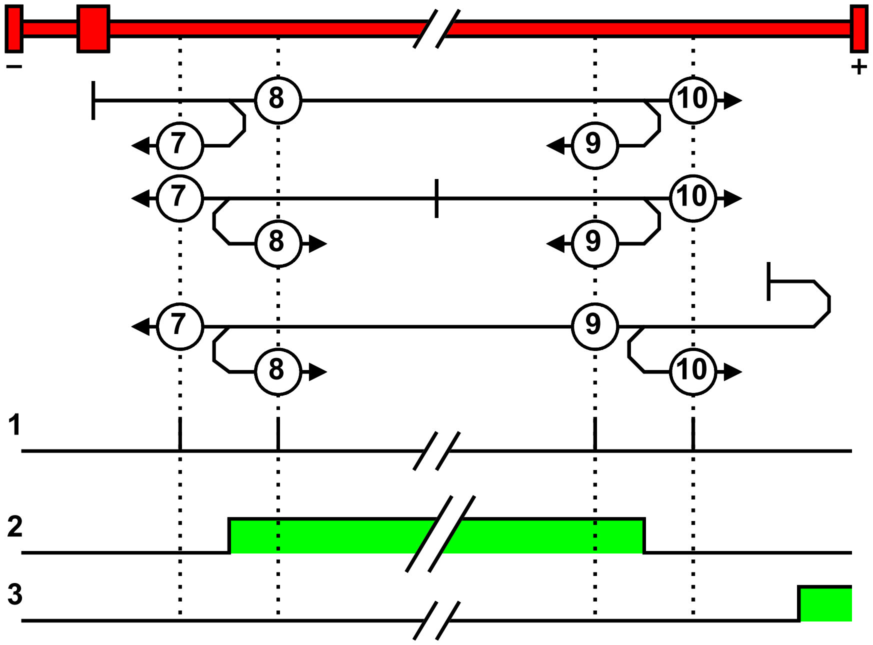
It is therefore essential to respect the following:

- Choose a low machine zero speed.
- Set the machine zero acceleration to a high value, so that the drive changes direction quickly, the value must, however, not be so high that the limit threshold is already reached by accelerating or decelerating (without mechanical limitation).
- The mechanical limitation as well as the load drain must be set so that they can absorb the resulting kinetic energy.

MN-M 7...10: Direction reversal switches on the positive side

With motor zero point, with direction reversal switches

Machine zero modes with a home switch which is activated in the middle of the travel range and can be deactivated to both sides.

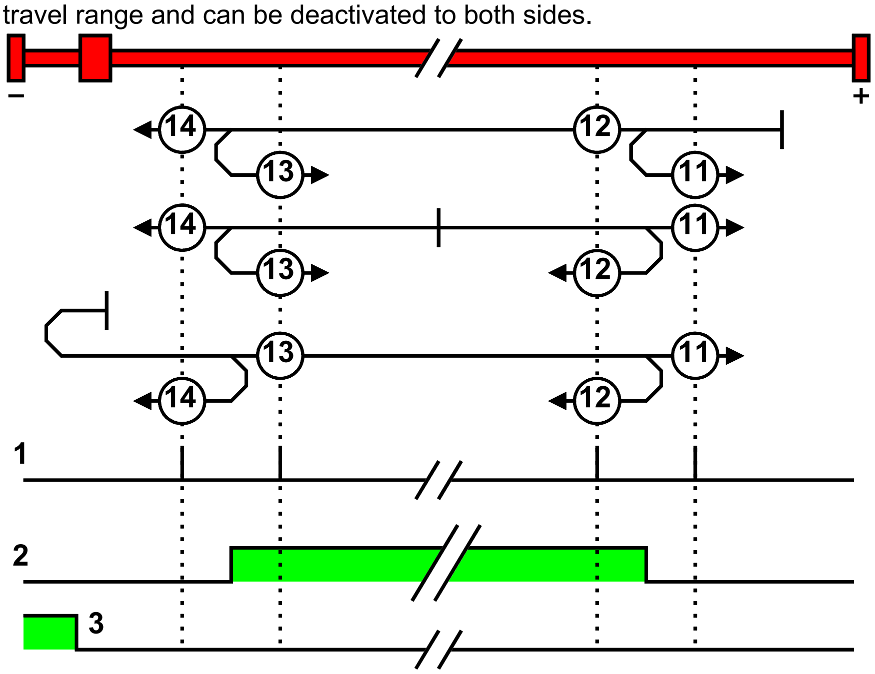


1: Motor zero point
2: Logic state of the home switch
3: Logic state of the direction reversal switch

MN-M 11...14: With direction reversal switches on the negative side

With motor zero point, with direction reversal switches

Machine zero modes with a home switch which is activated in the middle of the travel range and can be deactivated to both sides.



1: Motor zero point
2: Logic state of the home switch
3: Logic state of the direction reversal switch

Machine zero modes without home switch

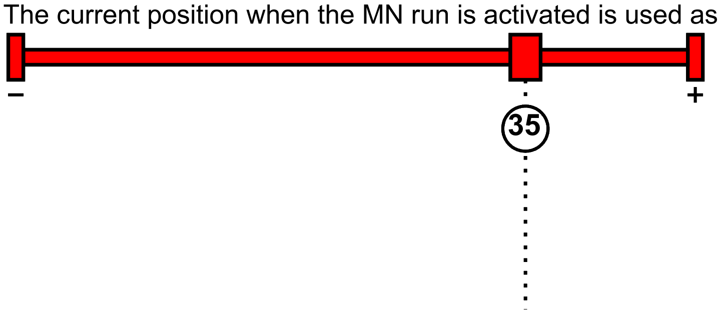
In this chapter you can read about:

Without motor reference point

In this chapter you can read about:

MN-M 35: MN at the current position

The current position when the MN run is activated is used as an MN.



MN-M 128/129: Current threshold when moving to block

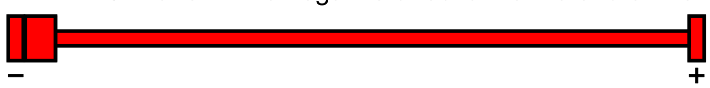
Without a MN (machine zero) initiator, an end of travel region (block) is used as MN (machine zero).
For this the Current threshold is evaluated if the drive pushes against the end of the travel region. If the limit is exceeded, the MN is set. During the homing run (MN), the error reaction "following error" is deactivated.

Please observe:

The homing offset must be set so that the home (reference point) for positioning lies witihn the travel range.

MN-M 128: Travel in the positive direction to the end of the travel region

MN-M 129: Travel in the negative direction to the end of the travel region

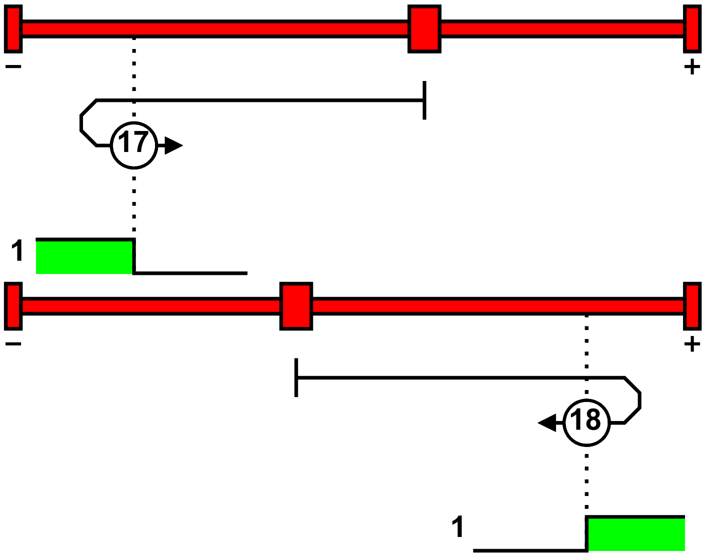


⚠	**Caution!** Wrong settings can cause hazard for man and machine.

It is therefore essential to respect the following:

- Choose a low machine zero speed.
- Set the machine zero acceleration to a high value, so that the drive changes direction quickly, the value must, however, not be so high that the limit threshold is already reached by accelerating or decelerating (without mechanical limitation).
- The mechanical limitation as well as the load drain must be set so that they can absorb the resulting kinetic energy.

MN-M 17.18: Limit switch as machine zero



1: Logic state of the direction reversal switch

Function Reversal via Current threshold

If no direction reversal switches are available, the reversal of direction can also be performed during the machine zero run via the function "direction reversal via Current threshold"
Here the drive runs towards the mechanical limit mounted at the end of the travel range.
When the settable Current threshold is reached, the drive is braked and changes the travel direction.

⚠	**Caution!** Wrong settings can cause hazard for man and machine.

It is therefore essential to respect the following:

- Choose a low machine zero speed.
- Set the machine zero acceleration to a high value, so that the drive changes direction quickly, the value must, however, not be so high that the limit threshold is already reached by accelerating or decelerating (without mechanical limitation).
- The mechanical limitation as well as the load drain must be set so that they can absorb the resulting kinetic energy.

With motor reference point

In this chapter you can read about:

Machine zero only from motor reference

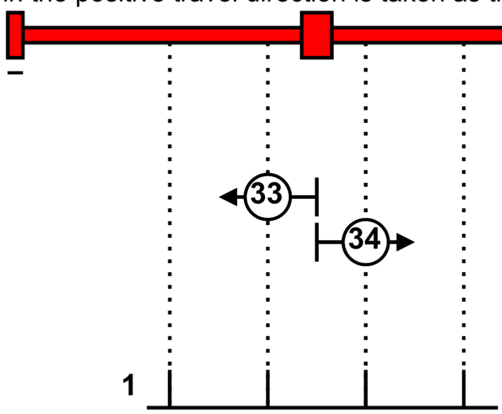
In this chapter you can read about:

MN-M 33,34: MN at motor zero point

The motor reference point is now evaluated (no MN initiator):

Without home switch

MN-M 33: For a MN run, starting from the current position, the next motor zero point in the negative travel direction is taken as the MN.
MN-M 34: For a MN run, starting from the current position, the next motor zero point in the positive travel direction is taken as the MN.



1: Motor zero point

MN-M 130, 131: Determine absolute position via distance coding

Only for motor feedback with distance coding (the absolute position can be determined via the distance value).
Compax3 determines the absolute position from the distance of two signals and then stops the movement (does not automatically move to position 0).

1: Signals of the distance coding

With direction reversal switches

Machine zero modes with a home switch which is activated in the middle of the travel range and can be deactivated to both sides.
The **assignment of the direction reversal switches** (see page 131) can be changed.

Function Reversal via Current threshold

If no direction reversal switches are available, the reversal of direction can also be performed during the machine zero run via the function ”direction reversal via Current threshold"
Here the drive runs towards the mechanical limit mounted at the end of the travel range.
When the settable Current threshold is reached, the drive is braked and changes the travel direction.

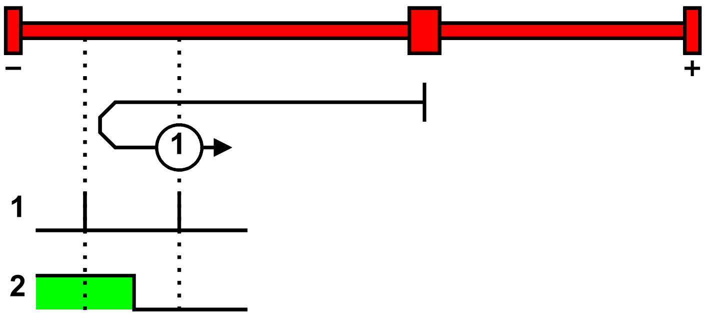
⚠	**Caution!** Wrong settings can cause hazard for man and machine.

It is therefore essential to respect the following:

- Choose a low machine zero speed.
- Set the machine zero acceleration to a high value, so that the drive changes direction quickly, the value must, however, not be so high that the limit threshold is already reached by accelerating or decelerating (without mechanical limitation).
- The mechanical limitation as well as the load drain must be set so that they can absorb the resulting kinetic energy.

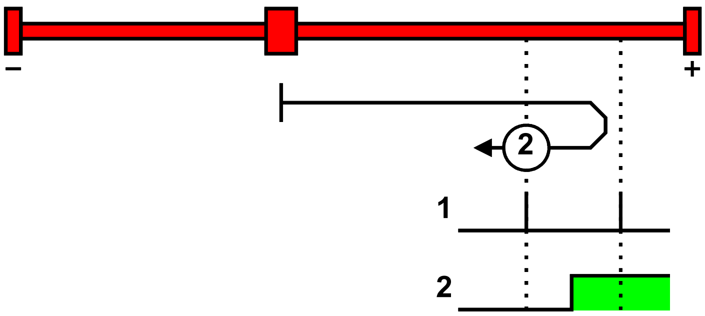
MN-M 1, 2: Limit switch as machine zero

End switch on the negative side



1: Motor zero point
2: Logic state of the direction reversal switch

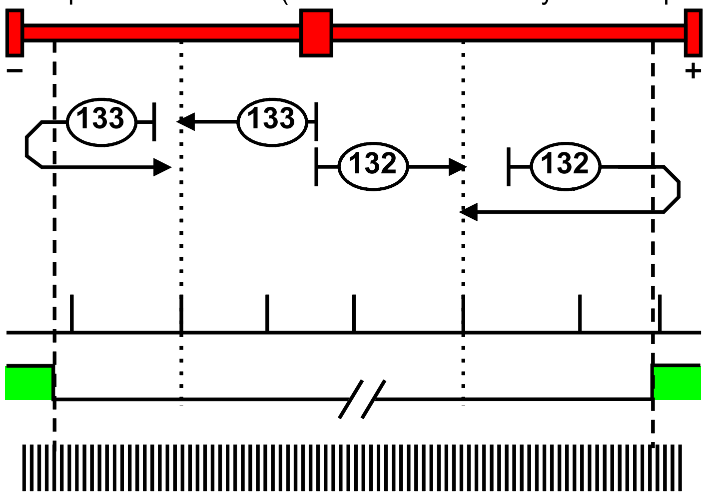
End switch on the positive side:



1: Motor zero point
2: Logic state of the direction reversal switch

MN-M 132, 133: Determine absolute position via distance coding with direction reversal switches

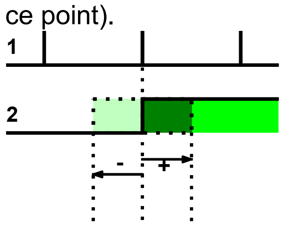
Only for motor feedback with distance coding (the absolute position can be determined via the distance value).
Compax3 determines the absolute position from the distance of two signals and then stops the movement (does not automatically move to position 0).



1: Signals of the distance coding
2: Logic state of the direction reversal switches

Adjusting the machine zero proximity switch

This is helpful in some cases with homing modes that work with the home switch and motor reference point.
If the motor reference point happens to coincide with the position of the MN initiator, there is a possibility that small movements in the motor position will cause the machine reference point to shift by one motor revolution (to the next motor reference point).

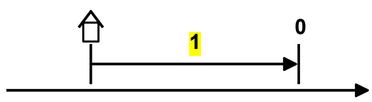


1: Motor zero point
2: Logic state of the home switch
A solution to this problem is to move the MN initiator by means of software. This is done using the value initiator adjustment.

Initiator adjustment

Unit: Motor angle in degrees	Range: -360 ... 360	Standard value: 0
Move the machine reference initiator using software		

Machine reference offset



1: MaschinezeroOffset

The machine reference offset is used to determine the actual reference point for positioning.
That is: Zero point = Machine zero + Machine zero offset
Note: If the machine zero proximity switch is at the positive end of the travel range, the machine zero offset must be = 0 or negative.

A change in the machine reference offset does not take effect until the next machine reference run.

Machine zero speed and acceleration

With these values you can define the motion profile of the machine zero run.

4.1.7.3 Travel Limit Settings

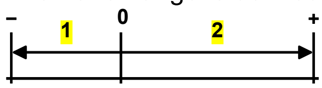
Software end limits

The error reaction when reaching the software end limits can be set:
Possible settings for the error reaction are:
- No response
- downramp / stop
- Downramp / switch to currentless (standard setting)

If "no reaction" was set, no software limits must be entered.

Software end limits:

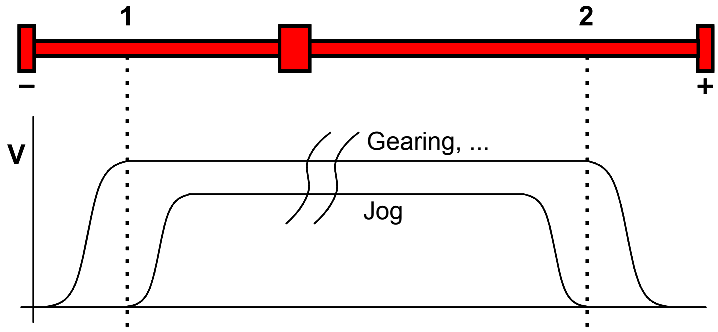
The travel range is defined via the negative and positive end limits.



1: negative end limit
2: positive end limit

Software end limit in absolute operating mode

The positioning is restricted to the range between the travel limits.
A positioning order aiming at a target outside the travel range is not executed.



1: negative end limit
2: positive end limit
The reference is the position reference point that was defined with the machine reference and the machine reference offset.

Software end limits in reset mode

The reset mode does not support software end limits

Software end limit in continuous mode

Each individual positioning is confined within the travel limits.
A positioning order aiming at a target outside the software end limits is not executed.
The reference is the respective current position.

Error when disregarding the software end limits

A software end limit error is triggered, if the position value exceeds an end limit. For this, the position setpoint value is evaluated in energized state; in currentless state, the actual position value is evaluated.

Hysteresis in disabled state:

If the axis stands currentless at an end limit, another error may be reported due to position jitter after acknowledging the end limit error. To avoid this, a hysteresis

surrounding the end limits was integrated (size corresponds to the size of the positioning window).
Only if the distance between axis and the end limits was larger than the positioning window, another end limit error will be detected

Error codes (see page 326) of the end limit errors:
0x7323 Error when disregarding the positive software end limit.
0x7324 Error when disregarding the negative software end limit.

Activating / deactivating the end limit error:

In the C3 ServoManager under configuration: End limits, the error can be (de)activated.
For IEC-programmable devices with the "C3_ErrorMask" module.

Behavior after the system is turned on

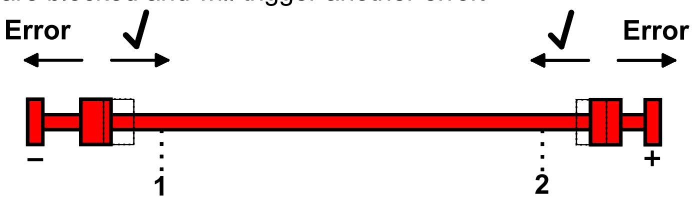
The end limits are not active after switching on. The end limits do not refer to the position reference point until after a machine reference run.
During homing run the end limits are not monitored.
With a Multiturn encoder or with active Multiturn emulation, the limit is valid immediately after switching on.

Behavior outside the travel range

1. If the software end limit errors are deactivated, all movements are possible.

2. if the software end limit errors are activated:

After disregarding the software end limits, an error is triggered. First of all, this error must be acknowledged.
Then a direction block is activated: only motion commands in the direction of the travel range are executed. These will not trigger another error.
Motion commands inciting a movement in the opposite direction of the travel range are blocked and will trigger another error.



1: negative end limit
2: positive end limit

Notes on special feedback systems (Feedback F12)

During automatic commutation, the end limit monitoring is deactivated!

Behavior with software end limits of a referenced axis

	Position within target outside	Position outside target outside and aiming in the opposite direction of the travel range	Position outside target within or aiming in the direction of the travel range

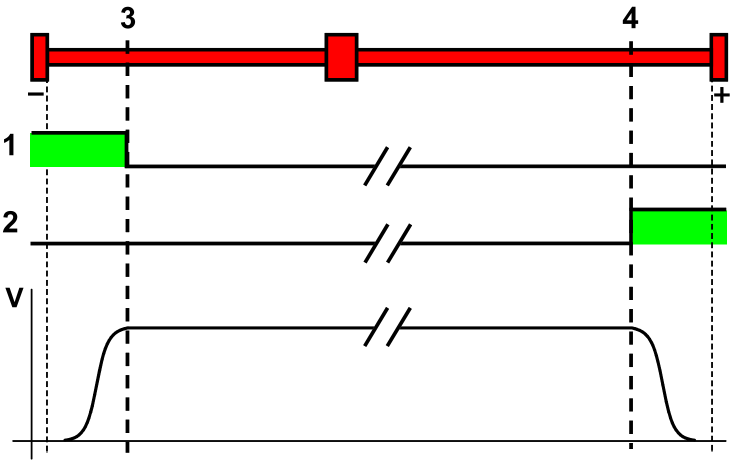
JOG +/-	◆ Positioning up to the end limits ◆ No Error	◆ No positioning ◆ No Error	◆ Positioning
MoveAbs, MoveRel, RegSearch, RegMove	◆ No positioning ◆ Error	◆ No positioning ◆ Error	◆ Positioning
Gearing	◆ Positioning up to the end limits ◆ Error	◆ No positioning ◆ Error	◆ No positioning ◆ Error
Velocity	◆ Positioning up to the end limits ◆ Error	◆ No positioning ◆ Error	◆ Positioning

Hardware end limits

The error reaction when reaching the hardware end limits can be set:
Possible settings for the error reaction are:

- No response
- downramp / stop
- Downramp / switch to currentless (standard setting)

Hardware end limits are realized with the aid of end switches.
These are connected to X12/12 (input 5) and X12/13 (input 6) and can be (de)activated separately in the C3 ServoManager under Configuration: End limits.
After a limit switch has been detected, the drive decelerates with the ramp values set for errors (error code 0x54A0 at X12/12 active, 0x54A1 at X12/13 active) and the motor is switched to currentless.
Please make sure that after the detection of the end switch there is enough travel path left up to the limit stop.



1: Limit switch E5 (X12/12)
2: Limit switch E6 (X12/13)
3: Limit switch position E5 (X12/12)
4: Limit switch position E6 (X12/13)
The **assignment of the end switches** (see page 131) can be changed!

Please note: The limit switches must be positioned so that they cannot be released towards the side to be limited.

Limit switch / direction reversal switch Limit switches functioning as direction reversal switches during homing run, will not trigger a limit switch error.

Behavior in the case of an active limit switch The error can be acknowledged with activated limit switch.
The drive can then be moved out of the end switch range with a normal positioning.
The direction of the movement is verified!
Only the direction towards the travel range is allowed.

Debouncing: Limit switch, machine zero and input 0

A majority gate is used for debouncing.
The signal is sampled every 0.5ms
The debounce time determines the number of scans the majority gate will perform.
If the level of more than half of the signals was changed, the internal status will change.
The debounce time can be set in the configuration wizard within the range of 0 ... 20ms.
The value 0 deactivates the debouncing.

If the debouncing time is stated, the input I0 can be debounced as well (checkbox below).

4.1.7.4 Change assignment direction reversal / limit switches

If this function is not activated, the direction reversal / end switches are assigned as follows:
Direction reversal / limit switch on E5 (X12/12): negative side of the travel range
Direction reversal / limit switch on E6 (X12/13): Direction reversal / limit switch on E6 (X12/13):

Change assignment of direction reversal / limit switch is activated If this function is activated, the direction reversal / limit switches are assigned as follows:
Direction reversal / limit switch on **E5** (X12/12): **positive side** of the travel range
Direction reversal / limit switch on **E6** (X12/13): **negative side** of the travel range

4.1.7.5 Change initiator logic

The initiator logic of the limit switches (this does also apply for the direction reversal switches) and the machine zero initiator can be changed separately.

- Limit switch E5 low active
- Limit switch E6 low active
- Home switch E7 low active

In the basic settings the inversion is deactivated, so that the signals are ”high active”.

With this setting the inputs I5 to I7 can even be switched within their logic, if they are not used as direction reversal/limit switches or machine zero.

4.1.8. Defining jerk / ramps

In this chapter you can read about:

4.1.8.1 Jerk limitation

Description of jerk

Jerk

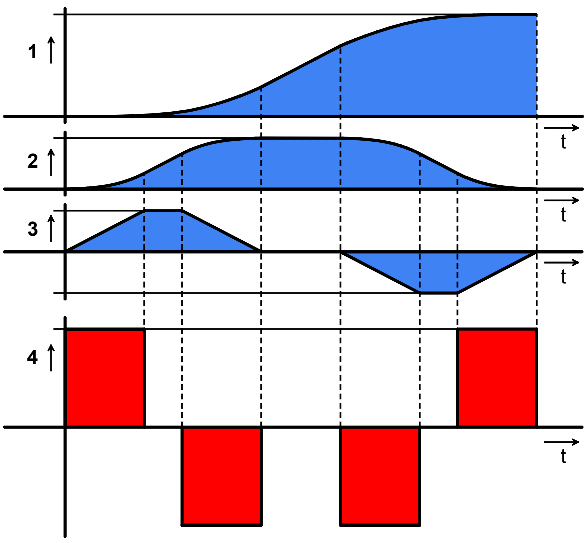
The jerk (marked with "4" in the drawing below) describes the change in acceleration (derivation of the acceleration)

The maximum change in acceleration is limited via the jerk limitation.
A motion process generally starts from a standstill, accelerates constantly at the specified acceleration to then move at the selected speed to the target position. The drive is brought to a stop before the target position with the delay that has been set in such a manner as to come to a complete stop at the target position. To reach the set acceleration and deceleration, the drive must change the acceleration (from 0 to the set value or from the set value to 0).
This change in speed is limited by the maximum jerk.

Without jerk according to VDI2143

According to VDI2143 the jerk is defined (other than here) as the jump in acceleration (infinite value of the jerk function).
This means that positionings with Compax3 are without jerk according to VDI2143, as the value of the jerk funciton is limited.

Motion sequence



1: Position
2: Velocity
3: Acceleration
4: Jerk

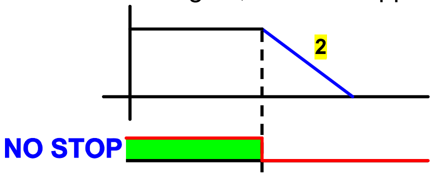
High changes in acceleration (high jerks) often have negative effects on the mechanical systems involved. There is a danger that mechanical resonance points will be excited or that impacts will be caused by existing mechanical slack points.
You can reduce these problems to a minimum by specifying the maximum jerk.

Jerk

Unit: Length unit/s^3	Range: 0 ... 10 000 000	Standard value: 1 000 000

Deceleration on STOP

After a STOP signal, the drive applies the brakes with the delay that is set (2).



Please observe:

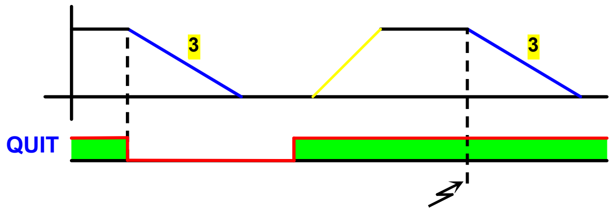
The configured STOP ramp is limited. The STOP ramp will not be smaller than the deceleration set in the last motion set.

NO STOP: no STOP (I1, M.I6, CW.1 or CW.14)

4.1.8.2 Ramp upon error / deenergize

Ramp (delay) upon error and "De-energize"

The same delay is used for "Deenergizing" and when an error appears (errors which do not deenergize immediately).



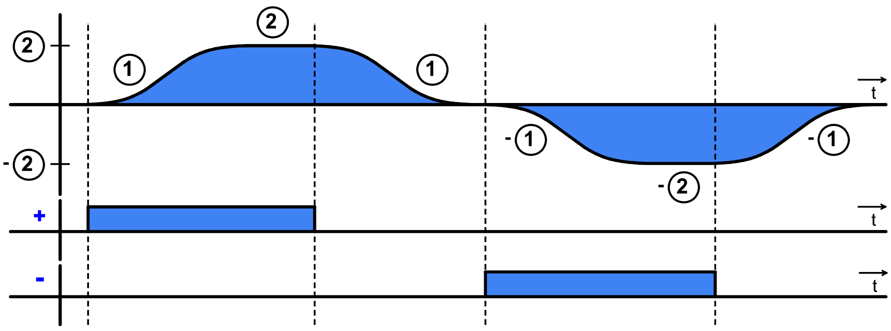
3: Deceleration upon "deenergize" and on "error".

Please observe:

The configured error ramp is limited. The error ramp will not be smaller than the deceleration set in the last motion set.
QUIT: I0: Quit or CW.0 (with positive edge)
START: M.I5: START or CW.13 (with positive edge)

JOG acceleration/deceleration and speed control

You can set the motion profile for moving with JOG+ or JOG- here.



1: Manual acceleration / -deceleration
2: Manual speed
+: I2: MANUAL+ or CW.2
-: I3: MANUAL- or CW.3

4.1.9. Limit and Monitoring Settings

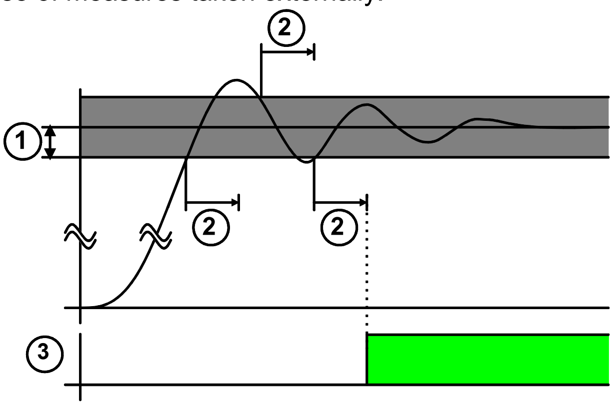
In this chapter you can read about:

4.1.9.1 Current (Torque) Limit

The current required by the speed controller is limited to the current limit.

4.1.9.2 Positioning window - Position reached

Position reached indicates that the target position is located within the position window.
In addition to the position window, a position window time is supported. If the actual position goes inside the position window, the position window time is started. If the actual position is still inside the position window after the position window time, "Position reached" is set.
If the actual position leaves the position window within the position window time, the position window time is started again.
When the actual position leaves the position window with Position reached = "1", Position reached is immediately reset to "0".
Position monitoring is active even if the position leaves the position window because of measures taken externally.



1: Positioning window
2: positioning window time
3: A1 and SW.9: Position reached

Linkage to the setpoint value

The signal "position reached" can be linked to the setpoint value.
In addition, the internal setpoint value generation is evaluated.
It applies: **The positioning window is only evaluated with a constant internal setpoint value.**

Position reached with Gearing

Signal "position reached" monitors synchronicity.

RegSearch / RegMove

Signal "position reached" is set if
- RegSearch was terminated without a reg being found

or
- Reg was found and RegMove executed.

Velocity

Signal "position reached" turns into "velocity reached".

STOP

Signal "position reached" shows that the drive is at a standstill.

No position monitoring takes place in status START (M.E5=24VDC or CW.13=1)

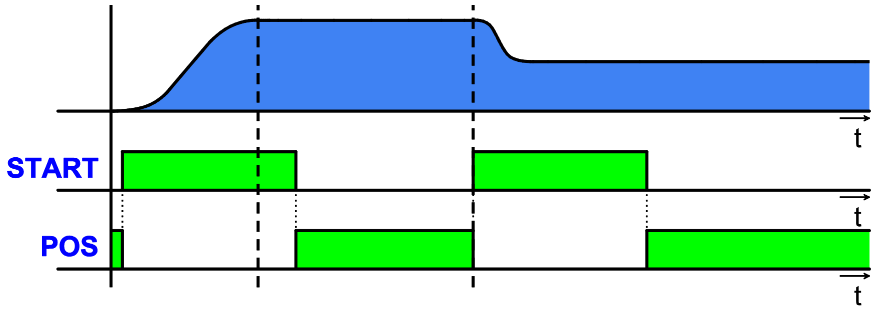
Therefore reset the start signal to 0 after the START edge.

Behaviour of "Position reached" after Power On

After Power On O1 (=SW Bit 9) = "0"
After the machine zero run (after position 0 is reached) O1 and SW.9 goes to "1"

Handshake with PLC for small positionings

Example:



START:M.I5 or CW.13 = "1"
POS:O1: Position reached (= CW Bit 9)

Sequence:

PLC	**Reaction Compax3**
START of a positioning	Position reached goes to "0"
From position reached = "0" follows: START = 0	Positioning completed → Position reached = "1"
From position reached = "1" follows: Next START can take place	Position reached goes to "0"

4.1.9.3 Following error limit

The error reaction upon a following error can be set:
Possible settings for the error reaction are:

- No response
- downramp / stop
- Downramp / switch to currentless (standard setting)

The following error is a dynamic error.
The dynamic difference between the setpoint position and the actual position during a positioning is called the following error. Do not confuse this with the static difference which is always 0; the target position is always reached exactly.

The change of position over time can be specified exactly using the parameters jerk, acceleration and speed. The integrated Setpoint value generator calculates the course of the target position. Because of the delay in the feedback loop, the actual position does not follow the setpoint position exactly. This difference is referred to as the following error.

Disadvantages caused by a following error

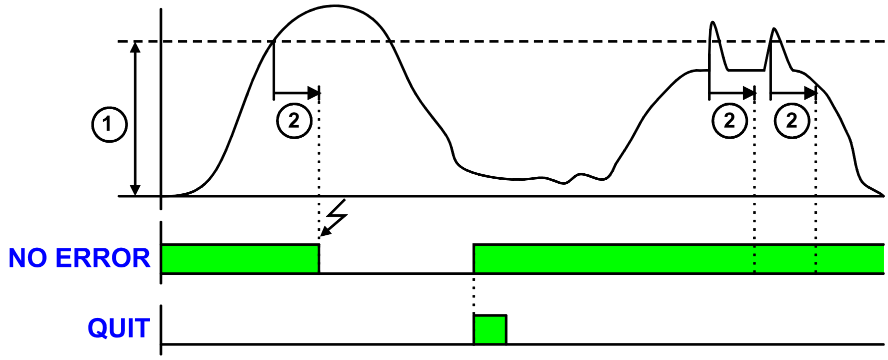
In joint operation of several servo controllers (e.g. master controller and slave controller), following errors lead to problems due to the dynamic position differences, and a large following error can lead to positioning overshoot.

Error message

If the following error exceeds the specified following error limit, the "following error time" then expires. If the following error is even greater than the following error limit at the end of the following error time, an error is reported.
If the following error falls short of the following error limit, a new following error time is then started.

Minimizing the following error

The following error can be minimized with the help of the extended (advanced) control parameters, in particular with the feed forward parameters.



1: Tracking error limit
2: Tracking error time
NO ERROR: O0: no error
QUIT: I0: Quit (on positive edge)

4.1.9.4 Maximum operating speed

The speed limitation is derived from the maximum operating speed. In order to ensure control margins, the speed is limited to a higher value.
The speed setpoint value is actively limited to 1.1 times the given value.
If the speed actual value exceeds the preset maximum speed by 21% (="switching off limit speed"), error 0x7310 is triggered.

4.1.10. Operating mode / I/O assignment

In this chapter you can read about:

The operating mode defines the I/O assignment of the Compax3 I/Os.

4.1.10.1 I/O assignment for control via the Compax3 inputs/outputs

If control is not made via RS232 / RS485, an M - option (M10 or M12) will be required. The assignment of the inputs and outputs is fixed.

Assignment of the intra-device inputs and outputs

<table>
<tr><th>PIN X12</th><th>Input/output</th><th colspan="2">High density/Sub D</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>A</td><td colspan="2">+24VDC output (max. 400mA)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>O0</td><td>No Error</td><td rowspan="9">Only for "fixed assignment"
Functions are available, if "Fixed assignment" was selected for the I/O assignment in the configuration wizard</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>O1</td><td>Position / speed / gear synchronization attained (max. 100mA)</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>O2</td><td>No power output stage current (max. 100mA)</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>O3</td><td>Axis stationary with current, with setpoint 0 (max. 100mA)</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>I0="1":</td><td>Quit (positive edge) / Energize the axis
The address of the current motion set is read in new.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>I0="0"</td><td>Deenergize axis with delay</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>I1</td><td>No stop</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>I2</td><td>JOG +</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>I3</td><td>JOG -</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td>I4</td><td colspan="2">Reg input</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>E</td><td colspan="2">24V input for the digital outputs Pins 2 to 5</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td>I5</td><td colspan="2">Limit switch 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td>I6</td><td colspan="2">Limit switch 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td>I7</td><td colspan="2">Machine reference initiator</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>A</td><td colspan="2">Gnd 24 V</td></tr>
</table>

All inputs and outputs have 24V level.
Maximum capacitive loading of the outputs: 30nF (max. 2 Compax3 inputs can be connected)
Input-/Output extension (see page 137, see page 374)

Optimization window display

The display of the digital inputs in the optimization window of the C3 ServoManager does not correspond to the physical status (24Volt=on, 0Volt=off) but to the logic status: If the function of an input or output is inverted (e.g. limit switch, negatively switching), the corresponding display (LED symbol in the optimization window) is OFF with 24Volts at the input and ON with 0 Volts at the input.

Assignment of the optional inputs and outputs (M option)

PIN X22/	Input/output	High density/Sub D	
1	n.c.	Reserved	
2	M.I0	Address 0	free assignment at operation via RS232 / RS485
3	M.I1	Address 1	
4	M.I2	Address 2	
5	M.I3	Address 3	
6	M.I4	Address 4	
7	M.I5	Start (edge triggered)	
8	M.I6	no Stop (2nd Stop input)	
9	M.I7	Open motor holding brake	
10	M.O8	Machine zero (home) Position known	
11	E	24 VDC power supply	
12	M.O9	programmable status bit 0 (PSB0)	free assignment at operation via RS232 / RS485
13	M.O10	programmable status bit 1 (PSB1)	
14	M.O11	programmable status bit 2 (PSB2)	
15	E	Gnd 24 V	

- All inputs and outputs have 24V level.
- The input/output designation **M.**I0 ... helps to make the distinction between the standard I/Os on X12 and the inputs/outputs of the **M** options.
- Maximum load on an output: 100mA
- Maximum capacitive load: 50nF (max. 4 Compax3 inputs)

Caution! The 24VDC power supply (X22/11) must be supplied from an external source and must be protected by a 1.2A delayed fuse!

Reaction times:

Example:
I0="1" (energize Motor) => O3="1" (Motor energized) max. 4ms
M.I5="1" (START edge) => O3="0" max. 4ms

4.1.10.2 I/O assignment, control word and status word with control via COM port

In this chapter you can read about:

In this chapter you can read about:

I/O Assignment

- For intra-device inputs I0 .. I3 as well as the outputs O0 ... O3 you can choose between fixed or free assignment (see below).
- Control via RS232 / RS485 does not require an M option (M10 / M12).
- If an M option is available, 12 inputs/outputs (ports) are freely assignable. These can be configured as inputs or outputs by groups of four and be activated resp. read via Object 121.2 and Object 133.3.
- The signal inputs I4 ... I7 are fixedly assigned
  If the respective functions are not needed, these inputs can also be used for control.
  I5 and I6 can, for example, be used as free inputs if the limit switch function is deactivated.

Assignment of the intra-device inputs and outputs

PIN X12	Input/output	High density/Sub D	
1	A	+24VDC output (max. 400mA)	
2	O0	No Error	**Only for "fixed assignment"** Functions are available, if "Fixed assignment" was selected for the I/O assignment in the configuration wizard
3	O1	Position / speed / gear synchronization attained (max. 100mA)	
4	O2	No power output stage current (max. 100mA)	
5	O3	Axis stationary with current, with setpoint 0 (max. 100mA)	
6	I0="1":	Quit (positive edge) / Energize the axis The address of the current motion set is read in new.	
	I0="0"	Deenergize axis with delay	
7	I1	No stop	
8	I2	JOG +	
9	I3	JOG -	
10	I4	Reg input	
11	E	24V input for the digital outputs Pins 2 to 5	
12	I5	Limit switch 1	
13	I6	Limit switch 2	
14	I7	Machine reference initiator	
15	A	Gnd 24 V	

All inputs and outputs have 24V level.
Maximum capacitive loading of the outputs: 30nF (max. 2 Compax3 inputs can be connected)
Input-/Output extension (see page 137, see page 374)

Optimization window display

The display of the digital inputs in the optimization window of the C3 ServoManager does not correspond to the physical status (24Volt=on, 0Volt=off) but to the logic status: If the function of an input or output is inverted (e.g. limit switch, negatively switching), the corresponding display (LED symbol in the optimization window) is OFF with 24Volts at the input and ON with 0 Volts at the input.

For intra-device inputs I0 .. I3 as well as the outputs O0 ... O3 you can choose between fixed or free assignment.
With fixed assignment of the intra-device inputs I0 ... I3, the respective functions can either be triggered via the inputs or via RS232 / RS485.
It applies:

- The motor is only energized if I0 = "1" AND control word Bit 0 ="1"
- Stop is active if, I1 ="0" OR Control word Bit 1 ="0"
- Manual+ and Manual- inputs and control word are OR - linked.

Control word

Structure of the control word (Object 1100.3)

Bit	Function	Corresponds to *
Bit0	Quit (edge) / energize axis	I0: X12/6
Bit1	No Stop	I1: X12/7
Bit2	JOG +	I2: X12/8
Bit3	JOG -	I3: X12/9
Bit4	O0 X12/2	(only if O0...O3 is defined as freely assigna-ble)
Bit5	O1 X12/3	
Bit6	O2 X12/4	
Bit7	O3 X12/5	
Bit8	Address 0	
Bit9	Address 1	
Bit10	Address 2	
Bit11	Address 3	
Bit12	Address 4	
Bit13	Start (edge)	
Bit14	No Stop (2nd Stop)	
Bit15	Brake open	

* does only apply if the respective inputs are assigned fixedly.
Bit0 = least significant Bit

Status word 1 & 2

Structure of the state word 1 (Object 1000.3)

Bit	Description	Corresponds to *
Bit0	I0	X12/6
Bit1	I1	X12/7
Bit2	I2	X12/8
Bit3	I3	X12/9
Bit4	I4	X12/10
Bit5	I5	X12/11
Bit6	I6	X12/12
Bit7	I7	X12/13
Bit8	No Error	X12/2
Bit9	Position reached	X12/3
Bit10	Axis without current excitation	X12/4
Bit11	Axis stationary with current at setpoint value zero	X12/5
Bit12	Machine zero (home) Position known	
Bit13	Programmable status bit 0 (PSB0)	
Bit14	Programmable status bit 1 (PSB1)	
Bit15	Programmable status bit 2 (PSB2)	

* Does apply for Bit 8 ... 11 only if the respective outputs (O0 ... O3) are assigned fixedly.
Bit0 = least significant Bit

Structure of the state word 2 (Object 1000.4)

Bit	Description	
Bit0 ... 14	Reserved	
Bit15	Reg detected	

Bit0 = least significant Bit

4.1.11. Encoder Simulation

You can make use of a permanently integrated encoder simulation feature to make the actual position value available to additional servo drives or other automation components.

Caution!

- The encoder simulation is not possible at the same time as the encoder input resp. the step/direction input or the SSI interface.
  The same interface is used here.
- A direction reversal configured in the C3 ServoManager does not affect the encoder simulation.
  The direction of rotation of the encoder simulation can, however, be changed via the feedback direction in the MotorManager.

Simulated Encoder Output Resolution

Unit: Increments per revolution / pitch	Range: 4 - 16384	Standard value: 1024
Any resolution can be set **Limit frequency: 620kHz** i. e. for:		
Increments per revolution	Max. speed	
1024	36000 min^{-1}	
4096	9000 min^{-1}	
16384	2250 min^{-1}	

4.1.11.1 Encoder bypass with Feedback module F12 (for direct drives)

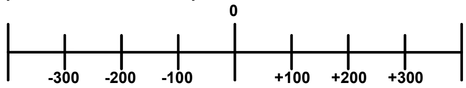
If the feedback module F12 is used, the encoder signals can be placed directly (Bypass) to the encoder interface (X11: same assignment as encoder simulation) for further use. Sine/Cosine signals are directly converted into encoder signals, however without zero pulse.
The advantage is, that the limit frequency is 5MHz instead of 620kHz.
The direction of rotation is only defined via the encoder wiring; a direction inversion configured in the C3 ServoManager does not have any consequence.

4.1.12. Absolute / continuous operation

Operating mode: Absolute mode or continuous mode

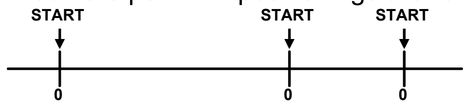
Absolute mode

A fixed measuring system is associated with the travel range: A fixed defined zero point exists. All positions are referred to this zero point.



Continuous mode

The actual position is set to 0 before each positioning. Thus the travel range has no fixed zero point. All positionings are relative - in relation to the actual position.



4.1.13. Position mode in reset operation

In this chapter you can read about:

In reset operation (activated by the configured reset distance), additional positioning functions are possible for absolute positionings:

All directions	Standard positioning mode
Positive direction	Positioning only in positive direction
Shortest path	Positioning on the shortest path
Negative direction	Positioning only in negative direction
Actual direction	Positioning by keeping the actual direction of travel

Dynamic positioning

In dynamic positioning, a decision concerning the positioning travel is not taken on the basis of the actual position, but on the basis of the braking position resulting from the motion parameters.

Please observe:

- In the event of positioning specifications below zero and higher than or equal to the reset distance, this function is deactivated.
- The positioning functions are neither effective in test movements nor in a positioning after homing travel.
- In the event of ”shortest path” the motion is not defined for a positioning by half the reset distance.

4.1.13.1 Examples in the help file

In the help file you can find here examples for the functioning of the individual positioning modes.

4.1.14. Defining the STOP function

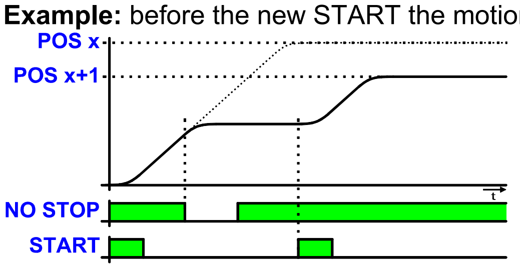
The function ”no STOP” is configurable.
No Stop: Input I1 and M.I6 resp. CW.1 and CW.14

STOP with termination

STOP and terminate the current positioning

A new START does not continue the positioning at the interruption point.

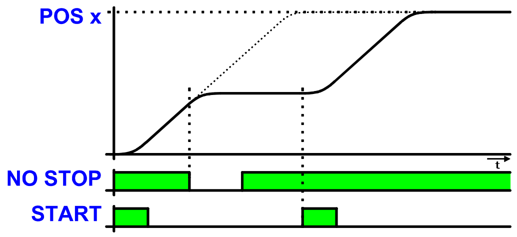
The motion set address is read in new and the motion set is executed completely.
Example: before the new START the motion set address "Pos x+1" is created.



NO STOP: no STOP
START:START signal (on edge)

STOP without termination

STOP and interruption of the current positioning procedure.



NO STOP:no STOP
START:START signal (on edge)

A new START resumes the positioning process at the position where it was interrupted.

4.1.15. Reg-related positioning / defining ignore zone

These settings are only required in connection with the function "**reg-related positioning** (see page 150)"
Within the reg window a reg signal will be ignored.
The reg window is defined by

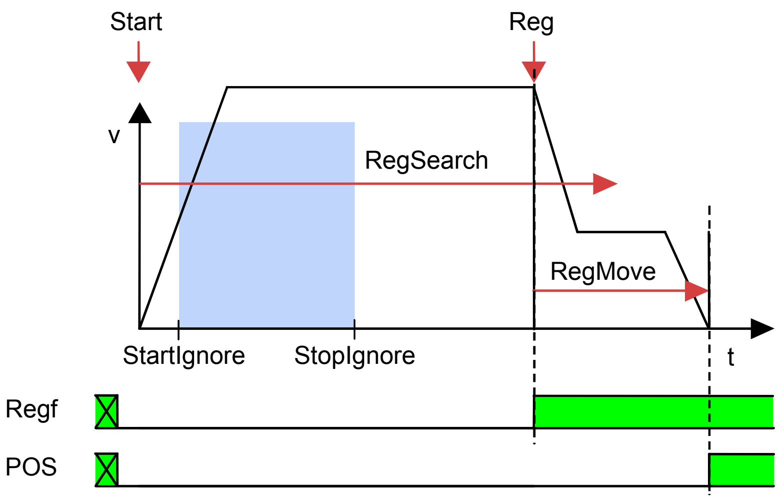
- beginning of the ignore zone and
- End of Registration lock-out zone (StopIgnore)

.
Beginning and end of the ignore zone are absolute values and therefore are also valid with negative position values.
This reg window is valid for all reg position sets.

Allow higher deceleration for RegMove

If the deceleration set in the RegMove motion set is too high, the target position is not reached. **Compax3 reports an error** (see page 153).
By allowing for a higher deceleration, Compax3 sets the jerk and the deceleration so that the target is reached without direction reversal.

Function



Start	Start signal for reg positioning
RegSearch:	Positioning for reg search
RegMove:	Positioning according to reg
StartIgnore:	Reg window: Beginning of Registration lock-out zone (StartIgnore)
StopIgnore:	Reg window: End of Registration lock-out zone (StopIgnore)
Reg:	Reg signal
Regf	Signal: Reg mark detected (Status word 2 Bit15 (Signal via PSBs with I/O control))
POS:	Signal: Position reached (Output O1: X12/3 or status word 1 Bit 9)

4.1.16. Write into set table

The motion sets are stored in a set table.
The table rows define always one motion set, in the columns the respective motion parameters of a motion set are stored.

	Motion parameters				
Machine reference run					
Set 1					
set no. 2					
...					
Set 31					

exact description (see page 298).
31 motion sets are possible.
The motion set to be executed is selected via:

- Compax3 inputs (with control via I/Os)

or

- via the control word (with control via RS232 / RS285).

For the motion sets different motion functions with different motion parameters are available:

- **Empty:** empty motion set
- **MoveAbs (see page 149):** absolute positioning
- **MoveRel (see page 149):** relative Positioning
- **Gearing (see page 154):** electronic gearbox
- **RegSearch (see page 150):** Registration mark-related positioning (uses 2 motion sets: RegSearch and RegMove)
- **Velocity (see page 155):** velocity control
- **Stop:** Stop movement

For each motion set you can define programmable status bits (PSBs), which will then be put out after the termination of the motion set.

Machine reference run

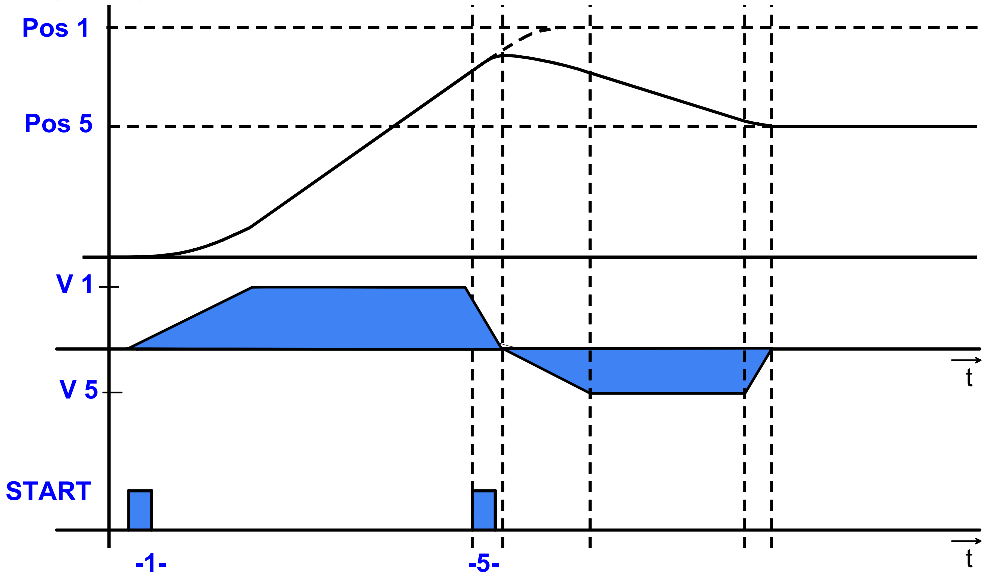
A start signal at address = 0 (motion set 0) triggers a machine zero run.

4.1.16.1 Dynamic positioning

You can change over to a new motion set during a positioning process.
Thereby the following conditions apply:

- Acceleration and deceleration remain constant independent of the values predefined in the new motion set.
- The jerk, too, remains constant.
- The velocity of the new motion set is activated.
- The drive moves to the target position defined in the new motion set.
- The new motion set address must not equal 0.

Example: MoveAbs (Target position POS1) is interrupted by a new MoveAbs with target position (POS 5)



The following dynamic transitions are supported:

Motion function in progress	Possible dynamic change to the motion function:
MoveAbs, MoveRel, RegSearch, RegMove, Velocity	MoveAbs, MoveRel, Velocity, RegSearch, Gearing
Gearing	MoveAbs, MoveRel, RegSearch, Gearing (other gearing factor)
Stop	-

If the homing mode is active, there will always be a **homing run** (see page 146) with the first start after each configuration download (with the aid of the C3 ServoManager).

4.1.16.2 Programmable status bits (PSBs)

The successful execution of a motion set can be queried via the PSBs.
PSBs:

- with control via I/Os:
  3 outputs of the I/O option (M10 or M12) M.O9, M.O10, M.O11

or

- with control via RS232 / RS485:
  status word Bit 13, Bit 14, Bit 15

Definition of the pattern:

The settings for the PSBs are made in the respective motion set

You can set 3 assignments for the respective bits:

X: No change	Output / Bit is not influenced
0: Inactive	Output / Bit is set to 0
1: Active	Output / Bit is set to 1 resp. 24VDC

Storage of the **PSBs** (see page 298).

Programmable status bits (PSBs)

The successful execution of a motion set can be queried via the PSBs.
PSBs: Bit 12, 13 and 14 of status word 2.

4.1.16.3 Set selection

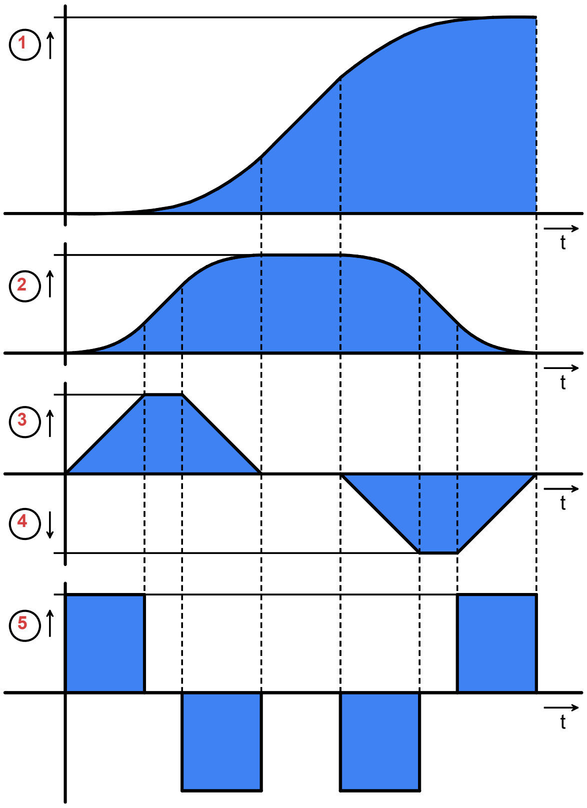
Set number:

Address of the positioning data record.
The address results from the binary value of the inputs:

I/O control	RS232 / RS485 control Control word	Values
M.I0	Bit 8	$2^0 = 1$
M.I1	Bit 9	$2^1 = 2$
M.I2	Bit 10	$2^2 = 4$
M.I3	Bit 11	$2^3 = 8$
M.I4	Bit 12	$2^4 = 16$

4.1.16.4 MoveAbs and MoveRel

A motion set defines a complete motion with all settable parameters.



1: Target position
2: Travel speed
3: Maximum acceleration
4: Maximum deceleration
5: Maximum **Jerk** (see page 132)

Motion functions

MoveAbs: Absolute positioning.
MoveRel: Relative positioning

Target position / distance

Target position of the choesen unit of measure.
Distance with MoveRel

Velocity

Speed in length unit/s

Acceleration

Acceleration in length unit/s²

Deceleration

Deceleration in length unit/s²

Jerk

Jerk in unit of measure/s³

You can optimize the motion profile data with the **"ProfilViewer"** (see page 287) software tool!

4.1.16.5 Reg-related positioning (RegSearch, RegMove)

For registration mark-related positioning, 2 motions are defined.

RegSearch Search movements: Relative positioning in order to search for an external signal - of a reg
This may, for example, be a reg on a product.

RegMove The external signal interrupts the search movement and the second movement by the predefined offset follows without transition. The drive comes to a standstill at the postion of the mark signal + the configured offset.

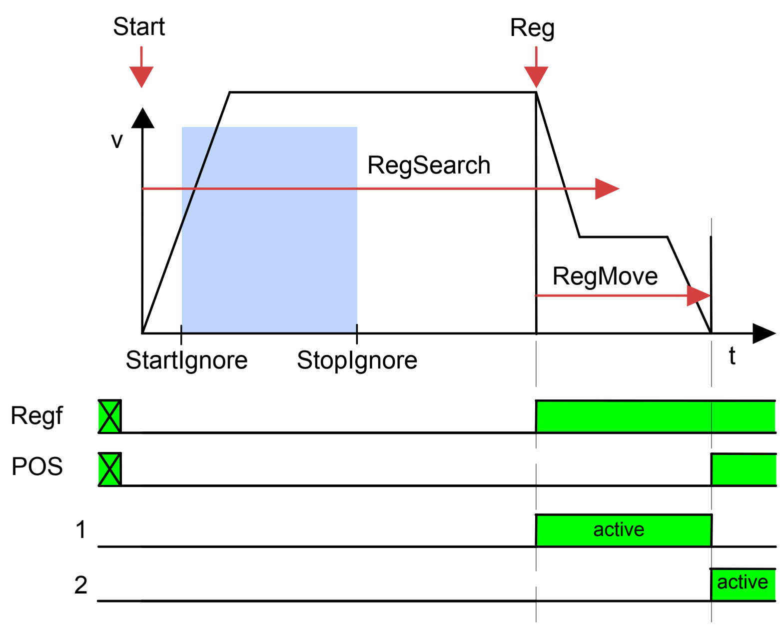
Accuracy of the reg detection: <1µs

Please note:

The reg restriction window is the same for all reg motion sets!

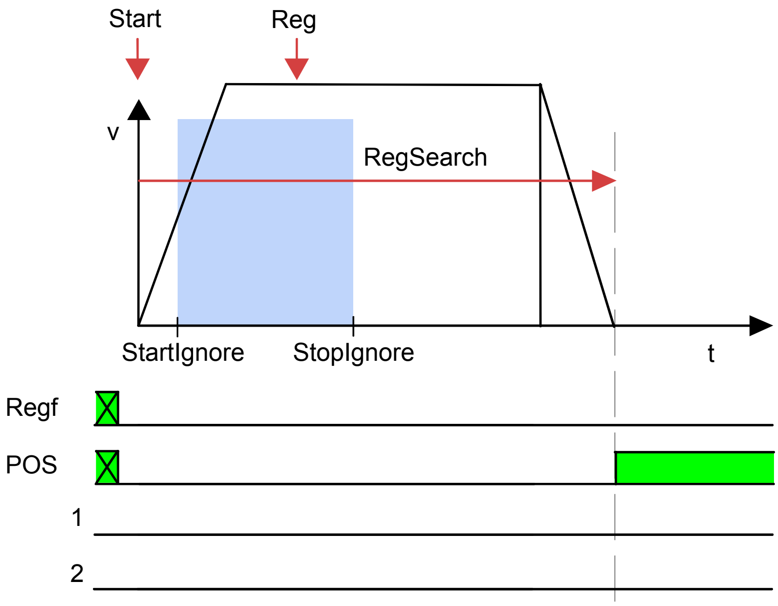
Example 1: Reg comes after the reg restriction window

Example 1: Reg comes after the reg restriction window



Start	Start signal for reg positioning (M.E5 on X22/13 or CW.13)
RegSearch:	Positioning for reg search
RegMove:	Positioning according to reg
StartIgnore:	**Reg ignore window:** (see page 145) beginning of the registration lockout zone
StopIgnore:	Reg ignore window: End of Registration lock-out zone (StopIgnore)
Reg:	Reg signal (I4 on X12/10)
Regf:	Signal: Reg mark detected (Status word 2 Bit15 (Signal via PSBs with I/O control))
POS:	Signal: Position reached (Output O1: X12/3 or status word 1 Bit 9)
1	Programmable status bits of RegSearch (only for positioning with set selection)
2	Programmable status bits of RegMove (only for positioning with set selection)

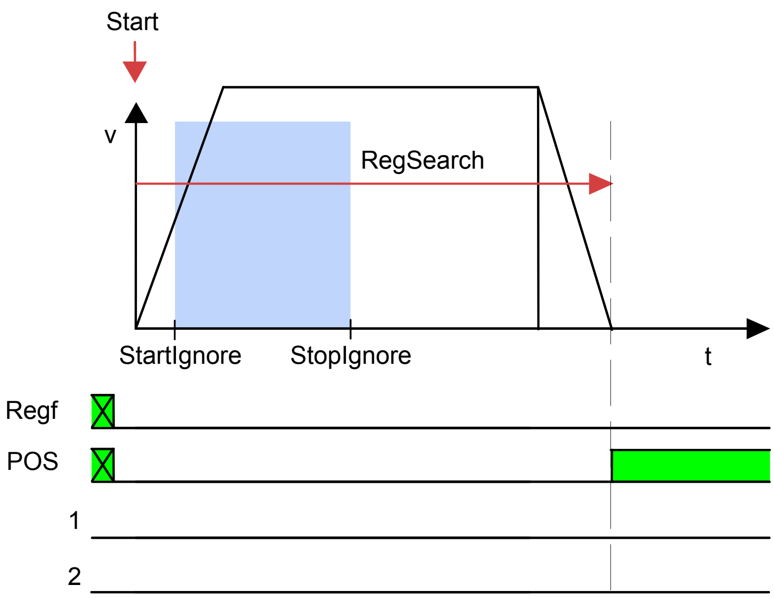
Example 2: Reg within the reg restriction window



Start	Start signal for reg positioning (M.E5 on X22/13 or CW.13)
RegSearch:	Positioning for reg search
RegMove:	Positioning according to reg
StartIgnore:	**Reg ignore window:** (see page 145) beginning of the registration lockout zone
StopIgnore:	Reg ignore window: End of Registration lock-out zone (StopIgnore)
Reg:	Reg signal (I4 on X12/10)
Regf:	Signal: Reg mark detected (Status word 2 Bit15 (Signal via PSBs with I/O control))
POS:	Signal: Position reached (Output O1: X12/3 or status word 1 Bit 9)
1	Programmable status bits of RegSearch (only for positioning with set selection)
2	Programmable status bits of RegMove (only for positioning with set selection)

The reg is ignored; the drive moves to the target position from the RegSearch motion set.

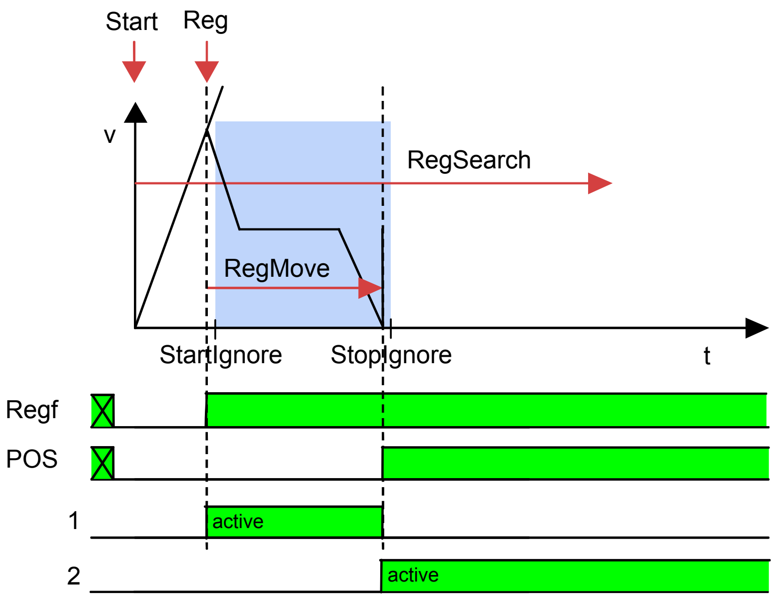
Example 3: Reg is missing or comes after termination of the Reg-Search motion set



Start	Start signal for reg positioning (M.E5 on X22/13 or CW.13)
RegSearch:	Positioning for reg search
RegMove:	Positioning according to reg
StartIgnore:	**Reg ignore window:** (see page 145) beginning of the registration lockout zone
StopIgnore:	Reg ignore window: End of Registration lock-out zone (StopIgnore)
Reg:	Reg signal (I4 on X12/10)
Regf:	Signal: Reg mark detected (Status word 2 Bit15 (Signal via PSBs with I/O control))
POS:	Signal: Position reached (Output O1: X12/3 or status word 1 Bit 9)
1	Programmable status bits of RegSearch (only for positioning with set selection)
2	Programmable status bits of RegMove (only for positioning with set selection)

The drive moves to the target position from the RegSearch motion set

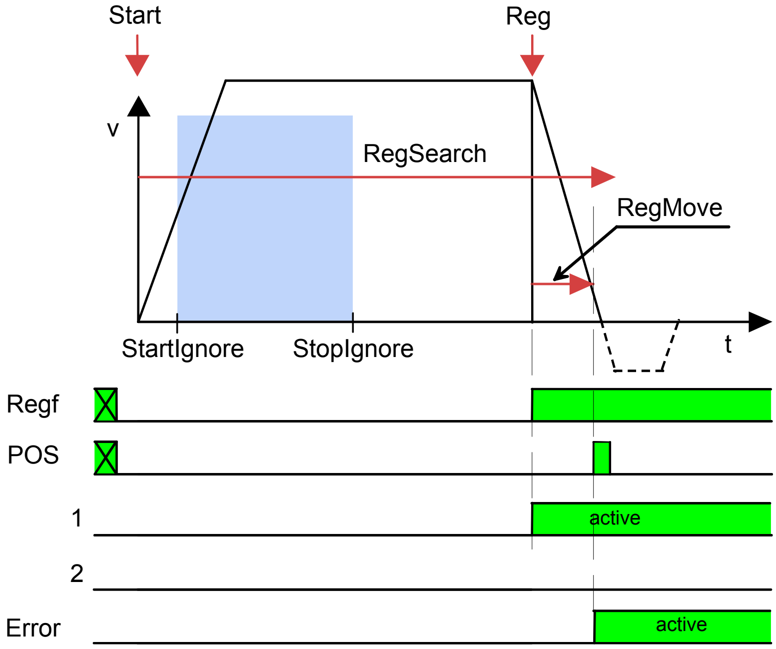
Example 4: Reg comes before the reg restriction window



Start	Start signal for reg positioning (M.E5 on X22/13 or CW.13)
RegSearch:	Positioning for reg search
RegMove:	Positioning according to reg
StartIgnore:	**Reg ignore window:** (see page 145) beginning of the registration lockout zone
StopIgnore:	Reg ignore window: End of Registration lock-out zone (StopIgnore)
Reg:	Reg signal (I4 on X12/10)
Regf:	Signal: Reg mark detected (Status word 2 Bit15 (Signal via PSBs with I/O control))
POS:	Signal: Position reached (Output O1: X12/3 or status word 1 Bit 9)
1	Programmable status bits of RegSearch (only for positioning with set selection)
2	Programmable status bits of RegMove (only for positioning with set selection)

As from the mark, the drive moves on relatively by the offset defined in RegMove and then stops at that position (same behavior as in exampe 1).

Example 5: The registration mark comes after the reg restriction window, registration mark can, however, not be reached without direction reversal



Start	Start signal for reg positioning (M.E5 on X22/13 or CW.13)
RegSearch:	Positioning for reg search
RegMove:	Positioning according to reg
StartIgnore:	**Reg ignore window:** (see page 145) beginning of the registration lockout zone
StopIgnore:	Reg ignore window: End of Registration lock-out zone (StopIgnore)
Reg:	Reg signal (I4 on X12/10)
Regf:	Signal: Reg mark detected (Status word 2 Bit15 (Signal via PSBs with I/O control))
POS:	Signal: Position reached (Output O1: X12/3 or status word 1 Bit 9)
1	Programmable status bits of RegSearch (only for positioning with set selection)
2	Programmable status bits of RegMove (only for positioning with set selection)
Error	Output A0: X12/2 or status word 1 Bit 8

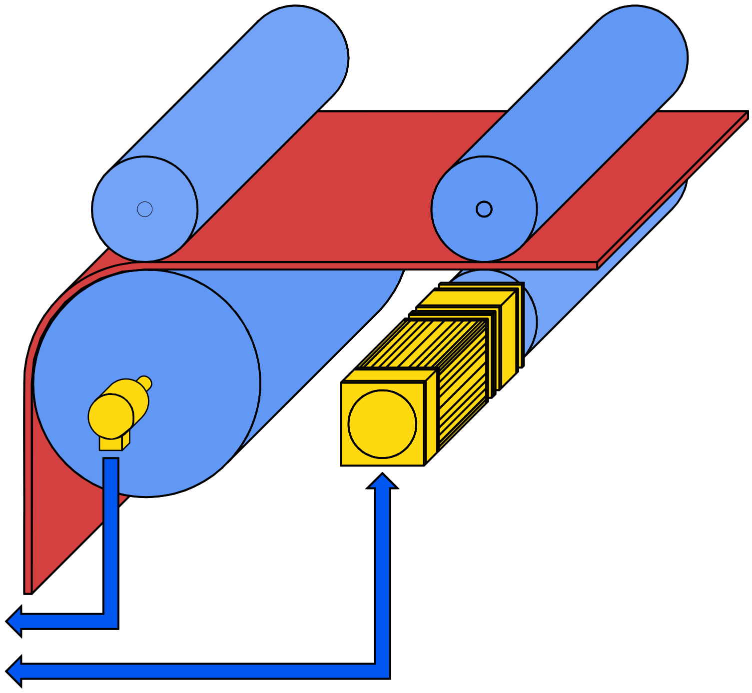
Position reached can be activated for a short period, if the position window was not linked to the command value.

With "**Allow higher deceleration for RegMove** (see page 145)", Compax3 sets the required deceleration.

4.1.16.6 Electronic gearbox (Gearing)

The motion function "Gearing" (electronic gearbox) moves Compax3 synchronously with a leading axis.
A 1:1 synchronity or any transmission ratio can be selected via the gear factor.
A negative sign – which means reversal of direction – is permitted.

Function Electronic gearbox (Gearing)



The position of a master axis can be detected via:

- +/-10V analog input
- Step / direction input (X11/6, 7, 8, 12)
- the encoder input (X11/6, 7, 8, 12) or
- HEDA, if Compax3 is used as master drive.

The master signal detection is configured under synchronization.

Settings of the "Gearing" motion function

Gearing numerator / Gearing denominator:

Transmission ratio slave / master
The transmission ratio (gear factor) can be entered in "Gearing numerator" (at "Gearing denominator" = 1).
You will obtain an exact image of a non-integral transmission ratio by entering the value integrally as a fraction with numerator and denominator. This helps to avoid long-term drifts
That is:

$$\frac{\text{Slave}}{\text{Master}} = \frac{\text{Gearing numerator}}{\text{Gearing denominator}}$$

Acceleration

Here you can define the acceleration for the drive to reach the desired synchronity.

Dynamic change of the gear factor

You can switch dynamically between 2 gearing motion sets with different gear factors.
The set acceleration counts as deceleration if the gear factor is reduced.

Dynamic switching between the gearing motion function and positioning functions (MoveAbs, MoveRel, RegSearch) is possible.

Synchronicity: with the "Gear reached" signal(Output O1: X12/3 or status word 1 Bit 9) the reaching of the synchronicity is displayed.
The signal ”Gear reached” is reset if the synchronicity is exited.
The programmable status bits (PSBs) are activated via the signal ”Gear reached”

Limiting effects If the synchronicity is lost temporarily due to limitations, the resulting position difference is made up afterwards.

Note: Jerk is not limited.

4.1.16.7 Speed specification (Velocity)

This motion function is defined by velocity and acceleration.
An active motion set is interrupted by:

- Stop or
- Start of a different set.

As soon as the setpoint speed is reached, ”speed reached” (Output O1: X12/3 or status word 1 Bit 9) as well as the defined status bits (PSBs) are activated.

Note: Position control is active, i.e. the following error caused by limitations will be made up.
Jerk is not limited.

4.1.16.8 Stop command (Stop)

The Stop set interrupts the current motion set (Stop with interruption).
This motion function is defined by the deceleration and the jerk of the drive when coming to a standstill.
As soon as the drive is at standstill ”position reached” (Output O1: X12/3 or status word 1 Bit 9) as well as the defined status bits (PSBs) are activated.

Note: The stop command (as motion function) is not effective during the machine zero run.

4.1.17. Error response

Under "configuring: Under "configuration: error reaction" you can change the error reaction for individual **errors** (see page 326) (the error no. which can be influenced is displayed).
Possible settings for the error reaction are:

- No response
- downramp / stop
- Downramp / switch to currentless (standard setting)

Note on Compax3H:
The error reaction upon the "low voltage DC" error (0x32229 is fixed to "downramp/deenergize" for Compax3H.

4.1.18. Configuration name / comments

Here you can name the current configuration as well as write a comment.
Then you can download the configuration settings or, in T30 or T40 devices, perform a complete Download (with IEC program and curve).

⚠	**Caution!** Deactivate the drive before downloading the configuration software! **N.B.!** Incorrect configuration settings entail danger when activating the drive. Therefore take special safety precautions to protect the travel range of the system.

⚠	**Mechanical limit values!** Observe the limit values of the mechanical components! Ignoring the limit values can lead to destruction of the mechanical components.

4.2 Configuring the signal Source

In this chapter you can read about:

4.2.1. Select signal source for Gearing

In this chapter you can read about:

Here the signal source is configured for the motion function ”Gearing” (electronic gearbox).
Available are:

Gearing input signal source

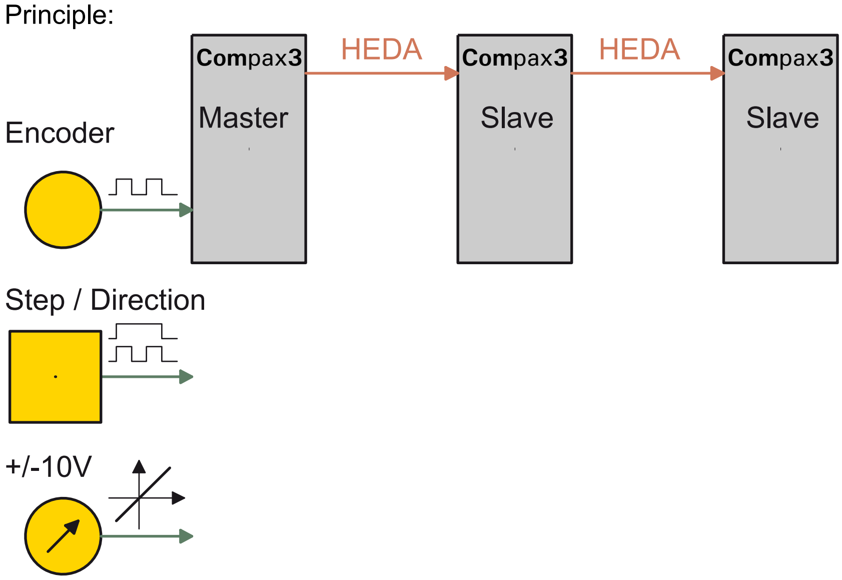
- The HEDA real-time bus (M10 or M11 option) directly from a Compax3 master axis
- an encoder signal A/B 5V
- a step/direction signal 5V or
- a velocity as analog value +/-10V

HEDA operating mode HEDA as Master

Under signal source gearing "not configured" must be set!

If an existing HEDA option (M10 or M11) is not used as signal source, you can transmit the following signals for a slave axis via HEDA:

- Process - setpoint position (Object 2000.1)
- Process - actual position (Object 2200.2)
- Position from external setpoint (object 2020.1)
  Signal read in via Analog channel0 (X11/9 and X11/11), encoder input or step / direction input in the master.
  Principle:



Attention in the case of a configuration download with master-slave coupling (electronic gearbox, cam)

Switch Compax3 to currentless before starting the configuration download: Master and Slave axis

4.2.1.1 Signal source HEDA

Signal source is a Compax3 master axis in which the HEDA operating mode "HEDA master" is set.
Please enter besides the desired error reaction an individual HEDA axis address in the range from 1 ...32.

The dimensional reference to the master is established via the following settings:

- Travel path per motor revolution (or pitch for linear motors) master axis numerator
  With denominator = 1 the value can be entered directly.
  Long-term drift can be avoided by entering non-integral values integrally as a fraction with numerator and denominator.
- Travel per motor revolution (or pitch ofr linear motors) master axis denominator

If required the direction of rotation of the master axis read in can be changed.

4.2.1.2 Encoder A/B 5V, step/direction or SSI feedback as signal source

Caution!

- The encoder simulation is not possible at the same time as the encoder input resp. the step/direction input or the SSI interface.
  The same interface is used here.
- A direction reversal configured in the C3 ServoManager does not affect the encoder simulation.
  The direction of rotation of the encoder simulation can, however, be changed via the feedback direction in the MotorManager.

The dimensional reference to the master is established via the following settings:

- Travel path per motor revolution (or pitch for linear motors) master axis numerator
  With denominator = 1 the value can be entered directly.
  Long-term drift can be avoided by entering non-integral values integrally as a fraction with numerator and denominator.
- Travel per motor revolution (or pitch ofr linear motors) master axis denominator
- Increments per revolution of the master axis

If required the direction of rotation of the master axis read in can be changed.

Example: Electronic gearbox with position detection via encoder

Reference to master axis

The reference to the master axis is established via the increments per revolution and the travel path per revolution of the master axis (corresponds to the circumference of the measuring wheel).
That is:

$$\text{MasterPos} = \frac{\text{Master\_I}}{\text{I\_M}} * \frac{\text{Travel Distance per Master Axis revolution (M\_Units/rev)}}{\text{Travel Distance per Master Axis revolution - Denominator}} \quad (1)$$

MasterPos: Master Position
Master_I: master increments read in
I_M: Increments per revolution of the master axis

External signal source

Encoder with 1024 increments per master revolution and a circumference of the measuring wheel of 40mm.

Settings:

Travel path per revolution of the master axis numerator = 40
Travel path per revolution of the master axis denominator = 1
Increments per revolution of the master axis = 1024

Configuration wizard:

Reference system of Slave axis: Unit of measure [mm]
Travel path per revolution numerator = 1
Travel path per revolution denominator = 1

Gearing:

Gearing numerator = 2
Gearing denominator = 1

This results in the following interrelations:

If the measuring wheel moves by 40mm (1 master revolution), the slave axis will move by 80mm.

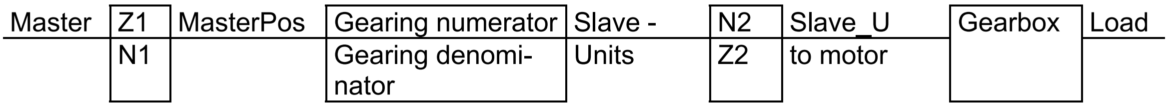
$$\text{Slave unit} = \text{MasterPos} * \frac{\text{Gearing numerator}}{\text{Gearing denominator}} \quad (2)$$

(1) set into (2) and with numerical values results with 1024 increments read in (=1 Master revolution):

$$\text{Slave unit} = 1024 * \frac{1}{1024} * \frac{40\text{mm}}{1} * \frac{2}{1} = 80\text{mm}$$

Master - Position = +40mm => Slave - Position = +80mm

Structure:



Detailed structure image with:

$$MD = \frac{Z1}{N1} * \frac{\text{Travel Distance per Master Axis revolution (M\_Units/rev)}}{\text{Travel Distance per Master Axis revolution - Denominator}}$$

Entry in the ”configuration of the signal source” wizard

$$SD = \frac{Z2}{N2} * \frac{\text{Travel path per revolution slave axis numerator}}{\text{Travel path per revolution slave axis denominator}}$$

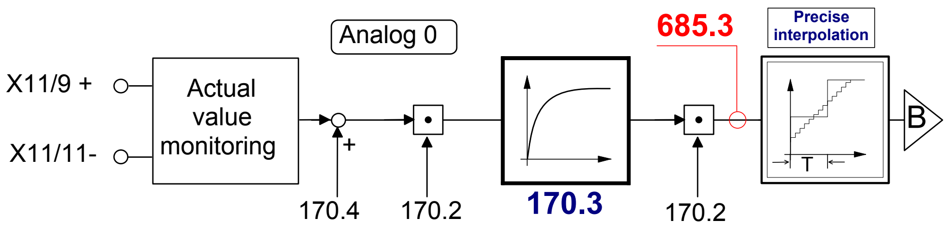
Entry in the ”configuration of the signal source” wizard

MD: Feed of the master axis
SD: Feed of the slave axis

4.2.1.3 +/-10V analog speed setpoint value as signal source

Via Analog channel0 (X11/9 and X11/11) the speed of the master is read in.
From this value a position is internally derived, from which then the motion of the drive is derived with reference to the transmission ratio.
Without limitation effect applies:
Velocity of the master * (Gearing numerator / gearing denominator) = velocity of the slave

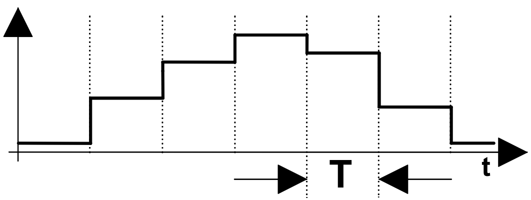
Signal processing of the analog input 0



B: **Continuative structure image** (see page 240)
The reference to the master is established with the velocity at 10V.
If required the direction of rotation of the master axis read in can be changed.

Time frame signal source master

Averaging and a following filter (interpolation) can help to avoid steps caused by discrete signals.
If the external signal is analog, there is no need to enter a value here (Value = 0).
For discrete signals e.g. from a PLC, the scanning time (or cylce time) of the signal source is entered.



This function is only available if the analog interface +/-10V is used!

4.3 Optimization

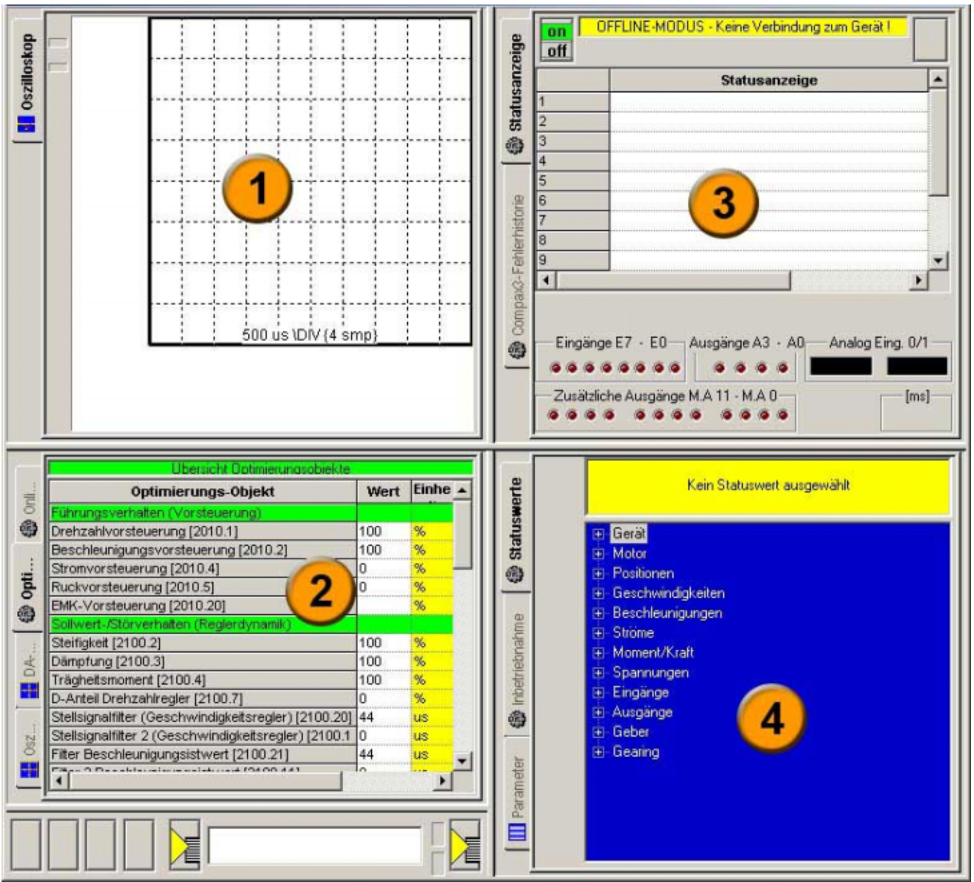
In this chapter you can read about:

- Select the entry **"Optimization"** in the tree.
- Open the optimization window by clicking on the **"Optimization Tool"** button.

4.3.1. Optimization window

Layout and functions of the optimization window

Segmentation	Functions (TABs)
Window1:	◆ **Scope** (see page 163)
Window 2:	◆ Optimization: Controller optimization ◆ **D/A Monitor** (see page 325): Output of status values via 2 analog outputs ◆ Scope Settings
Window 3:	◆ Status Display ◆ Compax3 Error History
Window 4:	◆ Status values ◆ Commissioning: **Setup mode** (see page 245) with **load identification** (see page 247) ◆ Parameters for commissioning, test movements (relative & absolute) and for load identification.



4.3.2. Scope

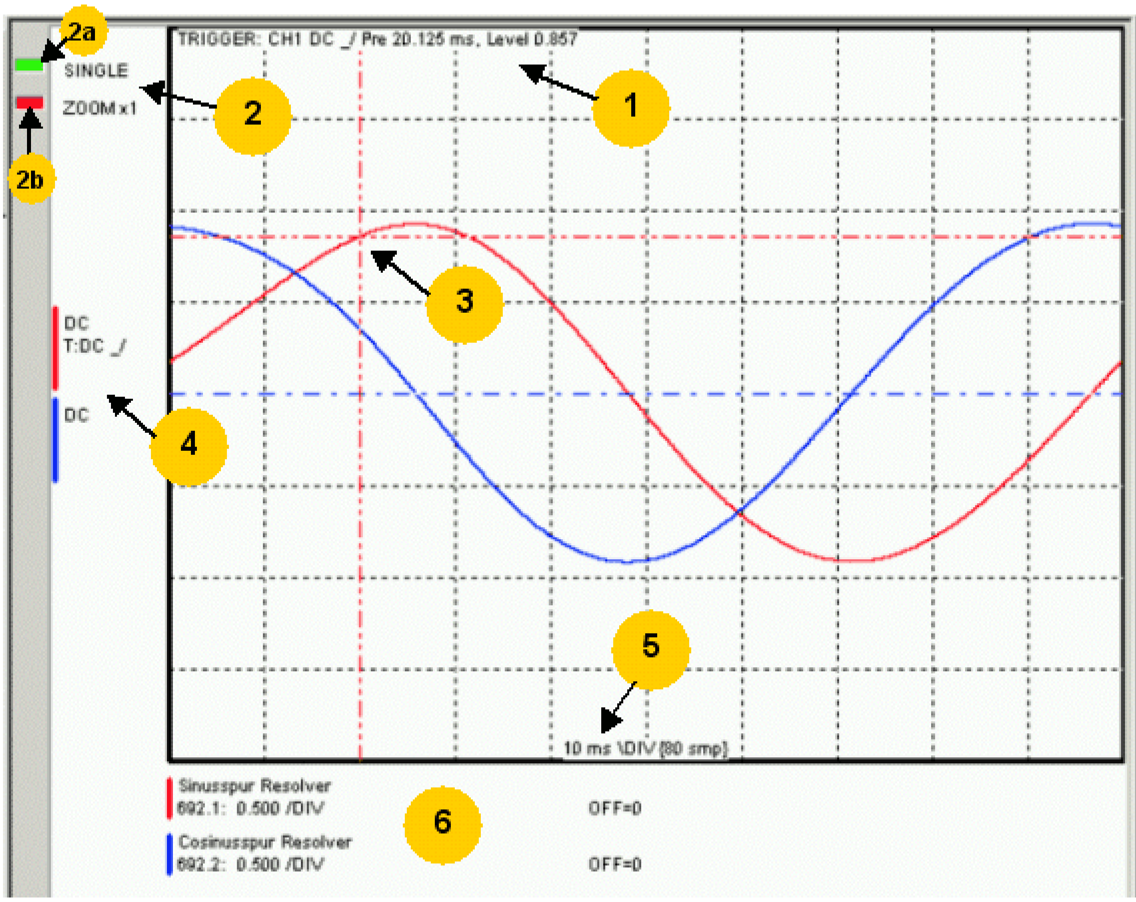
In this chapter you can read about:

The integrated oscilloscope function features a 4-channel oscilloscope for the display and measurement of signal images (digital and analog) consisting of a graphic display and a user interface.

Special feature:

in the single mode you can close the ServoManager after the activation of the measurement and disconnect the PC from Compax3 and upload the measurement into the ServoManager later.

4.3.2.1 Monitor information



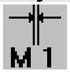
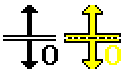
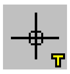
1: Display of the trigger information
2: Display of the operating mode and the zoom setting

- **2a:** Green indicates, that a measurement is active (a measurement can be started or stopped by clicking here).
- **2b:** Active channel: the active channel can be changed sequentially by clicking here (only with valid signal source).

3: Trigger point for Single and Normal operating mode
4: Channel information: Type of display and trigger settiing
5: X-DIV: X deviation set
6: Single channel sources

Cursormodes/ -functions

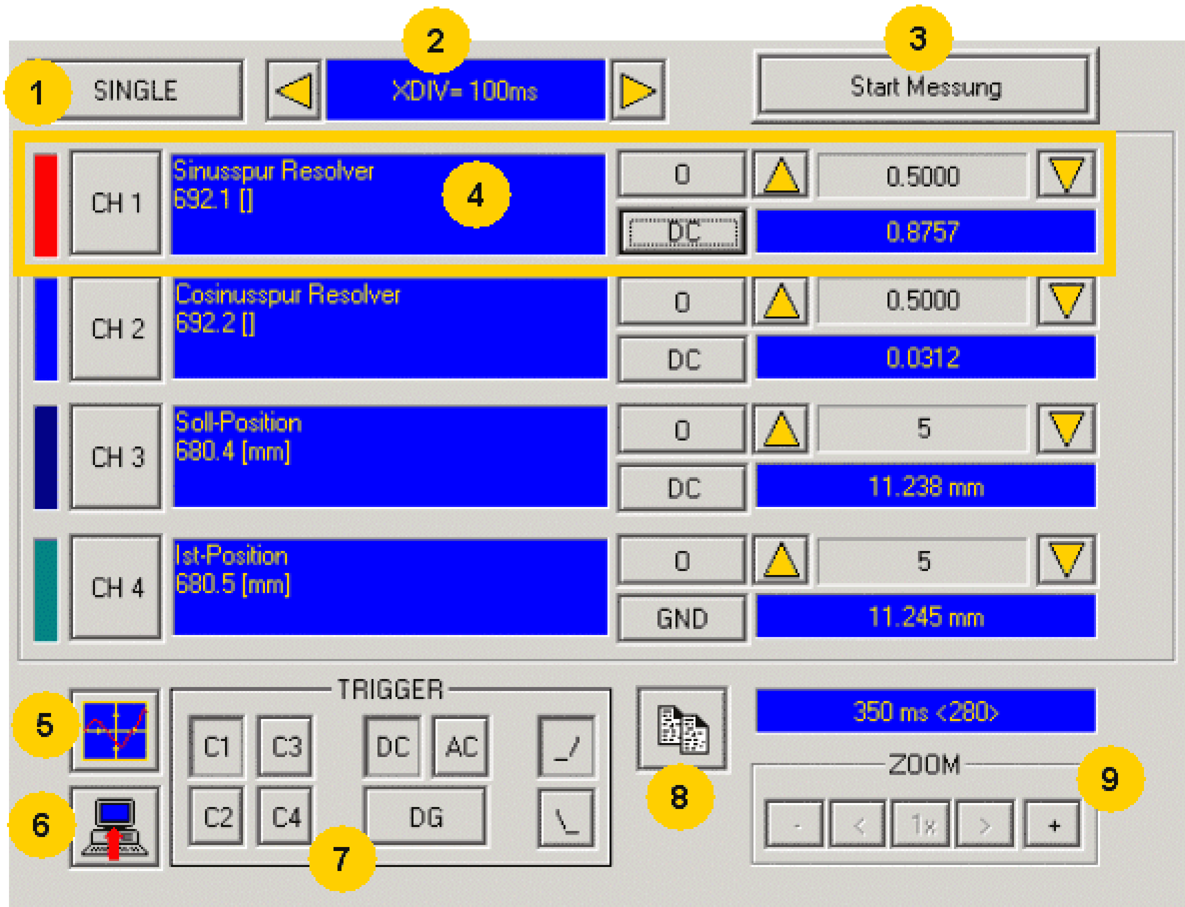
Depending on the operating mode, different cursor functions are available within the osci monitor.
The functions can be changed sequentially by pressing on the right mouse button.

Cursor Symbol	Function
	Set Marker 1 the measurement values of the active channel as well as the y difference to marker 2 are displayed
	Set Marker 2
	Delete and hide marker
	Move offset of the active channel. The yellow symbol indicates that the scrolling is active.
	Set trigger level and pretrigger

In the ROLL operating mode, marker functions and set trigger level positions are not available.

4.3.2.2 User interface

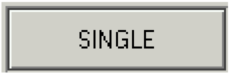
In this chapter you can read about:



1: **Operating mode switch** (see page 165) (Single / Normal / Auto / Roll)
2: **Setting the time basis** (see page 165)
3: Starting / Stopping the measurement (prerequisites are valid channel sources and if necessary valid trigger settings.)
4: **Setting channel** (see page 166) (Channels 1 ...4)
5: **Special functions** (see page 167) (Color settings; memorizing settings and measurement values)
6: Loading a measurement from Compax3: in the single mode you can close the ServoManager after the activation of the measurement and disconnect the PC from Compax3 and upload the measurement later.
7: **Setting triggering** (see page 167)
8: Copy osci display to clipboard
9: Zoom of the osci display (1, 2, 3, 8, 16 fold) with the possibility to move the zoom window (<,>)

Oscilloscope operating mode switch:

Oscilloscope operating mode switch:



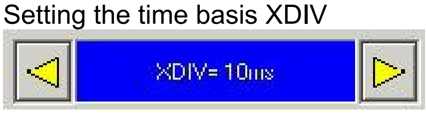
Selection of the desired operating mode: SINGLE, NORMAL; AUTO and ROLL by clicking on this button.
Changing the operating mode is also permitted during a measurement. The current measurement is interrupted and started again with the changed settings.
The following operating modes are possible:

Operating mode	Short description
SINGLE	Single measurements of 1-4 channels with trigger on a freely selectable channel
NORMAL	Like Single, but after each trigger event, the measurement is started again.
AUTO	No Trigger. Continuous measuring value recording with the selected scanning time or XDIV setting
ROLL	Continuous measuring value recording of 1 .. 4 channels with selectable scanning time and a memory depth of 2000 measuring values per channel.

With SINGLE / NORMAL / AUTO, the meansurement is made in Compax3 and is then loaded into the PC and displayed.
With ROLL, the measuring values are loaded into the PC and displayed continuously.

Setting the time basis XDIV

Setting the time basis XDIV



Depending on the selected operating mode, the time basis can be changed via the arrow keys.

For the operatiing modes SINGLE, NORMAL and AUTO, the following XDIV time settings are possible:

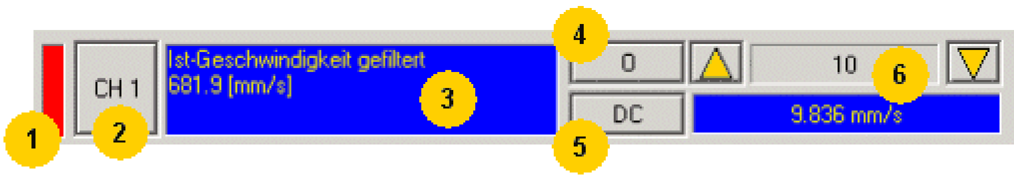
XDIV	Mode	Scanning time	Samples DIV/TOTAL	Measuring time
0.5ms	1	125us	4/40	5ms
1.0ms	2	125µs	8/80	10ms
2.0ms	3	125µs	16/160	20ms
5.0ms	4	125µs	40/400	50ms
10.0ms	5	125µs	80/800	100ms
20.0ms	6	250µs	80/800	200ms
50.0ms	7	625µs	80/800	500ms
100.0ms	8	1.25ms	80/800	1s
200.0ms	9	2.50ms	80/800	2s
500.0ms	10	6.25ms	80/800	5s
1s	11	12.50s	80/800	10s
2s	12	25.00ms	80/800	20s
5s	13	62.50ms	80/800	50s
10s	14	125.00ms	80/800	100s

For the operating ROLL, the following XDIV time settings are possible:

XDIV	Mode	Scanning time	Samples DIV/TOTAL
2 ms	54	125us	200/2000
2ms	54	125µs	200/2000
4ms	55	125µs	200/2000
10ms	56	125µs	200/2000
20ms	57	125µs	200/2000
40ms	58	125µs	200/2000
100ms	59	250µs	200/2000
200ms	60	625µs	200/2000

Changing the time basis is also permitted during an OSCI measuring sequence. This means, however, that the current measurement is interrupted and started again with the changed settings.

Settings for channels 1..4



1: Select channel color

2: Open menu for channel-specific settings

- **Reset Channel CH 1..4** all channel settings are deleted.
  Please note: Channels can only be fileld with sources one after the other. It is, for example, not possible to start a measurement which has only a signal source for channel 2!
- **Select channel color:** Here you can change the color of the channel..
- **show/hide channel:** Hide/show display of the channel.
- **Change logic display mask:** Mask bits in logic display.
- **auto scaling** Calculation of YDIV and Offset: The program calculates the best settings for YDIV and channel offset in order to display the complete signal values optimally.

3: Set signal source with object name, number and if necessary unit

- Define source: Draw the desired status object with the mouse (drag & drop) from the "Status value" window (right at the bottom) into this area.

4: Set Channel offset to 0

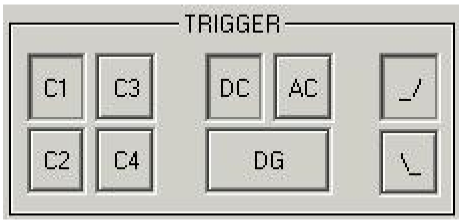
5: Select channel display (GND, DC, AC, DIG)

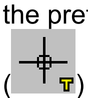
- **DC:** Display of the measurement values with constant component
- **AC:** Display of the measurement values without constant component
- **DIG:** Display of the individual bits of an INT signal source.
  The displayed bits can be defined via the logic display mask.
- **GND:** A straight line is drawn on the zero line.

6: Set Y-amplification (YDIV)

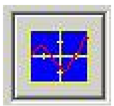
Change of the Y amplification YDIV in the stages 1,2,5 over all decades.
Arrow upwards increases YDIV, arrow downwards diminishes YDIV.
the standard value is 1 per DIV.
The measurement value of the channel at the cursor cross is displayed.

Trigger settings



Select trigger channel: Buttons C1, C2, C3, C4
Select trigger mode: DC, AC, DG
Select trigger edge: rising_/ or falling _
the pretrigger as well as the trigger level are set by clicking on the trigger cursor
() directly in the OSCI display.

Special functions



Menu with special oscilloscope functions such as memorizing or loading settings.

Functions:

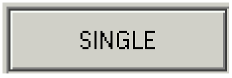
- **Select background color:** Adapt background color to personal requirements.
- **Select grid color:** Adapt grid color to personal requirements.
- **Memorize OSCI settings in file:** The settings can be memorized in a file on any drive. The file ending is *.OSC.
- The format correspnds to an INI file and is presented in the appendix.
- **open OSCI settings from file.** Loading a memorized set of settings. The file ending is *.OSC.
- **Memorizing OSCI settings in the project:** Up to four sets of OSCI settings can be memorized in the current C3 ServoManager project. .
- **open OSCI settings from project.** If settings were memorized in the project, they can be read in again.
- **Memorize OSCI measurement in file:** Corresponds to memorizing the setting; the measurement values of the measurement are stored in addition. Thus it is possible to memorize and read measurements completely with settings. The file ending is *.OSM.
- **Exporting measurement values into a CSV file:** e.g. for reading into Excel.

4.3.2.3 Example: Setting the Oscilloscope

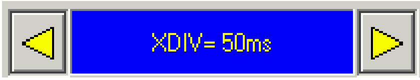
SINGLE measurement with 2 channels and logic trigger on digital inputs

The order of the steps is not mandatory, but provides a help for better understanding.
As a rule, all settings can be changed during a measurement. This will lead to an automatic interruption of the current measurement and to a re-start of the measurement with the new settings:

Assumption: A test movement in the commissioning mode is active.



1.) Select OSCI operating mode



2.) Select Time basis XDIV

3.) Select channel 1 signal source digital inputs 120.2 from status tree with the aid of Drag & Drop

4.) Select channel 2 (filtered actual speed) via "Drag and drop" from the status tree

5.) Set trigger to channel 1 and DG.

Input of the mask in HEX
Triggering a rising edge to input I1.
BIT 0 (value 1) = I0
BIT 1 (value 2) = I1
BIT 2 (value 4) = I2 etc.

Trigger to input	I0	I1	I2	I3	I4	I5	I6	I7
Trigger mask in hex	1	2	4	8	10	20	40	80

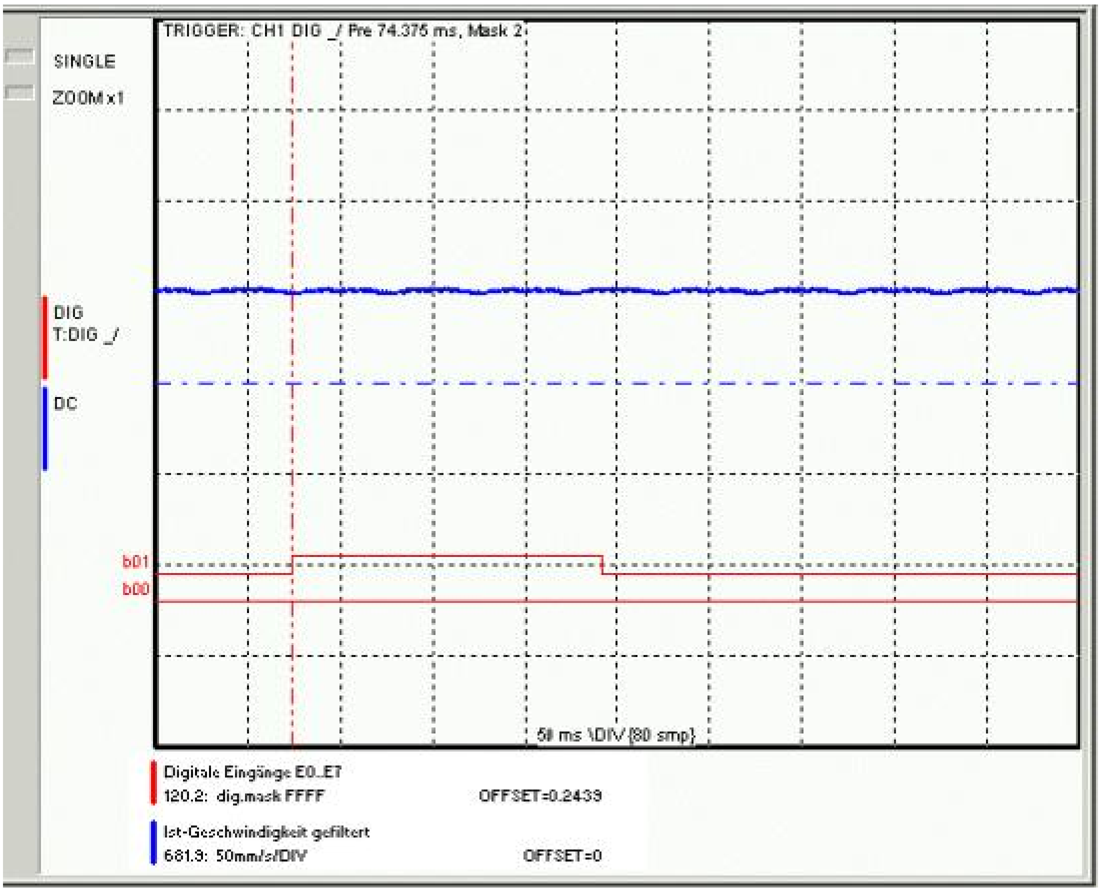
The masks can also be combined so that the trigger is only active, if several inputs are active. Example: Triggering to I2 and I5 and I6 -> 4h + 20h + 40h = 64h
The mask for input I1 is in this case 2.
select rising edge.
Note: If the trigger mask DG (digital) is selected for a channel, the display mode of the trigger channel is automatically set to DIG display.

6.) Start measurement

7.) Set pretrigger in the OSCI window

Note: There is no level for the DIG trigger The the event lomit determines the mask
If a trigger event occurs, the measurement values are captured until the measurement is completed.
Afterwards, the measurement values are read from the Compax3 and displayed.
The display mask of trigger channel 1 was not yet limited, therefore it shows all 16 bit tracks (b0...b15). In order to limit it to 8 bit tracks, you must call up the menu for channel 1 via [CH1] and select "change logic of display mask [H].
Limit the display mask to 8 bit tracks with Mask FFh.
In the display the bit tracks b0 to b7 are now shown:

Example: Only b0 and b1 are to be displayed: Set display mask to 03


TRIGGER: CH1 DIG _/ Pre 74.375 ms, Mask 2
SINGLE
ZOOM x1
DIG
T:DIG _/
DC
b01
b00
50 ms \DIV {80 smp}
Digitale Eingänge E0..E7
120.2: dig.mask FFFF
OFFSET=0.2439
Ist-Geschwindigkeit gefiltert
681.9: 50mm/s/DIV
OFFSET=0

4.3.3. Controller optimization

In this chapter you can read about:

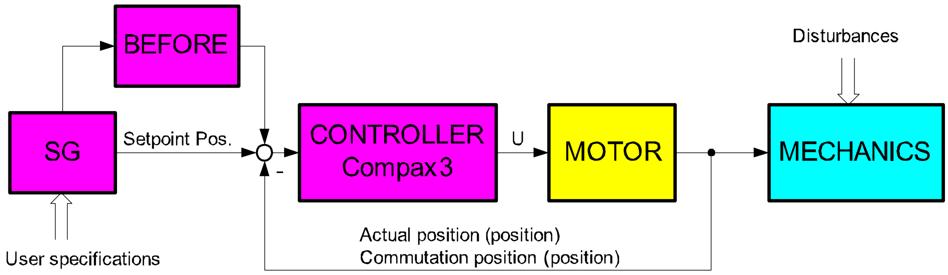
4.3.3.1 Introduction

In this chapter you can read about:

Basic structure of the control with Compax3

Compax3 is an intelligent servo drive for different applications and dynamic motion sequences.

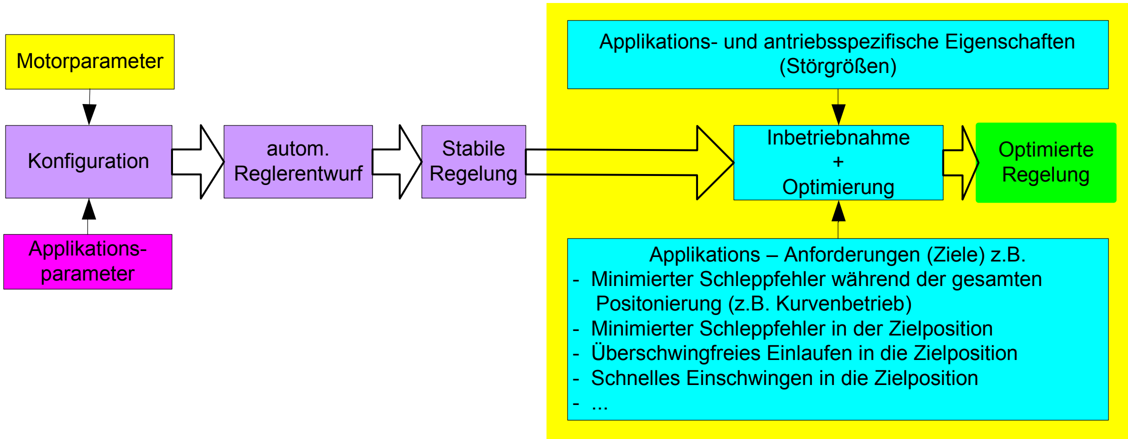
Basic structure of a control with the Compax3 servo drive



SG: Command value generator
BEFORE: Feed Forward

As shown in the above figure, the programmed motion sequences are generated by the internal Compax3 setpoint generator. The setpoint position as well as the other status values of the feedforward control are made available to the position controller in order to keep the following error as small as possible.
For the control, Compax3 requires on the one hand the actual position and on the other hand the commutation position, which represents the reference between the mechanic feedback position and the motor magnet.

Proceeding during configuration, setup and optimization

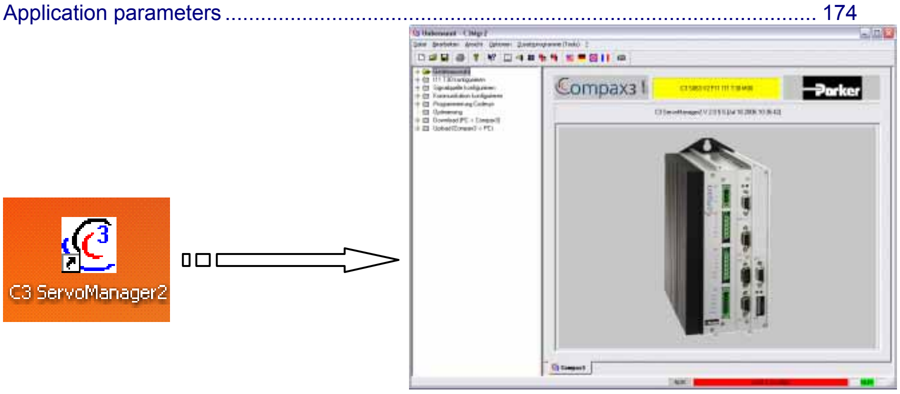


Overview of the processes during configuration and setup of the Compax3 drive system

The controller default settings are calculated from the configured motor and application parameters with the aid of the automatic controller design which runs in the background.
These controller presettings provide normally for a stable and robust control. Due to continually rising application requirements, this presetting is often not sufficient, so that further optimization of the control behavior is necessary.
This manual describes the setup and optimization procedure for Compax3.
In order to better understand the correlations and interactions, we will describe in the first step the individual correlations and physical values, that are req uired for the configuration and the prespecification of the control loops. In the following, the manual will then describe the function blocks for the optimization implemented in the servo controller as well as the setup tool.

Software for supporting the configuration, setup and optimization

In this chapter you can read about:



The entry of the motor and application parameters is made with the C3 ServoManager2 (C3Mgr2.exe):

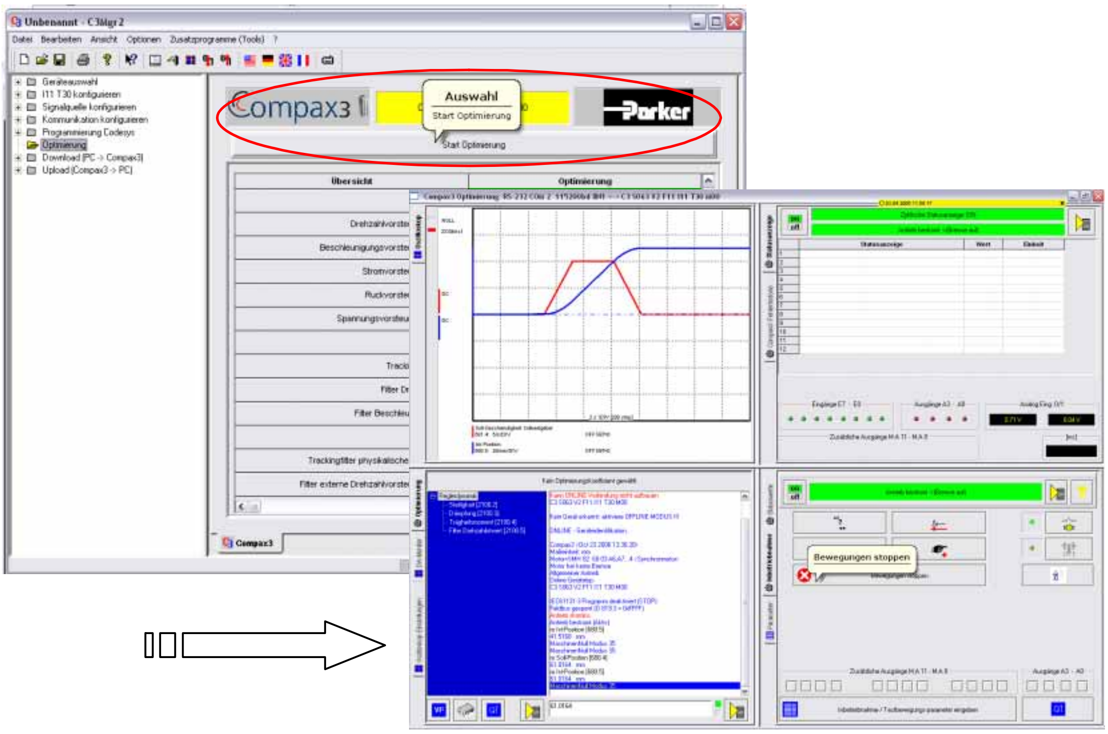
The configuration requires:

Application parameters

The wizard guided entry of the application parameters takes place directly in the ServoManager.

Carefully verify the entries and default values in order to detect entry errors in the run-up.

After the configuration download, the drive can be set up and be optimized if needs be. For this, please open the optimization window of the ServoManager:

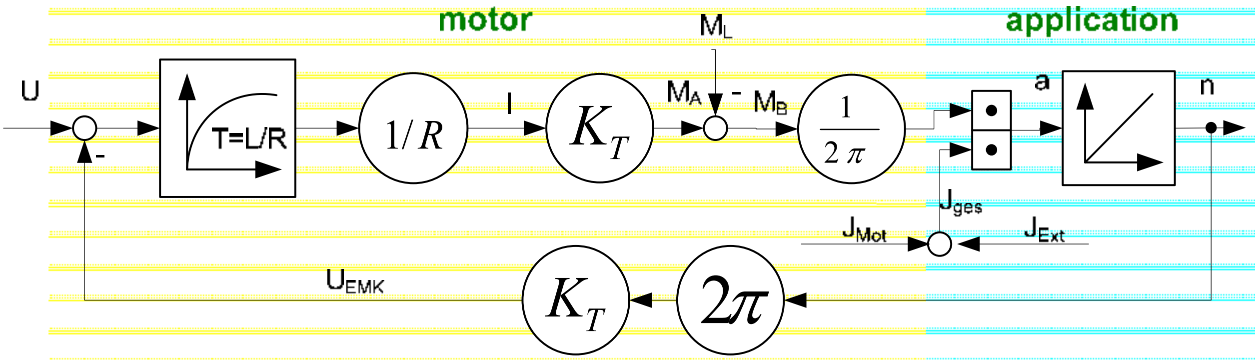


4.3.3.2 Configuration

In this chapter you can read about:

Control path

For the motors, the knowledge of the mathematical model is a prerequisite.
Mathematically idealized model of the control path:



U:	Cotrol voltage
U_{EMC}:	electromagnetically generated voltage in the motor
T:	electric time constant of the motor winding
L:	Winding Inductance
R:	Winding Resistance
M_A:	Drive torque of the motor
M_L:	Load torque
M_B:	Acceleration torque
I:	Actual current r.m.s. (torque-producing)
K_T:	Torque constant
J_{mot}:	Motor mass moment of inertia
J_{ext}:	External mass moment of inertia
J_{total}:	Total mass moment of inertia
a:	Acceleration
n:	Velocity

Explanation:

The motor is controlled by the servo drive with control voltage U. During motion of the motor, an internal back e.m.f U_{EMC} is induced. This antagonizes the control voltage and is therefore deduced in the motor model. The difference is available for the acceleration of the motor.
The first order delay component represents the delaying property of the motor winding with the time constant T=L/R. According to Ohm's Law, a current I=U/R results.
The drive torque of the motor is calculated by multiplying the current with the motor torque constant K_T. This is antagonized by the load torque of the machine.
The remaining acceleration torque accelerates the motor.
The resulting acceleration depends on the total mass moment of inertia (= motor + load moment of inertia).
The integration of the acceleration (sum of the acceleration over time) results in the velocity of the motor, which influences the amplitude of the induced EMC voltage.

Motor parameters relevant for the control

All motor parameters relevant for the control quality will be explained below.
Wizard guided entry of the motor parameters in the MotorManager.

Electromotoric countercheck EMC

A non-energized synchronous motor iduces an induction voltage, the so-called EMC voltage during an armature movement.
The EMC constant (motor EMC) states the value of the induced voltage subject to velocity.
The EMC constant corresponds to the motor torque constant K_T, which represents the correlation between the torque-producing current and the drive torque, however in a different unit.
The EMC voltage antagonizes the control voltage of the servo drive.
As the control voltage of the drive is not unlimited, it must be taken into consideration that the drive may approach the voltage limit at high velocities and therefore high EMC voltages.
The EMC constant is important with respect to the velocity control design.
The motor EMC is entered in the "motor characteristics" wizard window of the MotorManager. You may choose between different units. Please note the information on the motor type specification plate.

Mass inertia

The mass moment of inertia (moment of inertia) is also an important motor parameter for the design of the velocity control loop. For the velocity control design, this parameter is effective in correlation with the external mass moment of inertia of the load. The external load is entered in the C3 ServoManager. With the "load identification" function of the C3 ServoManager, the mass inertia can be determined, if it is not yet known.

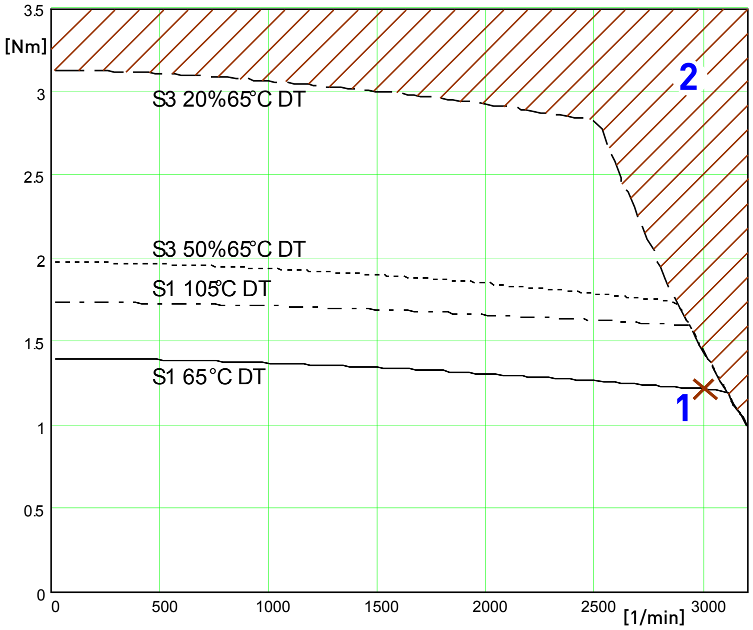
Nominal point data

In this chapter you can read about:

The nominal point data can be found in the velocity characteristic line of the motor. the prespecified nominal point can be changed in the 2nd wizard page of the C3 ServoManager configuration with the aid of "activate change of reference point" via the reference velocity and the reference current.

Motor characteristic line of a synchronous servo motor (torque via velocity)

SMH 60 30 1,4 ...2ID...4: 3000rpm at 400VAC



[Motorkennlinie.emf /.jpg]
1: Nominal point
2: Forbidden range

Calculation of the reference current from the characteristic line.

$$I = \frac{M[Nm]}{EMK} \bullet 85{,}5 = \frac{M[Nm]}{K_T}$$

or for linear motors

$$I = \frac{M[Nm]}{EMK\upsilon} \bullet \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{M[Nm]}{Kf}$$

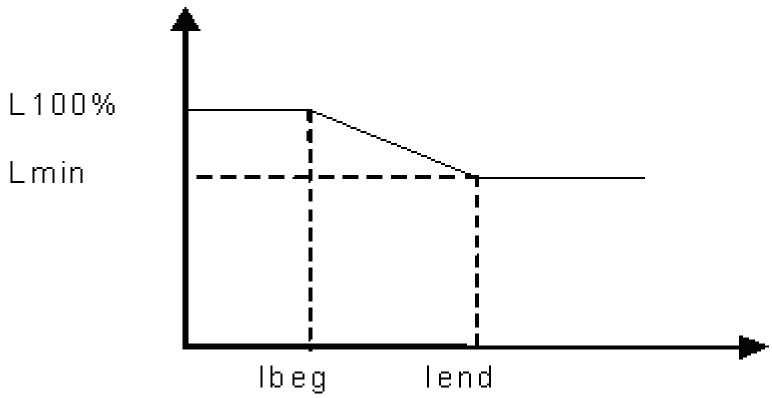
In the MotorManager, a motor can be defined for different operating modes (230V, 400V and 480V) without having to create several entities.
Additional parameters of a motor are:

- Standsill current [$mA_{r.m.s.}$]
- Pulse current [in % of the nominal current]
  The pulse current can be provided by the Compax3 for the duration of the pulse current time (as far as the device current permits). The thermal pulse load of the motor rises due to the pulse current. This pulse load is monitored by the i²t monitoring in the Compax3.

Saturation values

A motor may show a saturation behavior at higher currents due to iron saturation. This results in the reduction of the winding inductance at higher currents. As the inductance value of the winding enters directly into the P term of the current controller, the saturation at higher currents will result in too fast current control. This behavior can be countersteered with saturation values (entered in the "motor characteristics" wizard window of the MotorManager).

Consideration of the saturation values with the aid of a linear characteristic line



L 100%	Entered value of the nominal inductance
Lmin	Minimum winding inductance [% of the nominal inductance]. Value to which the inductance of the winding sinks at Ifinal.
Ibeg	End of the saturation [% of the nominal inductance].
Ifinal	Beginning of the saturation [% of the nominal inductance].

For the determination of the saturation values please see chapter 0.

Quality of different feedback systems

In this chapter you can read about:

The controller quality depends to a great extent on the signal quality of the position feedback and its signal acquisition. It is therefore important to select a suitable measurement system for the individual application.
In the rotary range, a resolver is mostly used for reasons of economics. The single pole resolver provides one sine/cosine period per revolution. In very demanding applications, the performance of the resolver is often not satisfactory, so that a SinCos feedback with a higher resolution must be used. The typical resolution of a SinCos feedback is 1024 periods/revolution.
Other position feedbacks which are often used in the linear range, differ with respect to the reading principle. High-quality optical position measuring systems offer the highest resolution and accuracy.

Interface

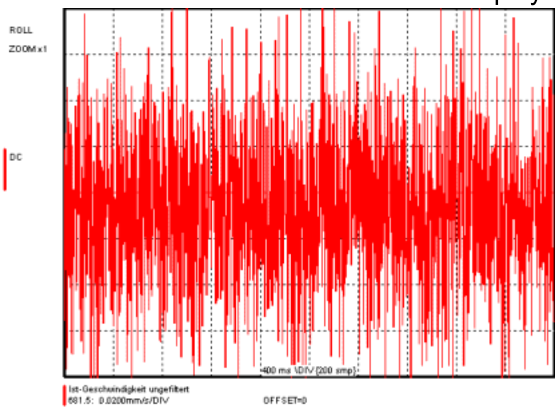
An additional distinctive feature is the electric interface between servo controller and feedback. Analog sine/cosine signals or digital encoder signals (RS422 standard) are used to transmit the incremental position information. Due to the high interpolation rate (approx. 14 bits) of the Compax3 servo controller, an analog sine/cosine signal is in most cases preferable to digital encoder signals.

Resolution

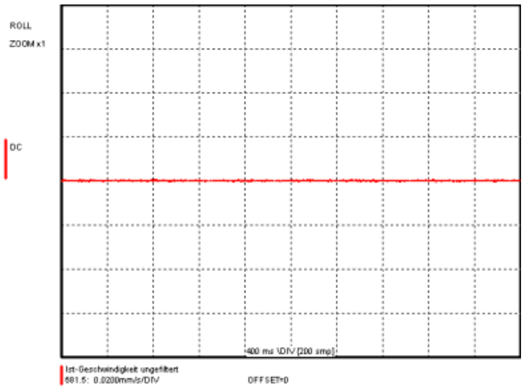
The less precise the resolution, the higher the quantization noise on the velocity signal.

Noise

The feedbacks have different levels of analog noise, which have a negative effect on the control. The noise can be dampened with the aid of filters in the actual value acquisition, however at the cost of the controller bandwidth.
For comparison, the noise of the actual velocity value at standstill of two different feedbacks is displayed.



Resolver: 1 period/revolution



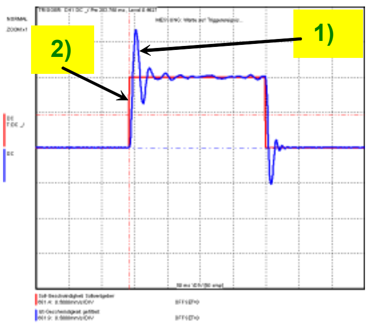
SinCos: 1024periods/revolution

Typical problems of a non optimized control

In this chapter you can read about:

Upon first setup of a control, the controller is normally not able to meet all applicati-on requirements at once. Typical problems may be:

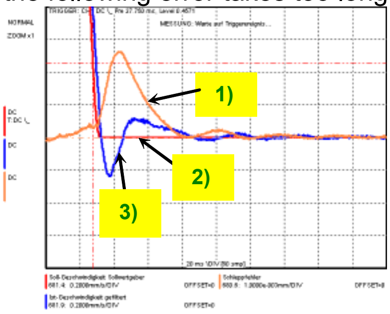
Too high overshoot on velocity



1) Actual velocity
2) Setpoint velocity

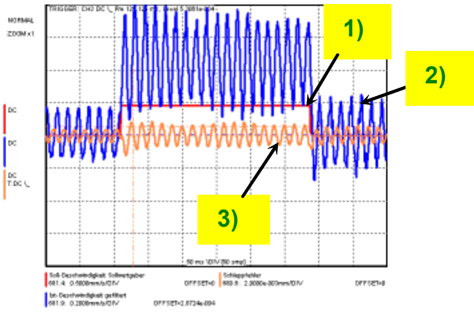
Increased following error

Increased following error when approaching the target position or the reduction of the following error takes too long



1) Following error
2) Setpoint velocity
3) Actual velocity

Instable behavior



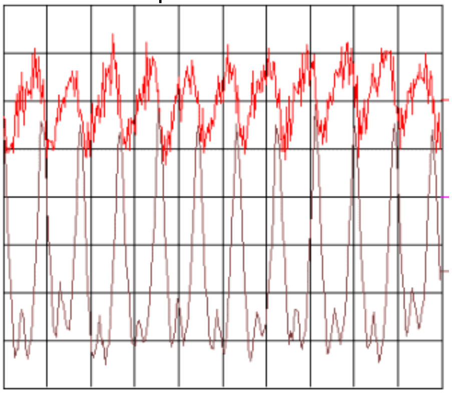
1) Setpoint velocity
2) Actual velocity
3) Following error

Feedback error compensation

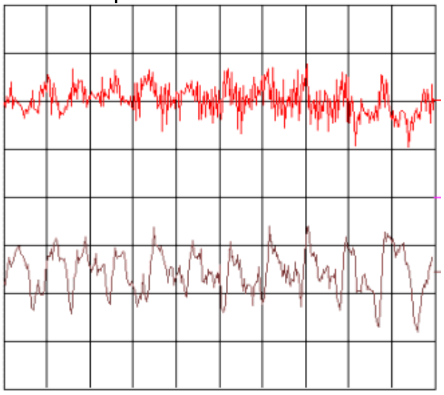
Feedbacks with sine/cosine tracks may have different errors. The feedback error compensation supported by Compax3 elinimates offset and gain errors on both tracks online.

The feedback error compensation is activated in the MotorManager: "Feedback system" wizard under "feedback error compensation".

Without compensation



With compensation



top:
bottom:

Scale:
Current = 50mA/Div
Speed = 0.2mm/s/Div
Time = 3.8ms/Div

Type of motor:	Parker LMDT 1200-1 ironless linear motor
Linear encoder:	Renishaw RGH 24B with 20µm resolution
Servo controller:	Compax3

In order to accept the changes in the MotorManager in the project, the individual configuration pages must be clicked through. In order to make the changes made in the MotorManager effective in the device, the configuration download in the C3Manager must be executed.
In the event of formal errors, the feedback error compensation may however be disadvantageous; therefore it is switched off as a default.

Commutation settings

Another prerequisite for a good control quality is the correct motor commutation. This comprises several settings.

- The commutation angle describes the relation of the feedback position with respect to the motor pole pair position.
- Commutation direction reversal describes the correlation between the position of the feedback and the commutation position.
- Feedback direction reversal describes the direction correlation between the defined positive direction of the drive and the feedback position.
- If the commutation direction does not match the defined direction of rotation, this will result in a subsequent error with the error message "following error" or "motor stalled".
- A faulty commutation angle value results in increased current and following error. Therefore the voltage limit is reached faster. If the value of the commutation error exceeds 90°, the motor will spin due to the positive feedback effect.

These 3 settings can be automatically acquired with the MotorManager.
With the aid of the automatiac commutation acquisition, the commutation settings can be determined and plausibility checks can be made. You will be guided through the individual wizard pages and the MotorManager will issue a prompt to define the positive direction of the drive. The wizard pages supporting the user depend on the feedback system as well as from the motor type (linear or rotary).

This function is activated in the MotorManager:
"Feedback system" wizard under "automatic commutation settings".

Hint The motor should be operated without load (=> no load torque e.g. weight force of a z-axis).

Additional setting of hte commutation for incremental feedback:
This function is activated in the MotorManager:
"Feedback system" wizard under "feedback resolution".

In the event of an incremental feedback (Sine/cosine or RS424 encoder) the commutation must be defined in addition, in order to find the position reference to the winding.

- Automatic commutation with movement
- Commutation with digital hall sensors

I²t - monitoring of the motor

In this chapter you can read about:

With the I²t - monitoring, the motor is protected against overload or thermal destruction. For this, knowledge on the load bearing capacity of the motor is required. This information van be taken from the manufacturer documentation (motor parameters). Compax3 monitored:

- Continuous usage of the motor (motor usage)
- Pulse usage of the motor (motor pulse usage)

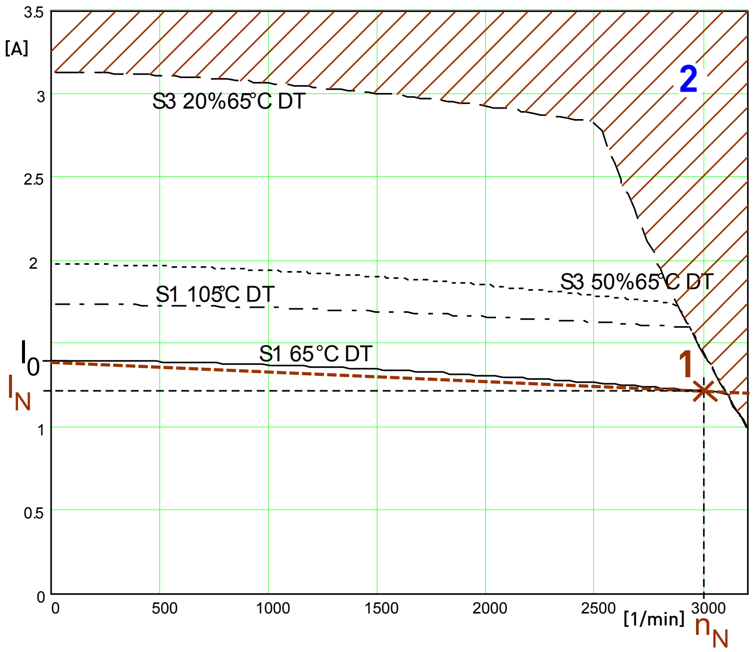
Motor continuous usage

In this chapter you can read about:

This kind of monitoring watches over the continually deliverable torque (continuous current). This continuous current depends on the velocity and is acquired online from the linearization of the motor characteristic line.

Linearized motor characteristic lien for different operating points

Nominal point



I_0 Continual stall current

1: Nominal point

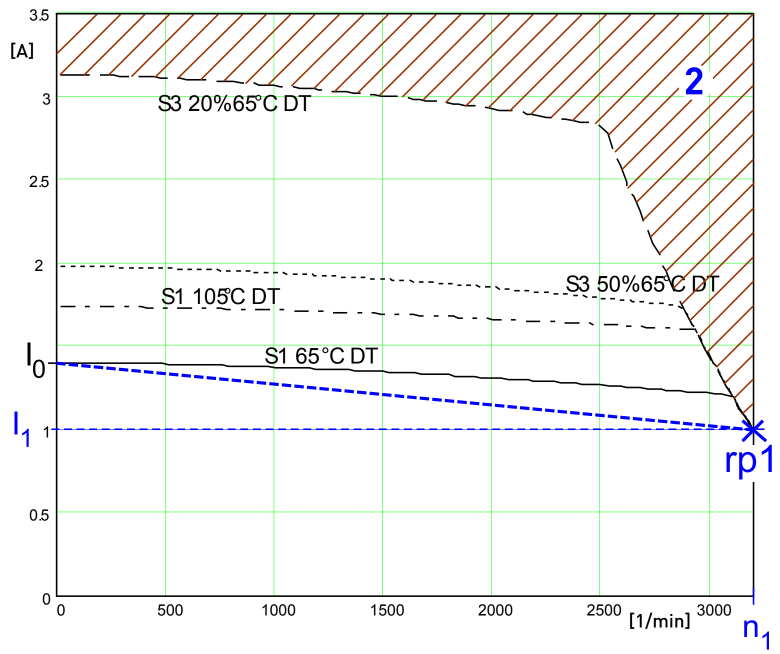
I_N: Nominal current (defined in the MotorManager)

n_N: Nominal speed

2: Forbidden range

For monitoring the continuous usage, the linearized characteristic line between I_0 und I_N / n_N is used as a threshold.

Reference point 1: higher velocity at reduced torque



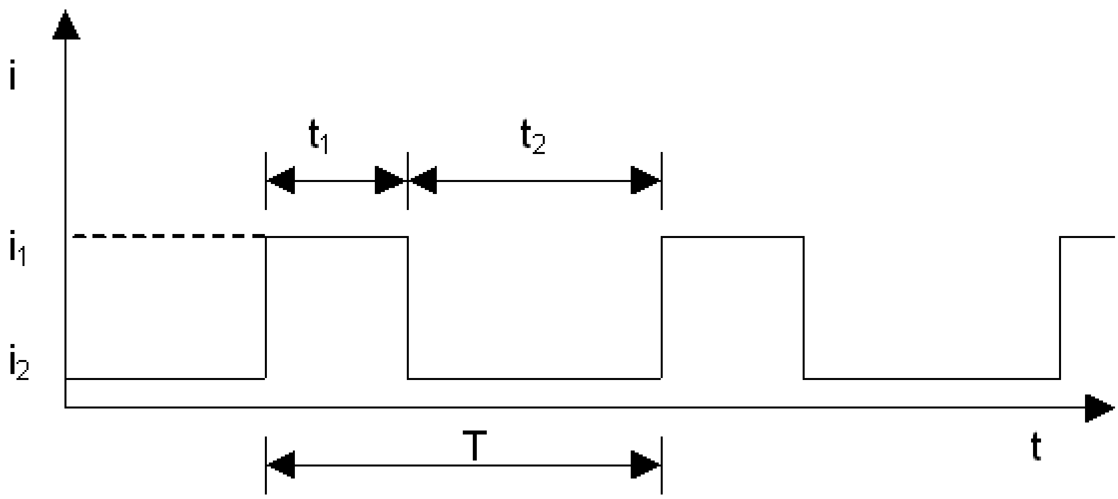
I_0	Continual stall current
rp1:	Reference point 1 (defined in the C3 ServoManager)
I_1:	Reference current to reference point 1
n_1:	Reference velocity to reference point 1
2:	Forbidden range

For monitoring the continuous usage, the linearized characteristic line betweenI_0 and I_1 / n_1 is used as a threshold.

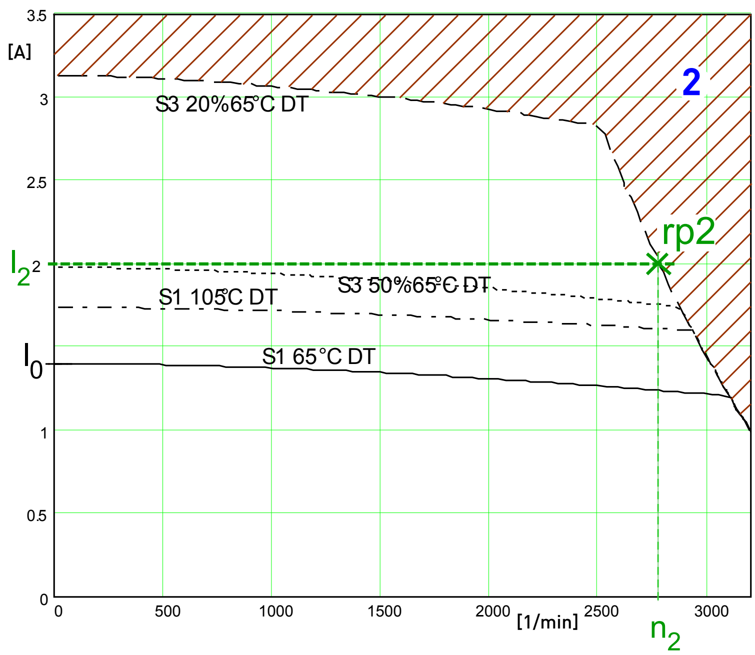
Motor pulse usage

This monitoring watches over the duration of the defined pulse current. The permitted duration for the pulse current is defined by the pulse current time constant.
If the acceleration current exceeds the nominal current for a defined time t1, a sufficient break time t2 is required. If the current remains in average above the nominal current, the "monitoring motor pulse usage" [0x7180] error is triggered.
Upon a high pulse usage, the error will occur almost without delay.

Current cycle:



Reference point 2: Increased torque thanks to additional cooling



I_0 Continual stall current
1: Nominal point
rp2: Reference point 2 (defined in the C3 ServoManager)
I_2: Reference current to reference point 2
n_2: Reference velocity to reference point 2
2: Forbidden range

In order to monitor the continous usage, the velocity-idenpendent current limit I_2 is used.

If a r.m.s. current over the valid straight flows continually in the motor, the I^2t monitoring will issue the "effective motor current monitoring" error message [0x5F48]. The period of time until the error occurs depends on the thermal time constant of the motor defined in the motor parameters. The electronic temperature monitoring simulates approximately the temperature behavior of the motor. By defining a reference point different from the motor nominal data, the I^2t monitoring of the motor can be adapted to changed thermal ambient conditions (e.g. air stream caused aby a ventilator fan).

Relevant appication parameters

In this chapter you can read about:

Application parameters relevant for the control (C3 ServoManager)
Compax3 is configured with the aid of the C3 ServoManager. Here you can make application dependant settings. Among these are also parameters, that are relevant for the control. They will be explained below.

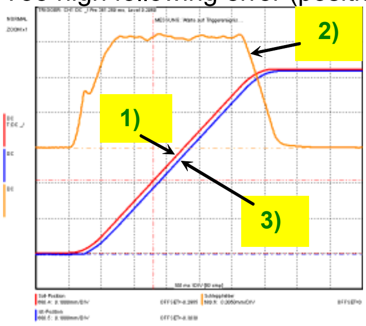
Switching frequency of the motor current / motor reference point

In this chapter you can read about:

The higher the switching frequency, the better the quality of the current control. The higher switching frequency reduces the dead time of the current control path as well as the current control noise. Furthermore, thermal losses caused by current ripple are reduced at higher switching frequencies.

Following Error (Position Error)

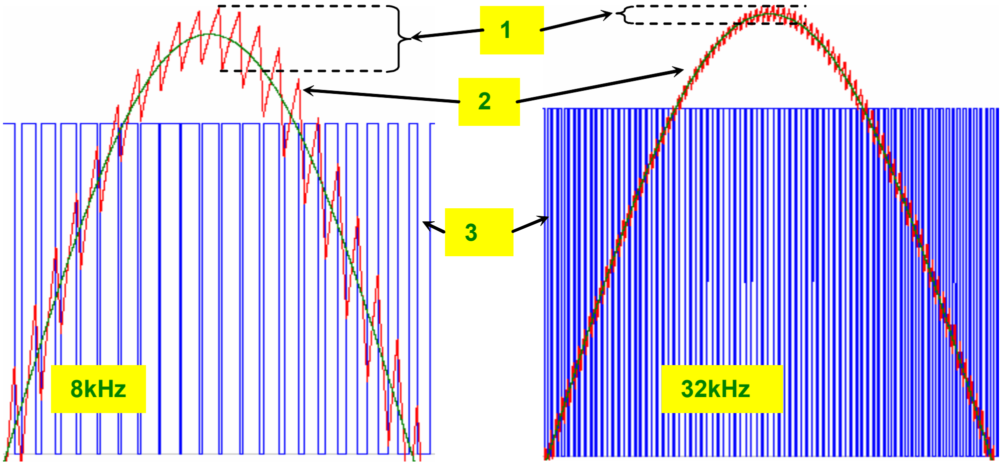
Too high following error (position error) during a movement



1) Setpoint Position
2) Position deviation = following error
3) Actual position

Reduction of the current ripple

Reduction of the current ripple of the phase current due to the higher switching frequency



1: Current ripple
2: Phase current
3: PWM control

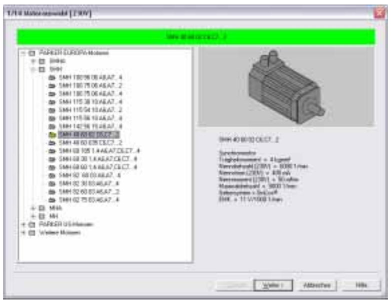
Hint Please note that a high switching frequency means also high switching losses in the power output stage of the controller. For this reason, you must consider derated data of the servo controller for the drive design with higher switching frequencies.

Motor parameters

In this chapter you can read about:

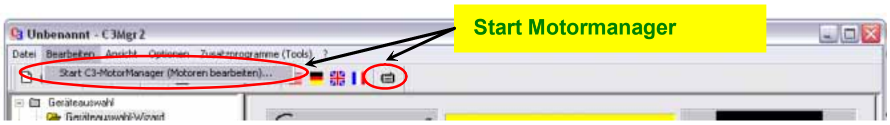
Parker Motor

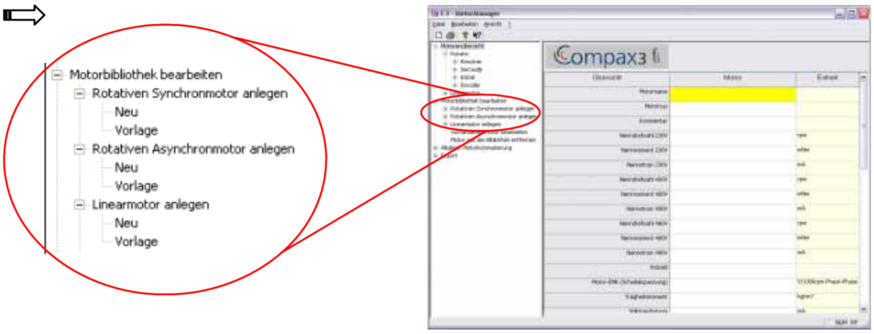
If a Parker motor is used for the appication, the parameters are already contained in the installed software. You can just select one of the available motors from the first configuration page.



Other motor

When using a motor from a different manufacturer, you will have to enter the relevant data. This process is supported by the MotorManager software tool, which can be called up from the ServoManager:





After doubleklicking on "new", the individual motor parameters are queried by the MotorManager.

Be careful to respect the units of the individual parameters when making your entries!

Furthermore you can use the MotorManager to edit motors already available. In addition, the import and export of motor data entities in XML format is supported.

Motor types supported

Compax3 supports the following motor types:

- Permanently excited synchronous rotaty motors
- Permanently excited synchronous linear motors
- Asynchronous rotary motors

In general, rotary and linear motors do have the same signal flow chart. The difference consists solely in the basic physical values, which refer to circular movement resp. the linear motion laws of physics. For this, the following analogies can be established:

Rotary drive [unit]		**Linear drive [unit]**	
Travel x	[rev]	Path x	[m]
Mass moment of inertia J	[kgm²]	Mass m	[kg]
Velocity n Angular velocity ω	[rps] [1/s]	Velocity v	[m/s]
Torque constant Kt	[Nm/Arms]	Force constant KF	[N/Arms]
Torque M	[Nm]	Force F	[N]

For reasons of clarity, we will in the following refer to the rotary motor, which will represent both drive types.

An asynchronous motor is set up in the same way as a synchronous motor. The only differences are varying motor parameters.

Changing the switching frequency and the reference point

The switching frequency and the reference point are activated in the ServoManager: "Motor reference point" wizard

A reference point differing from the nominal data may also be entered on the wizard page displayed above.
Please activate "activate changing the reference point", then you may enter the new reference velocity as well as the new reference current.

Motor reference point

A reference point differing from the nominal data may also be entered on the wizard page displayed above.
Please activate "activate changing the reference point", then you may enter the new reference velocity as well as the new reference current.

External Moment of Inertia

The external mass moment of inertia is set against the moment of inertia of the rotor to form the total moment of inertia. The total moment of inertia is used for the controller design.
If you do not know or have only a vague knowledge of the external mass moment of inertia, the mass inertia can be determined via the load identification.

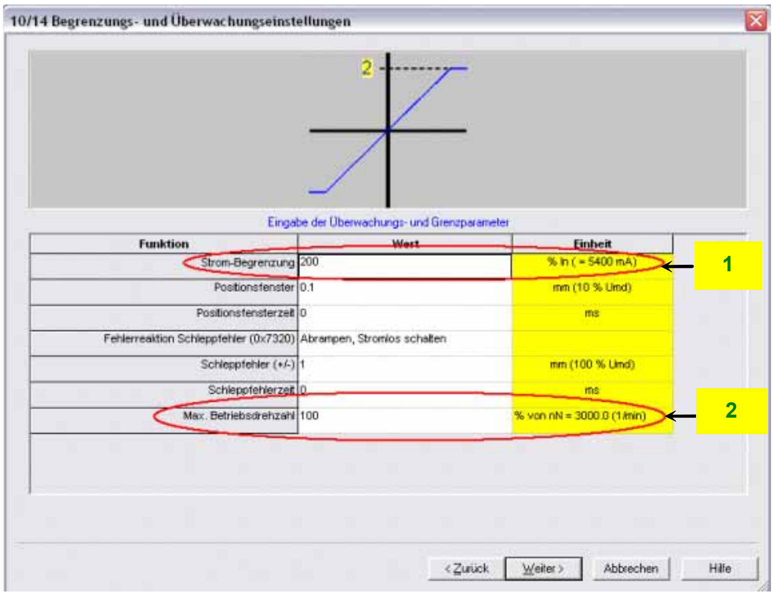
Configuration of an unknown external mass inertia:

The load identification is activated in the ServoManager:
Wizard "External moment of inertia" "unknown: using default values".
The correct values can be determined later via the load identification!

Limit and Monitoring Settings

On the "limit and monitoring settings" wizard page, you can set among others the current and velocity limits in % of the nominal values. The nominal values are motor parameters resulting from the motor library or from shifting the reference point on the "motor reference point" wizard page.

Limit and Monitoring Settings wizard page:



1: Current (Torque) Limit
2: Velocity limit

Asynchronous motors

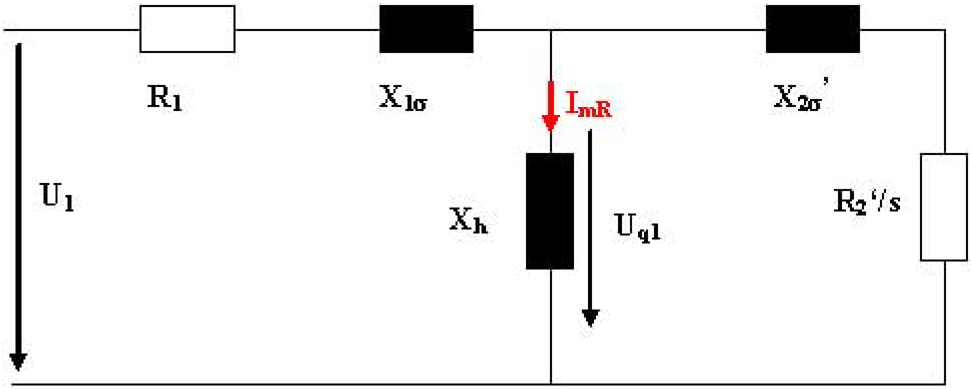
In this chapter you can read about:

Type specification plate data

On the 2nd. wizard page of the Compax3 MotorManager, the type specification plate data must be entered.

Replacement switching diagram - data for a phase

This data can be obtained from the manufacturer or be determined by measurement.



U1:	Nominal phase voltage
R1:	Stator leg resistance
$X1\sigma=2\pi fL1\sigma$:	Leak reactance (for f=50Hz mains frequency)
$L1\sigma$:	Stator leakage inductance
$X_h=2\pi fL_H$:	Main reactance (for f=50Hz mains frequency)
LH:	Main field inductance
$X2\sigma'=2\pi fL2\sigma$:	Referenced leak reactance (for f=50Hz mains frequency)
$L2\sigma$:	Rotor leak inductance
R_2':	Referenced carriage resistance
I_{mR}:	Magnetization Current

Slip Frequency

The slip frequency is stated in [hz electrical] or in [‰] and can be determined as follows
f2[mHz (electrical)]= (fs*60-Nnominal*P/2)/N

$$f_2[mHz(el.)] = \frac{f_S \cdot 60 - N_{Nenn} \cdot \frac{P}{2}}{f_S \cdot 60} \cdot f_S \cdot 1000 = \left(f_S - N_{Nenn} \cdot \frac{P}{120} \right) \cdot 1000$$

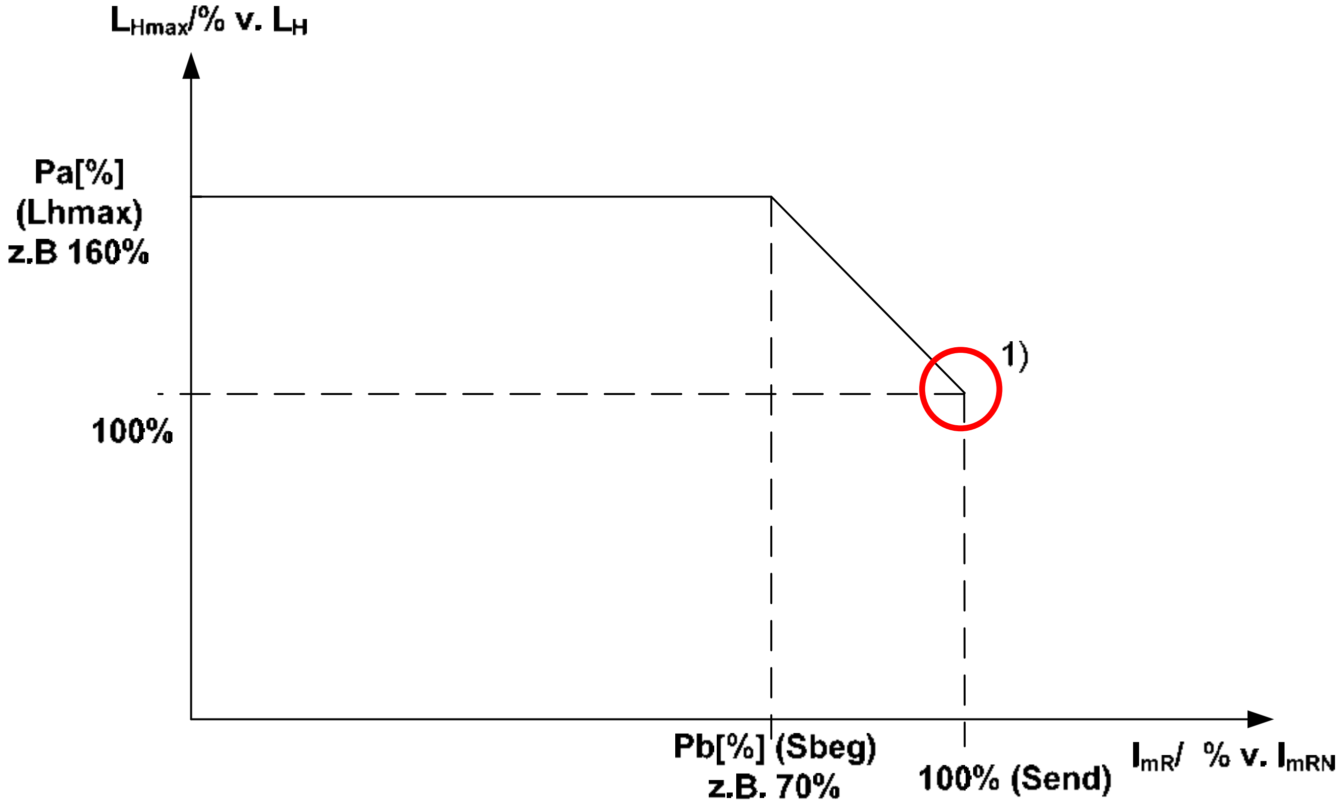
$$f_2[\text{Promille}] = \frac{f_S \cdot 60 - N_{Nenn} \cdot \frac{P}{2}}{f_S \cdot 60} \cdot 1000$$

Whereas P = value before the point of the term è $\frac{f_s \cdot 60 \cdot 2}{N_{Nenn}}$

f_s: Synchronous nominal frequency (dimensioning base)
$N_{Nominal}$: Nominal speed in rpm
f_2: Slip frequency in mHz (electrical)

Saturation behavior

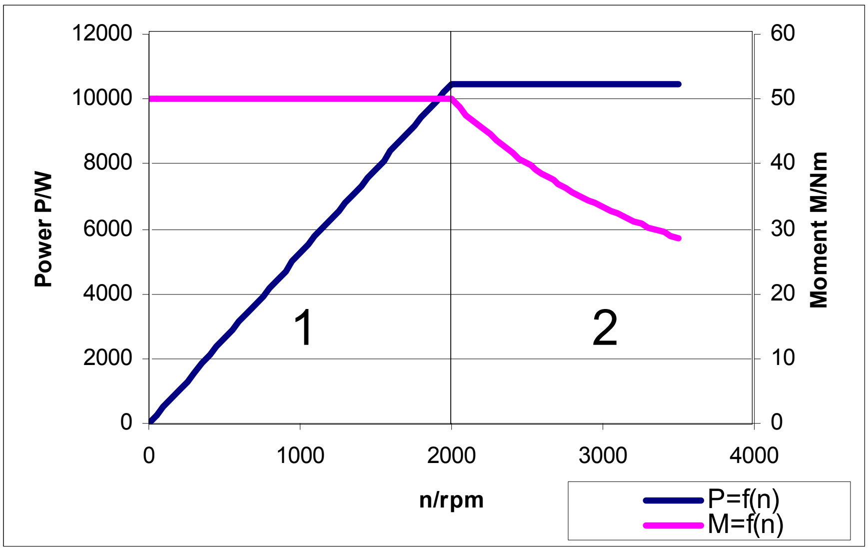
The saturation of the main field inductance can be considered with the help of the following characteristic.
Activate the "consider saturation values" checkbox.



1) Nominal point in the basic speed range
Lhmax: max. main field inductance
Sbeg: Beginning of Saturation
Send: End of Saturation

Cut-off frequency for the field weakening range

The statement of the cut-off speed defines the beginning of the field weakening operation. From the cut-off speed on, the magnetization current and thus the force constant of the motor are reduced inversedly proportional to the speed; the motor is operated in the field weakening range. In the field weakening range, the shaft power produced remains constant.



1: Basic speed range
2: Field weakening range

Rotor time constant

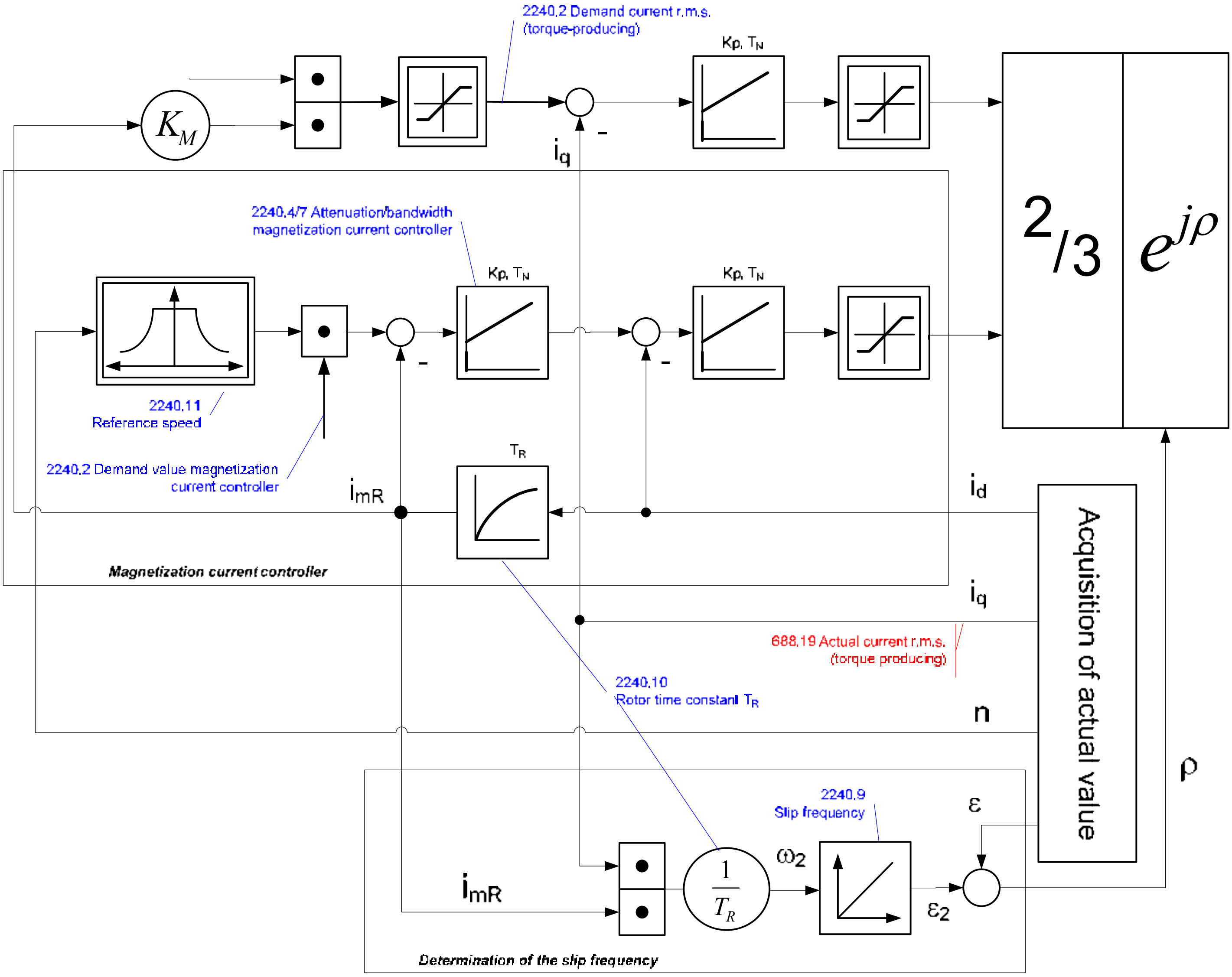
If the value of the rotor time constant is not known, it can be approximated automatically.

Determination of the commutation settings

On the last wizard page of the Compax3 MotorManager, the commutation settings (feedback direction reversal and commutation direction reversal) can be determined automatically.

Asynchronous motors: Extension of the controller structure

Structure of the magnetization current controller and determination of the slip frequency:



4.3.3.3 Automatic controller design

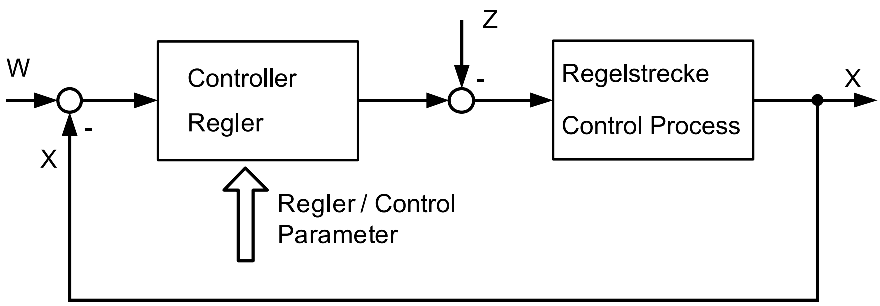
In this chapter you can read about:

Dynamics of a control

In this chapter you can read about:

A change in the input value of a dynamic transmission element causes a change of its output value. The change of the output value is however not immediately effective, but takes a certain time, the transient response. The course of the transient response is characteristic for certain kinds of transmission behavior.
For this reason, a complete description of the transmission properties of a control comprises the stationary behavior (all setpoint, actual and disturbance values in settled state), as well as the dynamic behavior.

Structure of a control



The basic task of a control is the generation and maintaining of a desired state or sequence in spite of interfering disturbances. It is essential that the effects of the disturbances are balanced with the correct force and at the correct time. In the above figure, the setpoint value W represents the desired state and the disturbance value Z represents the interfering disturbance. The actual value X represents the generated and maintained state.

Oscillating plant

Oscillating control paths are control paths that respond with attenuated or unattenuated oscillation to an abrupt change in the setpoint value. Part of this class are for instance:

- Linear actuators with toothed belts, as a toothed belt represents an elasticity.
- A mechanic shaft with an external mass moment of inertia, as the shaft represents an elasticity due to its torsional properties.
  In general this kind of elasticity is due to a high ratio between J_{Load}/J_{Motor}, as the shaft is normally not designed for this high external load and which may lead to a considerable distorsion.

stability, attenuation

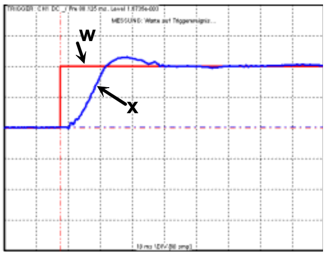
In this chapter you can read about:

In general, two stability problems may occur in a servo drive control:

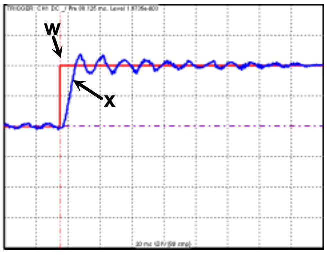
Stability problem in the high-frequency range:

The "control structure" figure shows that the reverse effect in the control loop (negative feedback) is a prerequisite for the functioning of a control system. Due to the delay in signal transmission, the effect of the negative feedback is diminished or even compensated. The reason is that the corrective measures of the controller are also delayed in the event of delayed signal transmission. This results in a typical oscillating course of the control variable. In the worst case, the deviation of the control variable and the effect of the corrective measures get in phase, if the delays reach a defined value. The negative feedback passes into positive feedback. If the product of the gain factors of all control loop components is higher than 1, the oscillation amplitude will continually rise.
In this case the control loop is unstable. In the total gain of 1 the oscillation keeps its amplitude and the control loop is within the limits of stability. The transient response can be characterized by the attenuation and the transient time (velocity).

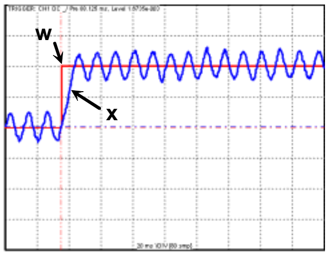
Step response of a stable controller and of a controller approaching the stability limit



Stable
Well attenuated



Stable
Poorly attenuated



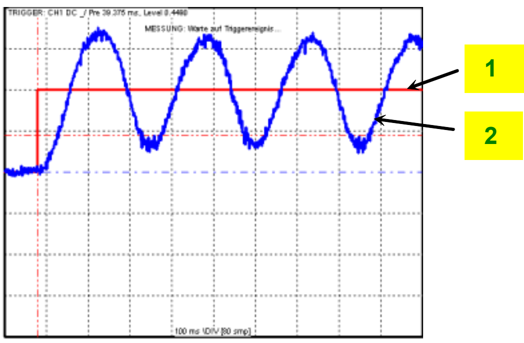
Stability limit
not attenuated

W: Setpoint value
x: Actual value

Stability problem in the low-frequency range:

In this case the controller was set for a very inert control path, while the actual control path is much more dynamic. The controller reacts to a disturbance variable with a much too strong corrective measure so that the disturbance variable is overcompensated and even an increasing oscillation may be the result. In this case the mechanic system of the control path may be destroyed.

Velocity jerk response (low-frequency stability limit)



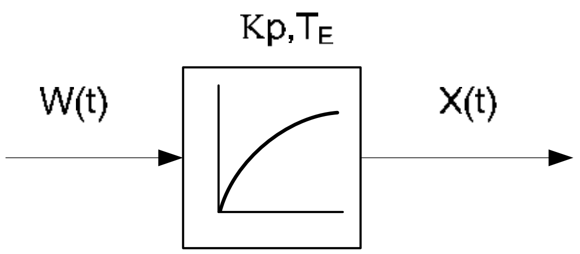
1: Setpoint speed value
2: Actual speed value

Velocity, bandwidth

In this chapter you can read about:

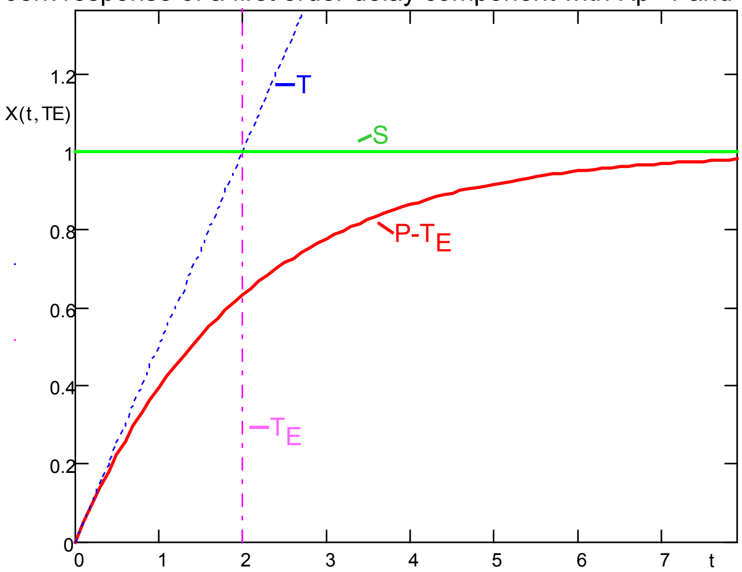
A well attenuated control loop can, under certain conditions, be approximated in order to simplify the controller design with a first order delay component (P-TE component) with the replacement time constant TE and the total gain Kp. A P-TE component represents a first order delay component and is a simple dynamic basic component.

P-TE - Symbol



Jerk response of a delay component

Jerk response of a first order delay component with Kp=1 and TE=2.0s



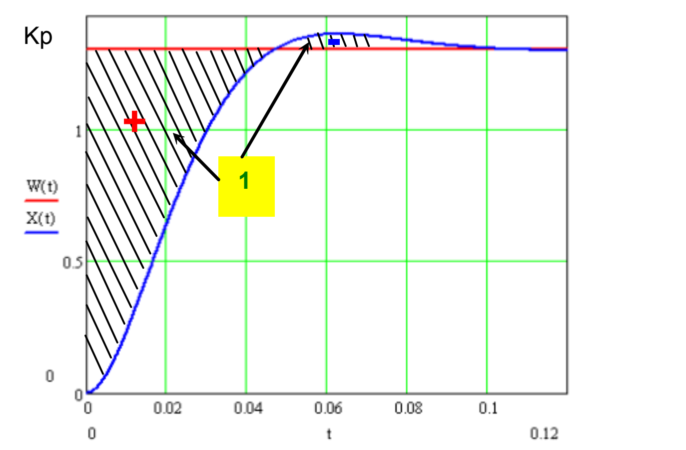
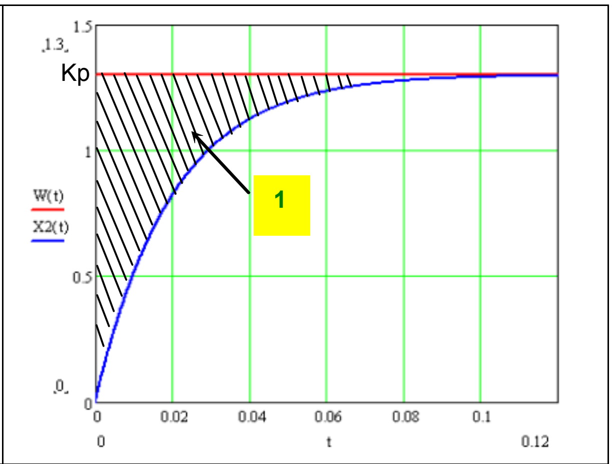
T: Tangent
S: Input jerk
P-TE: Output value of the P-TE component
TE: Time constant of the P-TE component
The definition of the delay time constant is displayed in the above figure. The time of intersection of the tangent and the jerk function itself is by definition the delay time constant (called filter time constant for filters) of a P-TE component. At this point in time the value of the jerk response is approx. 63% of the final value. In practice the jerk response corresponds, for instance, to the voltage charge curve of a capacitor.

Approximation of a well-attenuated control loop

The approximation of a well-attenuated control loop is based on the sameness of the control surface of the ideal first order delay component (P-T1 component) and the approximated system (P-TE component).
The control surface is a measure for the velocity of a system and is defined in the following figure. If the surface of the approximated system corresponds to the sur-

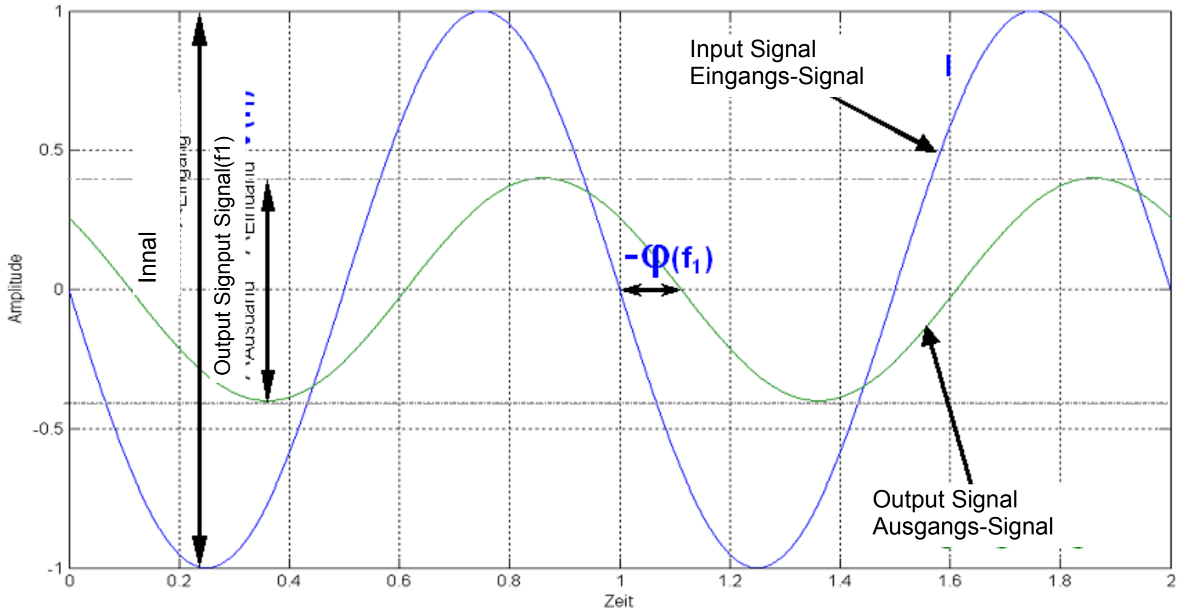
face of the ideal system, the approximated system can be described, up to a certain frequency, with the transmission function of the P-T1 component.

Determination of the control surface from the transmission behavior of a P-TE component.

	
1: Control surface of the approximated system	2: Control surface of the ideal P-T1 component

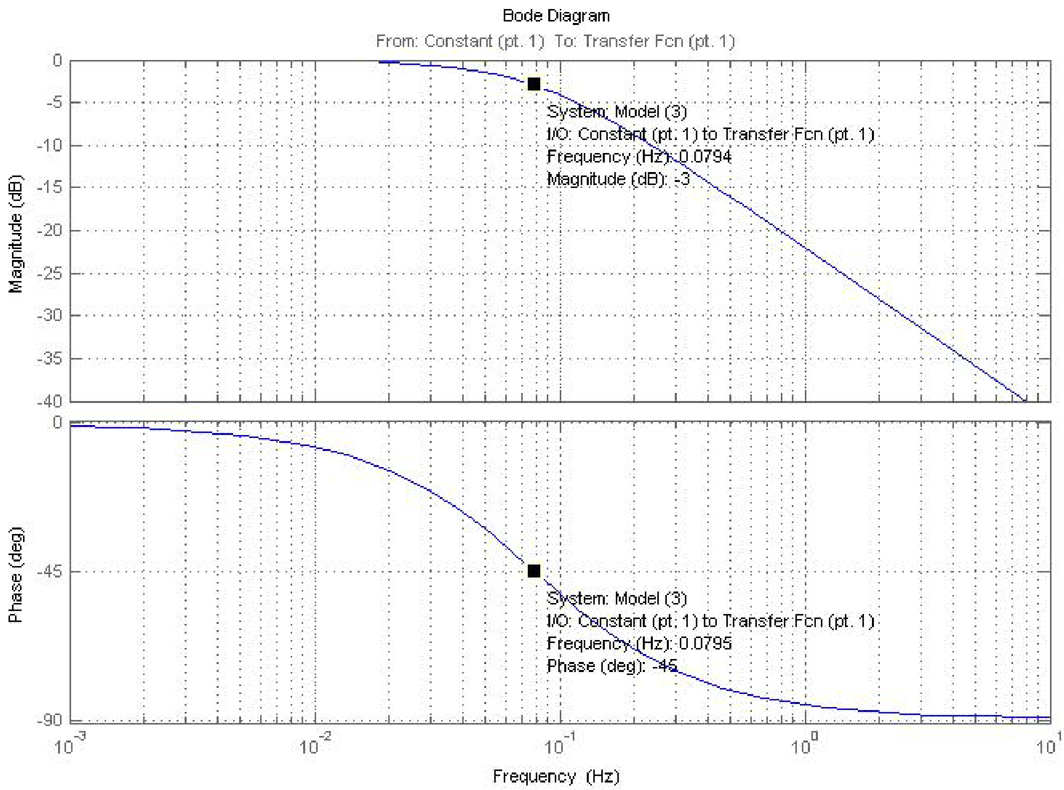
The velocity of a dynamic system can also be described in the frequency range. In the frequency range, the system behavior is analyzed to sinusoidal inputs signals of different frequencies (frequency response).

Input and output signals of a dynamic transmission component at a defined frequency f=f1



The bode diagram represents the behavior of a dynamic system (in our case of the P-TE component) against the input signal frequency with respect to amplitude and phase.

Frequency response of the P-TE component (value and phase)



The cutt-off frequency $f_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi \cdot T_E} = 0{,}0795Hz$ is the frequency where the input signal is attenuated by 3dB (-3dB attenuation). The phase shift between the output and the input is -45° at this frequency.
Precisely this cut-off frequency is called the bandwidth of a control loop.

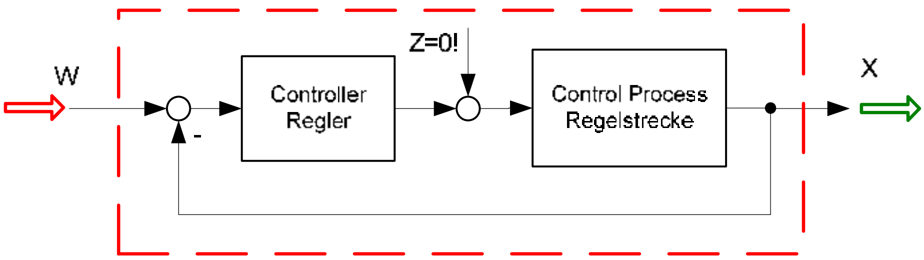
Setpoint and disturbance behavior of a control loop

In this chapter you can read about:

The setpoint behavior is the behavior of the control loop for the setpoint variable W. We assume that the disturbance variable Z=0.

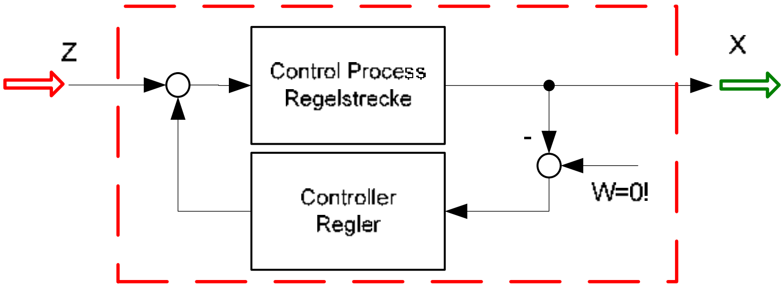
The disturbance behavior describes the behavior of the control loop for disturbance variable Z. In this case, we assume, in analogy to the setpoint behavior, that the setpoint variableW=0.

Demand behavior



W: Setpoint value
X: Actual value
Z: Disturbance variable

Disturbance behavior

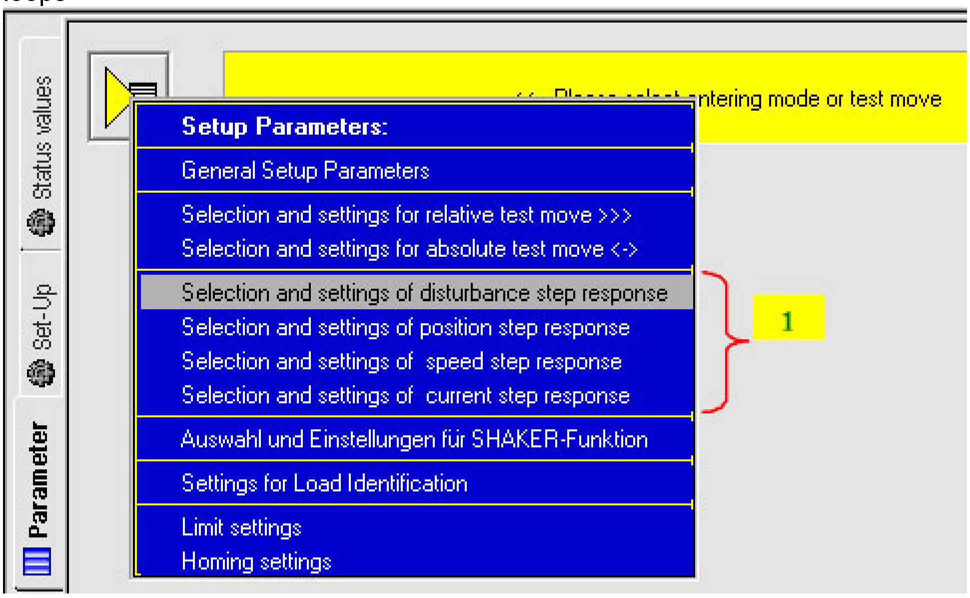


W: Setpoint value
X: Actual value
Z: Disturbance variable

In order to examine the disturbance and setpoint behavior, the Compax3 setup software offers 4 jerk functions.

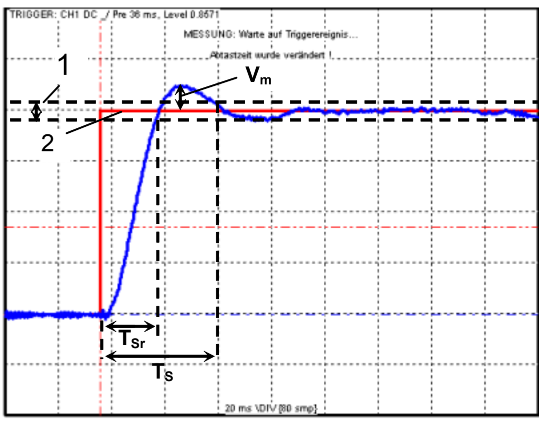
Test functions

Test functions for the analysis of disturbance and setpoint behavior of the control loops



1: 4 jerk functions
The properties of the setpoint behavior of the velocity controller can be acquired from the velocity jerk response.

Characteristics of a control loop setpoint response

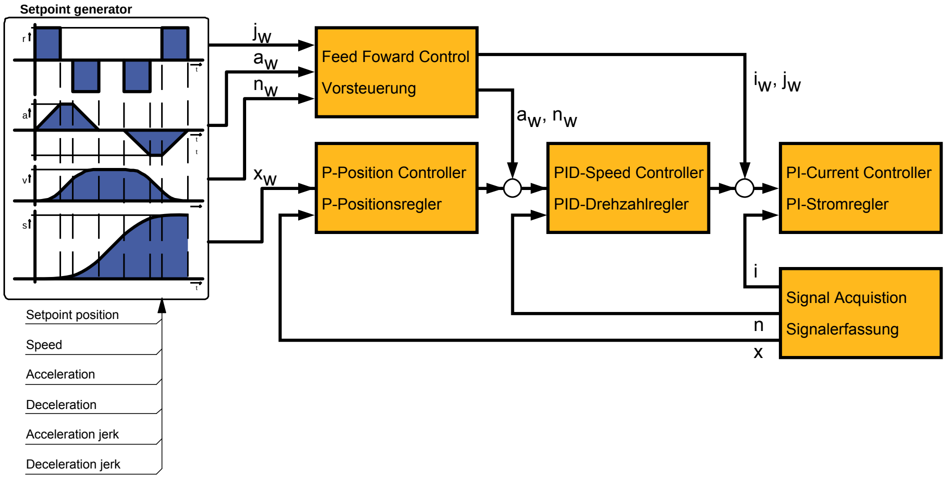


T_{Sr}:	Response time. (Time elapsing until the control variable reaches one of the +-5% tolerance limits for the first time)
T_S:	Settling time. (Time elapsing until the control variable ultimately enters the +-5% range)
V_m:	maximum overshoot width
1	Tolerance range +-5%
2	Setpoint value

response

The response of the controller is the behavior of the actual value with respect to the calculated profile of the setpoint generator. the kinematic status variables, speed, acceleration and jerk are fed into the cascade as feedforward signals. The feedforward signals work with calculated factors and contribute to an improved contour constancy due to the minimization of the following error.

Compax3 servo controller structure



x:	Position actual value	n:	Actual (rotational) speed	i:	Actual current value
x_W:	Setpoint position value	n_W:	Velocity setpoint value	j_W:	Jerk setpoint value
a_W:	Acceleration setpoint value				

Limitation behavior

Each control variable is limited by the control (actuating) element. If the control variable demanded by the controller is within the linear range (without limitation), the control loop shows the behavior defined by the design. If the controller demands however a higher control variable than permitted by the limitation, the control variable is limited and the controller slows down.

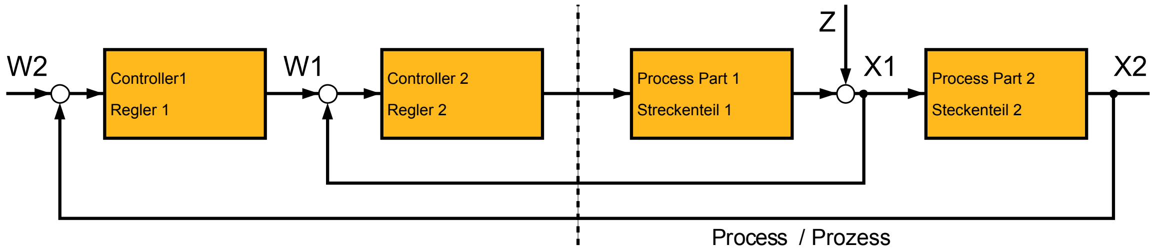
Hint You should therefore make sure that the control variable (output) of the controller does not remain within the limitation or only for a very short time.

Cascade control

In this chapter you can read about:

In drive technology, a cascading structure with several controllers (normally 3) is often used. This improves the control behavior. For this, additional sensors must be fixed within the control path. You will get the structure of a cascade control.

Structure of a cascade control



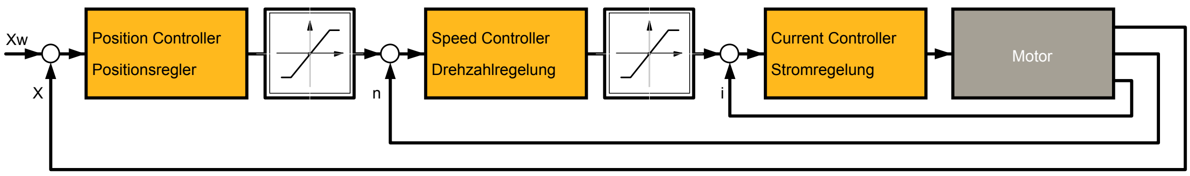
W1 Setpoint value (setpoint) for the superposed controller 2
W2 Setpoint value (setpoint) for the subordinate controller 1
X2: Actual variable (actual value) for controller 2
X1: Actual variable (actual value) for controller 1

The cascade control offers the following advantages:

- Disturbances occurring within the control path, can be compensated in the subordinate control loop. Therefore they must not pass through the entire control path and are therefore compensated earlier.
- The delay times within the path can be reduced for the superposed controller.
- The limitation of the intermediate variables can be made by the control variable limitation of the superposed controller rather easily .
- The effects of the non-linearity for the superposed controllers can be reduced by the subordinate control loops.

In the Compax3 servo controller, a triple cascade control is implemented with the following controllers - position controller, velocity controller and current controller.

Cascade structure of Compax3



Stiffness

In this chapter you can read about:

The stiffness of a drive represents an important characteristic. The faster the disturbance variable can be compensated in the velocity control path and the smaller the oscillation caused, the higher the stiffness of the drive. With regard to stiffness, we distinguish static and dynamic stiffness.

Static stiffness

The static stiffness of a direct drive is comparable with the spring rate D of a mechanical spring, and indicates the excursion of the spring in the event of a constant interference force. It is the ratio between the constant force FDmax of the motor and a position difference. Due to the I term in the velocity controller, the static stiffness is therefore infinitely high in theory, as the I term is integrated until the control difference vanishes. In a digital control the static stiffness is above all limited by the finite resolution of the position signal (the error must be at least one quantization step, so that it can be detected by the reading system) and by numerical resolution. Additional effects are for instance mechanical stiffness of the mechanic components in the control path (e.g. load connection, guiding system) as well as measurement errors of the measurement system.

Dynamic stiffness

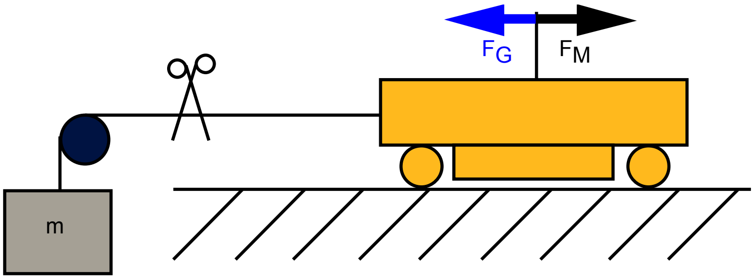
In this chapter you can read about:

The dynamic stiffness is described by the ratio between the change in load torque or in load force and the resulting position deviation (following error):

$$\frac{-\Delta M_L}{\Delta x}$$

The higher this ratio (=dynamic stiffness), the higher the necessary change is loard torque in order to generate a defined following error.
The dynamic stiffness can be acquired from the disturbance jerk response.

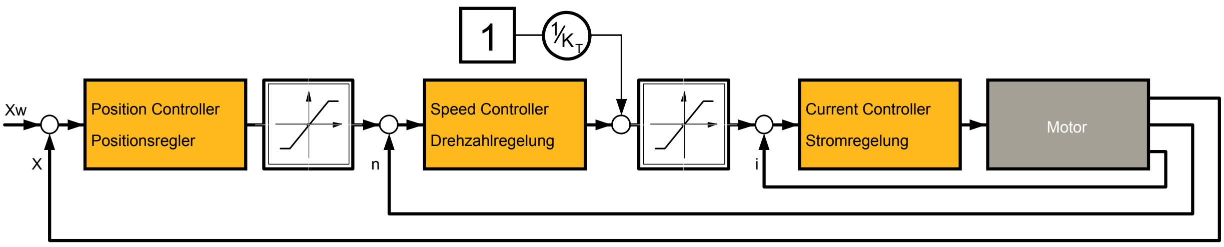
Traditional generation of a disturbance torque/force jerk



In settled state of the control, the motor force FM corresponds exactly to the load force FG=m×g.
If the cord is cut through, the load force is eliminated abruptly and the controller must first of all settle to the new situation.

In order to simulate this load jerk electronically, a disturbance current jerk is fed to the Compax3 as a variable proportional to the disturbance torque at the velocity controller output.

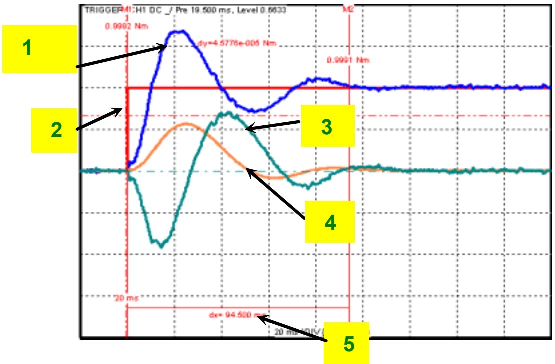
Electronic simulation of a disturbance torque jerk with the disturbance current jerk



1: Feeding in of a disturbance current jerk, which corresponds to a disturbance torque jerk.

The maximum amplitude an the settling time of the following error decline with rising dynamic stiffness. The settling behavior of the following error is furthermore a measure for the attenuation and the bandwidth of the control.

Disturbance jerk response



1: Compensation torque of the controller
2: Simulated disturbance torque
3: Actual speed
4: Following error
5: Settling time

Correlation between the terms introduced

The introduced terms:

- stability
- Attenuation
- velocity
- bandwidth
- setpoint and disturbance behavior
- Control variable limitation
- Replacement time constant
- Stiffness

are related as follows:

- A well-attenuated control features a stable control behavior.
- The velocity of a control loop is a measure for the reaction rate of the controller to the disturbance variable (disturbance behavior) as well as to the setpoint variable (setpoint behavior).
- The faster the control, the higher its bandwidth.
- The term replacement time constant is an approximation and is only valid in a defined scope1. In this scope, the control is always stable and well-attenuated.
- If the controller does not work in the linear range, but the control variable of the controller is within the limitation, the control slows down and the control difference rises.
- The stiffness represents the bandwidth of the velocity control. The higher the stiffness value of the velocity control, the higher the bandwidth of the velocity controller and the stiffer the drive.

Automated controller design

In this chapter you can read about:

The controller design takes place after the configuration immediately before the configuration download into the device. The controller coefficients are preassigned according to the design method of cross-ratios so that a stable control is achieved. The automatic, robust controller design calculates the P and I terms of the individual controllers (current, velocity, position) on the basis of the configured motor and application parameters.

Please observe: Faulty motor and application parameters may lead under certain circumstances to instable controllers.

The controller parameters are not directly available for the optimization. Instead, they can be changed with the aid of the following optimization parameters:

Optimization of the current controller dynamics:
- Current loop bandwidth in %
- "Attenuation of current loop" in %

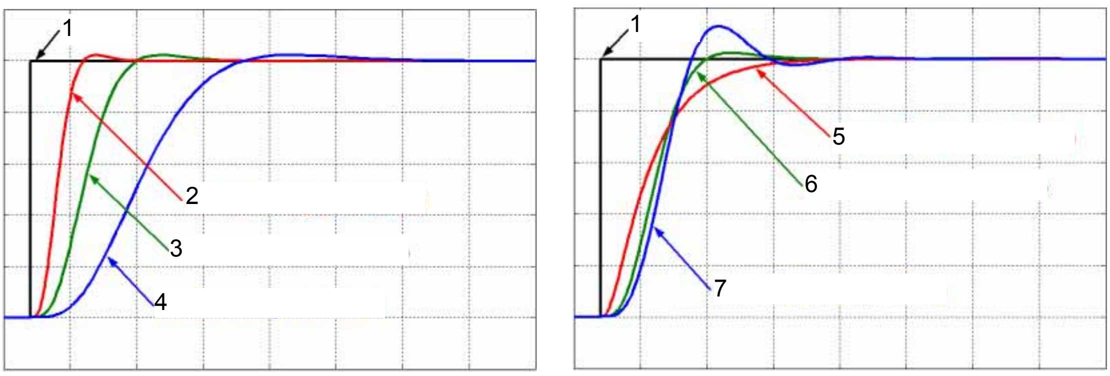
Optimization of the velocity loop dynamics:
- "Stiffness" in %
- "Attenuation" in %
- Velocity loop - "D" term in %

The bandwidth parameter states the actually effective % of the calculated default velocity. The default bandwidth of the controller is fixed to approx. fGR=531Hz. In reverse this signifies that each motor delivers the same jerk response. The prerequisite is, of course, that you keep out of the control signal limitation (voltage limitation). The attenuation characterizes the controller's tendency to oscillate with respect to an excitation signal (see below). The stiffness (of the velocity loop, corresponds to the bandwidth of the current loop) describes the velocity of the velocity loop (see below).

Jerk response of the velocity loop depending on the optimization paramter "attenuation" and "stiffness"

Attenuation = 100%

Stiffness = 100%



1: Setpoint value
2: Actual value (stiffness = 200%)
3: Actual value (stiffness = 100%)
4: Actual value (stiffness = 50%)
5: Actual value (attenuation = 500%)
6: Actual value (attenuation = 100%)
7: Actual value (attenuation = 50%)

D-term

The D-term parameter (of the velocity loop) activates existing control oscillations of drives with elastic coupling (e.g. toothed belt drives). The D-term is not automatically designed and must therefore be set manually.

Postition loop

The position controller is automatically adapted depending on the stiffness of the velocity loop.

Controller coefficients

In this chapter you can read about:

Dependance of the controller coefficients from th optimization objects

The controller coefficients are influenced by the optimization objects such as "stiffness" and/or "attenuation". The dependency is displayed below.

I-term KI in the velocity loop

$$K_I = \frac{St[\%]}{100 \cdot T_{EGD}}$$

$$\Rightarrow K_I \sim St$$

T_{EGD}:	the replacement time constant of the closed velocity loop.
St	Stiffness

Velocity Loop ”P” Term

$$K_{PV} = \frac{St[\%]}{100 \cdot T_{EGD}} \cdot \frac{Tm[\%]}{100} \cdot T_N \cdot \frac{100}{EMK[\%]} \cdot \frac{30 + 0{,}14 \cdot Dp[\%]}{20}$$

$$\Rightarrow K_{PV} \sim St \;\wedge\; K_{PV} \sim Tm / EMK \;\wedge\; K_{PV} = f_{LIN}(Dp)$$

T_{EGD}:	the replacement time constant of the closed velocity loop.
T_N:	The mechanical integration time constant of the motor.
$f_{LIN}()$:	Linear function (straight) between attenuation and KPV
Tm	Moment of Inertia
St	Stiffness
Dp	Attenuation

D-term of the KD velocity controller

$$K_D = \frac{Dterm[\%]}{100} \cdot K_{D\_100\%}$$

$$\Rightarrow K_D \sim Dterm$$

KD_100%:	The defined 100% coefficient
Dterm	D-term

P-term KV position loop

$$K_V = \frac{St[\%]}{100 \cdot T_{EGD}} \cdot \frac{20}{30 + 0{,}14 \cdot Dp[\%]} \cdot T_X$$

$$\Rightarrow K_V \sim St[\%] \;\wedge\; K_V = f_{LIN}(1/Dp[\%])$$

T_{EGD}:	the replacement time constant of the closed velocity loop.
T_X:	The position integration time constant of the motor.
St	Stiffness
Dp	Attenuation
$f_{LIN}()$:	Linear function (straight) between 1/attenuation and KV

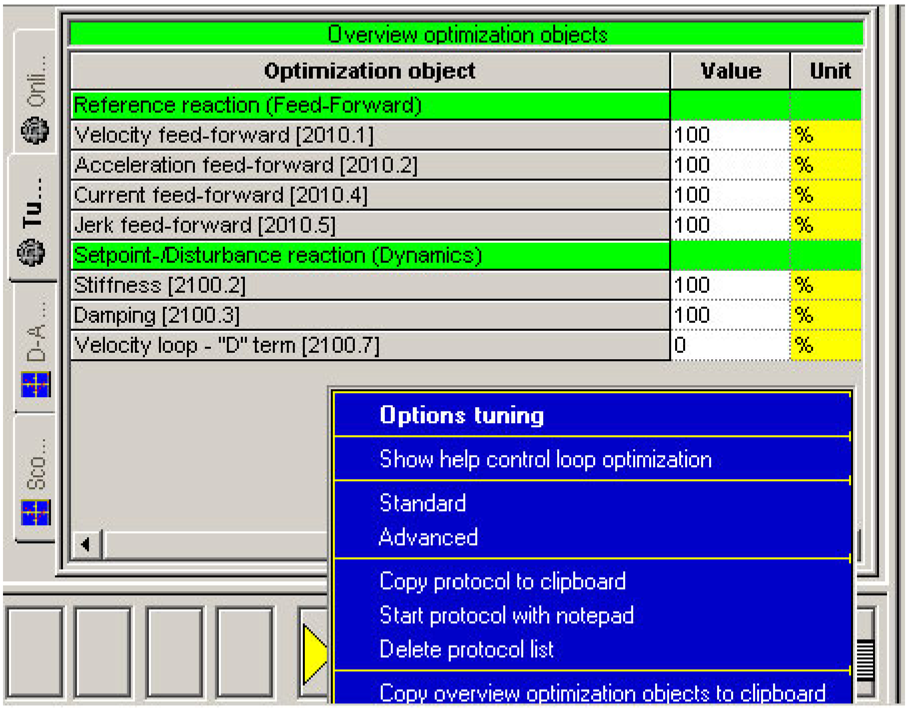
4.3.3.4 Setup and optimization of the control

In this chapter you can read about:

For the setup and optimization of the control loops, the optimization window is available.

The Compax3 control functionality is divided into 2 sections, standard and advanced; the advanced functionality does however incorporate the entire standard functionality. The switching can be made in the optimization window.

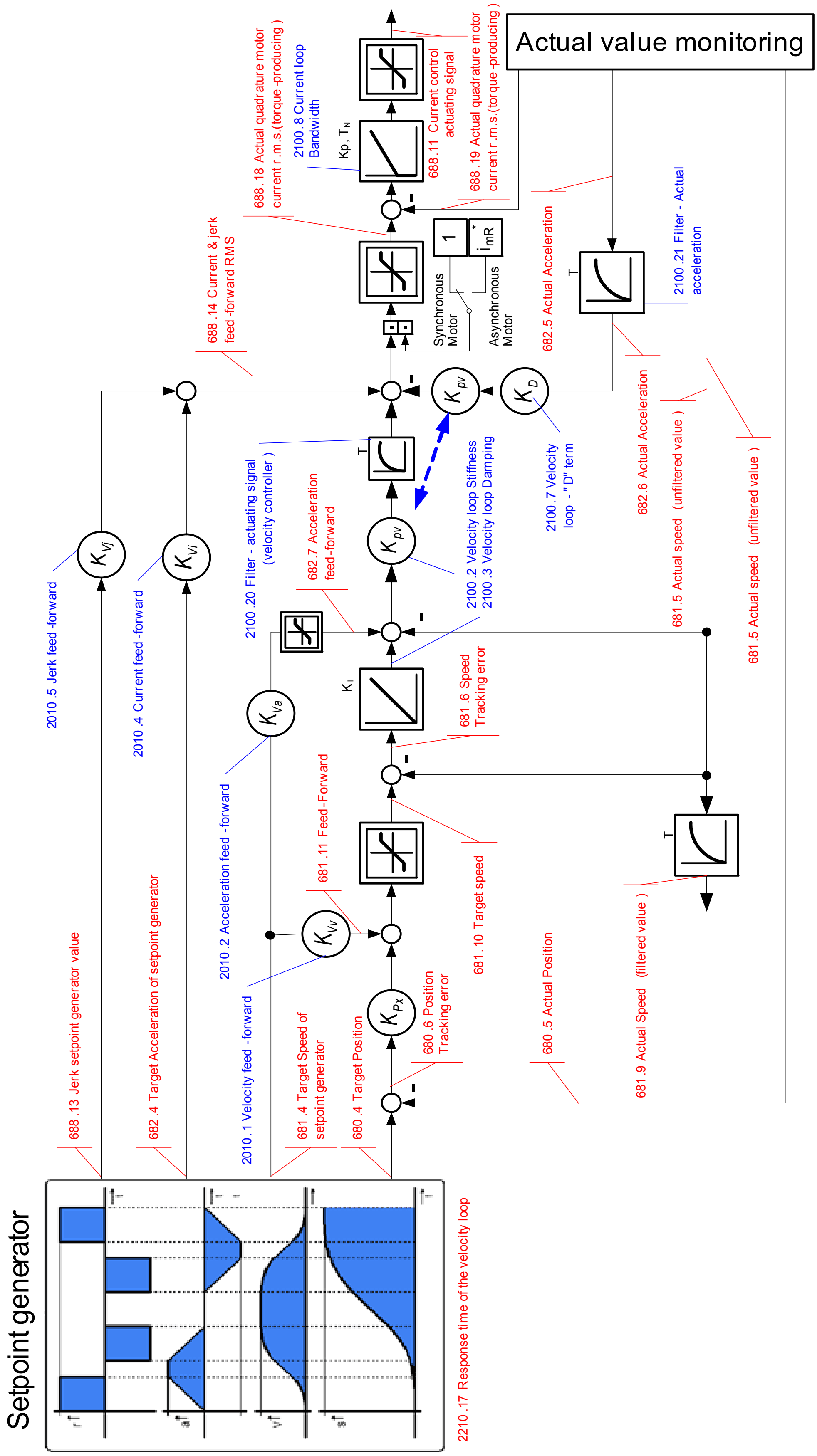
Switching between standard and advanced



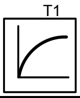
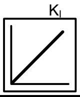
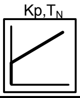
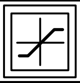
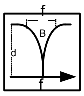
Standard

In this chapter you can read about:

standard cascade structure



During external setpoint specification, please respect the structure images for electronic cams or gearboxes for **signal filtering with external setpoint specification** (see page 240) !

Symbol	Description
K_p	Proportional term signal is multiplied with K_p
	First order delay component (P-T1 component)
	Integration block (I-block)
	PI-block
	Limitation block (signal limitation)
	Notch filter (band elimination filter)
○	Addition block
blue descrip-tion	Optimization objects (simple pointer line)
red descripti-on	Status objects (pointer line with vertical stroke)

Standard optimization parameters

Overview optimization objects

Optimization object	Value	Unit
Reference reaction (Feed-Forward)		
Velocity feed-forward [2010.1]	100	%
Acceleration feed-forward [2010.2]	100	%
Current feed-forward [2010.4]	100	%
Jerk feed-forward [2010.5]	100	%
Setpoint-/Disturbance reaction (Dynamics)		
Stiffness [2100.2]	100	%
Damping [2100.3]	100	%
Velocity loop - "D" term [2100.7]	0	%

The above figure shows the parameters for the standard group. With the aid of these parameters, you can optimize the standard cascade structure.

Control signal limitations

In this chapter you can read about:

The cascade structure shows that a limitation block is available in the control signal sector of each controller. The limitations of the position and velocity loops are calculated from the set limitations in the configuration and the motor parameters of the selected motor.

Limitation of hte setpoint velocity

Limitation of the setpoint velocity in the control signal sector of the position loop: This limitation value is calculated from the maximum mechanical velocity of the motor and the set value in the configuration in % of the nominal velocity. The smaller of the two values is used for the limitation.

Example

MotorManager	
maximum mechanical velocity of the motor:	n_{max}=3100rpm
Rated speed of the motor:	n_N=2500rpm
C3 ServoManager	
Maximum Operating Speed:	n_{bmax}=200% of n_N => 5000rpm
Velocity limitation value = ***MIN(n_{max}, n_{bmax}*n_N/100)=***	***3100rpm***

Limitation of the setpoint current

Limitation of the setpoint current in the control signal sector of the velocity loop: This limitation value is calculated from the device peak current, the pulse current of the motor and the set value in the configuration in % of the nominal current. The smaller of the three values is used for the current limitation.

Example

Device	
C3 S063 V2 F10 T30 M00 device peak current:	I_{Gmax}=12.6A_{rms}
MotorManager	
Rated current of the motor:	I_N=5.5Arms
Peak Current:	I_{imp}=300 %I_N => 16.5A_{rms}
C3 ServoManager	
Current (Torque) Limit:	I_{bmax}=200% of I_N => 11A_{rms}
Current limitation value = ***MIN(I_{Gmax}, I_{imp}*I_N/100, Ibmax*I_N/100)=***	***11A_{eff}***

Limitation of the control voltage

Limitation of the control voltage in the control signal sector of the current loop: This limitation is fixed and cannot be influenced by the user. The limitation value depends on the DC voltage of the device.

Please note! In the event of highly dynamic motion cycles it is necessary to make sure not to enter the control signal limitation (or, if so only for a very short time) as the drive is then not in the position to follow the set dynamics due to the slow drive physics and the limited control signal range.

Feedforward channels

In this chapter you can read about:

The feedforward channels are used for the specific influence of the guiding behavior of a control. The calculated and evaluated status variables are coupled into the corresponding places within the controller cascade. In practice, the feedforward control offers the following advantages:

- Minimal following error
- Improves the transient response
- Gives greater dynamic range with lower maximum current

The Compax3 servo controller disposes of four feedforward measures (see in the standard cascade structure):

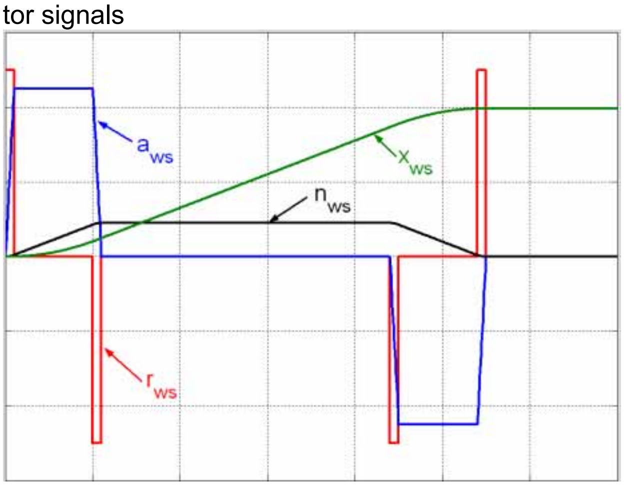
- Velocity feed-forward
- Acceleration feed-forward
- Current feed-forward
- Jerk feed-forward

The above order represents at the same time the effectiveness of the individual feedforward measures. The influence of the jerk feedforward may be, depending on the profile and the motor, negligeably small.

Please note! But the principle of feedforward control fails in limiting the motor current or the motor speed during the acceleration phase!

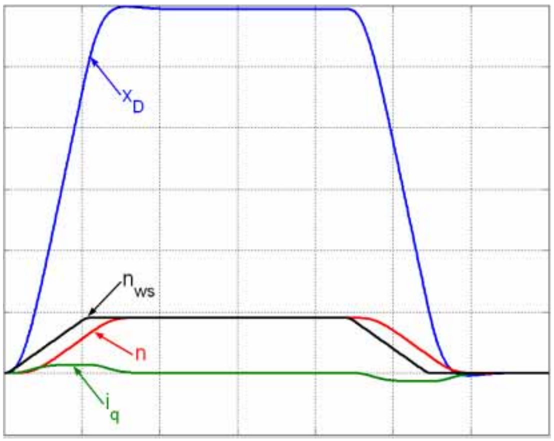
Influence of the feedforward measures

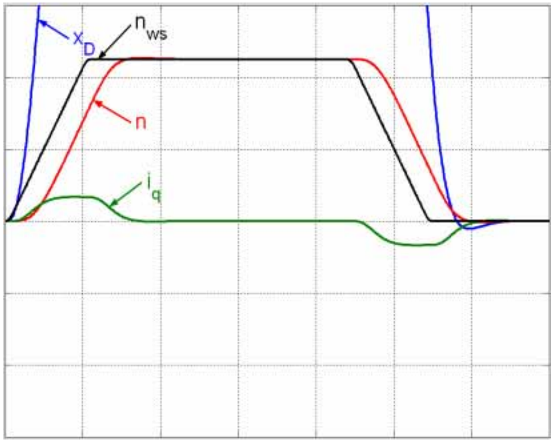
Following error minimization by feedforward control / course of the setpoint generator signals



xws:	Position setpoint value of the setpoint generator
nws:	Velocity setpoint - setpoint generator
aws:	Acceleration setpoint value setpoint generator
rws:	Jerk setpoint value setpoint generator

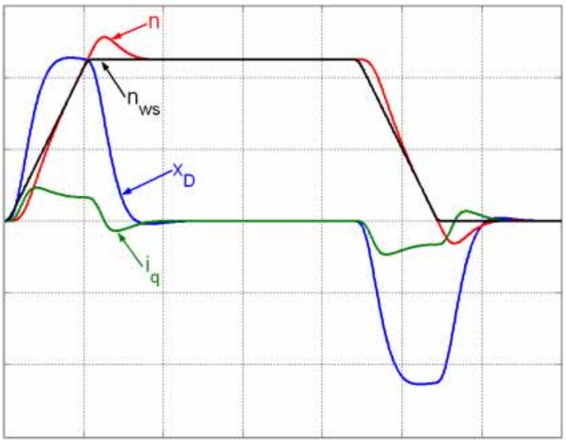
Motion cycle without feedforward control



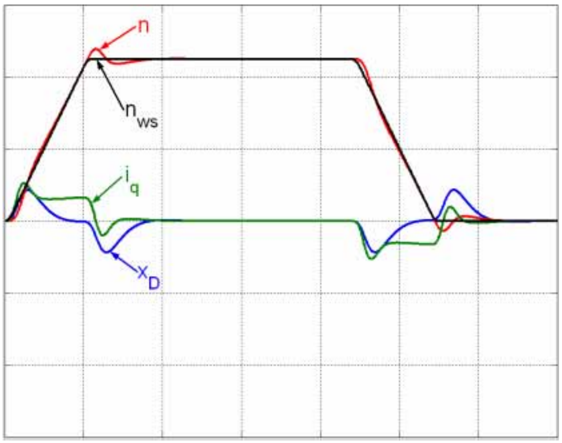


Motion cycle with feedforward measures

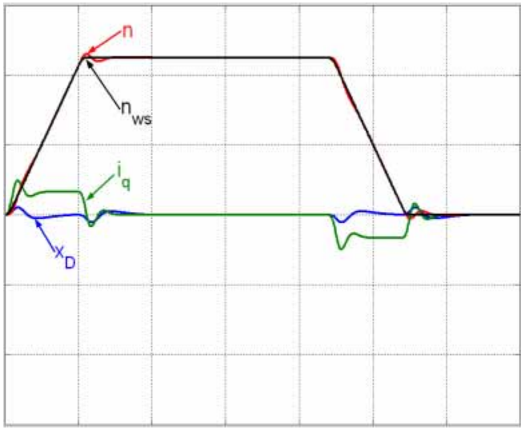
Velocity feedforward



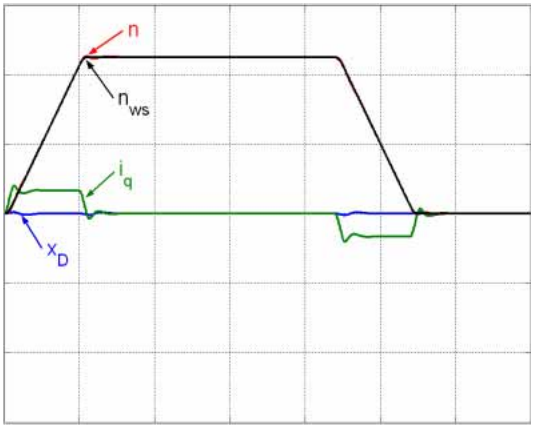
Velocity and acceleration feedforward



Velocity,acceleration and current feedforward



Velocity,acceleration , current and jerk feedforward



Control signal filter / filter of actual acceleration value

The filters in the Compax3 firmwar are implemented as P-T1 filters (first order delay component see chapter 0)
The two "control signal filter (velocity loop)" (Object 2100.20) and "acceleration value filter" (Object 2100.21) are set in µs. The value range for these filters is 63... 8 300 000µs. Depending on the replacement time consant of the closed velocity loop, we can make recommendations for the setting.

Setting recommendation for "control signal filter (velocity loop)":

O2100.20 = O2210.17[µs] / 5	for O2210.17 ≥ 10 000µs
O2100.20 = O2210.17[µs] / 3 - 1333µs	for 4000µs ≥ O2210.17 < 10 000
O2210.20 = 0	for O2210.17 < 4000µs

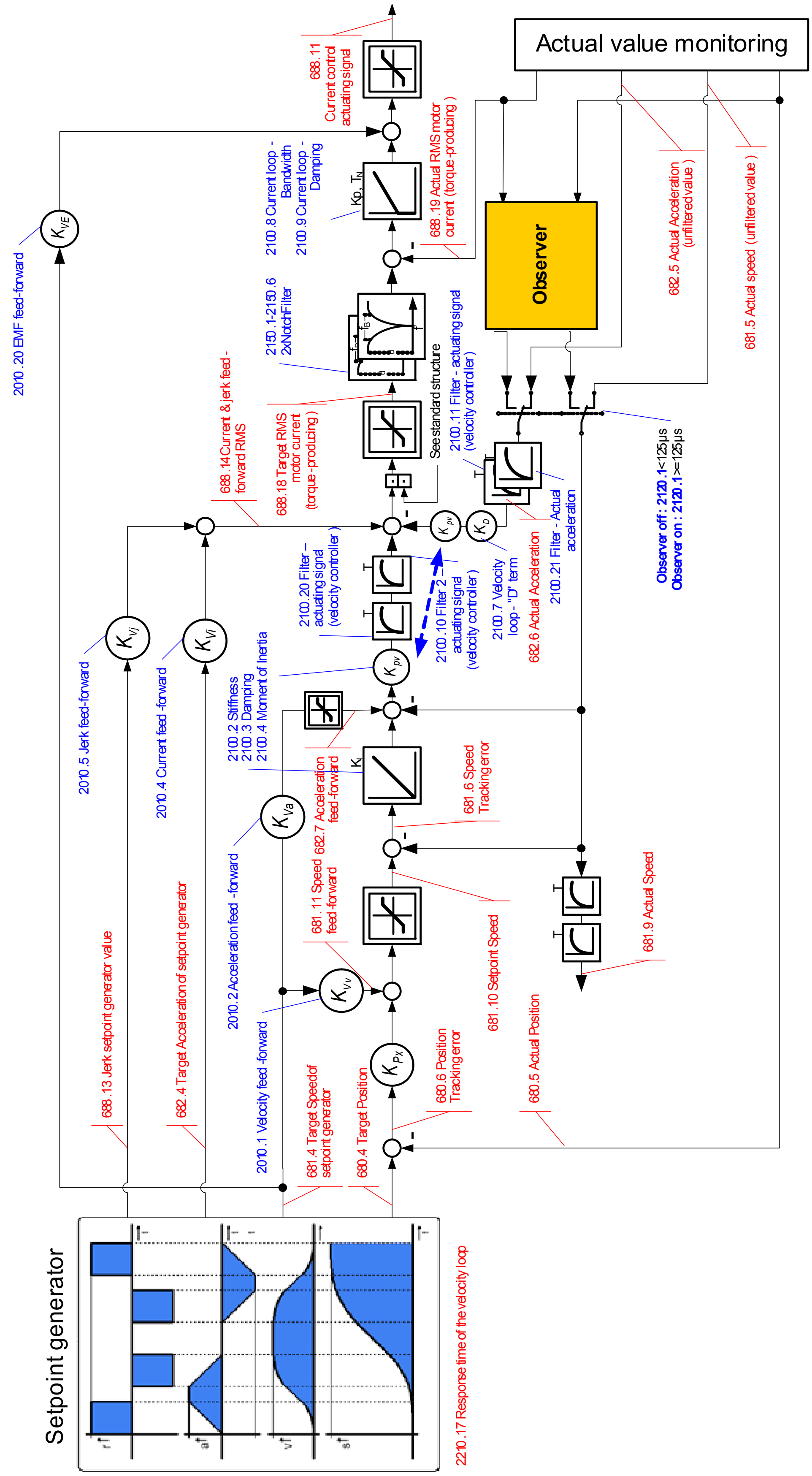
O2210.17: Object recplacement time constant of the velocity loop in µs.
O2100.20: Object control signal filter (velocity loop) in µs.

Please note! It cannot be excluded that the filter may have a destabilizing effect even though set according to the above recommendation. In this case the filter time constant must be reduced.

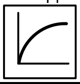
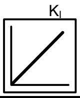
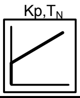
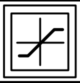
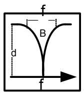
Advanced

In this chapter you can read about:

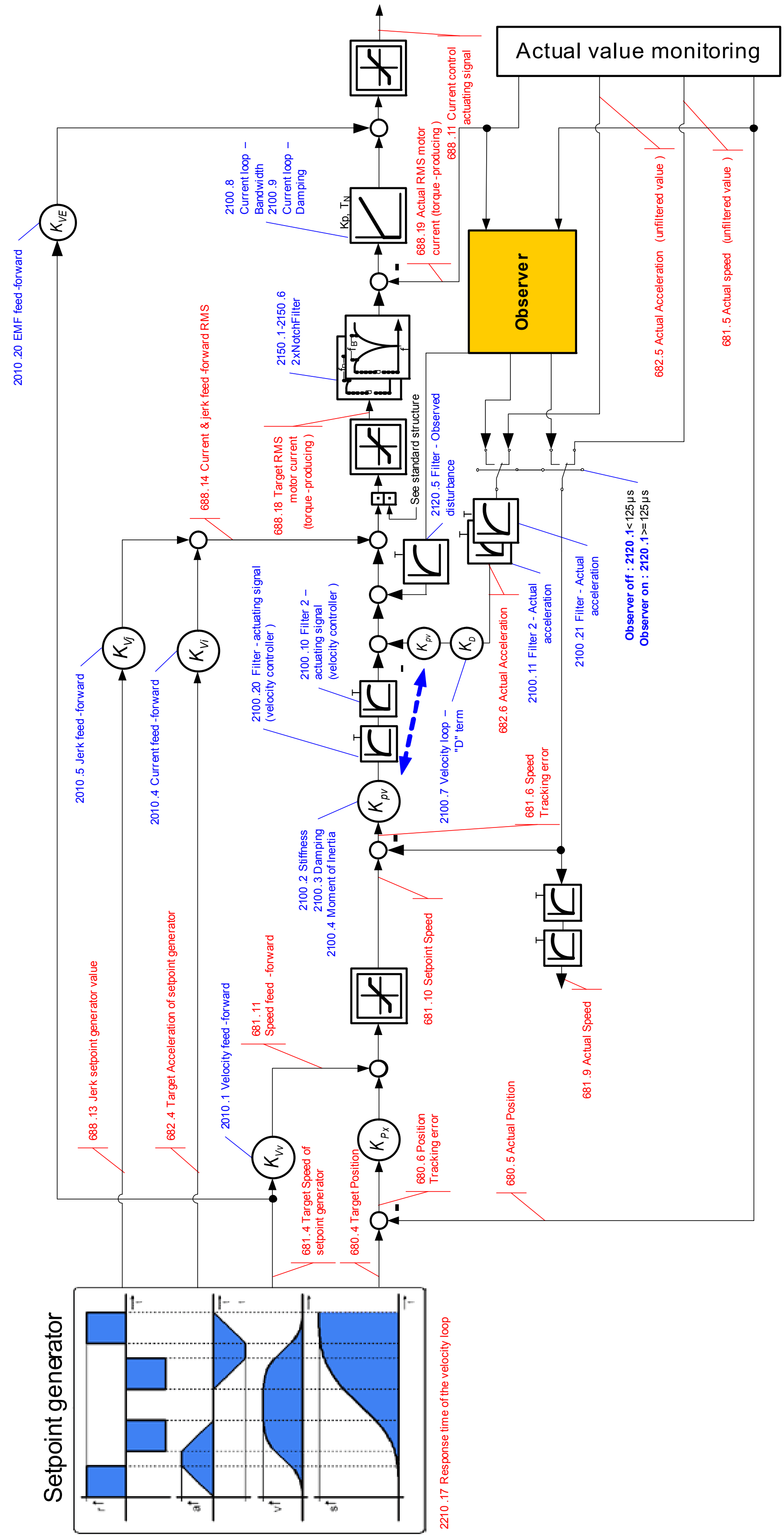
Extended cascade (structure variant 1)



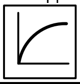
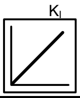
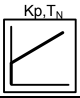
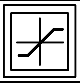
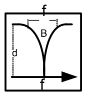
During external setpoint specification, please respect the structure images for electronic cams or gearboxes for **signal filtering with external setpoint specification** (see page 240) !

Symbol	Description
K_p	Proportional term signal is multiplied with K_p
T1 	First order delay component (P-T1 component)
K_I 	Integration block (I-block)
Kp,T_N 	PI-block
	Limitation block (signal limitation)
	Notch filter (band elimination filter)
○	Addition block
blue description	Optimization objects (simple pointer line)
red description	Status objects (pointer line with vertical stroke)

Extended cascade structure (structure variant 2 with disturbance variable observer)



During external setpoint specification, please respect the structure images for electronic cams or gearboxes for **signal filtering with external setpoint specification** (see page 240) !

Symbol	Description
K_p	Proportional term signal is multiplied with K_p
T1 	First order delay component (P-T1 component)
K_I 	Integration block (I-block)
Kp, T_N 	PI-block
	Limitation block (signal limitation)
	Notch filter (band elimination filter)
○	Addition block
blue descrip- tion	Optimization objects (simple pointer line)
red descripti- on	Status objects (pointer line with vertical stroke)

Optimization parameter Advanced

Overview optimization objects

Optimization object	Value	Unit
Reference reaction (Feed-Forward)		
Velocity feed-forward [2010.1]	100	%
Acceleration feed-forward [2010.2]	100	%
Current feed-forward [2010.4]	100	%
Jerk feed-forward [2010.5]	100	%
Setpoint-/Disturbance reaction (Dynamics)		
Stiffness [2100.2]	100	%
Damping [2100.3]	100	%
Moment of Inertia [2100.4]	100	%
Velocity loop - "D" term [2100.7]	0	%
Filter - Actual velocity [2100.5]	100	%
Filter 2 - actuating signal (velocity controller) [2100.10]	0	us
Filter - Actual acceleration [2100.6]	0	%
Filter 2 - Actual acceleration [2100.11]	0	us
Current loop - Bandwidth [2100.8]	50	%
Current loop - Damping [2100.9]	100	%
Observer		
Time Constant [2120.1]	0	us
Filter - Observed disturbance [2120.5]	1000	us
Enable Disturbance Compensation [2120.7]	0	
Filter external signal source		
Filter - Ext. velocity feed-forward [2011.1]	500	%
Filter - Ext. accel. feed-forward [2011.2]	500	%
Trackingfilter HEDA [2109.1]	0	500us
Filter setpoints		
Trackingfilter [2110.1]	1	500us
Filter velocity [2110.3]	0	%
Filter acceleration [2110.4]	0	%
Analog Input		
Offset [170.4]	0	
Gain [170.2]	1	

EMC feedforward

The EMC feedforward compensates the electromagnetically generated back e.m.f. of the motor U_{EMC}. This signal is proportional to velocity and is deduced from the setpoint velocity of the setpoint generator.

Motor parameters

Furthermore you can re-optimize the motor parameters inductance, resistance and EMC (or Kt) in the advanced mode. The LdLqRatio parameter is the ratio of the smallest and the highest inductance value of the winding, measured during one motor revolution.

Filter "External Command Interface"

For explanations on this group of parameters please see chapter 0

Voltage decoupling

In the current control path there is a velocity and current proportional voltage disturbance variable, which must be compensated by the current loop. Due to limited controller dynamics, this disturbance variable can not always be entirely compensated by the current loop. The influence of this disturbance variable may however be minimized by activating the voltage decoupling.

Load control

If a second position feedback is available for the acquisition of the load position, the load control can be activated.

For more detailed information on the load control see device help for T30/T40 devices in the setup chapter Compax3\load control.

Luenberg observer

In this chapter you can read about:

Introduction observer

A high signal quality of the actual signal value is of high significance in the control of the motor velocity n or the motor speed v. By means of oversampling and transmitter error compensation, a high-quality position signal can be produced for speed determination. As a rule the motor speed is determined by numeric differentiation of the motor position. In this case the quantisation noise QvD of the digital speed signal depends on the quantisation Qx of the position signal and the sampling time TAR of the digital control loop:
Quantisation – speed signal QvD

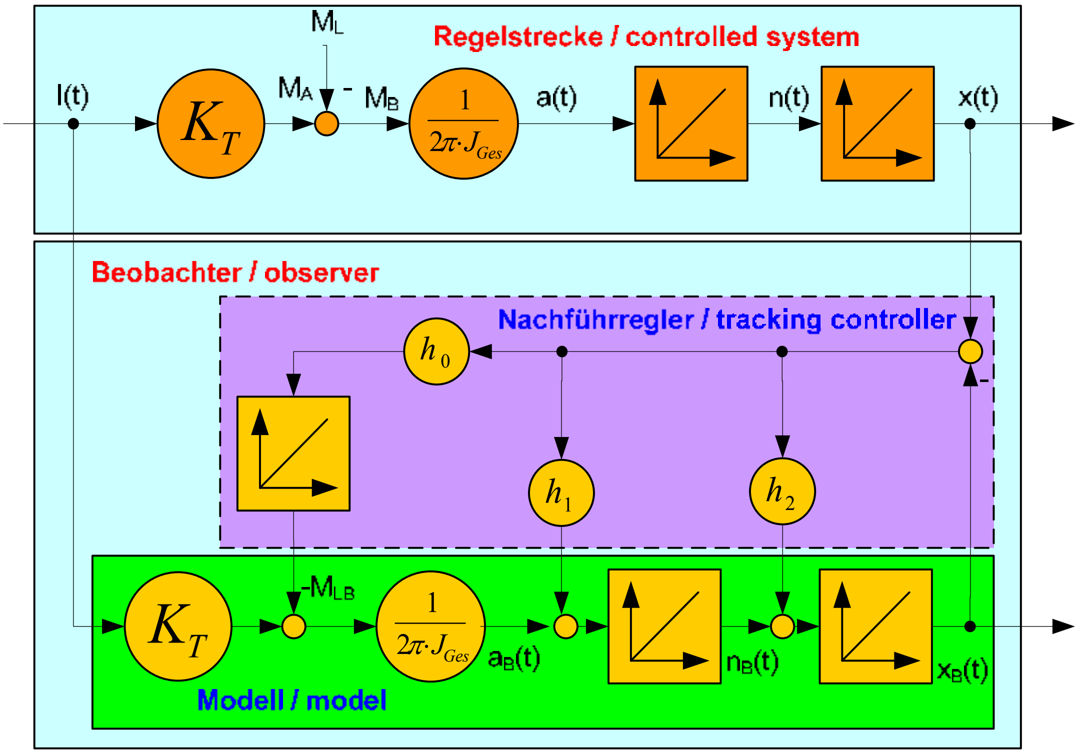
$$Q_{vD} = \frac{Q_x}{T_{AR}}$$

The quantisation of the speed signal is inversely proportional to the sampling time TAR. Hence the demands for the lowest possible sampling time and the minimum quantisation noise oppose each other in the determination of speed by numeric differentiation. The noise superimposed by the digital speed signal may be reduced by the low-pass filter, however this is always at the cost of the stability margin of the digital control loop. An alternative method is to determine the speed by integration of the acceleration. The dependence of the quantisation noise QvD of the digital speed signal on the quantisation Qx of the position signal and the sampling time TAR of the digital control loop is shown by the following correlation.
Quantisation – speed signal QvI

$$Q_{vI} = Q_a \cdot T_{AR}$$

The observer technology offers the advantage that the velocity can be calculated with the aid of integration. The idea of the observer principle is to connect a mathematical model of the control path parallel to the section observed and with the same transfer behaviour. In this case, the controller also has the intermediate variables (state variables) of the control path available. However in the presence of model deviations (in structure or parameters), different signal values occur between the model and the control path. For this reason, the technique cannot be employed in this way in practice. However, the model contains the measurable output signal of the control section as a redundant quantity. By comparing the two variables, a tracking control can be used to adapt the model state variables to the state variables of the control path. As the model deviations have become minor in this case due to the simple mechanical drive train, the observer now has an efficient aid available to increase the signal quality. Increase in signal quality in the observer means that the noise components decrease, and the dynamics improve as the observed speed is feedforward-controlled undelayed by the current and is not just calculated delayed from the position signal using simple differentiation.

Signal flow chart Luenberg observer



I(t):	Torque-forming motor current
Kt:	Torque constant
ML(t):	External disturbance torque
Jtotal:	Total mass moment of inertia (motor + load)
a(t):	Acceleration
n(t):	Velocity
x(t):	Position
Index b:	Observed signal quantities
h0…h2:	Controller coefficients of the tracking controller

The figure shows that an additional I element is connected for interference compensation to correct external disturbance forces in the observer. Therefore the speed and the acceleration observed are statically precise. The same applies to the output of the integrator in the tracking controller which is a statically precise determination of an external interference torque ML. For this reason, the I component is not required in the speed controller, and the entire control can be set up as a state cascade control, which increases the bandwidth of the speed and position controlled member by factor 2. As a consequence, the interference stiffness of the drive and the tracking error behavior improve.

Here the quantisation of the speed signal is proportional to the sampling time TAR, hence there is no longer any conflict between the requirements for minimum sampling time and minimum quantisation noise. For the integral velocity acquisition, the motor current variable, which is proportional to the acceleration, can be used. This approach is particularly advantageous in direct drive engineering; due to the absence of a mechanical drive train, there is a very good match between the mathematical model of the observer and the real physical control section in the fundamental frequency range of the control. This applies in particular to direct drive systems with fixed moving masses, as otherwise the mismatch between model and the physical drive system has a destabilising influence on the transfer behaviour of the speed control. A remedy is to increase the observer dynamics, however this increases the noise of the observed signals. Therefore in the case of variable moving masses a compromise has to be found between the dynamics of the observer and the maximum stiffness of the drive.

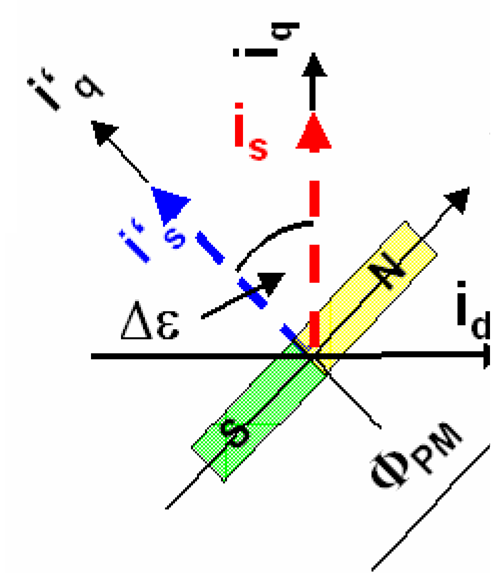
Commutation settings of the automatic commutation

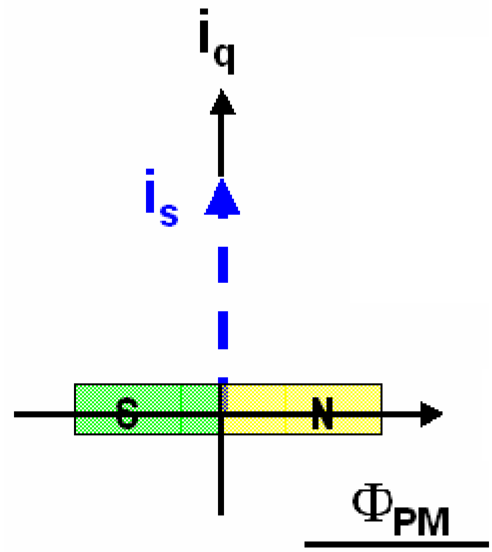
In this chapter you can read about:

Permanently excited synchronous motors can only be operated with an absolute feedback system (at least for electric motor rotation). The reason is the necessary commutation information (position assignment of the magnet field generated by the motor to the motor magnets). Without the commutation information, there is inevitably the possibility of a positive feedback between position and velocity loop ("running away" of the motor) or of bad motor efficiency (reduced force constant).
Digital hall sensors are the most common aid to prevent this. Due to the mechanical design it is however impossible or very hard to integrate these sensors in some motors. The Compax3 automatic commutation function (in the F12 direct drive device) described below allows however to use incremental feedback systems without hall sensors.
The functionality implemented in the servo controller establishes the necessary reference between motor stator field and permanent magnetic field without additional aids.
The incremental feedback devices are, in contrast to absolute feedback devices, able to acquire relative distances. It is true that any position can be approached from a starting point, there would be however no consistency between these position values and a fixed virtual absolute system. Other than with an absolute feedback, the correlation between rotor and stator is lost if the position acquisition is switched off ("the position acquisition zero is lost"). When switching on, the actual position is randomly taken as zero. A commutation angle error can therefore absolutely not be excluded. Even a system adjusted before, would show an angular error, for example after a current failure. Therefore the angular error occurring randomly upon each new switching on must always be compensated in an incremental system.

Display of the commutation error in incremental feedback systems

$\Delta\varepsilon = 0$ (adjusted)	$\Delta\varepsilon \neq 0$ (not adjusted)





Rotor was turned in switched-off state.

blue: ideal position
red: unfavourable position
PM: magnetic flux of the permanent magnets
i_S: Current pointer
$\Delta\varepsilon$ Commutation error
I': ideal position
i_q: Quadrature current (torque forming)

The automatic commutation function (AK) in Compax3 uses the position dependent sinusoidal torque course of permanently excited AC synchronous motors. If the motor windings are energized with DC voltage for instance, the motor develops a sinusoidal torque depending on the rotor position, which can be used for example by evaluating the resulting movement in order to determine the correct motor commutation.

The automatic commutation with movement in the Compax3 has the following properties:

- The motor movement occurring during the commutation is, with correctly parameterized function, very small. It is typically in the range smaller than 10° electrical revolution (=10°/motor poles physically or 10°/360°*motor pitch for a linear motor).
- The precision of the acquired commutation angle depends on the external conditions, however lies normally in the range better than 5° electrical revolution.
- The time until the termination of the commutation acquisition is typically below 10s.

Prerequisites for the automatic commutation

- A movement of the motor must be permitted. The movement actually occurring depends greatly on the motor (friction conditions) itself, as well as on the load moved (inertia).
- Applications requiring a motor brake, i.e. applications where active load torques are applied at the motor (e.g. vertical actuator, slopoe) are not permitted.
- Due to the function principle, high static friction or load torques will deteriorate the result of automatic commutation.
- When performing automatic commutation, a motion of at least ±180° must be electically possible (no mechanic limitation)! The implemented automatic commutation function with motion cannot be used for applications with limit or reversal switches.
- With the exception of missing commutation information, the controller/motor combination is configured and ready for operation (parameters correctly assigned for the drive/linear motor). Feedback direction and effective direction of the field of rotation must be identical (automatic commutation performed in the MotorManager).

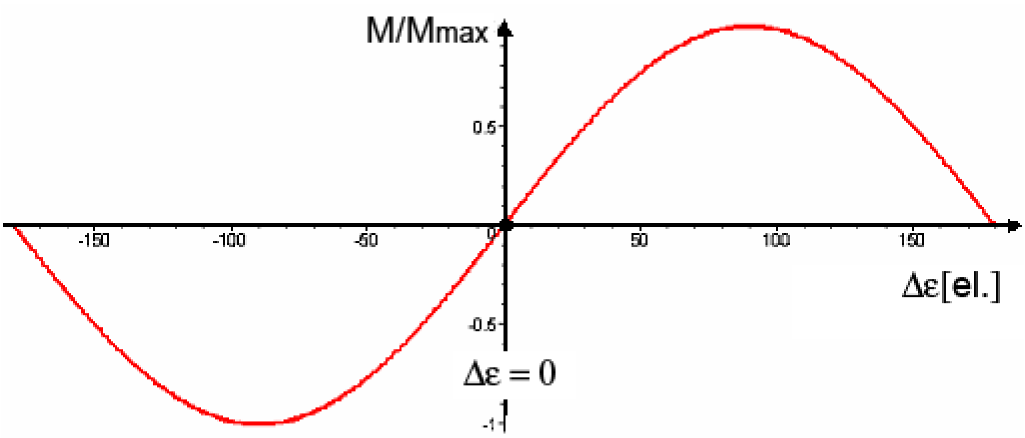
Course of the automatic commutation function

If "automatic commutation with movement" is selected as source of commuttion, the automatic commutation sequence runs once if the power stage is enabled. If the power stage is enabled or disabled afterwards, the automatic commutation will be left out. If an error occurs during the execution, the automatic commutation is aborted. A new "attempt to enable" the power stage will trigger a new automatic commutation.

Function principle of the automatic commutation with movement

The implemented method with movement is based on the sinusoidal dependence of the provided motor currents and the resulting movement on the effective commutation error. The acceleration performed by the motor (-> movement) in the event of constantly maintained current is a measure for the actual change in the commutation angle in the way that it disappears upon a change of exactly 0° and is, for other angles, the acceleration and its direction in dependance of the sign and value of the angular error (-180° .. 180°).

Acceleration torque depending on the commutation error.

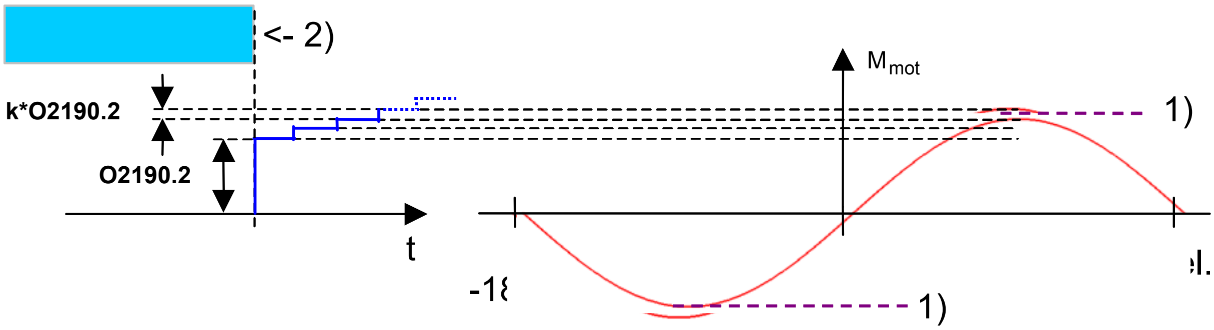


Δε:	Commutation error
M/Mμαξ	normalized acceleration torque

Searching for the torque maxima (phase 1)

If the sum of the actual and the estimated error angle is ±90° electrically, the motor torque is maximal for the provided current. If you gradually increase the provided motor current, the motor will, from a defined value on, surpass its friction torque and exceed a motion threshold defined by O2190.3:

Illustration of the first phase

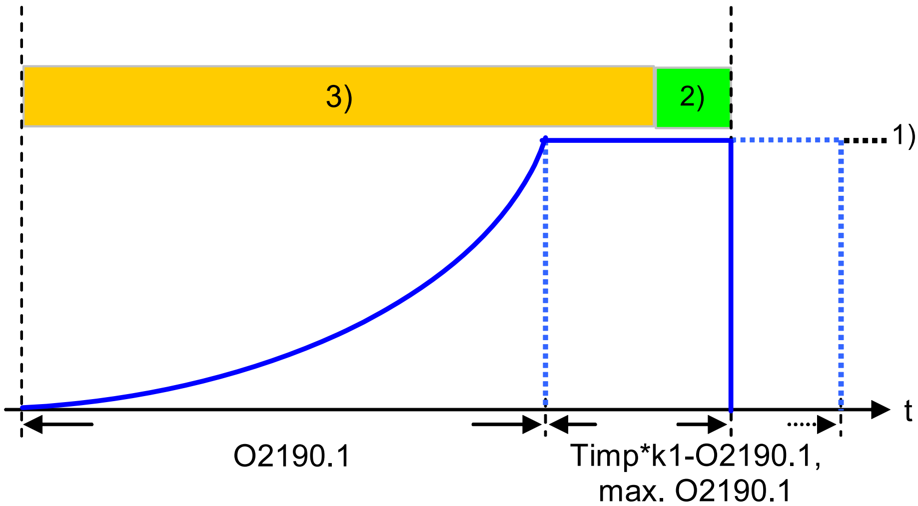


1):	Motion threshold O2190.3
2):	Waiting for standstill
O2190.2:	Starting current

Latching of the motor (phase 2)

Here, the drive is brought to the position with the provided motor torque=0, where the angular error is either +-180° or 0°.

Current rise in the second phase.



O2190.1:	Rising time of latching current
1)	Maximum current from controller or motor
2)	Monitoring on 5° electrical movement
3)	Monitoring on 60° electrical movement

Motion reduction:

It is possible, to considerably reduce the motor movement occuring during the fine angle search with the aid of the "motion reduction" parameter (O2190.4). Please respect also that the acquired commutation result may be slightly worse than without this measure.

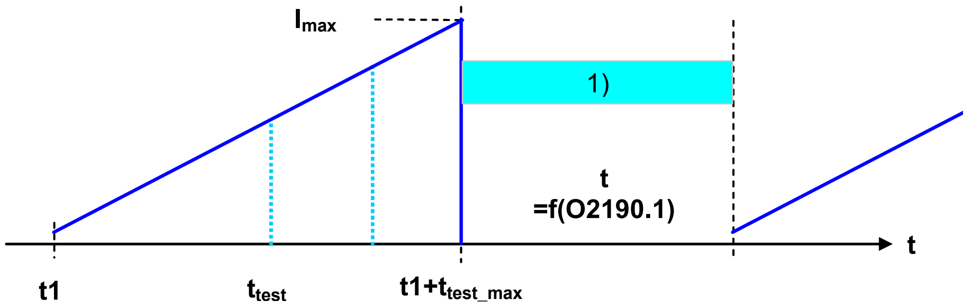
Hint As a current well above the nominal motor current is provided here, there may be saturation effects on ironcore motors, which might lead to an instable current loop (-> highly frequent "creaking noises" during the automatic commutation). This can be avoided by activating the saturation characteristic line in the motor data.

Test for positive feedback (phase 3)

Here it is verified, if the motor performs a motion in the expected positive direction in the event of positive current in the torque maximum. The same motion threshold (defined via O2190.3) as in phase 1 is valid. The test is repeated several times.

A current course in ramp form is specified (target: minimum movement). The break between the tests varies witht he current rise time O2191.1.

Illustration of the third phase



1): Waiting for standstill
tp Waiting for standstill

Other

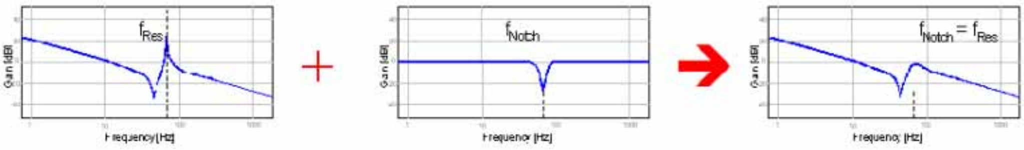
- During the sequence (time according to parameterization>>1s) the automatic commutation is externally visualized by a LED blinking code (green permanent and red blinking).
- Device errors will lead to an abort of the automatic commutation.
- During automatic commutation, no motion commands are accepted.
- The controller cascade entirely deactivated during automatic commutation, with the exception of the current loop.
- In multi-axis applications, the axes to be automatically commutated must be awaited (output of the MC_Power block must deliver "True")!
- The automatic commutation is only started if the drive is at standstill.
- After the occurring and acknowledgement of a feedback error or a configuration change of the feedback system, the automatic commutation must be performed again, as it might be that the position entrainment in the servo controller is interrupted (commutation information is lost).

Notch filter

In this chapter you can read about:

Notch filters are small-band band elimination filters which slope in a wedge form towards the center frequency. The attenuation of this center frequency is extremely high in most cases. With the aid of the notch filters it is possible to purposefully eliminate the effects of mechanical resonance frequencies. With this, the mechanical resonance point is not activated itself, but the excitation of this point of resonance is avoided by the control.

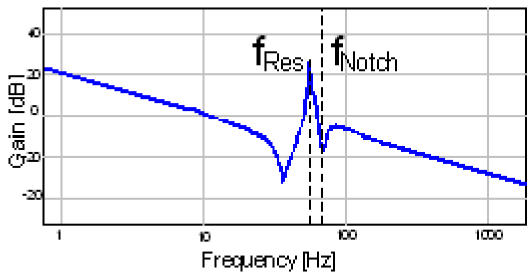
Effect of the notch filter



Resonance Notch filter Result

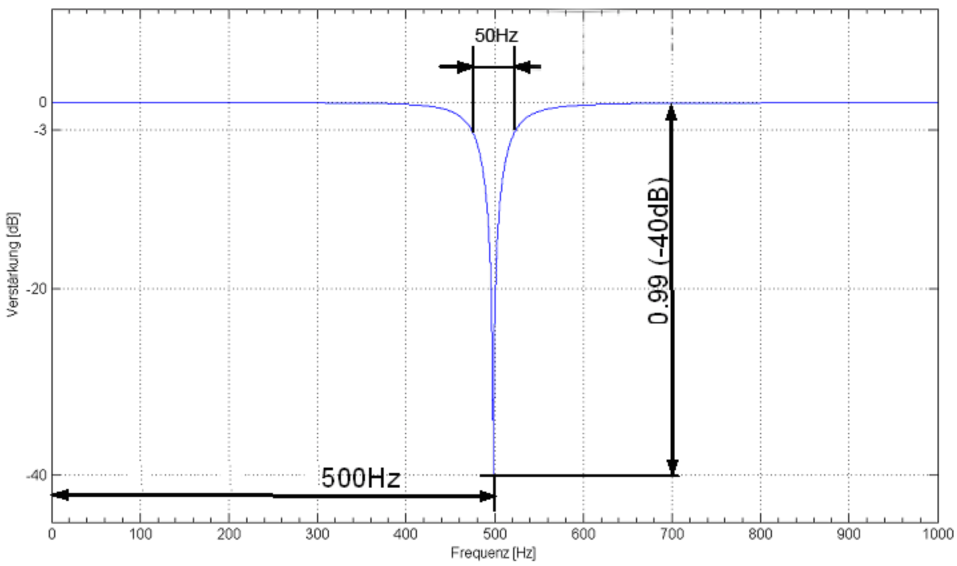
As can be seen in the figure, the notch filter is only useful in cases where the set frequency of the notch filter is exacly the same as the disturbing frequency. The notch filter as well as the resonance point are very narrowband. If the resonance point does only minimally change (e.g. by changing the masses involved), it is not sufficiently activated by the notch filter.

Wrongly set notch filter



In the Compax3, two notch filters which are independent of each other are implemented.

Frequency response of the notch filter.



Center frequency = 500Hz
Bandwitdh = 50Hz
Depth = 0.99 (-40dB)

Parameterization by 3 objects.

In this chapter you can read about:

Frequency filter 1 (O2150.1) / frequency filter 2 (O2150.4)

This defines the frequency at which the notch filter attenuation is highest. In practice it shows that notch filters can only sensibly be used if the distance between the controller bandwidth (velocity loop) and the center frequency is long enough (at least factor 5). This permits to deduce the following recommendation:

$$O2150.x \geq \frac{5000000}{2\pi \cdot O2210.17[\mu s]}$$

$x = 1 \text{ or } x = 4$

Obj2210.17: Recplacement time constant of the velocity loop in µs.

Note: If this distance is too small, the stability of the control can be very negatively influenced!

Bandwidth filter 1 (O2150.2) / bandwidth filter 2 (O2150.5)

This defines the width of the notch filter.
The value refers to the entire frequency band, where the attenuation of the filter is higher than (-)3dB.
In practice it shows that even if there is enough distance towards the control, it can be negativley influenced by too high bandwidths (higher than 1/4 of the center frequency).

$$O2150.x \leq \frac{O2150.1/4}{4}$$

$x = 2 \text{ or } x = 5$

Depth filter 1 (O2150.3) / depth filter 2 (O2150.6)

With this the size of the attenuation of the filter must be at the position of the center frequency. One stands here for complete attenuation (-∞ dB) and zero for no attenuation.

$$O2150.x = 1 - 10^{-\left(\frac{D[dB]}{20}\right)}$$

$x = 3 \text{ or } x = 6$

D [dB]: The desired attenuation at the center frequency in dB

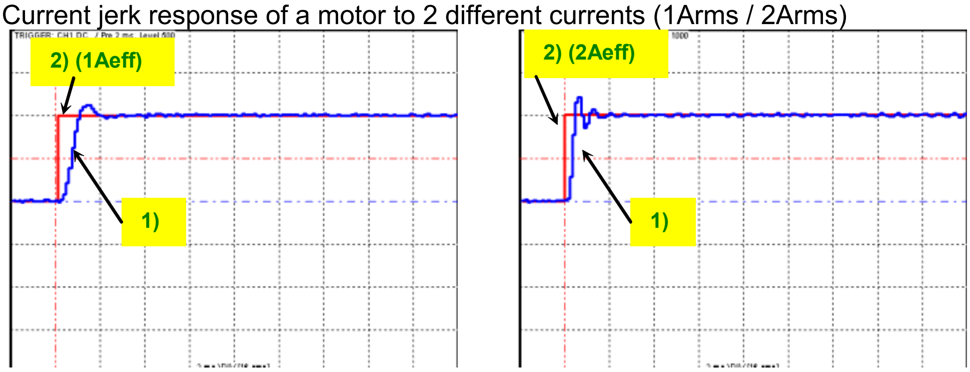
Saturation behavior

In this chapter you can read about:

Saturation can be stated with the aid of current jerk responses at different current height.

Current jerk response

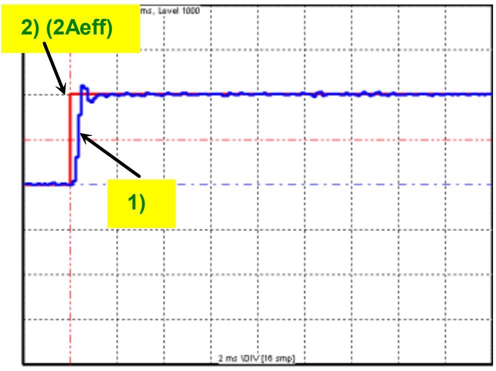
Current jerk response of a motor to 2 different currents (1Arms / 2Arms)



1) Actual current
2) Setpoint current

In the above figure we can see from the settling response that the drive shows a distinctive tendency to oscillate at doubled current. The saturation characteristic line, which is used to linearly reduce the P-term of the current loop depending on the current, helps against such a saturation behavior.
If you respect the saturation for the above example with the aid of the saturation characteristic line, the tendency to oscillate of the current loop can again be activated.

Current jerk response with the activated saturation characteristic line



The paramterization of the characteristic line is made in the MotorManager.

Note:

- In order to accept the changes in the MotorManager in the project, the entire configuration must be confirmed.
- In order to make the changes from the MotorManager effective in the device, the configuration download must be executed.

Control measures for drives iinvolving friction

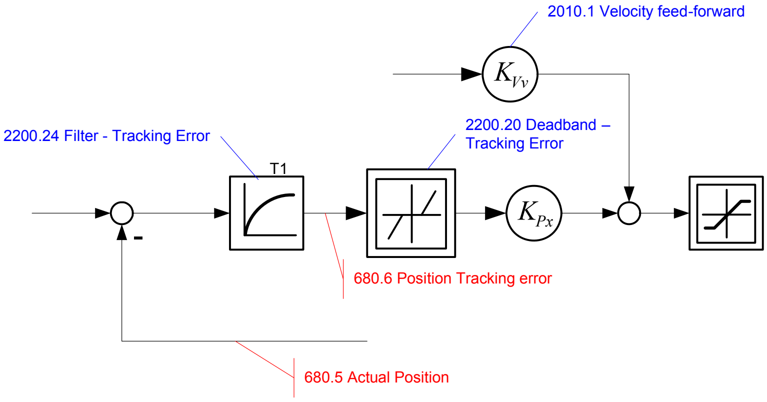
In this chapter you can read about:

Some drives, which involve much friction due to their guiding system, may show permanent oscillation at standstill. The transition between static friction (standstill) and kinetic friction (very low speed) is very steep. The controller can not longer follow the friction characteristic line at this position. The I-term integrates until the control variable pulls free the drive and the drive moves too far. This procedure is repeated in the opposite direction and a control oscillation occurs (so-called limit cycle). In order to eliminate this control oscillation, the following control functions were implemented:

- Deadband following error (Obj. 2200.20)
- Filter following error (Obj. 2200.24)
- Friction compensation (Obj. 2200.20)

Deadband following error

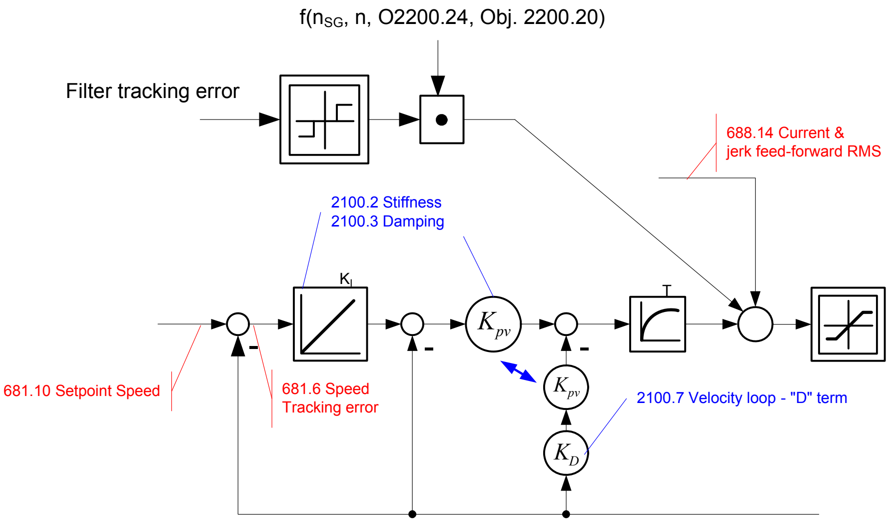
Deadband/filter following error in the position loop



The deadband does no longer supply a velocity setpoint value (zero) for the subordinate velocity loop at small following error. The integrator of the velocity loop stops integrating and the system comes to a standstill.
In order to prevent that the velocity loop is excited by the noise on the following error, the following error should be filtered before the deadband, which will lead, however, to delays in the position loop. The deadband to be set depends on the friction behavior (amplitude of the limit cycle) and on the noise on the following error (the noise must remain within the deadband).

Friction compensation

The activation of the friction compensation (end of the velocity loop)



The friction compensation helps the control to surmount static friction at low setpoint speeds. The non linear characteristic line is partly compensted by this and a smaller deadband can be chosen, which will increase the position accuracy. The amplitude of the friction compenstion depends on the application and must be calculated if needed. If the value is set too high, corrective movements may result and the tendency to oscillate is increased.

Commissioning window

In this chapter you can read about:

Commissioning window

With the aid of the setup window, the drive can be set up in a simple way.

Load identification

If you do not know the mass moment of inertia, it can be determined. For this, you click on the corresponding button (see setup window no. 13). After the following parameter entry, the identification can be started via the same button.

- For more detailed information on the load identification, see the device help, chapter "load identification".
- This measurement requires the correct EMC or torque constant value Kt.

Setpoint generation

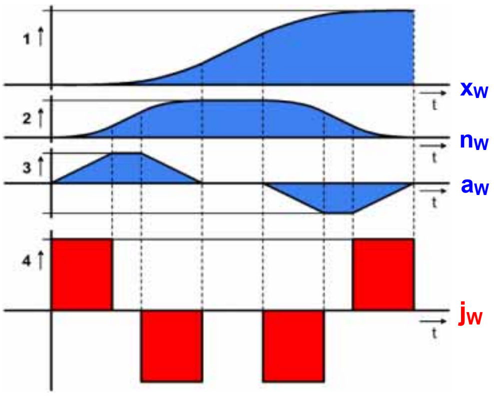
In this chapter you can read about:

The setpoints for the control loops are provided in two different ways - internally or externally. The setpoint generation depends on the technology option of the device.

Internal setpoint generation

The internal setpoint generation can be used for the technology option s>T10. In this case, the internal setpoint genertor generates the entire motion profile with position, velocity, acceleration and jerk.

Motion profile at jerk-controlled setpoint generation



x_W Position
n_W Velocity
a_W Acceleration
j_W Jerk

The drive cannot move randomly through hard profiles, as certain physical limits exist for the acceleration ability due to the motor physics and the limitation of the control variable. You must therefore make sure that the set movement corresponds to the real physics of the motor and of the servo drive.
As a support you can take the following physical correlation.

The calculation of the physically possible acceleration

rotary drives

$$a[rps^2] = \frac{M_A[Nm] - M_L[Nm]}{2\pi \cdot J_{ges}[kgm^2]}$$

M_A: Drive torque of the motor
M_L: Load torque of the motor
J_{total}: entire mass moment of inertia
a: possible acceleration

Linear drives

$$a\left[\frac{m}{s^2}\right] = \frac{F_A[N] - F_L[N]}{m_{ges}[kg]}$$

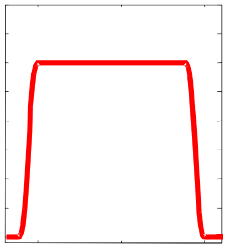
F_A: Drive force of a linear motor
F_L: Load force of a linear motor
m_{ges}: Total mass of a linear motor

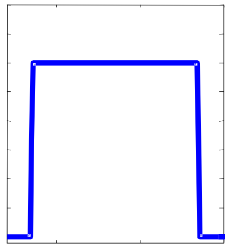
The generation of the setpoint profile is jerk-controlled and jerk-limited by the specification of the jerk.
In practice, jerk-limited setpoint generation is important if the items to be moved must be handled gently. In addition, the service life of the mechanical guiding system will be extended. A separate setting of jerk and slope of the deceleration phase also permits overshoot-free positioning in the target position. For this reason, it

is common practice to use higher values for acceleration and jerk in the acceleration phase than in the deceleration phase. In consequence a higher cycle rate can be achieved.
An additional important reason for the jerk limitation is the excitation of higher frequencies due to the too high jerk in the power density spectrum of the velocity function.

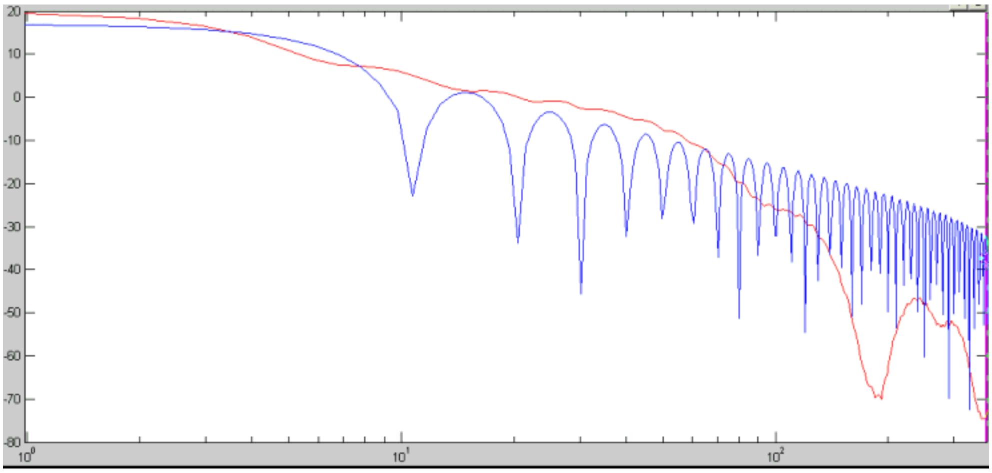
Jerk=10000°/s³ Jerk=1000000°/s³

Time function:





Time function and power density spectrum of Compax3 setpoint generator with different jerk settings



Power density over the frequency

The profile can be simply calculated and displayed for control purposes.

External setpoint generation

During external setpoint generation, the necessary feedforward signals are calculated from the externalsetpoint with the aid of numerical differentiation and final filtering.

Hint For more detailed information on the external setpoint generation see device help for T11/T30/T40 devices in the "setup" chapter Compax3\optimization\controller dynamics\signal filtering at external setpoint specification"

Test Move

In order to evaluate the behavior of the drive, test movements can be defined. For this you jump into the parameter entry either with the aid of the ”enter setup/test movement parameters” or by selecting the parameter tab. Via the ”setup settings” menu you access the settings for the desired test movement.
The desired motion profile can be set via the parameters in the following window.

Proceeding during controller optimization

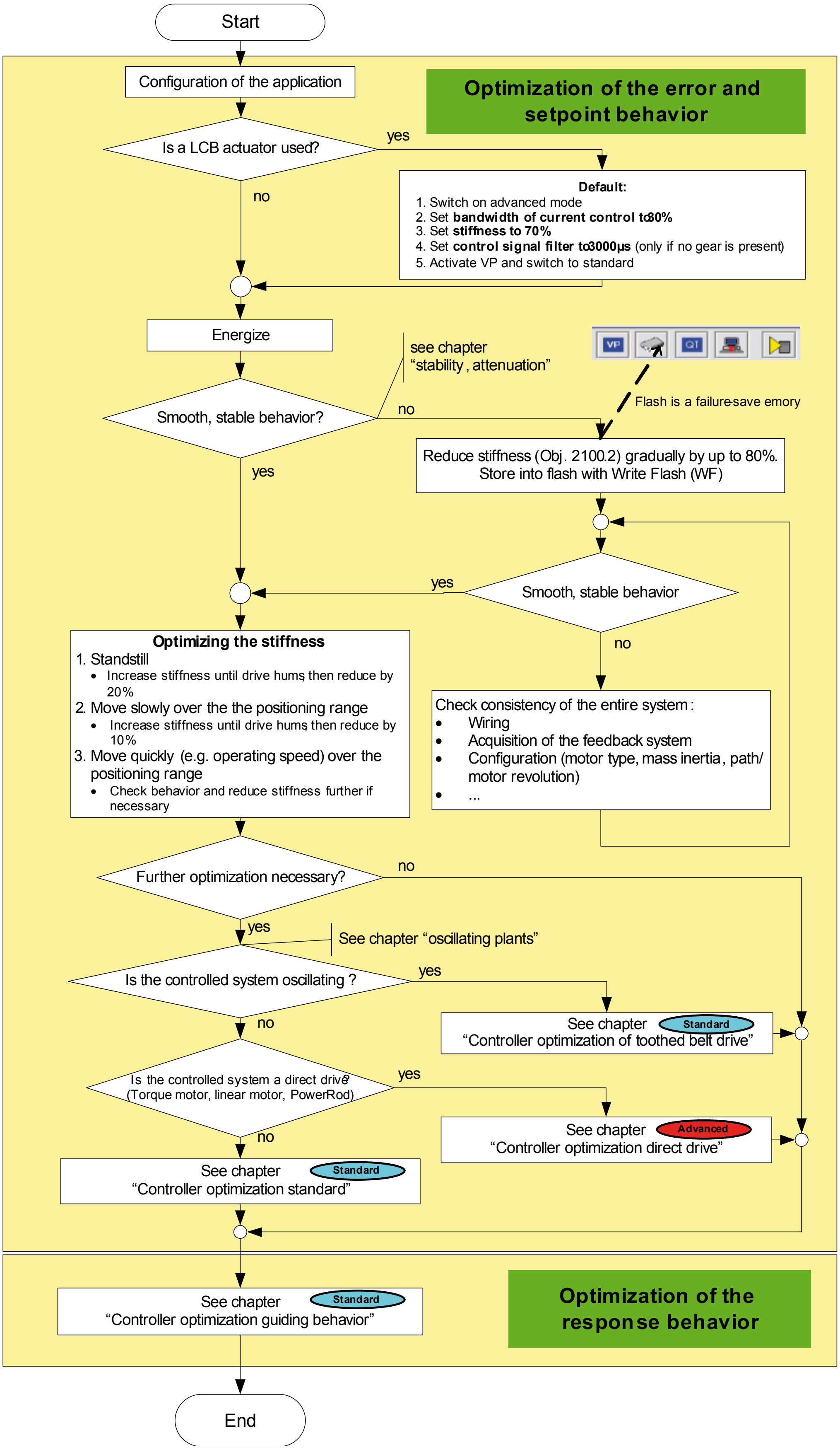
In this chapter you can read about:

If the control behavior is not sufficient for the present application, an optimization is required. We recommend the following approach:

Overview on the approach to setup a+optimization

- At first, the disturbance and setpoint behavior of the velocity loop at standstill and at different displacement velocities is optimized (stiffness, attenuation, filter).
- After that, the necessary motion profiles are set via the setup tool and the desired guiding behavior in the entire velocity range is set via the feedforward control (motion profiles, feedforward).

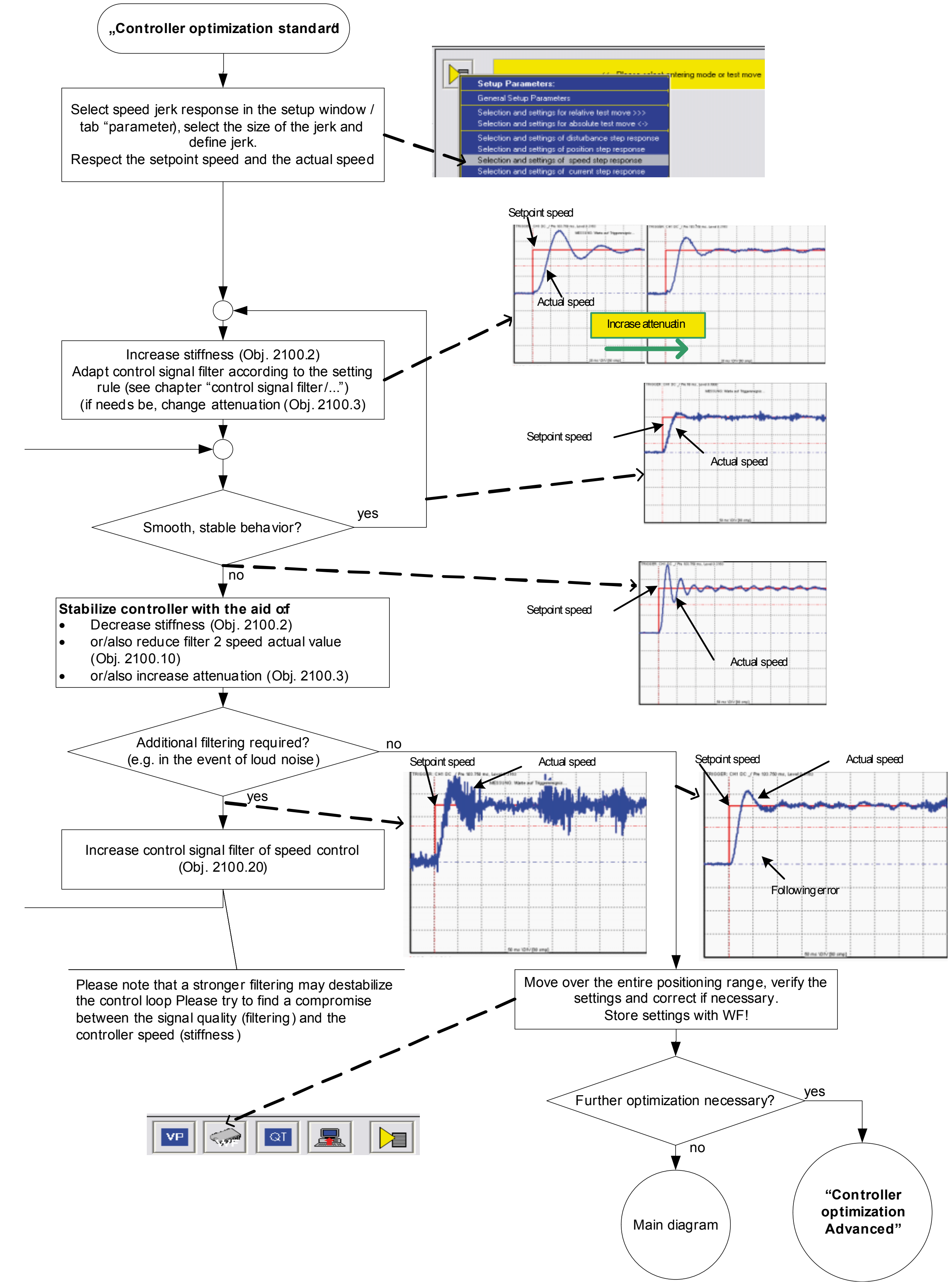
Main flow chart of the controller optimization



Controller optimization disturbance and setpint behavior (standard)

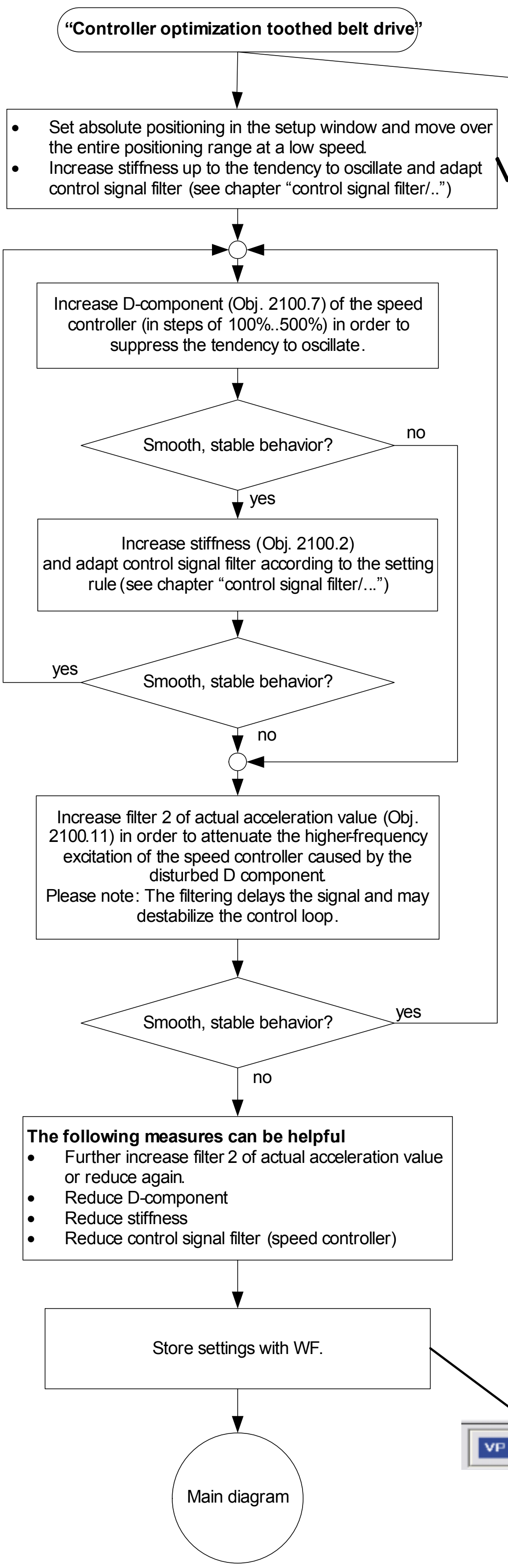
In this chapter you can read about:

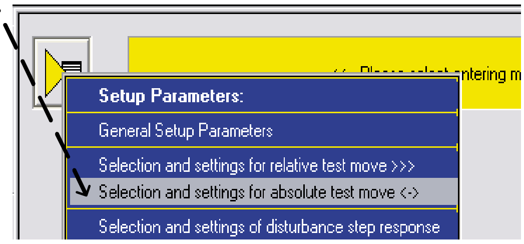
Controller optimization standard



Controller optimization of toothed belt drive

- The stiffness of a drive able to oscillate can be increased by using the D-component. If the D-component is too large, the control is destabilized.
- Due to the twofold position differentiation, the D-component is rather disturbed and may excite the control loop in the higher-frequency range. The filtering of the d-component with the aid of the "filter2 of actual acceleration value" can activate the higher-frequency components at the cost of the dynamics
- The correct combination of the3 parameters will lead to the best control results.
- The D-component is set in %. The value range: 0...4000000 %.
- Values up to 5000 are common.





Controller optimization disturbance and setpint behavior (advanced)

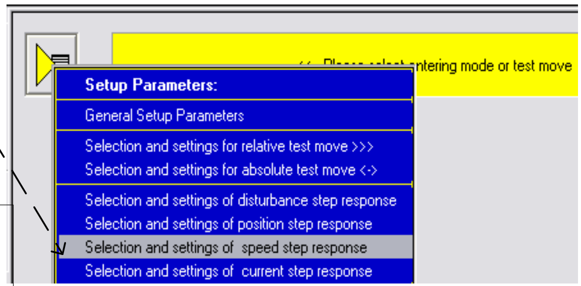
In this chapter you can read about:

Controller optimization Advanced

„Controller optimization Advanced“

Observer technology
Observer time constant (Obj. 2120.1) >=125µs
(the higher the value, the slower the observer)

Select speed jerk response in the setup window / tab "parameter", select the size of the jerk and specify the jerk.
Respect the setpoint speed and the actual speed



1.) Vary "observer time constant" (Obj. 2120.1) increase "stiffness" (Obj. 2100.2) until the optimum is reached

2.) In systems with **high friction**, reduce "attenuation" (Obj. 2100.3) and increase "stiffness" (Obj. 2100.2) until the optimum is reached.

3.) In the event of **optimization to speed constancy**, increase "attenuation" (Obj. 2100.3) and reduce "stiffness" as far as necessary (Obj. 2100.2) until the optimum is reached.

4.) Disturbance (Obj. 2120.7) in connection with the "filter of observed disturbance" (Obj. 2120.5) may cause further improvements.

Smooth, stable behavior?

yes

no

Stabilize controller with the aid of:

- Decrease stiffness (Obj. 2100.2)
- or/also reduce observer time constant (Obj. 2120.1)
- or/also reduce control signal filter (Obj. 2120.1)
- or/also modify attenuation (Obj. 2100.3)
- Vary filter of observed disturbance (Obj. 2120.5) or switch off disburbance (reduce stiffness before!)

Move over the entire positioning range, verify the settings and correct if necessary.
Store settings with WF!

Main diagram

Flow chart controller optimization of a direct drive

"Controller optimization direct drive"

Is it a PowerRod?

yes

See chapters:
-"Control measures for drives iinvolving friction"

Default settings for PowerRod:
1.) "following error filter" (Obj. 2200.21) = 1470µs
2.) "following error dead zone" (Obj. 2200.20) = 0.025 mm
3.) "Friction feedforward" (Obj. 2200.21) = 0 mA

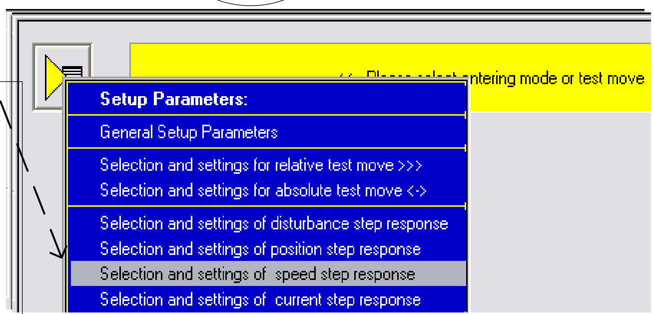
Vary the default settings if needs be.

"Controller optimization standard"

no

Status controller with disturbance torque
-"Observer time constant" (Obj. 2120.1) >=125µs (the higher the value, the slower the observer)
- "Activate disturbance value" (Obj. 2120.7)=1

Select speed jerk response in the setup window / tab "parameter), select the size of the jerk and define jerk.
Respect the setpoint speed and the actual speed



1.) "Observer time constant" (Obj. 2120.1) and Vary filter of observed disturbance (Obj. 2120.5) increase "stiffness" (Obj. 2100.2) until the optimum is reached

2.) In systems with **high friction**, reduce "attenuation" (Obj. 2100.3) and increase "stiffness" (Obj. 2100.2) until the optimum is reached.

3.) In the event of **optimization to speed constancy**, increase "attenuation" (Obj. 2100.3) and reduce "stiffness" as far as necessary (Obj. 2100.2) until the optimum is reached.

Smooth, stable behavior?

yes

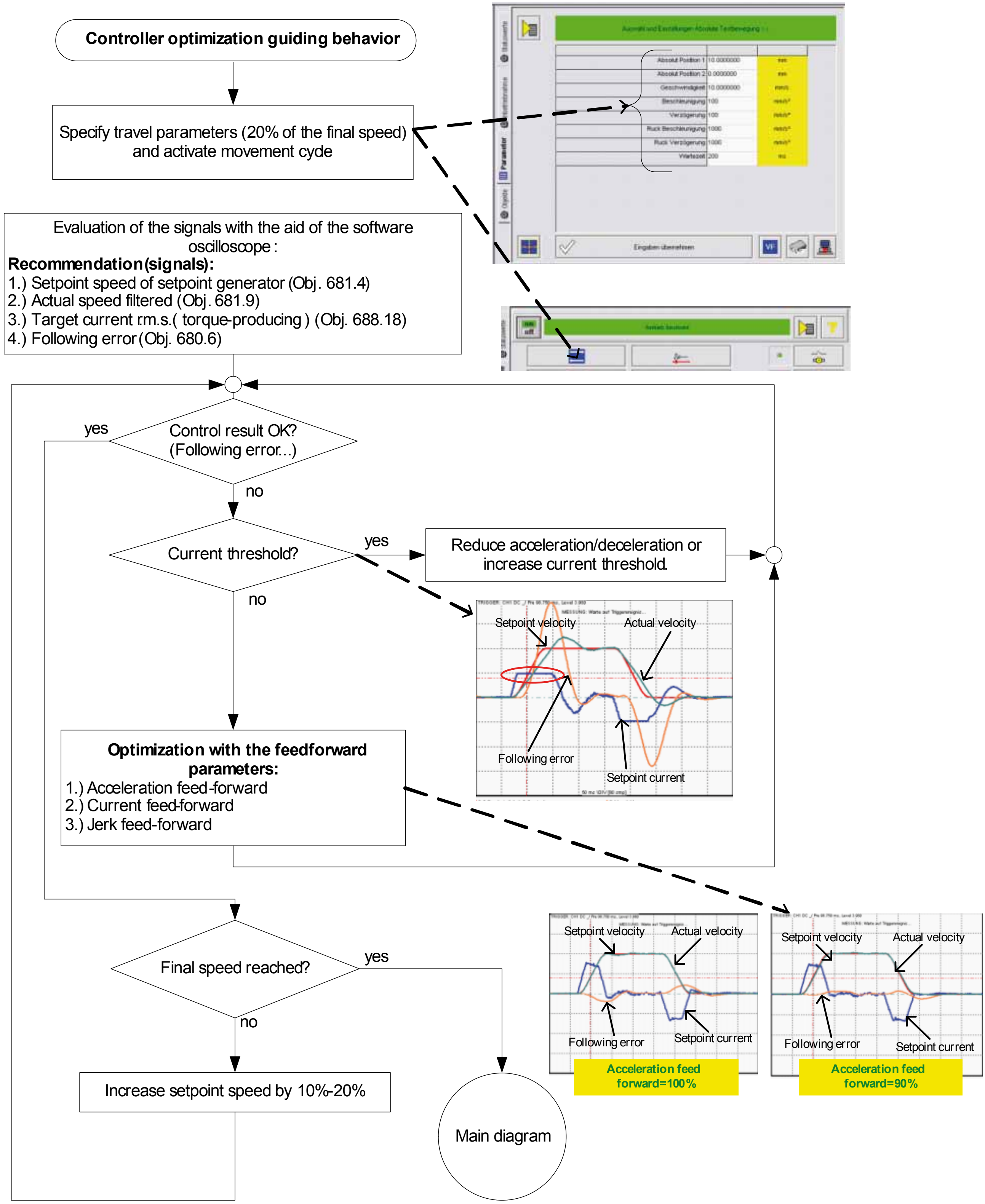
no

Stabilize controller with the aid of:
- Decrease stiffness (Obj. 2100.2)
- or/also reduce observer time constant (Obj. 2120.1)
- or/also reduce control signal filter (Obj. 2120.1)
- or/also modify attenuation (Obj. 2100.3)

Move over the entire positioning range, verify the settings and correct if necessary.
Store settings with WF!

Main diagram

Controller optimization guiding transmission behavior



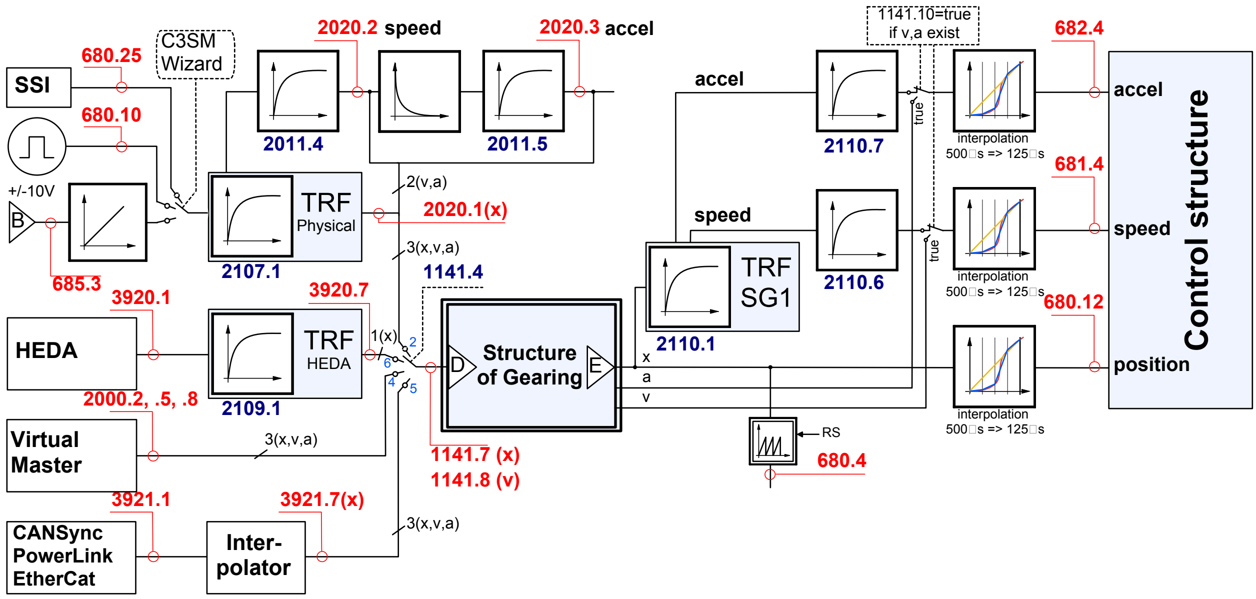
4.3.4. Signal filtering with external command value

In this chapter you can read about:

The command signal read in from an external source (via HEDA or physical input) can be optimized via different filters.
For this the following filter structure is available:

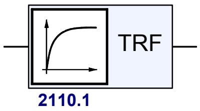
4.3.4.1 Signal filtering for external setpoint specification and electronic gearbox

Does not apply for Compax3I11T11!

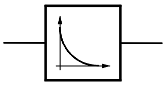


B: **Structure image of the signal processing**,
D/E: Structure of Gearing
Control structure (see page 214, see page 216, see page 207)

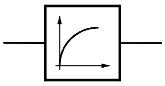
Symbols



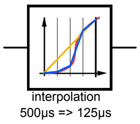
Trackingfilter
The displayed filter influences all outputs of the tracking filter.
Number: Object number of the filter characteristic



Differentiator
Output signal = d(input signal)/dt
The output signal is the derivation (gradient) of the input signal



Filter
Number: Object number of the filter characteristic



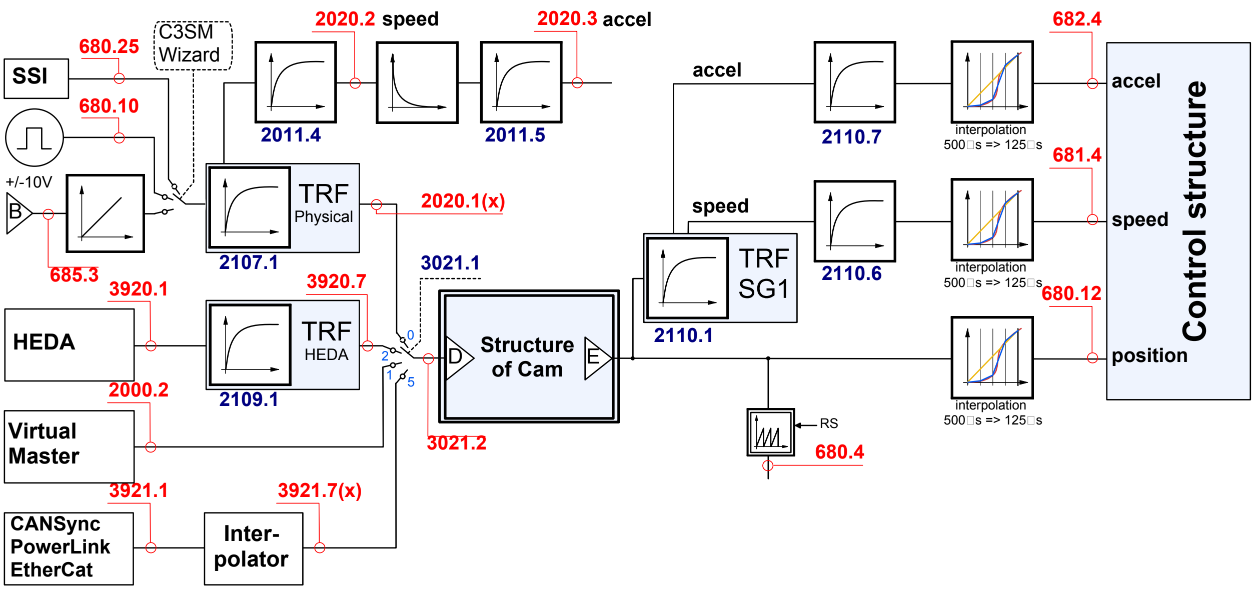
Interpolation
Linear Interpolation.
Values in the 500µs grid are converted into the more exact time grid of 125µs.

Note:

- A setpoint jerk setpoint feedback is not required for external setpoint specification.
- The description of the objects can be found in the object list.

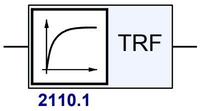
4.3.4.2 Signal filtering for external setpoint specification and electronic cam

Only Compax3 T40!

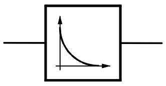


B: **Structure image of the signal processing**,
D/E: Structure of Cam
Control structure (see page 214, see page 216, see page 207)

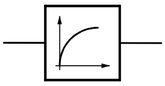
Symbols



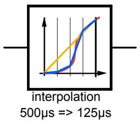
Trackingfilter
The displayed filter influences all outputs of the tracking filter.
Number: Object number of the filter characteristic



Differentiator
Output signal = d(input signal)/dt
The output signal is the derivation (gradient) of the input signal



Filter
Number: Object number of the filter characteristic



Interpolation
Linear Interpolation.
Values in the 500µs grid are converted into the more exact time grid of 125µs.

Note:

- A setpoint jerk setpoint feedback is not required for external setpoint specification.
- The description of the objects can be found in the object list.

4.3.5. Input simulation

In this chapter you can read about:

Function The input simulation is used for the performance of tests without the complete input/output hardware being necessary.
The digital inputs (standard and inputs of M10/M12 option) as well as the analog inputs are supported.
The following operating modes are available for digital inputs:

- The physical inputs are deactivated, the digital inputs are only influenced via the input simulation.
- The digital inputs and the physical inputs are logically or-linked.
  This necessitates very careful action, as the required function is, above all with low-active signals, no longer available.

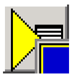
The pre-setting of an analog input value is always made in addition to the physical analog input.

the function of the inputs depends on the Compax3 device type; please refer to the respective online help or the manual.

The input simulation is only possible if the connection with Compax3 is active and if the commissioning mode is deactivated!

4.3.5.1 Calling up the input simulation

Open the optimization window (double klick in the C3 ServoManager tree entry: Optimization).
Activate the Tab ”Setup” in the right lower window.
Clicking on the following button will open a menu; please select the input simulation.



4.3.5.2 Functionality

Window Compax3 InputSimulator:
1st series: Standard inputs I7 ... I0 = ”0” button not pressed; = ”1” switch pressed
2nd series: Optional digital inputs (M10 / M12)
Green field: port 4 is defined as input
Red field: port 4 is defined as output
the least significant input is always on the right side
3rd series:if the button ”deactivating physical inputs” is pressed, all physical, digital inputs are deactivated; only the input simulation is active.
If both sources (physical and simulated inputs) are active, they are or-linked!

Caution!

Please consider the effects of the or-linking; above all on low-active functions.

4th series: Simulation of the analog inputs 0 and 1 in 100mV – steps.
The set value is added to the value on the physical input.

After the input simulation has been called up, all simulated inputs are on ”0”.

When the input simulation is left, the physical inputs become valid.

4.3.6. Setup mode

The setup mode is used for moving an axis independent of the system control
The following functions are possible:

- Machine reference run
- Jog+ / Jog-
- Activation / deactivation of the motor holding brake.
- Acknowledging errors
- Defining and activating a test movement
- Activating the digital outputs.
- **Automatic determination of the load characteristic value** (see page 247)
- Setup of the load control

Activating the setup mode

By activating the setup mode, the the control program (IEC Program) is deactivated; the system function of the device is no longer available. Access via an interface (RS232/RS485, Profibus, CANopen,...) and via digital inputs is deactivated.
Attention! The safety functions are not always guaranteed during the setup mode!

- In the Commissioning window (left at the bottom) the commissioning mode is activated.
- Then parameterize the desired test movement in the Parameter window.
  You can accept changed configuration settings into the current project.
- Now energize drive in the commissioning window and start the test movement.

Caution! Safeguard the travel range before energizing!

Deactivating the setup mode

If the setup mode is left, the drive is deactivated and the the control program (IEC Program) is re-activated.

Note:

- The parameters of the setup window are saved with the project and are loaded into Compax3 if the setup mode is activated (see below).

4.3.6.1 Motion objects in Compax3

The motion objects in Compax3 describe the active motion set.
The motion objects can be influenced via different interfaces.
The following table describes the correlations:

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="3">Source</th><th colspan="2">active motion objects</th><th>Compax3 device</th></tr>
<tr><th>==></th><th>describe</th><td rowspan="11">Active motion objects
◆ Position [O1111.1]
◆ Speed [O1111.2]
◆ Acceleration [O1111.3]
◆ Deceleration [O1111.4]
◆ jerk* [O1111.5] (Acceleration)
◆ Jerk* [O1111.6] (Deceleration)

* for IxxT11 - devices, both jerk values are identical</td></tr>
<tr><th><==</th><th>read</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2"><u>Set-up</u>
(working with the commissioning window)</td><td>==></td><td>◆ With the "accept entry" button.
◆ The current project gets a motion set. Download by activating the motion</td></tr>
<tr><td><==</td><td>◆ When opening the commisisoning window of a new project for the first time.
◆ Activated via the "Upload settings fromdevice" button (bottom at the left side).</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2"><u>Compax3 ServoManager project</u></td><td>==></td><td>◆ C3IxxT11: via an activated motion set
◆ C3I2xT11: via a configuration download</td></tr>
<tr><td><==</td><td>For Compax3 I2xT11:
◆ via a configuration upload
◆ in the commissioning window via "accept configuration"</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2"><u>Fieldbus (Compax3 I2xTxx)</u></td><td>==></td><td>◆ Changing the motion objects directly</td></tr>
<tr><td><==</td><td>◆ Reading the motion objects</td></tr>
<tr><td><u>IEC61131-3 program</u>
(Compax3 IxxT30, IxxT40)</td><td>==></td><td>◆ via positioning modules</td></tr>
</table>

4.3.7. Load identification

In this chapter you can read about:

Automatic determination of the load characteristic value:

- of the mass moment of inertia with rotary systems
- of the mass with linear systems

4.3.7.1 Principle

The load characteristic value is automatically determined.
For this it is necessary to excite the system additionnally with a signal (excitation signal = noise).
The excitation signal is fed into the control loop. The control loop dampens the excitation signal. Therefore, the superimposed control loop is set so slowly by reducing the stiffness, that the measurement is not influenced.
A superimposed test movement is additionally possible. This helps to eliminate possible mechanical effects such as rubbing caused by friction.

4.3.7.2 Boundary conditions

If the control is instable before the beginning of the measurement, please reduce the stiffness (in the optimization window at the left bottom)
The following factors can disturb a measurement:

- Systems with high friction (e.g. linear actuators with sliding guide)
  Here,the systems where the static friction is considerably higher than the kinetic friction (slip-stick effect) are especially problematic.
- Systems with significant slack points (play)
- Systems with "too light" or susceptible to oscillation bearing of the total drive (rack).
  Formation of rack resonances. (e.g. with gantries,...)
- Non constant disturbance forces which influence the speed development. (e.g. extremely strong slot moments)

The effects of the factors one to three on the measurement can be reduced by using a test movement.

caveat emptor (exclusion of warranty)

Due to multiple possibilities for disturbing influences of a real control path, we cannot accept any liability for secondary damages caused by faultily determined values. Therefore it is essential to verify all values automatically determined before loading them into the control loop.

4.3.7.3 Process of the automatic determination of the load characteristic value (load identification)

- Please click on "unknown: default values are used" in the configuration wizard in the "External moment of inertia" window.
- After the configuration download, you can enter directly, that the optimization window is to be opened.
- In the Commissioning window (left at the bottom) change to commissioning mode.
- Finally enter the values of the excitation signal and of the test movement in the parameter window.
  Parameters of the excitation signal:
  - Amplitude of the excitation signal in % of the motor reference current
    Only an amplitude value causing a distinct disturbance can give a usable result.
  - Permissible following error
    In order to avoid a following error caused by the excitation signal, the permissible following error must be increased for the measurement if necessary.
  - Selection of the test movement: inactive, reverse, continuous
  - Parameterizing of the test movement if necessary
- Now energize drive in the commissioning window and open load identification window.

Caution! Safeguard the travel range before energizing!

- Starting the load identification.

Caution! The drive will perform a jerky movement during load identification!

- After the measurement, the values can be accepted. Depending on the application, 2 measurements for minimum external load and maximum external load are recommended.

4.3.7.4 Tips

Tip	Problem	Measures
1	Speed too low (with reverse operation)	Increase maximum speed and adapt travel range*
2	Speed too low (with continuous operation)	Increase maximum speed
3	Test movement missing	A test movement is important for drives with high friction or with mechanical slack points (play).
4	No error detected	Please note the **boundary conditions.** (see page 247)
5	Speed too low and amplitude of the excitation signal too small (with reverse operation)	Increase amplitude of the excitation signal; increase maximum speed and adapt travel range*
6	◆ Speed too low and ◆ amplitude of the excitation signal too small (with continuous operation)	Increase amplitude of the excitation signal; increase maximum speed.
7	◆ Test movement missing ◆ amplitude of the excitation signal too small	◆ Increase amplitude of the excitation signal or / and ◆ activate an appropriate test movement
8	amplitude of the excitation signal too small	Increase the amplitude of the excitation signal.
9	Following error occurred	Increase the parameter "permissible following error" or decrease the amplitude of the excitation signal.

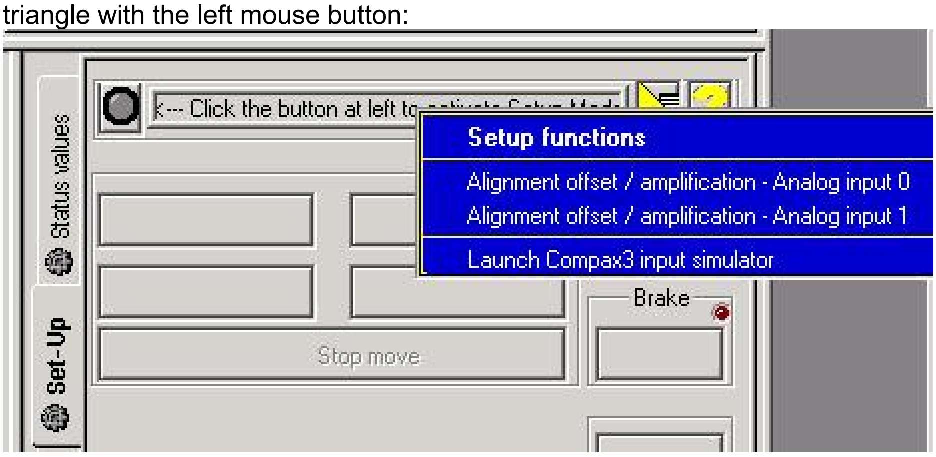
*if the travel range is too short, the speed is not increased, as the drive does not reach the maximum speed.

4.3.8. Alignment of the analog inputs

In this chapter you can read about:

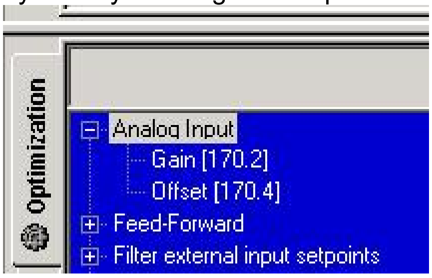
There are two possibilities to align the analog inputs in the optimization window:

- wizard-guided under commissioning: commissioning functions (click on the yellow triangle with the left mouse button:

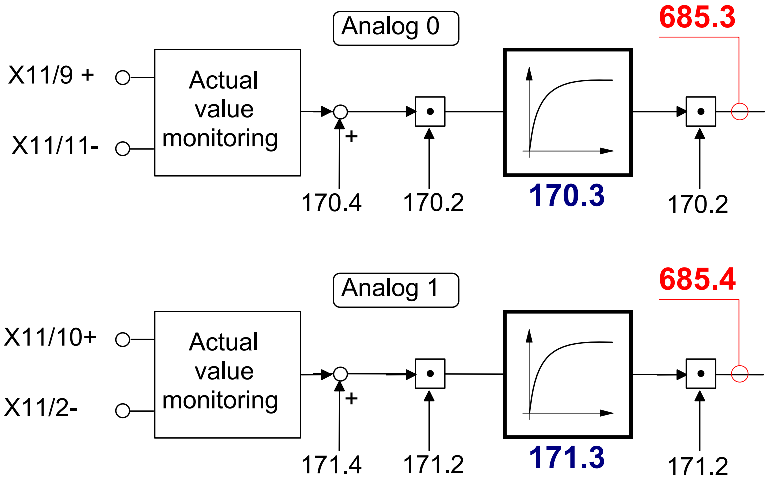


or

- by directly entering under optimization: Analog Input



4.3.8.1 Signal processing of the analog inputs



B: **Continuative structure image** (see page 240)

4.3.8.2 Offset alignment

Performing an offset alignment when working with the ±10V analog interface in the optimization window under optimization: Analog input Offset [170.4].
Enter the offset value for 0V input voltage.
The currently entered value is shown in the status value "analog input" (optimizing window at the top right) (unit: 1 ≡ 10V). Enter this value directly with the same sign as offset value.
The status value "analogue input" shows the corrected value.

4.3.8.3 Gain alignment

Performing an offset alignment when working with the ±10V analog interface in the optimization window under optimization: Analog Input: Gain [170.2].
A gain factor of 1 has been entered as default value.
The currently entered value is shown in the status value "analogue input" (optimising window at the top right).
The status value "analogue input" shows the corrected value.

4.3.9. C3 ServoSignalAnalyzer

In this chapter you can read about:

4.3.9.1 ServoSignalAnalyzer – function range

The function range of the ServoSignalAnalyzer is divided into 2 units:

Analysis in the time range

This partof the function is freely available within the Compax3 ServoManager.
The Compax3 ServoManager is part of the Compax3 servo drive delivery range.

Analysis in the frequency range

This part of the function requires a licence key which you **can buy** (see page 253)
.
The licence is a company licence and must only be bought once per company.
For each PC you need however an individual key, which you can request individually.

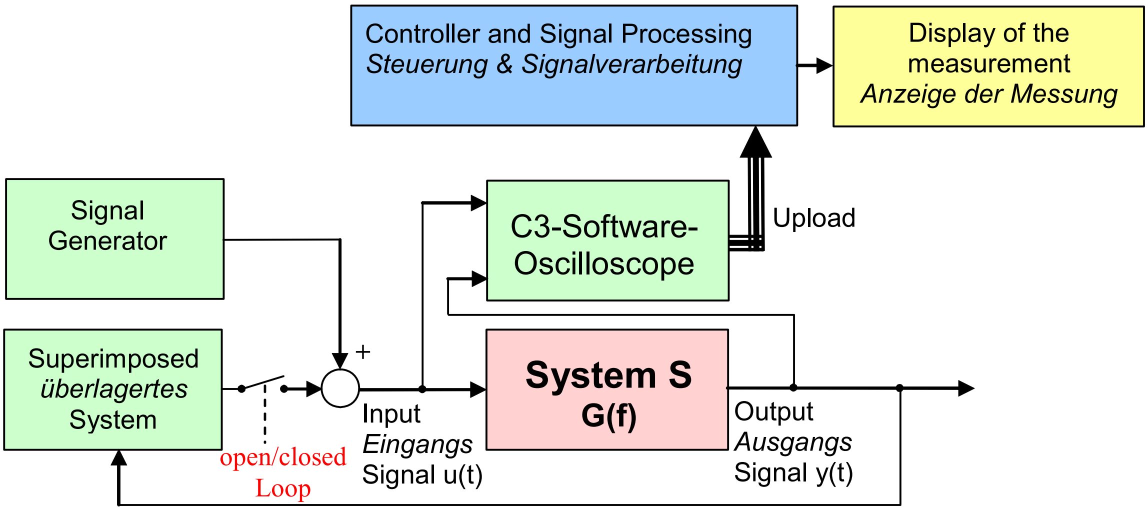
4.3.9.2 Signal analysis overview

The ServoSignalAnalyzer offers three basic methods of analyzing systems:

- Analysis in the time range by measuring the step response
- Spectral analysis of individual signals
- Measurement of frequency response (Bode diagram) of the position control or of individual parts of the control as well as of the control path

These functions are available in the Compax3 ServoManager after the **activation** (see page 253) with the aid of a system-dependent key.
You do not require expensive and complex measurement equipment -> a Compax3 device and a PC will do!

Basic structure of the signal analysis



Systems / signals

Depending on the kind of measurement, the SignalAnalyzer can help analyze the most different signals and systems.

Signal generator

This allows to inject different excitation signals (step, sine and noise signals) into the control loop.

Superposed system

For different analyses, superposed systems must be manipulated in order to allow a measurement. After the measurement, the changes made for this purpose are reset

C3 software oscilloscope

With the aid of the software oscilloscope, the contents of different objects can be registered and be loaded into the PC for further analysis.

Control and signal processing

The control of the entire measurement as well as the processing of the uploaded sample data are made in the PC.

4.3.9.3 Installation enable of the ServoSignalAnalyzer

In this chapter you can read about:

Prerequisites

- Compax3 with up-to-date controller board (CTP 17)
- Firmware version R06-0 installed

Installation

- Execution of the C3 ServoManager Setup (on CD)
- If the firmware is too old => update with the aid of the firmware from the CD

Activation

In order to being able to use the analysis functions in the frequency range (for example frequency response measurement), a software activation is required.

Please observe:

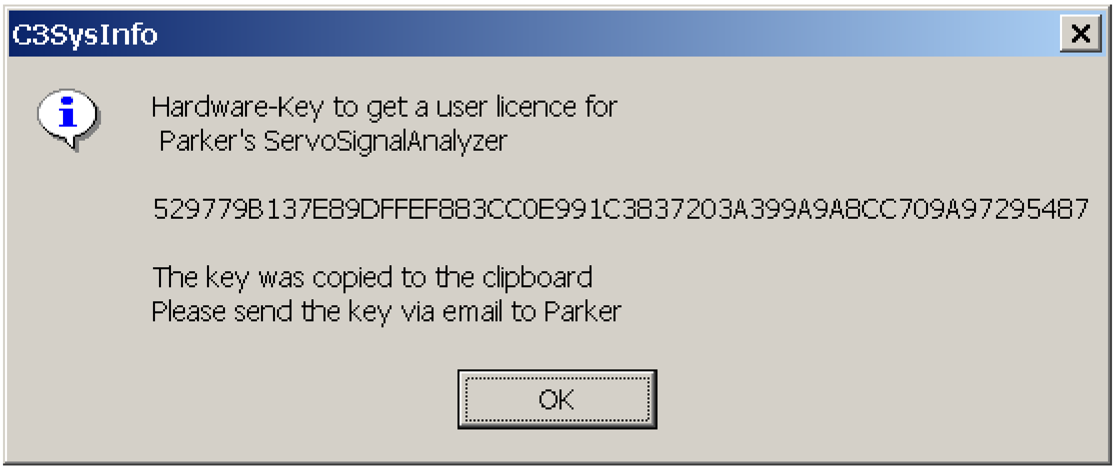
The activation is only valid for the PC on which it was performed!

Caution! : If the PC disposes of network adapters which are removed at times (e.g. PCMIA cards or notebook docking stations), these adapters should be removed before generating the key!

In order to activate the ServoSignalAnalyzer, please follow these steps:

- Start the Compax3 ServoManager.

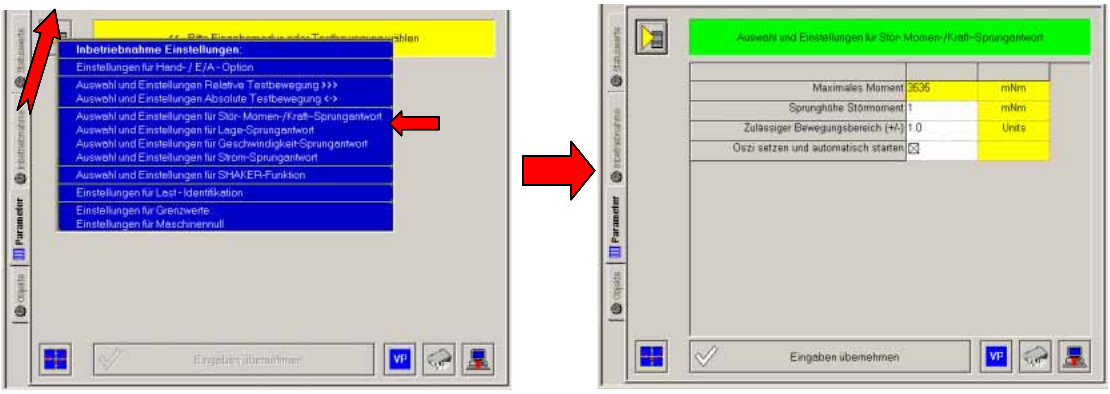
- Select the C3 ServoSignalAnalyzer in the function tree under optimization.
  In the right part of the window you can see the note that no key file was found.
- A double click on the preselected C3 ServoSignalAnalyzer will generate a system-dependent key.



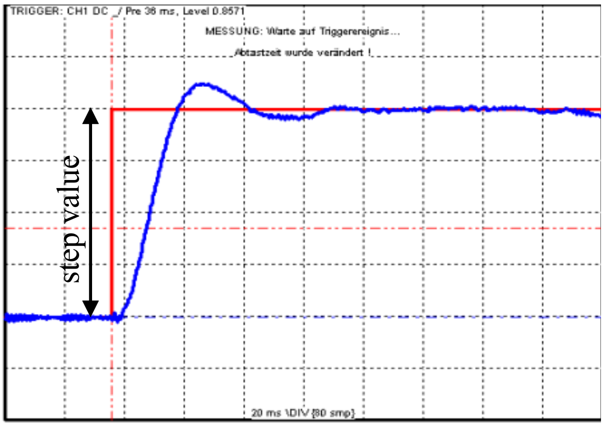
- Acknowledge with OK and enter the key, which is on your clipboard, into an e-mail, which you please send to **eme.ssalicence@parker.com** (mailto:eme.ssalicence@parker.com).
- After receipt of the reply, copy the attached file "C3_SSA.KEY" into the C3 ServoManager directory (C:\Programs\Parker Hannifin\C3Mgr2\).
- => the software is activated.

4.3.9.4 Analyses in the time range

Selection and parameterization of the desired analysis function



Exemplary step function



The following functions are available:

Position demand value step: For analysis of the demand value behavior of the position control

Step value < (admissible motion range / 2)

=> even a 100% overshoot does not incite an error message

Speed demand value step: For analysis of the demand value behavior of the speed control

The position control is switched off during the measurement, this might lead in exceptioal cases to a slow drift of the position.
Furthermore you should make sure that the selected speed step value corresponds to the parameterized admissible motion range.

Step value < (admissible motion range / time of measurement)

with time of measurement > 2s

Current demand value step: For analysis of the demand value behavior of the current control

The current setpoint jerk is set at the end of the oscilloscope recording time, but is reset to 0 after max. 50mS.

Caution!

- Many systems are not stable without control!
- Position as well as speed control are switched off during measurement ==>
  no measurement on z-axes!

disturbance torque- / force step response: For analysis of the disturbance value behavior of the control

The step of an external disturbance force is simulated and the reaction of the controller is registered.

Shaker function

For this, a sine signal is injected to the current which is used to excite the mechanic system. This allows to analyze the oscillation behavior - what oscillates at which frequency.

Basic settings of the analysis functions:

Maximum torque / maximum current / maximum speed (display):

This is used as a lead for the selection of a suitable step value and indicates which maximum step value is possible.

Step value:

Gives the value of a step.

permissible motion range (+/-):

- Indicaton, in which position window the axis may move during the analysis.
- This range is not left even in the event of an error.
- If the drive approaches the limits of the motion range, the controller will decelerate so that the drive will come to a standstill within the permitted motion range. The maximum permitted velocity is used to calculate the deceleration ramp, therefore the drive stops even before reaching the range limits and reports an error.

- Please make sure that a sufficiently large movement is set for the measurement and that it will be reduced by a high maximum permitted velocity.
- The motion range monitoring is especially important during current step responses, as position as well as speed control are deactivated during the measurement.

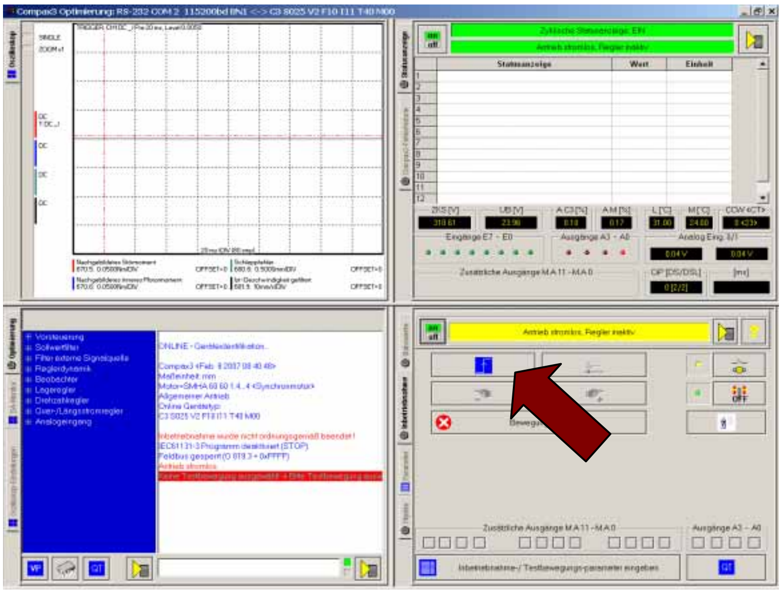
Max permitted speed

When exceeding this value, an error is triggered, the controller decelerates and reports an error.
When measuring the velocity setpoint jerk, the maximum permitted velocity is set to twice the step height.

Setting and automatic start of the oscilloscope:

After pressing "accept entries", the parameters of the oscilloscope (such as scanning time and the assignment of the individual channels) are automatically set to default values according to the respective step value.
When starting the step function, the oscilloscope is automatically started.

Start of the measurement



The start of the step function is made with the aid of the highlighted button.

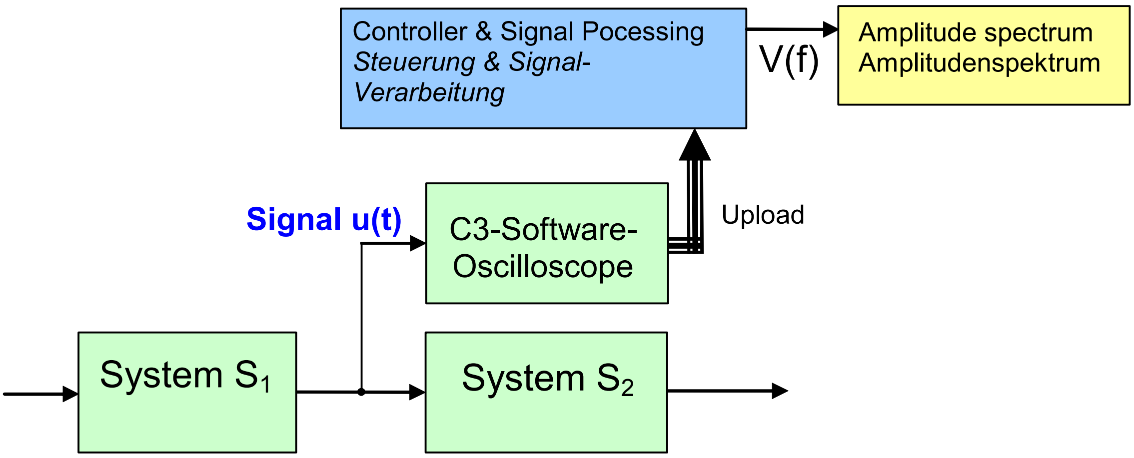
4.3.9.5 Measurement of frequency spectra

In this chapter you can read about:

Please note that you require a licence hey **(see page 253, see page 251) for this application!**

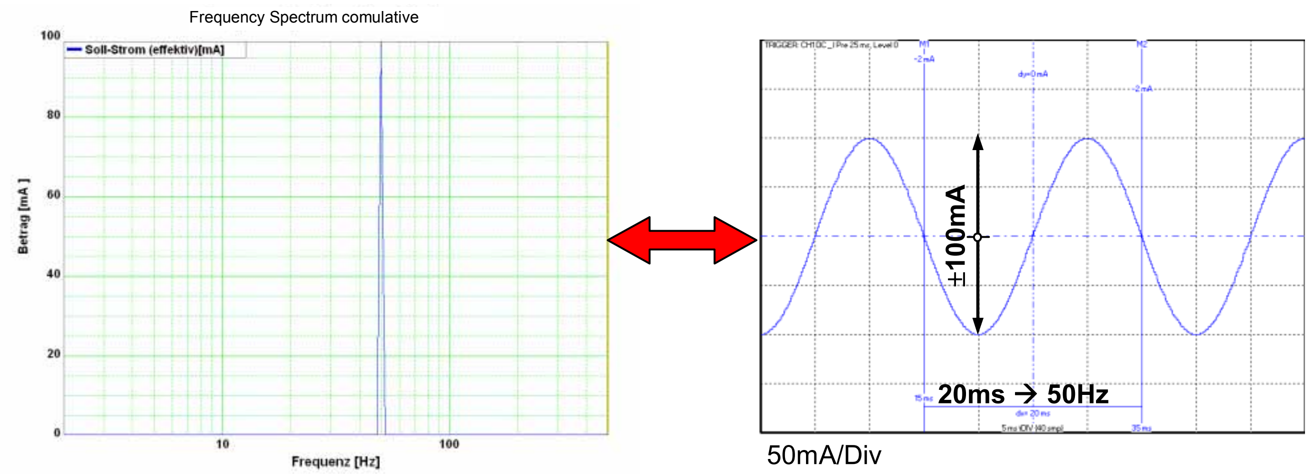
Functionality of the measurement

Measurement of the spectral analysis



During the spectral analysis of scanned signals with the aid of the discrete Fourier transformation, a so-called frequency resolution (Df) results, Df being =fA/N, independently of the scanning frequency (fA) and of the number of measurement values used (N).
The spectra of scanned signals are only defined for frequencies, which are an integer multiple of this frequency resolution.

Interpretation of the frequency spectrum

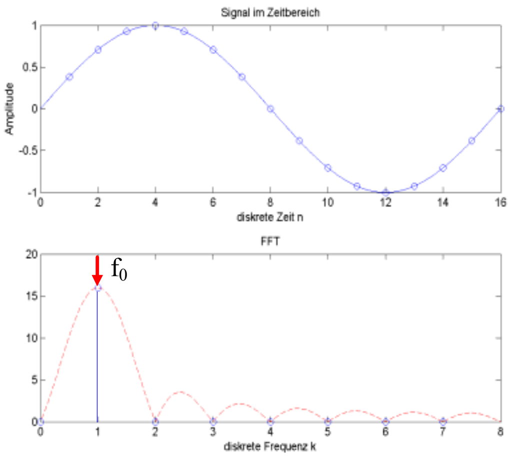


Leak effect and windowing

If frequencies not corresponding to the frequency resolution are present in the analyzed spectrum, the so-called leak effect can be caused.

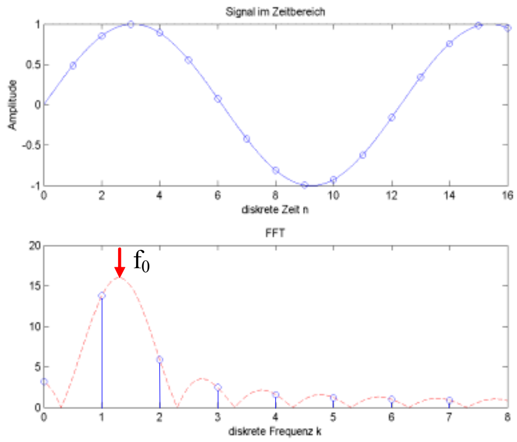
Display of the leak effect with the aid of a 16 point discrete Fourier transformation

Complete oscillation period in the scanning period



Envelope without leak effect

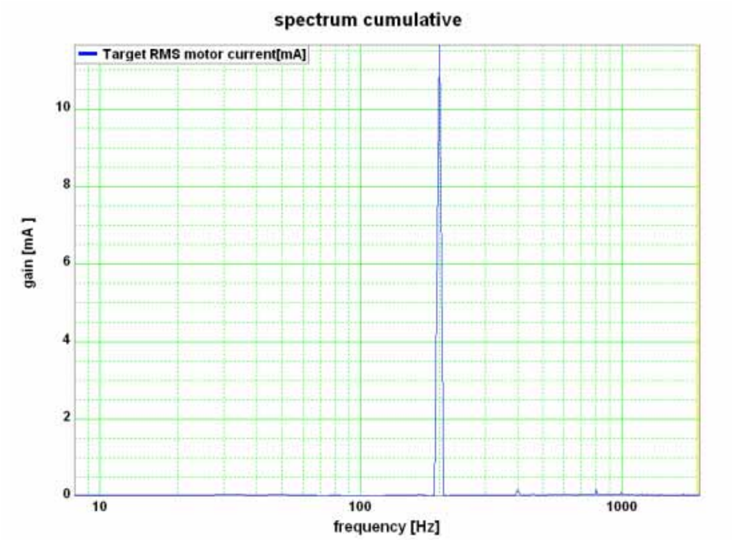
Non complete oscillation period in the scanning period



Envelope with leak effect

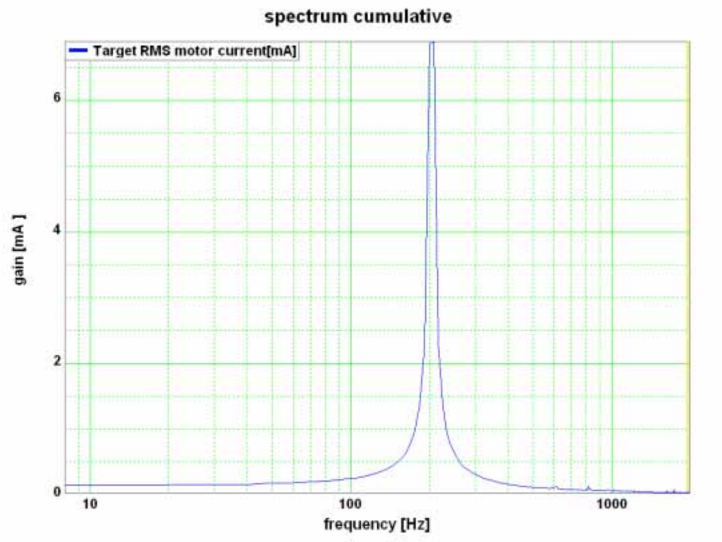
Sine at 200Hz without windowing

Consequence of the leak effect shown at the example of a sine signal.
(fA=4000Hz; N=500; => Δf=8Hz
f0=200Hz = 25*Δf frequency corresponds to the frequency-resolution



The sine frequency is exactly on a multiple of the frequency resolution (200Hz / 8Hz=25). The spectre is clearly separated and there are no leak effects visible.

Sine at 204Hz



Δf=8Hz / f0=204Hz = 25,5·Δf / frequency does not correspond to the frequency resolution!

The sine frequency has only minimally changed, due to which it does, however, no longer match the frequency resolution (204Hz/8Hz=25,5) => leak effect

Two consequences are visible:

The spectre is faded in the ranges at the right and at the left of the sine frequency. In this range, an amplitude is displayed, even though these frequencies are not contained in the real signal.

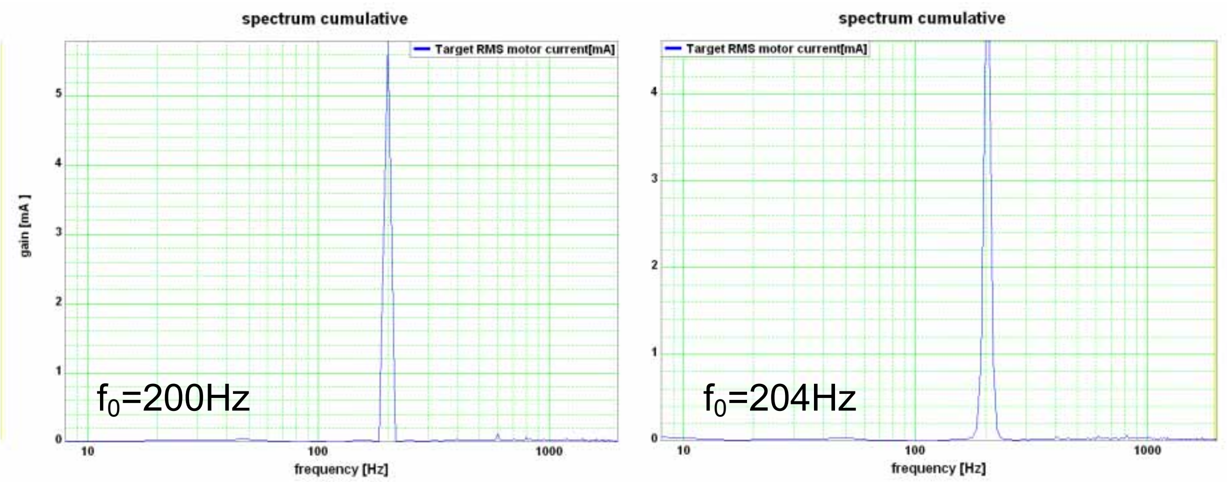
- The height of the peak of the sine frequency is reduced, => it seems as if the signal energy is leaking out and distributing over the spectre. This explains the term leak effect.

Windowing

With the aid of the windowing, leak effects can be avoided. There are many different kinds of windowing, who do all have the same restrictions.

- windowing reduces the total energy of the analyzed signal, which results in a reduced amplitude of all measured frequencies.
- Individual frequency peaks do not appear so sharp and narrow as with measurements without windowing.

Sine at 200Hz and 204Hz with Hanning windowing



4.3.9.6 Measurement of frequency responses

In this chapter you can read about:

Please note that you require a licence hey **(see page 253, see page 251) for this application!**

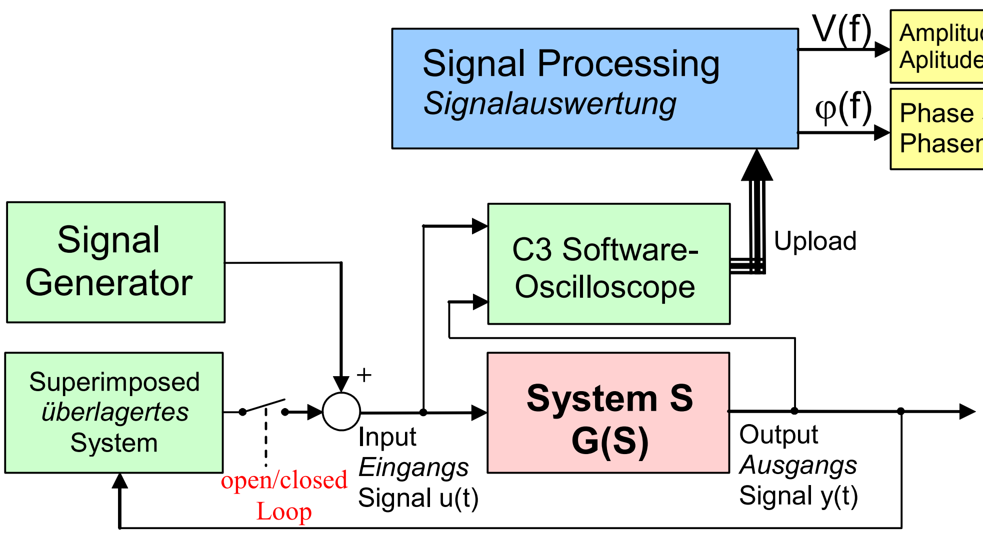
Safety instructions concerning the frequency response measurement

During the measurement of the frequency response, the control is changed and influenced in multiple ways. You should therefore respect the following notes:

- During the measurement, the entire system is excited via a broad frequency spectrum. This might damage especially sensitive components (such as lenses) The risk increases with the extent of the excitation. In addition, natural mechanical frequencies may cause an increased excitation of individual components.
- The measurement of the frequency response can only be made in the setup mode with energized controller.
- During the current measurement (between start and stop of the measurement), no write flash may be executed.
- In the event of a break in communication during the measurement, the controller must be switched off and then on again in order to reestablish the original status.
- Changes of the controller parameters during the measurement are not permitted. Those may be overwritten by standard values when the measurement is terminated.

Functionality of the measurement

Basic structure of a frequency response measurement



In general, the analysis of the dynamic behavior of a system is made by analyzing the input and output signals.
If you transform the input signal as well as the output singal of a system into the range (Fourier transformation) and then divide the output singnal by the input signal, you get the complex frequency response of the system.

$$G(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{U(s)} \quad \text{with} \quad \begin{array}{l} y(t) \xrightarrow{F} Y(s) \\ u(t) \xrightarrow{F} U(s) \end{array}$$

A problem are, however, superimposed systems (the control)
Course of the measurement

- superimposed controls are switched of (open Loop) or attenuated
- The excitation signal is injected in front of the system to be measured with the aid of the signal generator. Wait, until the system settled.
- Execution of the measurement: Registration of input and output signal with the aid of the oscilloscope.
- Upload of the measurement values from the controller into the PC.
- Processing of the measurement values into a frequency response
- If a cumulated measurement is configured: Averaging over several frequency responses.

During cumulated measurement, an average is taken over all measurements in the result memory and the result is then put out.

Open/Closed Loop frequency response measurement

In order to be able to analyze the transmission behavior of subordinate systems (such as for example speed control, current control or mechanical system), the influence of the superposed controls on the measurement must be avoided.

Influence of a superposed system on the frequency response measured

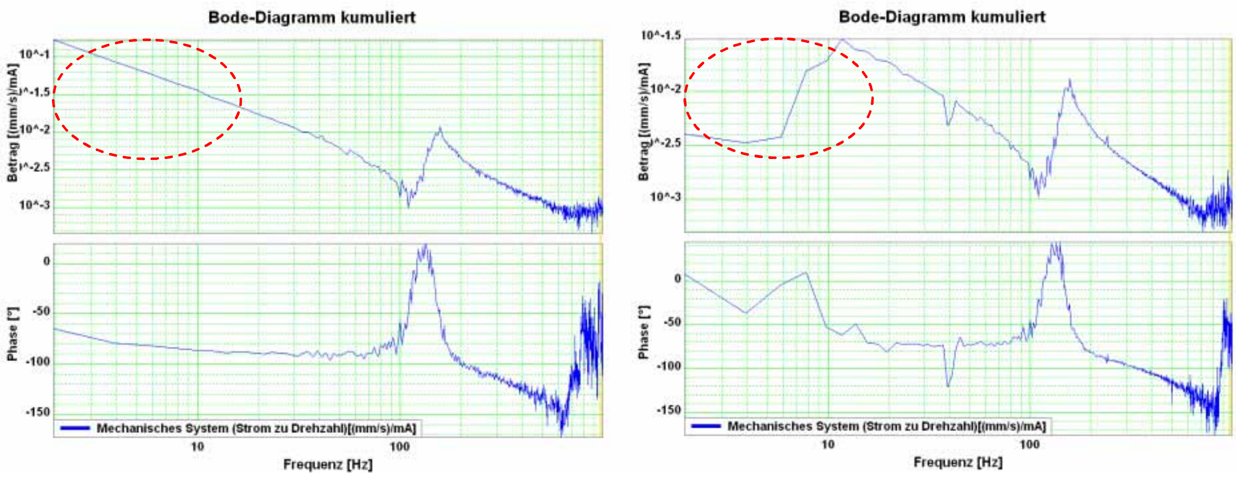
In the simplest case, the superposed controls are switched off completely (Open Loop) This provides the best measurement results due to the elimination of any influence caused by the superposed controls.
This is, however, rarely possible for reasons of safety or feasibility.

Caution!

- Many systems are not stable without control!
- Position as well as speed control are switched off du-ring measurement ==>
  no measurement on z-axes!

If you want to analyze for example the mechanic system of a z-axis, the position control as well as the speed control must remain active.
In systems subject to friction it may be necessary in order to improve the quality of the measurement, to **move the system with a superimposed speed** (see page 265), which is howeveronly possible with a closed loop measurement.

Influence of an active superposed control on the result of the measurement



At the left without, at the right with the influence of the superposed control

In order to attenuate the influence of the superposed controls, the controller band-width is reduced to such an extent, that their influence on the measurement is neg-ligible.

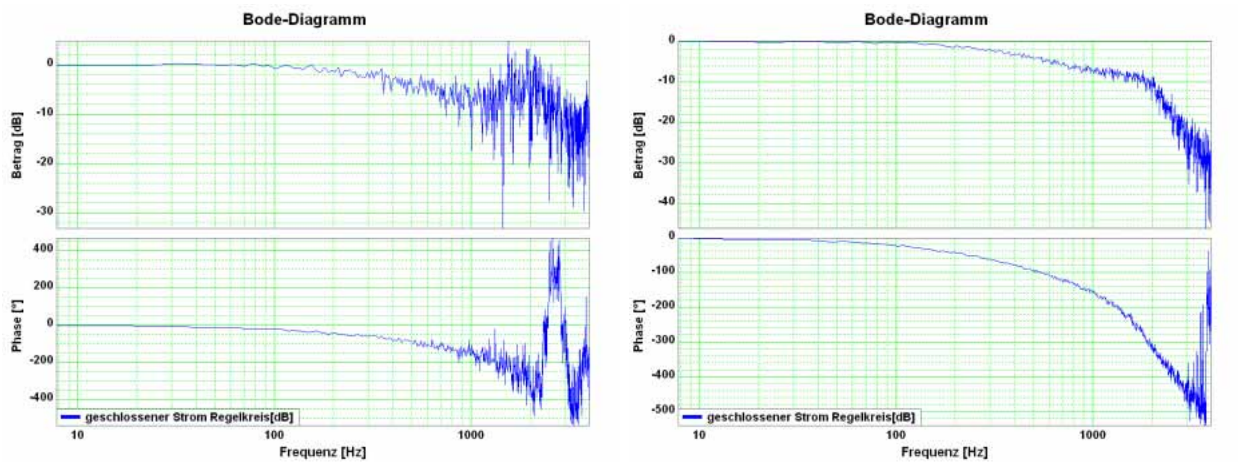
Excitation Signal

In order to be able to analyze the behavior of the system at individual frequencies, it is necessary that these frequencies can be measured in the input signal as well as in the output signal. For this, a signal generator excites all frequencies to be measured. For this applies, that the signal noise distance of the measurement is the larger, the larger the excitation of the system.
High noise distance => low influence of disturbances on the measurement.

For this, an excitation signal is injected in front of the system to be measured.

The power (amplitude) of the excitation signal can be set.
Start with a small amplitude and increase the amplitude slowly during the current measurement until the result of the measurement shows the desired quality.

Influence of the excitation amplitude on the quality of the measurement results



left: too small amplitude of the excitation signal (7.3mA)
right: suitable ampitude of the excitation signal (73mA)

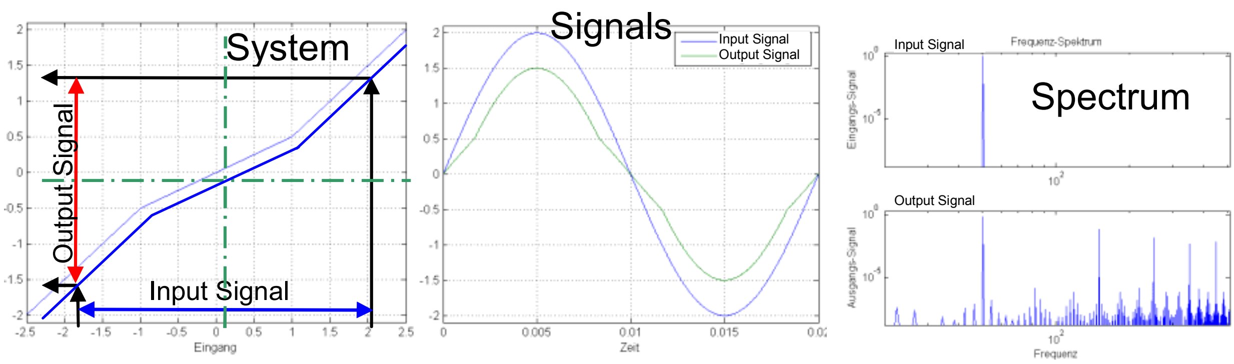
In the case of non-linearities in the system, an increase in the excitation may however lead to a **decline of the quality of the measurement** (see page 264)

Non-linearities and their effects

In this chapter you can read about:

Non-linearities in mechanical systems are for example due to friction, backlash or position-dependent transmissions (cams and crankshaft drives). In general, the frequency response is only defined for linear systems (see **Linear Systems 7.2** (see page 282)). What happens in the frequency range in the event of a non-linear system, is shown below.

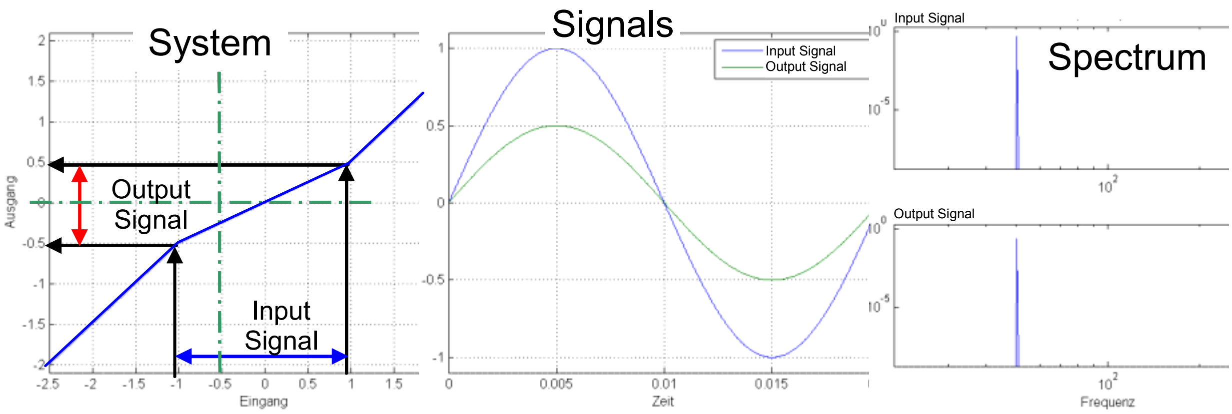
Signal amplitude too high => non-linearity in the signal range



Due to the non-linear transmission behavior of the system, many "new" frequencies were generated in the output signal. In the frequency response, only one change of the frequency present in the input signal can be displayed meaningfully.
=> The frequencies generated in the spectre of the output signal lead to a deterioration of the measured frequency response.
There are however two possibilities to make successful measurements of frequency responses in spite of non-linearities present:

Attenuation of the excitation amplitude

Signal amplitude too small => no non-linearity in the signal range



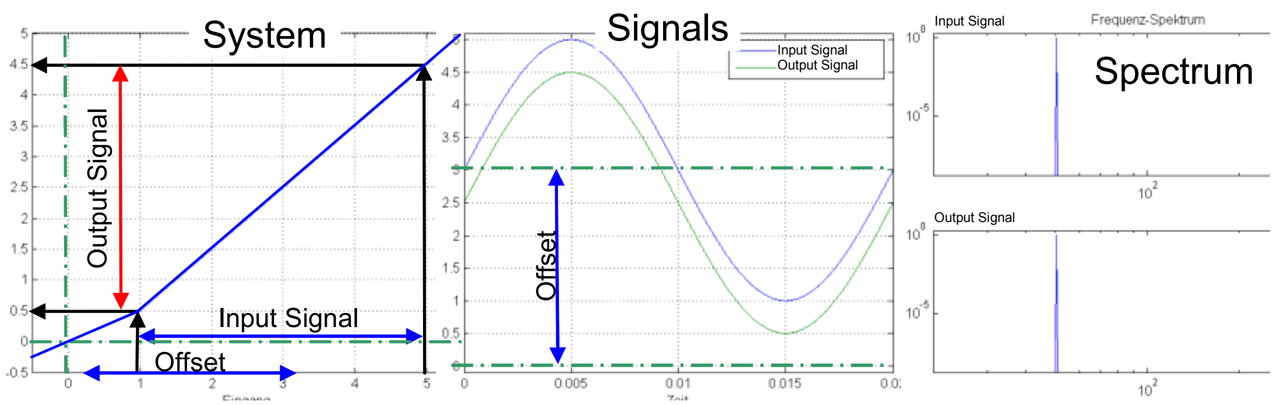
The signal range is reduced so that approximately linear conditions are valid. The results of the measurement will then display the dynamic behavior at the working point.

Example cam drive:

If the drive moves considerably (e.g. 180°) during the measurement, the behavior of the system will change greatly over this range => caused by non-linearities in the signal range.
An inexact measurement is the result.
If the excitation is reduced so that the drive will move only by a few degrees, the behavior of the system at this working point will be approximately constant.
An exact measurement is the result.

Shifting the working point into a linear range

Signal amplitude large with offset => no non-linearity in the signal range



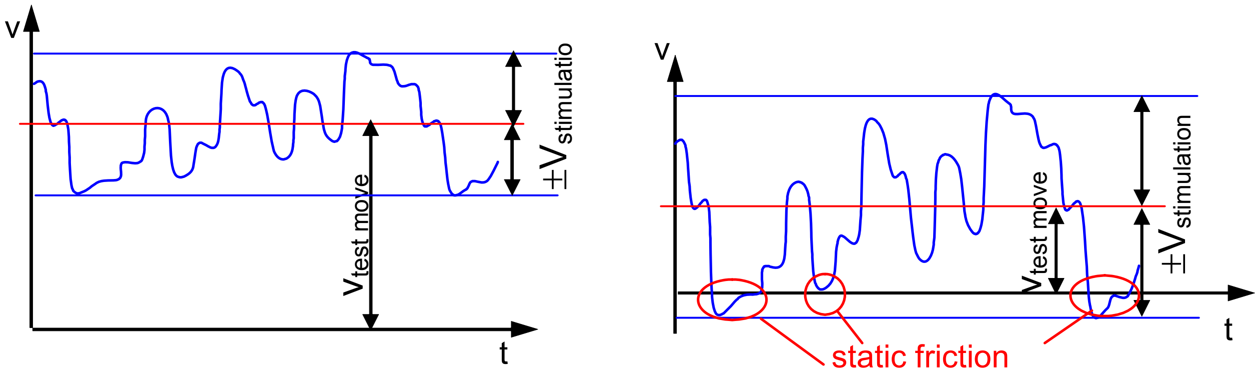
For this, the signal range is shifted so that approximately linear conditions are valid => the results of the measurement show the dynamic behavior at the working point.

Example rubbing caused by friction:

In systems subject to a distinct transition between rubbing caused by friction and sliding friction, the rubbing force will reduce abuptly as soon as the drive is moved (v>0). With a motor at standstill, the excitation signal will cause a multiple passing

through the range of rubbing friction during measurement. Due to the non-linearity in the signal range, the resulting measurement will be inexact.
If the drive moves, however, fast enough during the measurement, so that the speed will not become zero during the measurement, the system remains in sliding friction and a precise measurement can be obtained.

Optimal measurement with rubbing friction



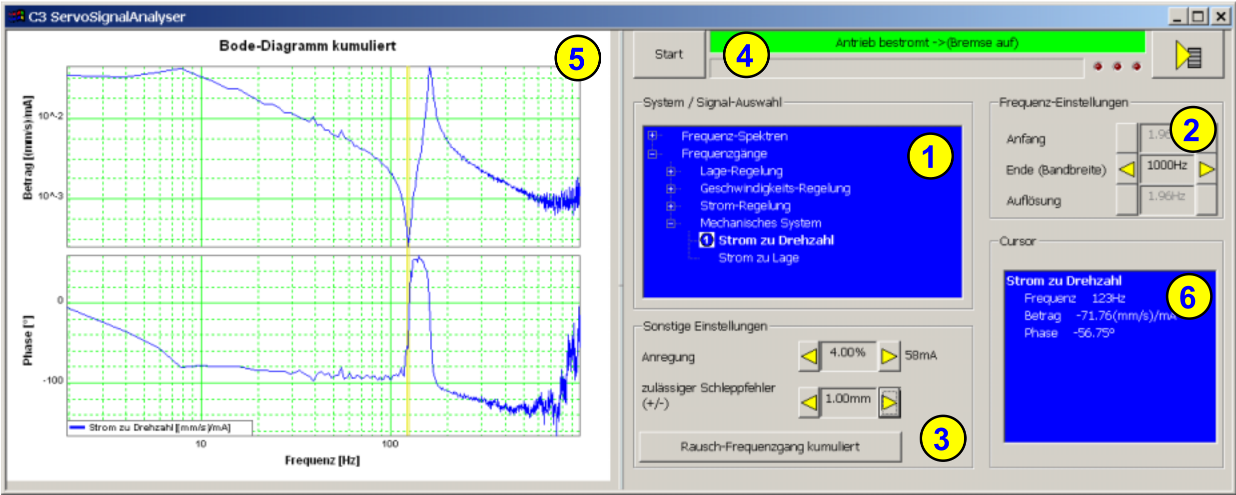
$V_{test\ move}$: Speed of the test movement
$V_{stimulation}$: Speed of the excitation signal

Example backlash: (for example in gearboxes)

Here, non-linearities are caused, if the tooth edges will turn from one side to the other during measurement. The reason for this is a change of the sign of the force transmitted by the gearbox.
In order to avoid this, you can try to transmit a constant torque by keeping a constant speed and to avoid a change of the sign during the measurement by choosing a relatively small excitation amplitude.

4.3.9.7 Overview of the user interface

In this chapter you can read about:



(1) **Selection of the signal or system to be measured** (see page 267)
(2) **Frequency settings** (see page 272)
(3) **Other settings** (see page 274)
(4) **Operating and status field** (see page 277)
(5) **Display of the measurement result** (see page 279)
(6) **Dispaly of the measurement point at the cursor position** (see page 280)

Selection of the signal or system to be measured.

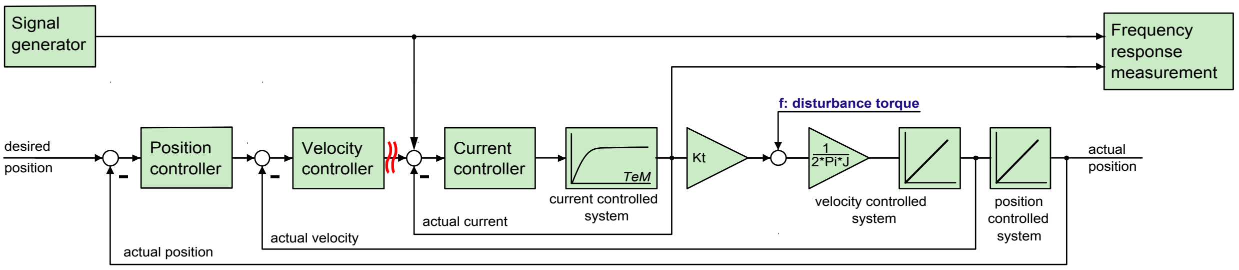
In this chapter you can read about:

With the aid of the tree structure, you may select what you want to measure. Here, the selection is made, if a frequency spectrum or a frequency response is to be measured.
The shown structures are simplified in such as all feedbacks are displayed without special transmission behavior. This is surely not the case in reality, serves however a better overview.

Current control

Closed current control

Shows the dynamic behavior of the closed current control.
=> How a signal on the current demand value is transmitted to the current actual value.
(response)



Signal Generator	Signal Generator
Position controller	
actual position	Actual position value
desired position	
Velocity controller	Geschwindigkeitsregler
actual velocity	Actual speed value
Current controller	
actual current	Actual current value
current controlled system	Current controlled system
disturbance torque	Disturbance torque
velocity controlled system	Speed controlled system
position controlled system	Position controlled system
Frequency response measurement	Frequency response measurement

Application:

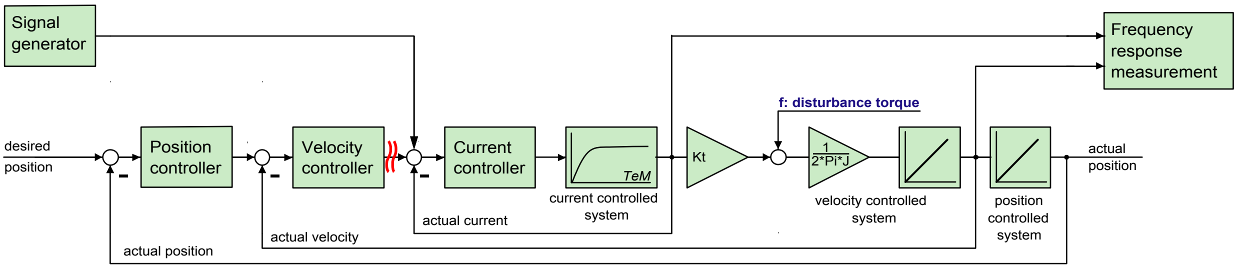
During the optimization of the current control for verification

- for the design of superposed controllers.

Mechanical system

Current to velocity

Shows the dynamic behavior between the measured current actual value and the velocity actual value



Signal Generator	Signal Generator
Position controller	
actual position	Actual position value
desired position	
Velocity controller	Geschwindigkeitsregler
actual velocity	Actual speed value
Current controller	
actual current	Actual current value
current controlled system	Current controlled system
disturbance torque	Disturbance torque
velocity controlled system	Speed controlled system
position controlled system	Position controlled system
Frequency response measurement	Frequency response measurement

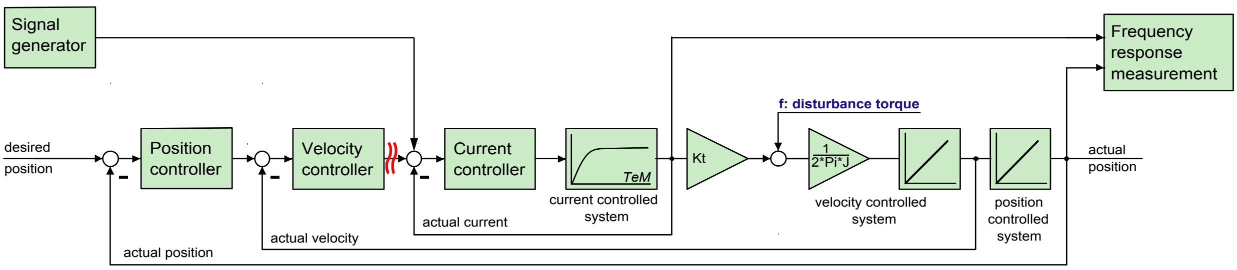
Reflects the transmission behavior between the acceleration at the motor and the acceleration at the load to be moved.

Application:

- for the analysis of the dynamic behavior of the mechanic system

Current to position

Shows the dynamic behavior between current actual value and position actual value.



Signal Generator	Signal Generator
Position controller	
actual position	Actual position value
desired position	
Velocity controller	Geschwindigkeitsregler
actual velocity	Actual speed value
Current controller	
actual current	Actual current value
current controlled system	Current controlled system
disturbance torque	Disturbance torque
velocity controlled system	Speed controlled system
position controlled system	Position controlled system
Frequency response measurement	Frequency response measurement

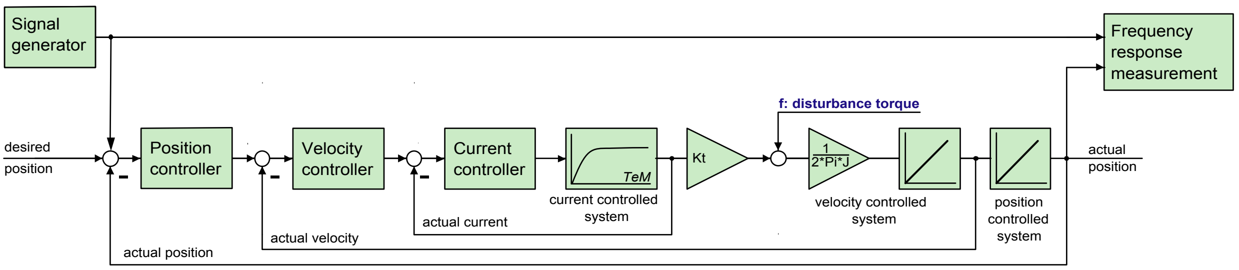
use:

◆ for the analysis of the dynamic behavior of the mechanic system

Position control

Closed position control

Shows the dynamic behavior of the closed position control.
=> How a signal on the position demand value is transmitted to the position actual value.



Signal Generator	Signal Generator
Position controller	
actual position	Actual position value
desired position	
Velocity controller	Geschwindigkeitsregler
actual velocity	Actual speed value
Current controller	
actual current	Actual current value
current controlled system	Current controlled system
disturbance torque	Disturbance torque
velocity controlled system	Speed controlled system
position controlled system	Position controlled system
Frequency response measurement	Frequency response measurement

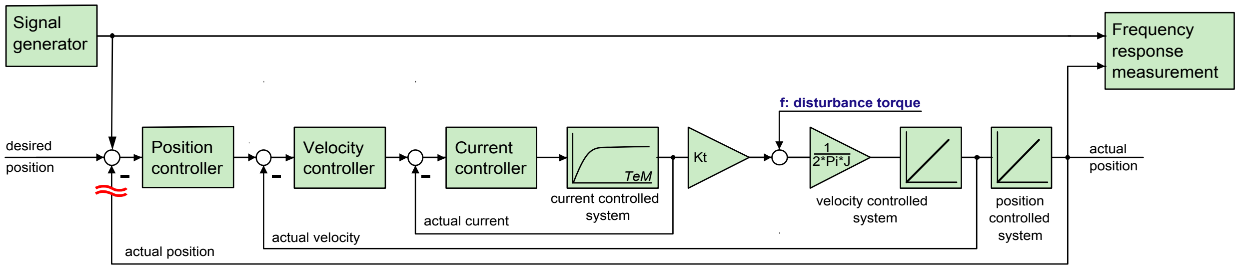
Application:

for the design of superposed controllers or systems.

◆ For the verification of the obtained controller speed during optimization
◆ for the revision of the controller design of the position control

open position control

Shows the dynamic behavior of all components in the position control loop, but without closing it.



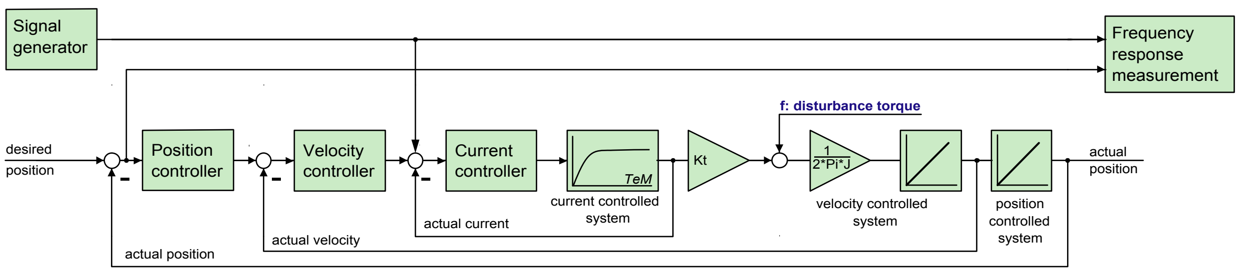
Signal Generator	Signal Generator
Position controller	
actual position	Actual position value
desired position	
Velocity controller	Geschwindigkeitsregler
actual velocity	Actual speed value
Current controller	
actual current	Actual current value
current controlled system	Current controlled system
disturbance torque	Disturbance torque
velocity controlled system	Speed controlled system
position controlled system	Position controlled system
Frequency response measurement	Frequency response measurement

use:

- For the graphic design of the position control.

Compliance of Position control

Shows the dynamic disturbance value behavior of the position control.
=> which dynamic influence does a disturbance torque have on the following error.
The disturbance toque is injected as disturbance current => this corresponds to the effect of a disturbance torque f



Signal Generator	Signal Generator
Position controller	
actual position	Actual position value
desired position	
Velocity controller	Geschwindigkeitsregler
actual velocity	Actual speed value
Current controller	
actual current	Actual current value
current controlled system	Current controlled system
disturbance torque	Disturbance torque
velocity controlled system	Speed controlled system
position controlled system	Position controlled system
Frequency response measurement	Frequency response measurement

use:

- Verification of the dynamic disturbance value behavior of the position control.
- Which following error generates a sinusoidal disturbance torque / disturbance current with the frequency fZ ?
- The frequency response of the compliance corresponds to the disturbance step response in the time range

Frequency settings

- 

(1) start frequency

- This is the smallest frequency at which is still measured. During the measurement of frequency spectrum and noise frequency response this results automatically from the bandwidth and is only displayed as an information.

(2) End (bandwidth)

- This corresponds to the highest frequency which is measured. Start frequency as well as the frequency resolution can be varied with the aid of the bandwidth for frequency spectrum and noise frequency response.

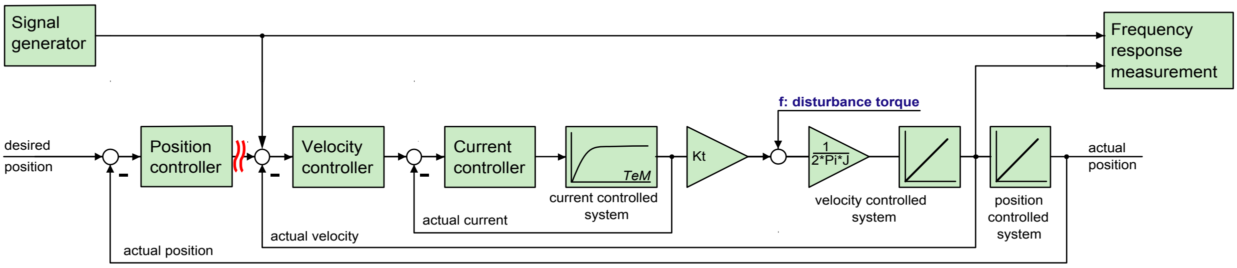
(3) Frequency resolution **(see page 258)**

- During the measurement of frequency spectrum and noise frequency response this results automatically from the bandwidth and is only displayed as an information.

velocity control

Closed velocity control

Shows the dynamic behavior of the closed velocity control.
=> How a signal on the velocity demand value is transmitted to the velocity actual value.



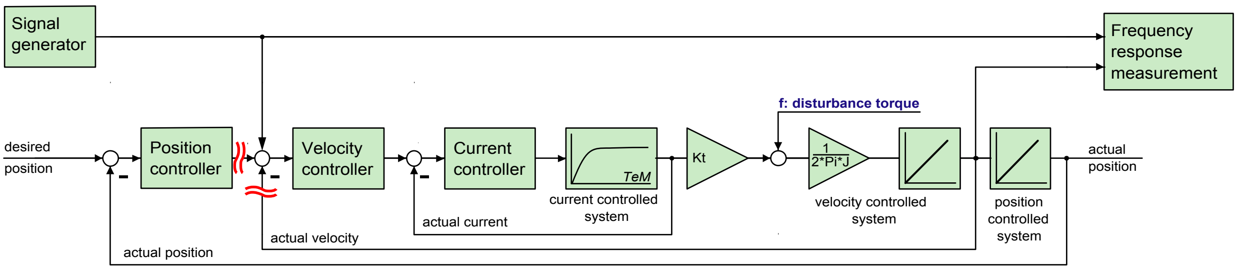
Signal Generator	Signal Generator
Position controller	
actual position	Actual position value
desired position	
Velocity controller	Geschwindigkeitsregler
actual velocity	Actual speed value
Current controller	
actual current	Actual current value
current controlled system	Current controlled system
disturbance torque	Disturbance torque
velocity controlled system	Speed controlled system
position controlled system	Position controlled system
Frequency response measurement	Frequency response measurement

use:

- During the optimization of the velocity control for verification
- for the design of superposed controllers.

Open velocity control

Shows the dynamic behavior of all components in the velocity control loop, but without closing it.



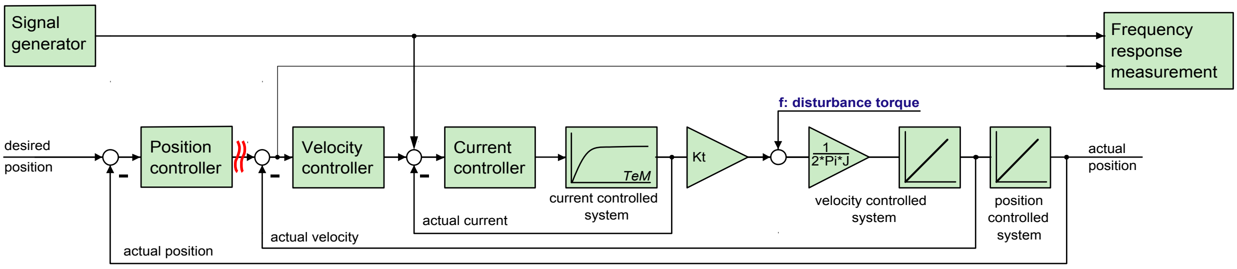
Signal Generator	Signal Generator
Position controller	
actual position	Actual position value
desired position	
Velocity controller	Geschwindigkeitsregler
actual velocity	Actual speed value
Current controller	
actual current	Actual current value
current controlled system	Current controlled system
disturbance torque	Disturbance torque
velocity controlled system	Speed controlled system
position controlled system	Position controlled system
Frequency response measurement	Frequency response measurement

use:

For the graphic design of the velocity control.

Compliance of velocity control

Shows the dynamic disturbance value behavior of the velocity control.
=> which dynamic influence does a disturbance torque have on the control deviation of the velocity control.
The disturbance toque is injected as disturbance current => this corresponds to the effect of a disturbance torque f

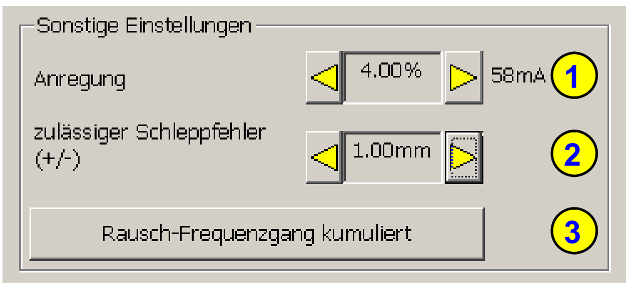


Signal Generator	Signal Generator
Position controller	
actual position	Actual position value
desired position	
Velocity controller	Geschwindigkeitsregler
actual velocity	Actual speed value
Current controller	
actual current	Actual current value
current controlled system	Current controlled system
disturbance torque	Disturbance torque
velocity controlled system	Speed controlled system
position controlled system	Position controlled system
Frequency response measurement	Frequency response measurement

Application:

- Verification of the disturbance value behavior of the velocity control
- Which velocity deviation generates a sinusoidal disturbance torque / disturbance current with the frequency fZ ?
- The frequency response of the compliance corresponds to the disturbance step response in the time range

Other settings



(1) Excitation

Serves to set the excitation signal of the frequency response measurement.

(2) Permissible following error (only for frequency response measurement)

The resulting following error is increased by the injection of the excitation signal during the frequency response measurement. In order to allow for this, the permissible following error window can be enlarged so that the measurement can be made. After the end of the measurement, this is reset to the original value.

(3) Selection of the kind of analysis of the measurement results

Depending on the fact whether frequency spectra or frequency responses are measured, the following types of analyses are available:

For frequency spectra:

- (a) Spectrum
- (b) Spectrum cumulated
- (c) cascade diagram

For frequency responses:

- (d) noise frequency response
- (d) noise frequency response cumulated

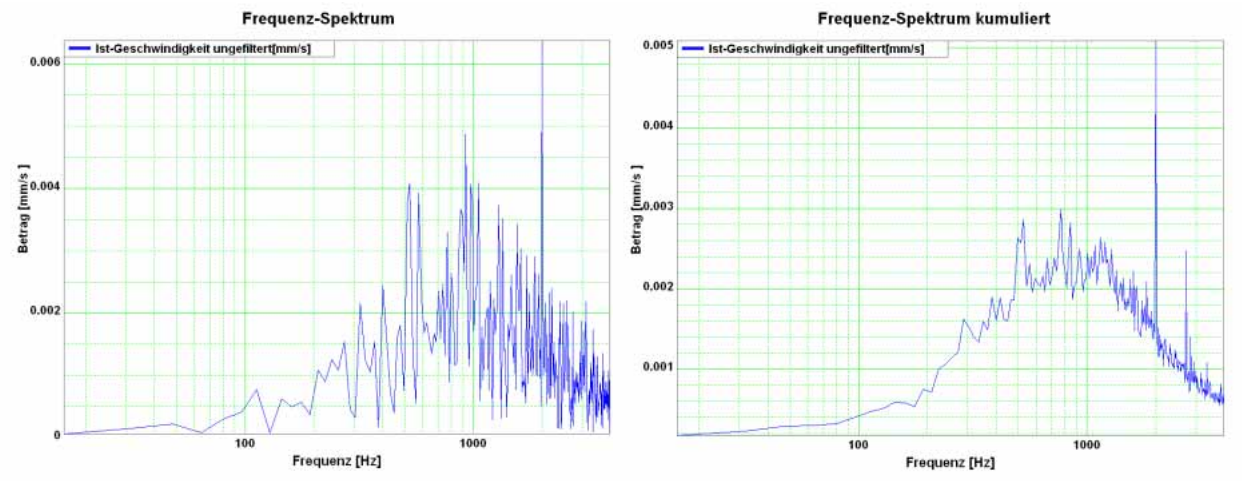
Non cumulated measurement (a & d)

The measured data are displayed directly. This is especially suitable if you wish to analyze the effects of changes on the measurement results directly and promptly. The disadvantage is however a smaller noise distance (quality) and an increased sensitiveness of the measurement towards unique disturbances.

Cumulated measurement (b & e)

An average is taken from all measurements in the result memory. This reduces the influence of random signals and disturbances extremely (improvement of the quality). The number of measurements from which the average is taken, is set with the **Size of the result memory** (see page 277).

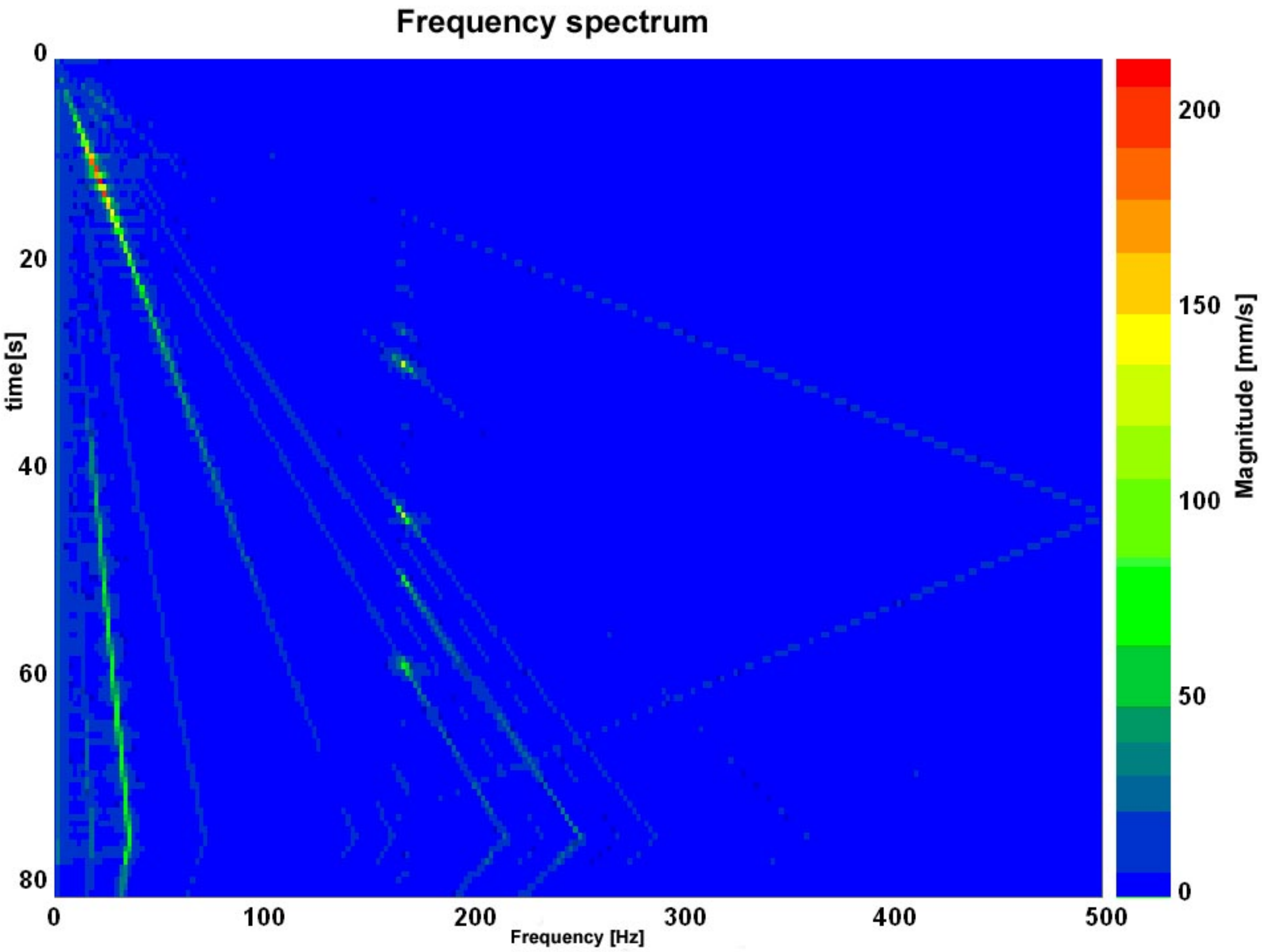
Comparison of two frequency spectra without and with cumulation



cascade diagram (c)

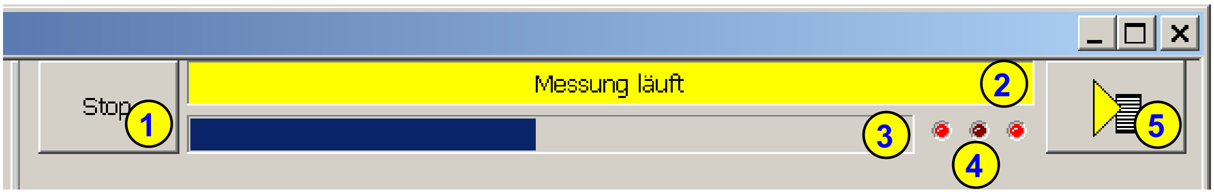
Frequency spectra are displayed subject to time. The information on the value of the signal is color-coded.

Cascade diagrams of the velocity signal during an acceleration process



This kind of display is suitable for the analysis of temporal changes in the measu-red spectrum.

Operating and status field



(1) Start and Stop of the measurement

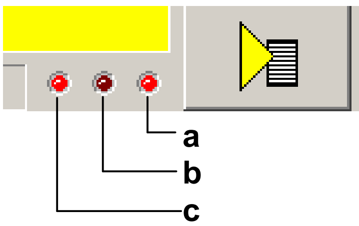
(2) Status display

Current status of the measurement or of the controller (if no measurement is taking place).

(3) Progress of the registration of the signals in the controller

The time of registration of the signals in the controller itself can, depending on the bandwidth and the kind of measurement, take up to one minute.

(4) status of the activity of the different partitions of the measurement



a: Registration of the measurement in the controller
b: Upload of the measurement from the controller to the PC
c: Processing the measurement in the PC

(5) Different settings and options

Functions available in a pull-down menu:
Open superposed control loops (see page 263)

accept load force

This serves, when opening the velocity controller, to accept the load which the controller has provided at the time of switching off => a z-axis does not drop down abruptly.

Measurement synchronous to the test movement

if this option is selected, it is ensured during the measurement, that the sampling does not take place in the turning point during a movement.
Unless frequencies are generated due to the deceleration/acceleration of the drive, which influence the measurement.

Result memory

In the result memory, the results of the N last measurements are kept.
This is important for the display of the cumulated measurement and for the cascade diagram. The larger the memory, the "older" the results still used. When the contents is deleted, all old measurements are discarded and do no longer influence the new results.

Windowing **(see page 259)**

Here you can select different windowing modes for the measurement of frequency spectra. As default, no window is used.

Save measure to file

The currently displayed measurement result is stored and can be uploaded later into the ServoSignalAnalyzer. This does, however, not apply to the cascade diagram display.

Open measure from file

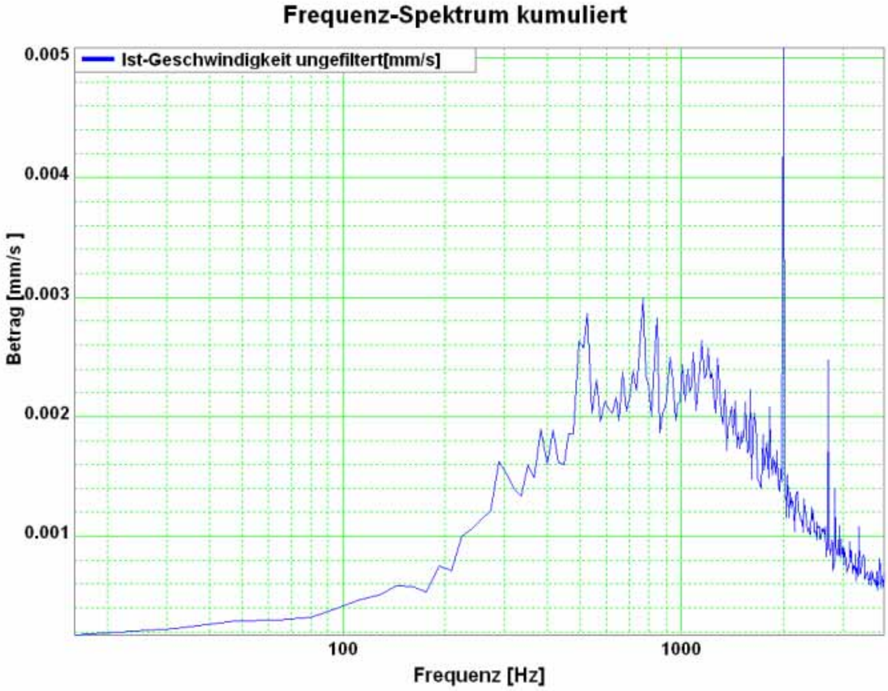
Here you can reload the measurements memorized before. You have the possibility to load up to four measurements subsequently and display them together in a graphic display.

Copy measurement to clipboard as graphic display.

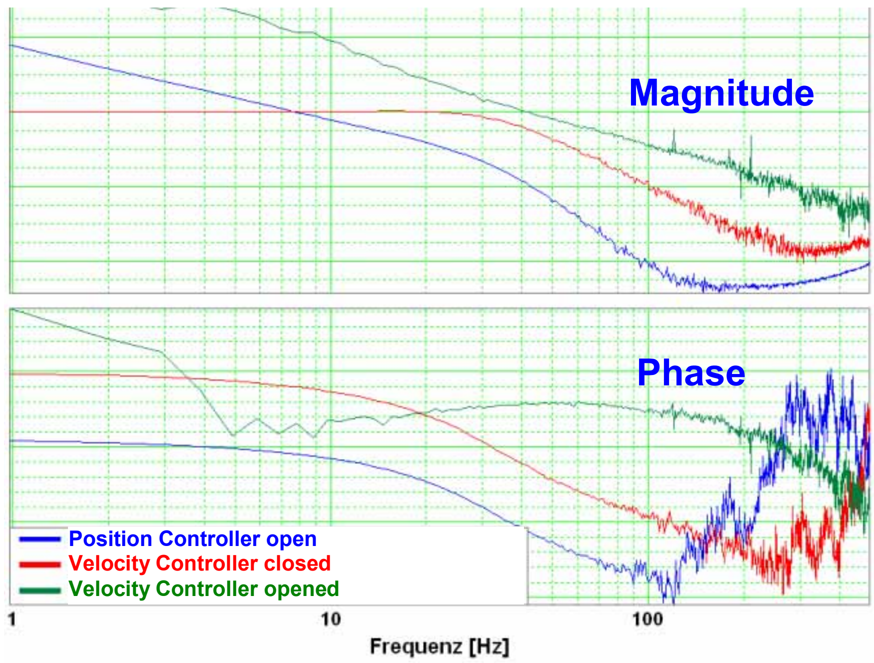
The currently displayed measurement result is copied as pixel graphic (e.g. BMP) to the clipboard.

Display of the measurement result

Frequency spectra

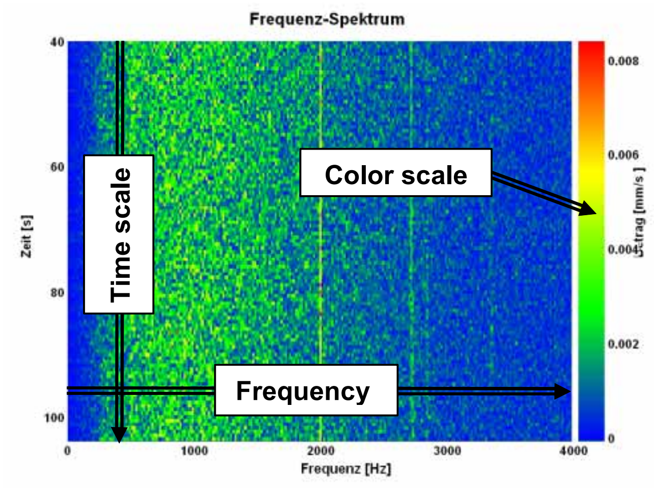


Bode diagrams: Value and phase



By clicking with the left mouse button on the legend, this can be shifted by 90°.
By clicking on the color bar, the color of the respective graph can be modified.

Cascade diagrams



By clicking with the left mouse button on the color scale, you can change between autoscale mode and fixscale mode.

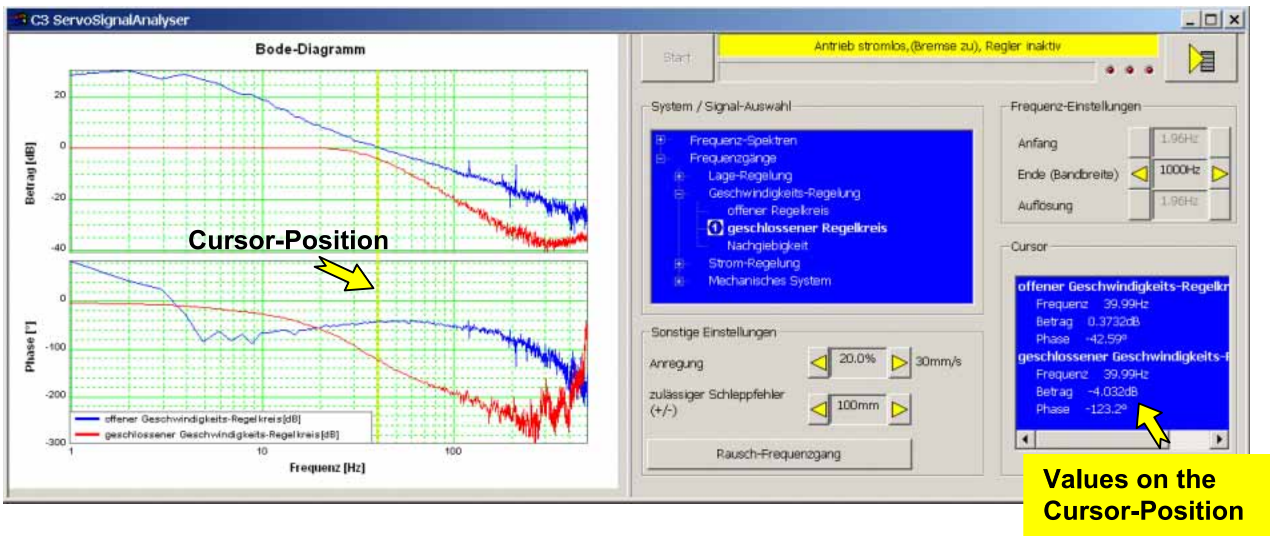
AutoScaleMode:

In this mode, the scaling of hte color scale is adapted automatically so that all values can be displayed.

FixScaleMode:

Here, the scaling is fixed.
=> If, for instance, a considerably higher value than before is to be displayed, it is simply displayed like the former maximum (red).

Dispaly of the measurement point at the cursor position



The cursor is set by clicking on the left mouse button. All measurement data of the selected cursor position (frequency) are displayed in the "cursor" operating field.

4.3.9.8 Basics of frequency response measurement

In this chapter you can read about:

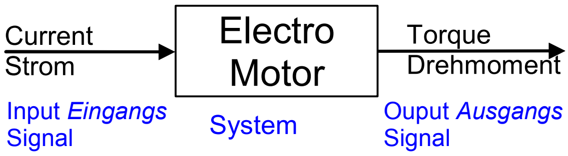
In the drive and control technology, the display of signals and systems in the frequency range is often the best possibility to solve different tasks.

Distinction between signals and systems

Defined objects and their interactions that can be combined to a whole by a plausible distinction from their environment (i.e. the complex reality) are called a system.

Example electric motor

This consists of a multitude of different components, but the function and the behavior of a motor can be described as a whole without describing each individual component and their interactions separately.
If the motor is energized, it will generate a torque at the motor shaft.

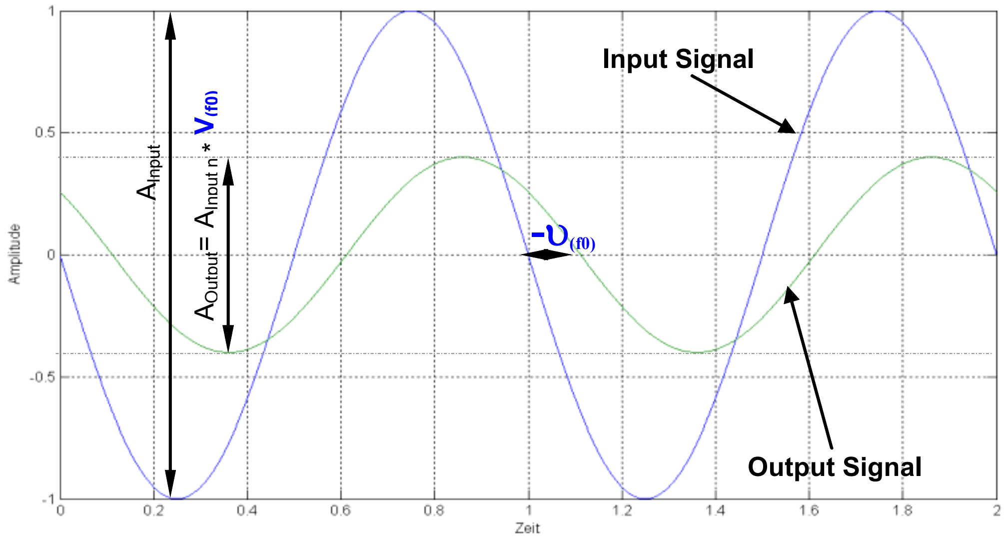


Current is therefore a signal, which causes at the input of the system motor a change of its output signal torque.
In order to register and process such signals in the controller, they are digitized and read in withthe so-called scanning frequency (fA). Thus the physical signal was converted into a finite sequence of numbers, which can be processed in the controller.

Linear Systems (LTI System)

Further explanations are based on the concept of so-called linear systems. This means that doubling the input value means that the portion of the output value influenced by it is also doubled. this, for instance, is not the case in the event of influence due to limitations, friction and backlash.
=> those are called non-linear systems, which can not be analyzed with the methods described here (or only with difficulties).
One of the most important properties of linear systems is that a sine signal, which is put through a linear system, is still a sine signal at the output, which differs from the input signal only in value and phase.
When a signal passes a LTI system, no new frequencies are generated.

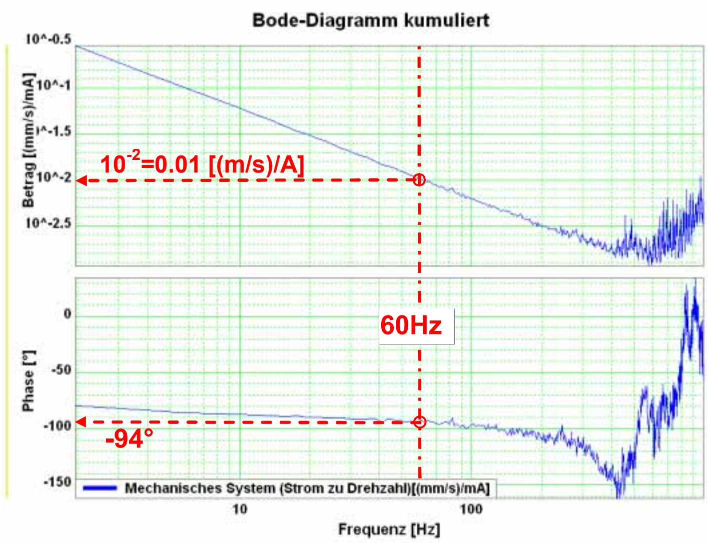
Input and output signals of a linear system



If you know the value (V(f0)) as well as the phase position (u(f0)) for all frequencies, the LTI system is completely defined.
Such a graph of value and phase position in dependance of the frequency, is called frequency response or bode diagram.

=> only LTI systems can be analyzed with the aid of frequency responses.

Frequency response / bode diagram

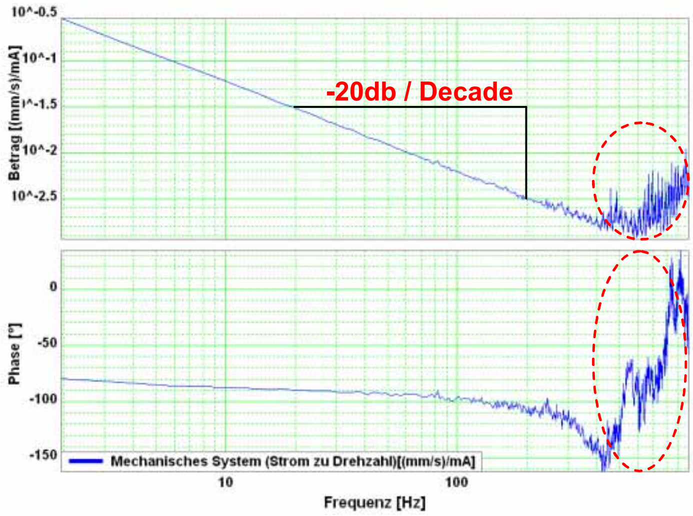


<u>The frequency response shows the amplification (value) and the phase shift (phase), which a signal is submittedd to when passing through a system.</u>

The displayed bode diagram allows the following conclusions:
If a sine with 60Hz and an amplitude of 1A is present at the input, a sine delayed by 94° and an amplitude of 0.01m/s will result at the output.

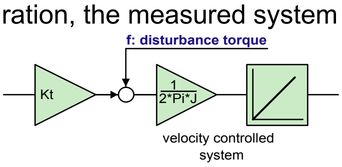
Mechanical system

Frequency response of a mechanic system: Current - velociy of a motor



The outlined course at the end of the measurement range does not permit statements on the system measured due to disturbances. Due to the attenuation of the signals increasing with the frequency, the sensitiveness of the measurement to disturbances (signal to noise ratio) increases with a rising frequency. The value as well as the phase response of the displayed frrquency response are "disturbed" at the same intensity, this shows, that disturbances are the reason.

The value response consists basically of a straight, which declines with a slope of -20dB/decade (-20dB/decade => per tenfold increase of the frequency, the value decreases also by factor ten.)
the phase response remains however almost constantly at -90° over a relatively large range.
In control technology, this is called integrating behavior (I-behavior).
the I-behavior can be explained as follows.
The measured current is proportional to the motor force and thus also to the acceleration of the driven mass. As the velocity is calculated from the integrated acceleration, the measured system looks as follows:

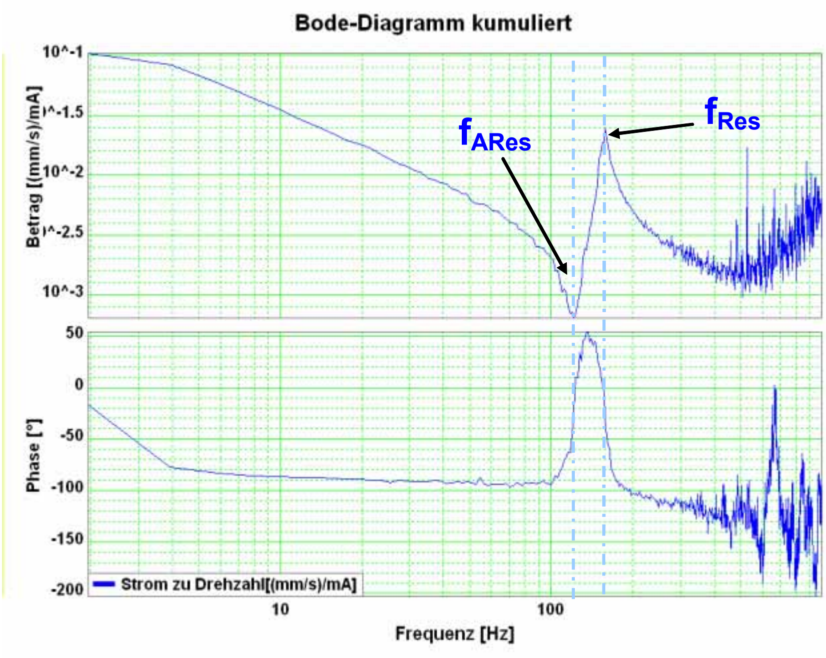


Input value is the current actual value, output value is the velocity actual value

Resonance points and their causes

In this chapter you can read about:

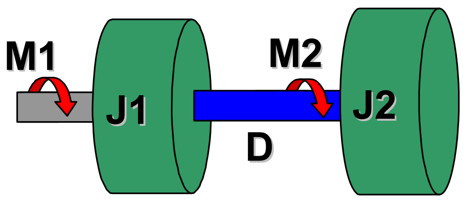
Mechanical system with a resonance point



fARes: Anti resonance frequency
fRes: Resonance frequency
The displayed change of the frequency response (resonance point), has its cause in a so-called two mass system (caused by the elastic coupling of two masses).

Hint As, upon closer examination, each mechanic coupling shows a certain elasticity, it is no the question if there is a resonance point, but at which frequency it is and how well it is attenuated.

Rotary two mass system



The shown system corresponds for instance to a motor with a flywheel coupled via a shaft. Hereby J1 corresponds to the motor moment of inertia and J2 to the moment of inertia of the flywheel.

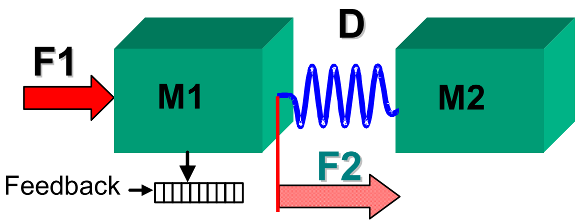
Calculation of the resonance frequencies in the rotary system with a hollow shaft as elastic coupling element

$$D=\int_{r_I}^{r_A}\frac{2\cdot\pi\cdot G}{l}\cdot r^3\cdot dr=\frac{G\cdot\pi\cdot\left(r_A^4-r_I^4\right)}{2\cdot l}$$

$$f_{ARes}=\frac{1}{2\cdot\pi}\cdot\sqrt{\frac{D}{J_2}} \qquad f_{Res}=\frac{1}{2\cdot\pi}\cdot\sqrt{D\cdot\left(\frac{1}{J_1}+\frac{1}{J_2}\right)}$$

G	Shear modulus of the material used [N/m²] (e.g. approx. 80750N/mm² for steel)
D	Torsional rigidity in [m/rad]
rA	Outer radius of the hollow shaft
rI	Inner radius of the hollow shaft
l	Length of the hollow shaft

Linear two mass system

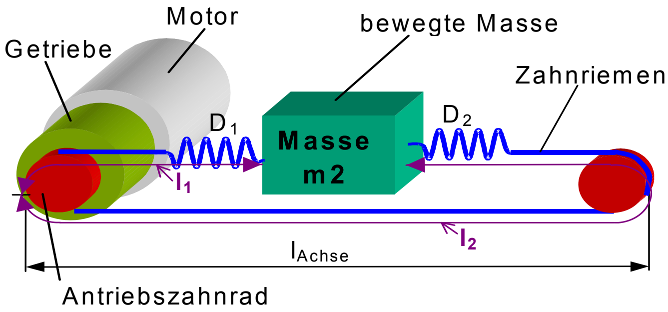


Resonance frequencies in the linear system

$$f_{ARes}=\frac{1}{2\cdot\pi}\cdot\sqrt{\frac{D}{m_2}} \qquad f_{Res}=\frac{1}{2\cdot\pi}\cdot\sqrt{D\cdot\left(\frac{1}{m_1}+\frac{1}{m_2}\right)}$$

D	Rigidity in [N/m]
m1	e.g. motor mass
m2	e.g. load mass

Toothed belt drive as two mass system



In toothed belt drives, the toothed belt is the elastic coupling element. Its rigidity depends directly on the lengths l1 and l2 and changes in dependance of the position of the moved mass.

$$D_{spez} = \frac{F_{max}}{0{,}004}; \qquad l_2 = 2 \cdot l_{Achse} - l_1$$

$$D_1 = \frac{D_{spez}}{l1}; \qquad D_2 = \frac{D_{spez}}{l2}; \qquad D = D_1 + D_2 = \frac{2 \cdot D_{spez}}{l_1 \cdot \left(2 - \frac{l_1}{l_{Achse}}\right)}$$

$$f_{ARes} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \cdot \sqrt{\frac{D}{m2}} \qquad f_{Res} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \cdot \sqrt{D \cdot \left(\frac{1}{m_2} + \frac{(r_{Zahnrad})^2}{J_1 \cdot (i_{Getriebe})^2}\right)}$$

D	Total spring constant of the toothed belt drive
Dspez	Specific spring constant of the toothed belt used
D1	Spring rate of the belt length l1
D2	Spring rate of the belt length l2
iGearbox	Transmission ratio of the gearbox
lAxis	Length of the axis
J1	Moment of inertia of motor and gearbox
m2	translatory moved mass
rToothed wheel	Radius of the drive pinion

4.3.9.9 Examples are available as a movie in the help file

Here you can find examples as a movie in the help file.

4.3.10. ProfileViewer for the optimization of the motion profile

In this chapter you can read about:

You will find the ProfileViewer in the Compax3 ServoManager under the "Tools" Menu:

4.3.10.1 Mode 1: Time and maximum values are deduced from Compax3 input values

- The motion profile is calculated from Position, Speed, Acceleration, Deceleration, Acceleration Jerk and Deceleration Jerk
- As a result you will get, besides a graphical display, the following characteristic values of the profile:
  - Times for the acceleration, deceleration and constant phase
  - Maximum values for acceleration, deceleration and speed

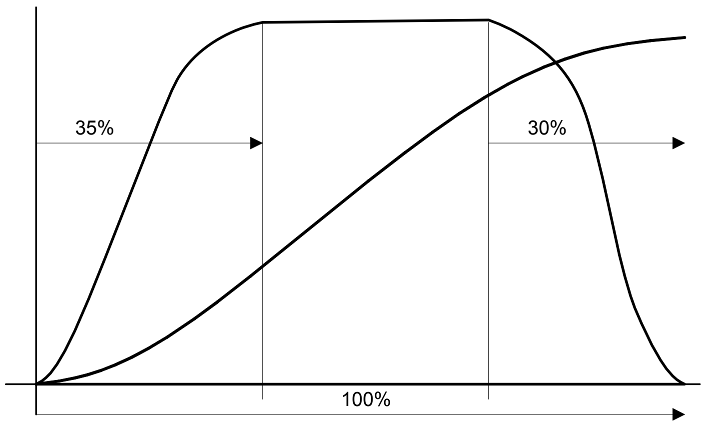
4.3.10.2 Mode 2: Compax3 input values are deduced from times and maximum values

- A jerk-limited motion profile is calculated from the positioning time and the maximum speed / acceleration
- As a result you will get, besides a graphical display, the following characteristic values of the profile:
  - the parameters Position, Speed, Acceleration, Deceleration, Acceleration Jerk and Deceleration Jerk
  - Times for the acceleration, deceleration and constant phase
  - Maximum values for acceleration, deceleration and speed

Set deceleration and acceleration phase

The profile can be defined more exactly by entering the segmentation into deceleration and acceleration phase.
When setting 50% and 50%, a symmetrical design will result, the values for triangular operation are calculated, which is limited by the maximum speed.
The total of the percentage values may not exceed 100.
The percentage entries refer to the total positioning time.

Example:



4.3.11. Turning the motor holding brake on and off

Compax3 controls the holding brake of the motor and the power output stage. The time behavior can be set.

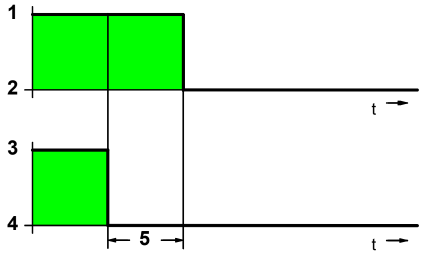
Application:

For an axis to which torque is applied in the stationary state (e.g. for a z-axis) the drive can be switched on and off in a manner such that no load movement takes place. The drive thereby remains energized during the holding brake response time. This is adjustable.

The power output stage current is de-energized by:

- Error or
- I2=X12/8="0V"

Thereafter the motor is braked to zero rotation speed on the set ramp.
When zero speed is reached, the motor is de-energized with the delay "brake closing delay time".

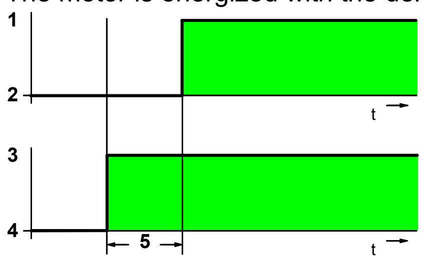


1: Motor powered
2: Motor de-energized
3: Brake open
4: Engage the brake
5: brake closing delay time

The power output stage is enabled by:

- Quit (after an error)
- I2=X12/8 = 24V

The motor is energized with the delay "delay time for brake release".



1: Motor powered
2: Motor de-energized
3: Brake open
4: Engage the brake
5: Delay time for brake release

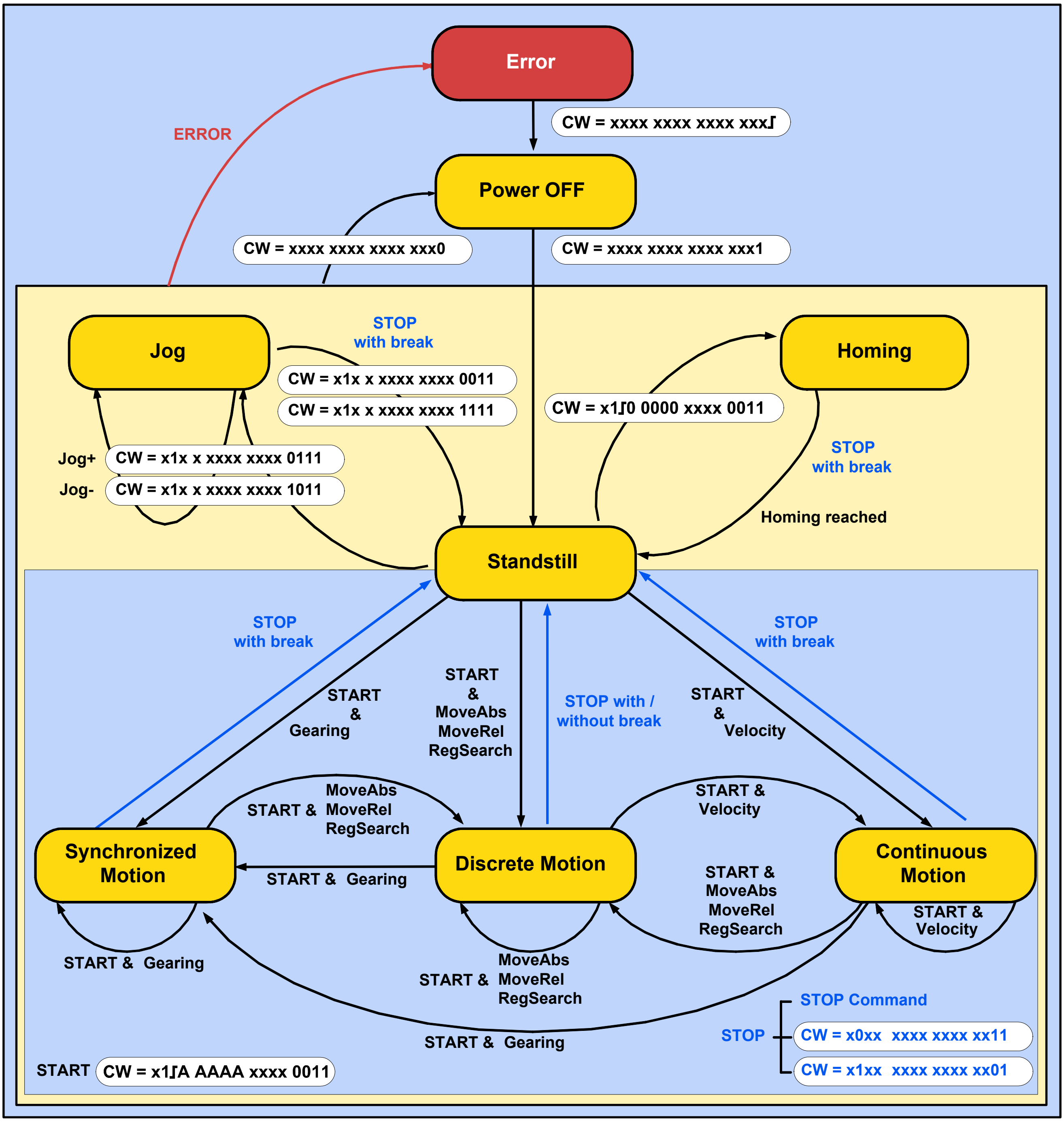
5. Control via RS232 / RS485 / USB

In this chapter you can read about:

Description of the **interface protocol** (see page 312).

5.1 Status diagram

Status diagram for control via RS232 / RS485



In the "Homing" and "Jog" states, no stop set (STOP command) is possible.
CW: Control word; bit counting method: Bit 0 on the right side
x: x: status of the respective bits without meaning
A: Set address
otherwise status 0, 1 or positive edge

Status values:	Description
ERROR	Error, drive currentless
Power OFF	Drive currentless and ready to operate
Jog	Manual operation; Manual+, Manual- possible
Homing	Machine zero run, status is exited automatically after the position 0 has been approached
Standstill	Drive stationary with current with setpoint value = 0
Synchronized Motion	Gearing – motion set active
Discrete Motion	Positioning mode
Continuous Motion	Velocity – motion set active

Permitted transitions: Please find the possible transitions between states resp. the different motion functions in the status diagram:

Examples:

- In the ”discrete motion” status (drive executes a motion function) the motion functions MoveAbs, MoveRel, MoveStart, Velocity and Stop are possible with dynamic transition.
- In the Continuous Motion status, only a stop with termination (Stop with break) is possible.

5.2 I/O assignment, control word and status word with control via COM port

5.2.1. I/O Assignment

- For intra-device inputs I0 .. I3 as well as the outputs O0 ... O3 you can choose between fixed or free assignment (see below).
- Control via RS232 / RS485 does not require an M option (M10 / M12).
- If an M option is available, 12 inputs/outputs (ports) are freely assignable. These can be configured as inputs or outputs by groups of four and be activated resp. read via Object 121.2 and Object 133.3.
- The signal inputs I4 ... I7 are fixedly assigned
  If the respective functions are not needed, these inputs can also be used for control.
  I5 and I6 can, for example, be used as free inputs if the limit switch function is deactivated.

Assignment of the intra-device inputs and outputs

PIN X12	Input/output	High density/Sub D	
1	A	+24VDC output (max. 400mA)	
2	O0	No Error	**Only for "fixed assignment"** Functions are available, if "Fixed assignment" was selected for the I/O assignment in the configuration wizard
3	O1	Position / speed / gear synchronization attained (max. 100mA)	
4	O2	No power output stage current (max. 100mA)	
5	O3	Axis stationary with current, with setpoint 0 (max. 100mA)	
6	I0="1":	Quit (positive edge) / Energize the axis The address of the current motion set is read in new.	
	I0="0"	Deenergize axis with delay	
7	I1	No stop	
8	I2	JOG +	
9	I3	JOG -	
10	I4	Reg input	
11	E	24V input for the digital outputs Pins 2 to 5	
12	I5	Limit switch 1	
13	I6	Limit switch 2	
14	I7	Machine reference initiator	
15	A	Gnd 24 V	

All inputs and outputs have 24V level.
Maximum capacitive loading of the outputs: 30nF (max. 2 Compax3 inputs can be connected)
Input-/Output extension (see page 137, see page 374)

Optimization window display

The display of the digital inputs in the optimization window of the C3 ServoManager does not correspond to the physical status (24Volt=on, 0Volt=off) but to the logic status: If the function of an input or output is inverted (e.g. limit switch, negatively switching), the corresponding display (LED symbol in the optimization window) is OFF with 24Volts at the input and ON with 0 Volts at the input.

For intra-device inputs I0 .. I3 as well as the outputs O0 ... O3 you can choose between fixed or free assignment.
With fixed assignment of the intra-device inputs I0 ... I3, the respective functions can either be triggered via the inputs or via RS232 / RS485.
It applies:

- The motor is only energized if I0 = "1" AND control word Bit 0 ="1"
- Stop is active if, I1 ="0" OR Control word Bit 1 ="0"
- Manual+ and Manual- inputs and control word are OR - linked.

5.2.2. Control word

Structure of the control word (Object 1100.3)

Bit	Function	Corresponds to *
Bit0	Quit (edge) / energize axis	I0: X12/6
Bit1	No Stop	I1: X12/7
Bit2	JOG +	I2: X12/8
Bit3	JOG -	I3: X12/9
Bit4	O0 X12/2	(only if O0...O3 is defined as freely assigna-ble)
Bit5	O1 X12/3	
Bit6	O2 X12/4	
Bit7	O3 X12/5	
Bit8	Address 0	
Bit9	Address 1	
Bit10	Address 2	
Bit11	Address 3	
Bit12	Address 4	
Bit13	Start (edge)	
Bit14	No Stop (2nd Stop)	
Bit15	Brake open	

* does only apply if the respective inputs are assigned fixedly.
Bit0 = least significant Bit

5.2.3. Status word 1 & 2

Structure of the state word 1 (Object 1000.3)

Bit	Description	Corresponds to *
Bit0	I0	X12/6
Bit1	I1	X12/7
Bit2	I2	X12/8
Bit3	I3	X12/9
Bit4	I4	X12/10
Bit5	I5	X12/11
Bit6	I6	X12/12
Bit7	I7	X12/13
Bit8	No Error	X12/2
Bit9	Position reached	X12/3
Bit10	Axis without current excitation	X12/4
Bit11	Axis stationary with current at setpoint value zero	X12/5
Bit12	Machine zero (home) Position known	
Bit13	Programmable status bit 0 (PSB0)	
Bit14	Programmable status bit 1 (PSB1)	
Bit15	Programmable status bit 2 (PSB2)	

* Does apply for Bit 8 ... 11 only if the respective outputs (O0 ... O3) are assigned fixedly.
Bit0 = least significant Bit

Structure of the state word 2 (Object 1000.4)

Bit	Description	
Bit0 ... 14	Reserved	
Bit15	Reg detected	

Bit0 = least significant Bit

5.3 Examples: Control via COM port

- Control via COM port is executed via the control word (object 1100.3) and the status word (object 1000.3).
- These examples are based on the ASCII record, they may, however, also be realized on the binary record. The binary record offers the advantage, that the transmission is ensured by the CRC verification.
- The commands can also be entered via a hyperterminal (teminal setting is 115200,8,N,1 with hardware flow control. Local echo and connection of CR/LF is recommended).

Activation of the axis:

Command:	break	/Stop	Start	Addr4	Addr3	Addr2	Addr1	Addr0	O3	O2	O1	O0	Jog-	Jog+	/Stop	Quit / motor
o1100.3=1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Manual motion (manual+)

Command:	break	/Stop	Start	Addr4	Addr3	Addr2	Addr1	Addr0	O3	O2	O1	O0	Jog-	Jog+	/Stop	Quit / motor
o1100.3=$4007	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1

Approach machine zero

Command:	break	/Stop	Start	Addr4	Addr3	Addr2	Addr1	Addr0	O3	O2	O1	O0	Jog-	Jog+	/Stop	Quit / motor
o1100.3=$4003	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

First of all was ensured, that Start is at 0, as a rising edge is required for triggering a motion.

Start - edge

Command:	break	/Stop	Start	Addr4	Addr3	Addr2	Addr1	Addr0	O3	O2	O1	O0	Jog-	Jog+	/Stop	Quit / motor
o1100.3=$6003	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

Then the set is started with address 0 (=always reference run).

Acknowledge Error

At first the errors can be read:

o550.1 read last error
o550.2 read last but one error
...
In the error history the executed error acknowledgements are also listed (value=1). This helps you to read out the errors that occurred since the last acknowledgement.

If the cause of an error is eliminated, the error can be acknowledged. To do this, you will need a rising edge on Bit 0.

Set ackn to "0"

Command:	break	/Stop	Start	Addr4	Addr3	Addr2	Addr1	Addr0	O3	O2	O1	O0	Jog-	Jog+	/Stop	Quit / motor
o1100.3=0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Ackn - edge

Command:	break	/Stop	Start	Addr4	Addr3	Addr2	Addr1	Addr0	O3	O2	O1	O0	Jog-	Jog+	/Stop	Quit / motor
o1100.3=$4003	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

Read out status

The status word1 can be accessed via object 1000.3.
Command:

o1000.3

The address of the set executed last can be read out via status word2 object 1000.4:

o1000.4

Description of the set table

The set table can be written in either via the Compax3 ServoManager or directly via the COM port.

Example:

Entry of a motion set in set 5.

Motion set:

- Absolute positioning on position 234,54
- Velocity 21,4
- Acceleration 200
- Deceleration 500
- Jerk maximum 10000
- Programmable status bits:
  - PSB2 must remain unchanged
  - PSB1 = 1 and
  - PSB0 = 0.

The following commands are to be transmitted:

o1901.5=234.54	Target position (column 1, row 5)
o1902.5=21.4	Velocity (column 2, row 5)
o1905.5=1	Mode=1 (MoveAbs)
o1906.5=200	Accel
o1907.5=500	Decel
o1908.5=10000	Jerk

The control word for the control of the PSBs is made up as follows:

Bit 7 -	Bit 6 Ena PSB2	Bit 5 Ena PSB1	Bit 4 Ena PSB0	Bit 3 -	Bit 2 PSB 2	Bit 1 PSB 1	Bit 0 PSB 0	Value
0	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	=$32

Command for the entry into the set table:
o1904.5=$32

Modifications of set parameters must be made before the start of the respective set.
After the start of the set, the parameters can be modified again, even if the respective set is not yet completed.

Changing the ignore zone

Changes of the ignore zone for registration search [RegSearch] can also be made via RS232. The following objects must be changed:

o3300.8	Beginning of Registration lock-out zone (StartIgnore)
o3300.9	End of Registration lock-out zone (StopIgnore)

. The value for the beginning of the ignore zone must always be smaller than the value for the end of the ignore zone. Only positive values are to be entered.

5.4 Layout of the set table

In this chapter you can read about:

The motion sets are memorized in an object table. The table has 9 columns and 32 rows.
A motion set is stored in a table row.
The assignment of the columns depends on the motion function.

5.4.1. General layout of the table

	Column 1 Type: REAL Objects O1901	**Column 2 Type: REAL Objects O1902**	**Column 3 Type: INT Objects O1903**	**Column 4 Type: INT Objects O1904**	**Column 5 Type: INT Objects O1905**	**Column 6 Type: DINT Objects O1906**	**Column 7 Type: DINT Objects O1907**	**Column 8 Type: DINT Objects O1908**	**Column 9 Type: DINT Objects O1909**
Set 1	Row 1 "Array_Col1_Row1" (1901.1)	Row 1 "Array_Col2_Row1" (1902.1)	Row 1 "Array_Col3_Row1" (1903.1)	Row 1 "Array_Col4_Row1" (1904.1)	Row 1 "Array_Col5_Row1" (1905.1)	Row 1 "Array_Col6_Row1" (1906.1)	Row 1 "Array_Col7_Row1" (1907.1)	Row 1 "Array_Col8_Row1" (1908.1)	Row 1 "Array_Col9_Row1" (1909.1)
set no. 2	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Set 3	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...	...
Set 31	Row 31 "Array_Col1_Row31" (1901.31)	Row 31 "Array_Col2_Row31" (1902.31)	Row 31 "Array_Col3_Row31" (1903.31)	Row 31 "Array_Col4_Row31" (1904.31)	Row31 "C3Array_Col5_Row31" (1905.31)	Row 31 "Array_Col6_Row31" (1906.31)	Row 31 "Array_Col7_Row31" (1907.31)	Row 31 "Array_Col8_Row31" (1908.31)	Row 31 "Array_Col9_Row31" (1909.31)

You will find the respective object number in brackets.

5.4.2. Assingment of the different motion functions

The columns 3 and 9 are reserved.

Motion function	**Column 1**	**Column 2**	**Column 4**	**Column 5**	**Column 6**	**Column 7**	**Column 8**
	Type: REAL Objects O1901	**Type: REAL Objects O1902**	**Type: INT Objects O1904**	**Type: INT Objects O1905**	**Type: DINT Objects O1906**	**Type: DINT Objects O1907**	**Type: DINT Objects O1908**
	Positions	**Speeds**	**Programmable status bits (PSBs)**	**Mode**	**Accelerations**	**Deceleration / denominator**	**Jerk**
MoveAbs (see page **149**)	Target position	Speed	PSBs	1 (for MoveAbs)	Accel	Decel	Jerk
MoveRel (see page **149**)	Distance	Speed	PSBs	2 (for MoveRel)	Accel	Decel	Jerk
Gearing (see page **154**)	-	Numerator	PSBs	3 (for Gearing)	Accel	Denominator	-
RegSearch (see page **150**)	Distance	Speed	PSBs	4 (for RegSearch)	Accel	Decel	Jerk
RegMove **(see page 150)**	Offset	Speed	PSBs	5 (for RegMove)	-	-	-
Velocity (see page **155**)	-	Speed	PSBs	6 (for Velocity)	Accel	-	-
STOP	-	-	PSBs	7 (for Stop)	-	Decel	Jerk

5.4.3. Definition of the states of the programmable status bits (PSBs):

Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
Reserved	Enable2 PSB2	Enable1 PSB1	Enable0 PSB0	Reserved	PSB2	PSB1	PSB0
	="1": Set PSB ="0": leave PSB unchanged						

The Bits 0 ... 2 monitor the states of the status bits at the end of a motion set, if the bits were enabled via the respective Enable.

If Enable is set to ”0”, the respective PSB remains unchanged at the end of the motion set.

PSB0: X22/12 or SW.13
PSB1: X22/13 or SW.14
PSB2: X22/14 or SW.15

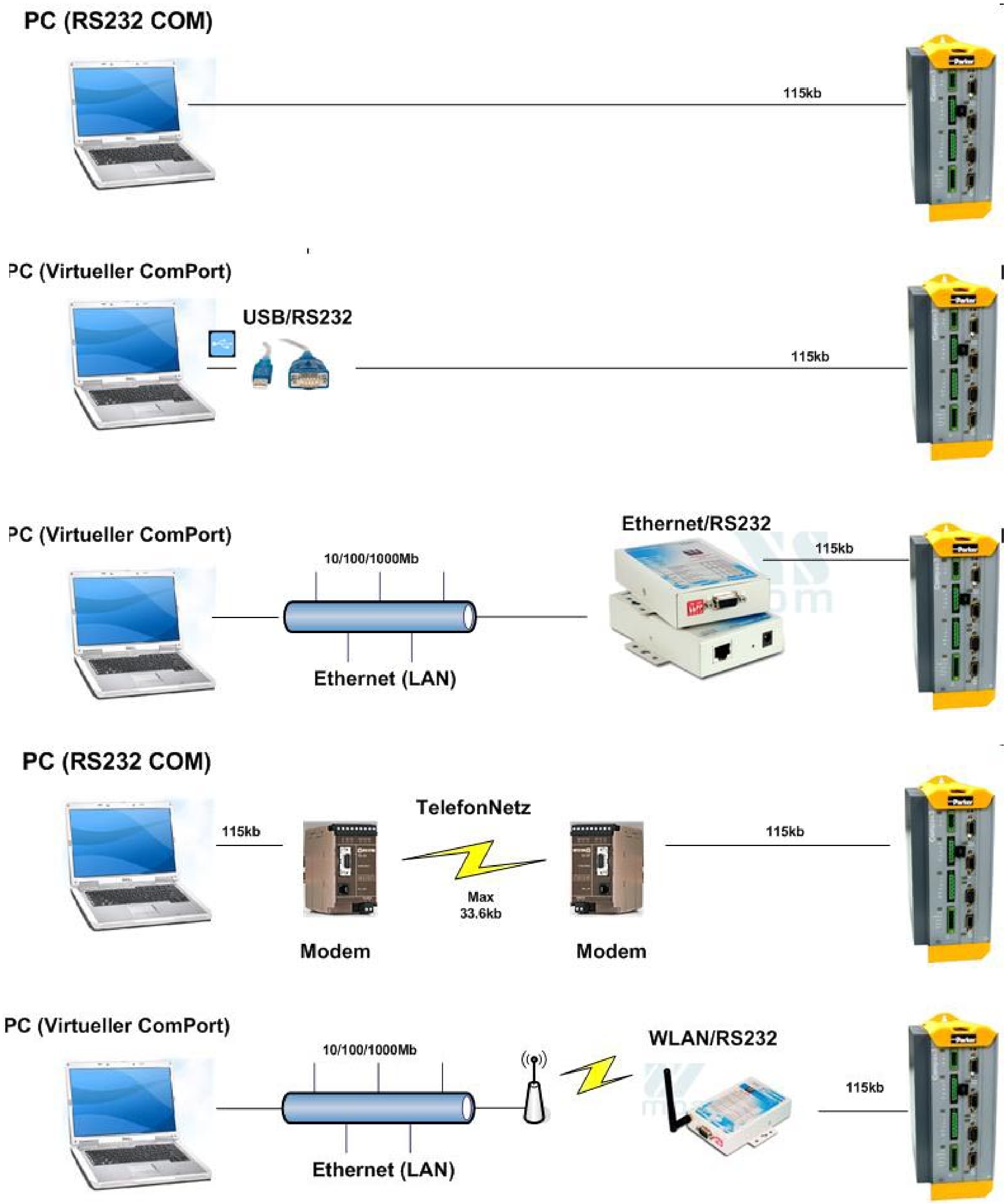
5.5 Compa3 communication variants

In this chapter you can read about:

Overview of all possible communication modes between Compax3 deviecs and a PC.

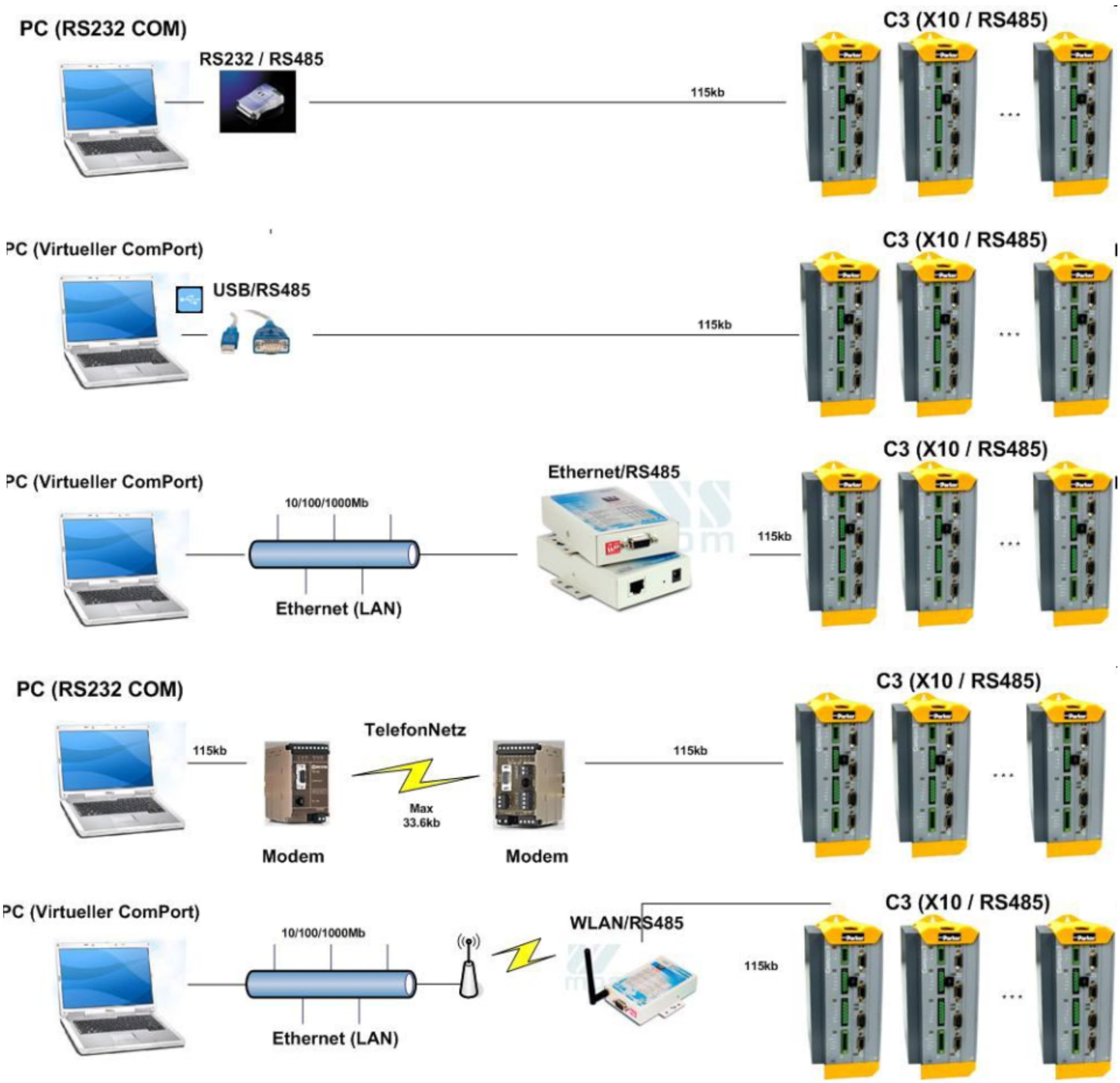
5.5.1. PC <-> Compax3 (RS232)

PC <-> Compax3 (RS232): Connections to a device



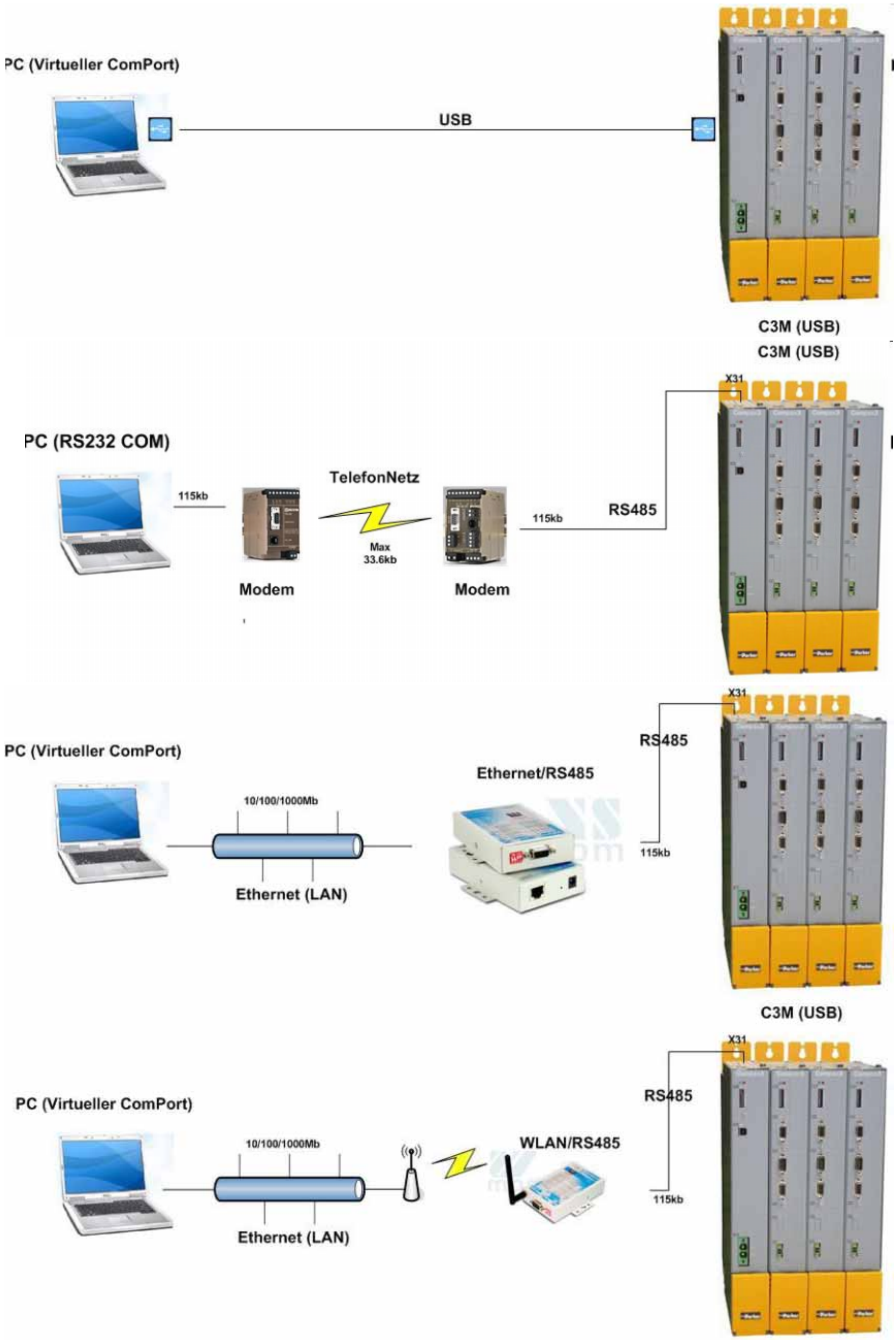
5.5.2. PC <-> Compax3 (RS485)

PC <-> Compax3 (RS485)



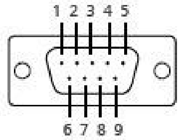
5.5.3. PC <-> C3M device combination (USB)

PC <-> C3M device combination



5.5.4. USB-RS485 Moxa Uport 1130 adapter

Male DB9

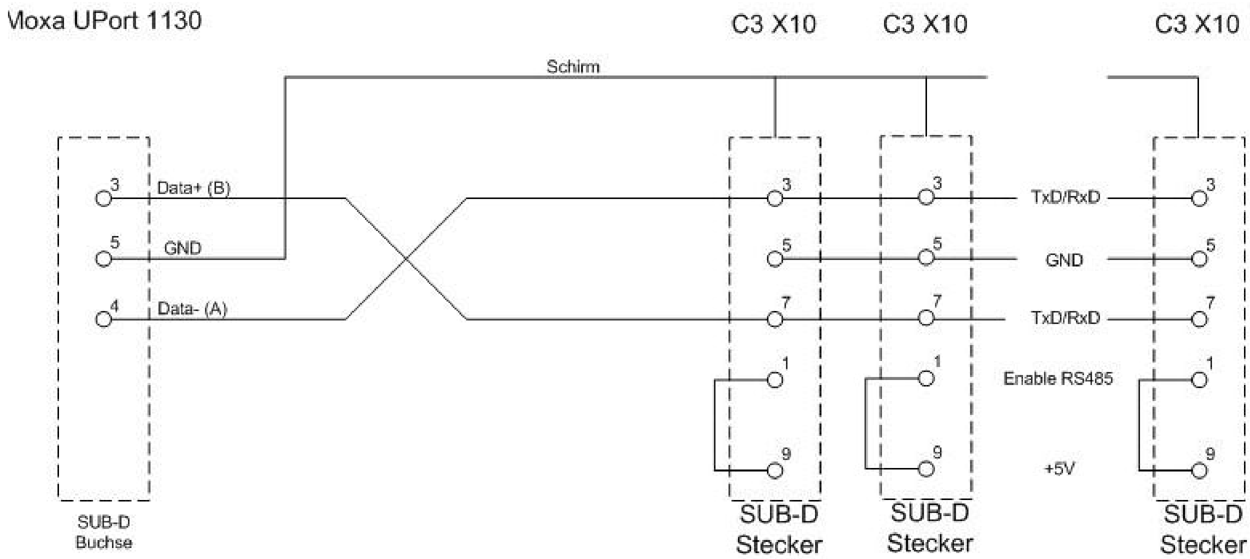


PIN	RS-422/4-wire RS-485	2-wire RS-485
1	TxD-(A)	–
2	TxD+(B)	–
3	RxD+(B)	Data+(B)
4	RxD-(A)	Data-(A)

PIN	RS-422/4-wire RS-485	2-wire RS-485
5	GND	GND
6	–	–
7	–	–
8	–	–

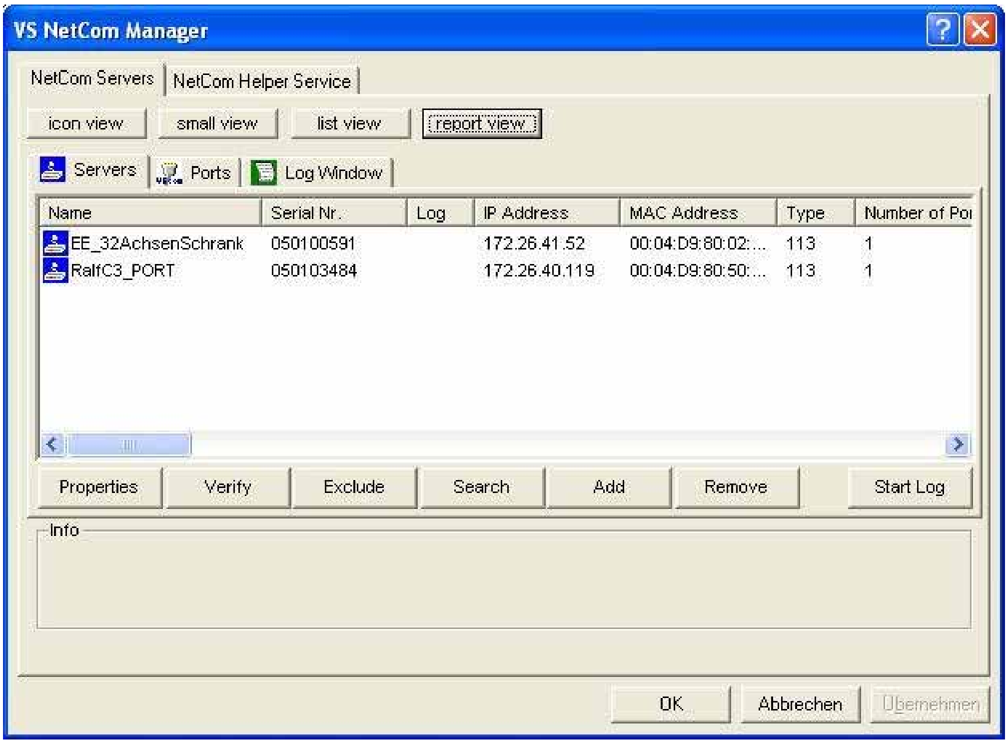
The serial UPort 1130 USB adapter offers a simple and comfortable method of connecting an RS-422 or RS-485 device to your laptop or PC. The UPort 1130 is connected to the USB port of your computer and complements your workstation with a DB9 RS-422/485 serial interface. For simple installation and configuraiton, Windows drivers are already integrated. The UPort 1130 can be used with new or legacy serial devices and supports both 2- and 4-wire RS-485. It is especially suited for mobile, instrumentation and point-of-sale (POS) applications.
Herstellerlink: **http://www.moxa.com/product/UPort_1130.htm**
http://www.moxa.com/product/UPort_1130.htm

Connection plan for Compax3S:



5.5.5. ETHERNET-RS485 NetCOM 113 adapter

Herstellerlink: **http://www.vscom.de/666.htm** (http://www.vscom.de/666.htm)



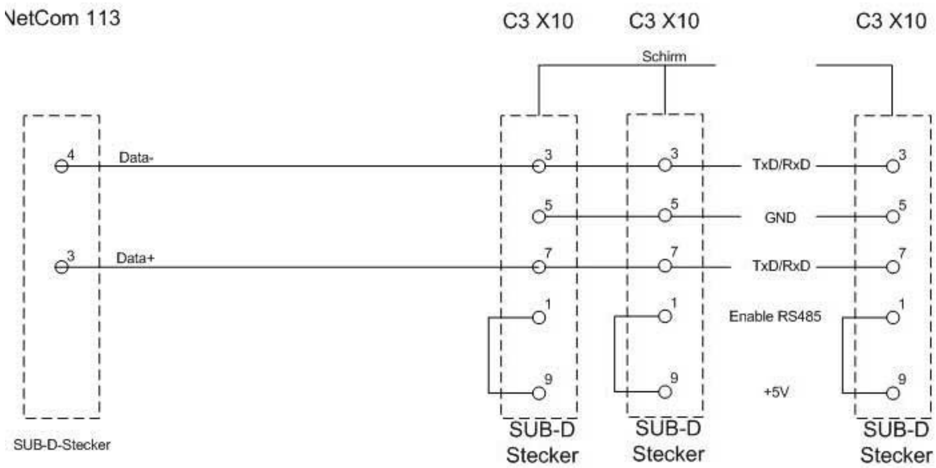
DIP Switch settings NetCom 113 for two-wire operation:

1ON 2ON 3off 4off (Mode: RS485 by ART (2 wire without Echo)

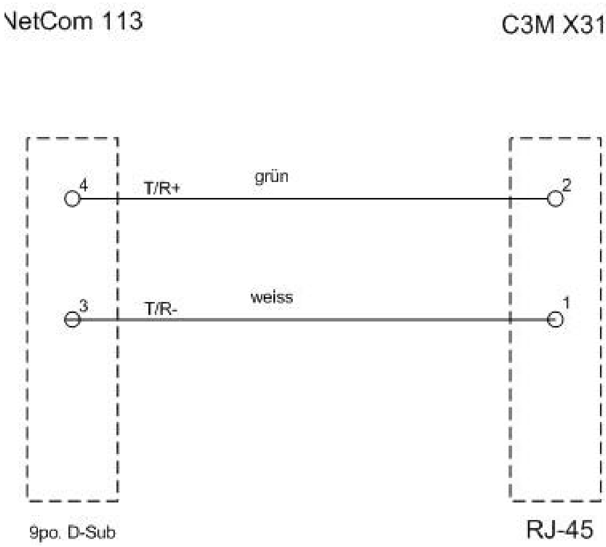
Communication settings C3S/C3M:

Object	Function	Value
810.1	Protocol	16 (two wire)
810.2	Baud rate	115200
810.3	NodeAddress	1..254
810.4	Multicast Address	

Connection plan NetCom113<-> C3S:

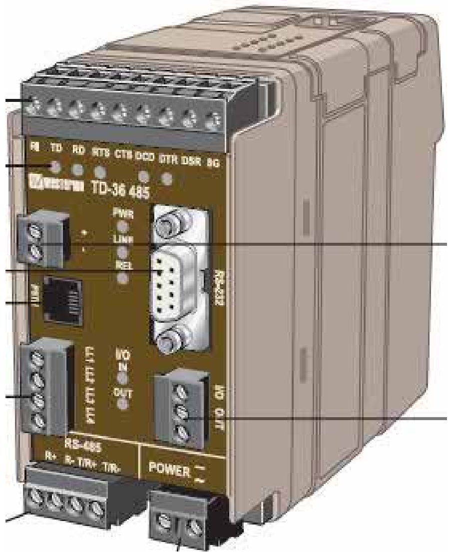


Connection plan NetCom113<-> C3M X31:



5.5.6. Modem Westermo TD-36 485

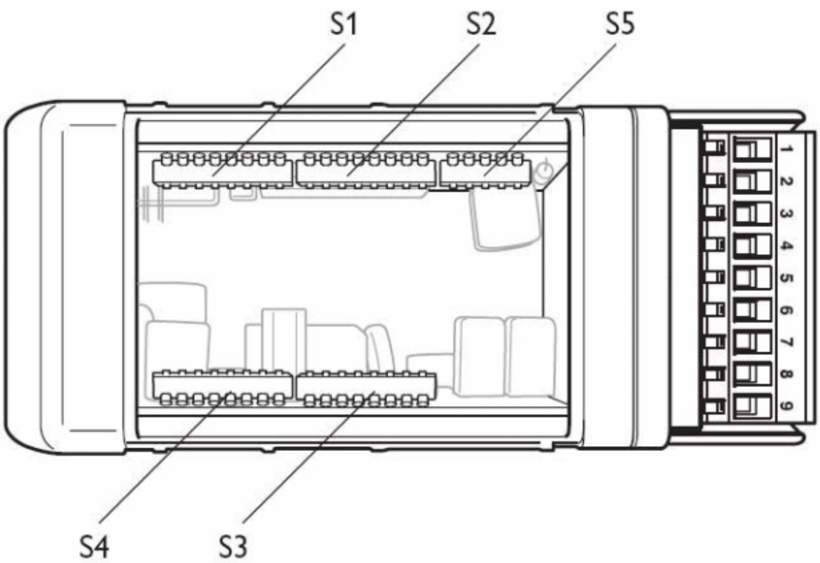
Modem Westermo TD-36 485 (Remote maintenance C3S /C3M)

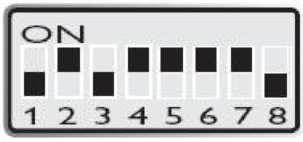


DIP Switch - settings TD-36 (RS485 two wire)

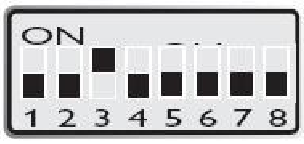
For operation , all settings must be reset to factory settings!
All other settings must be made via the DIP switches.

IMPORTANT: The changes of the DIP switches are only accepted after POWER ON!

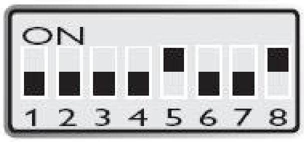


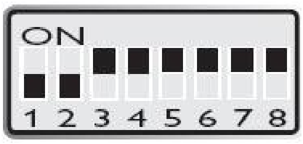
S1: 

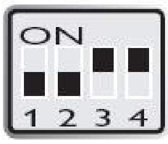
115kB / Direct Mode 8N

S2: 

PSTN enable/ RS-422/RS85 enable / 2 Wire /

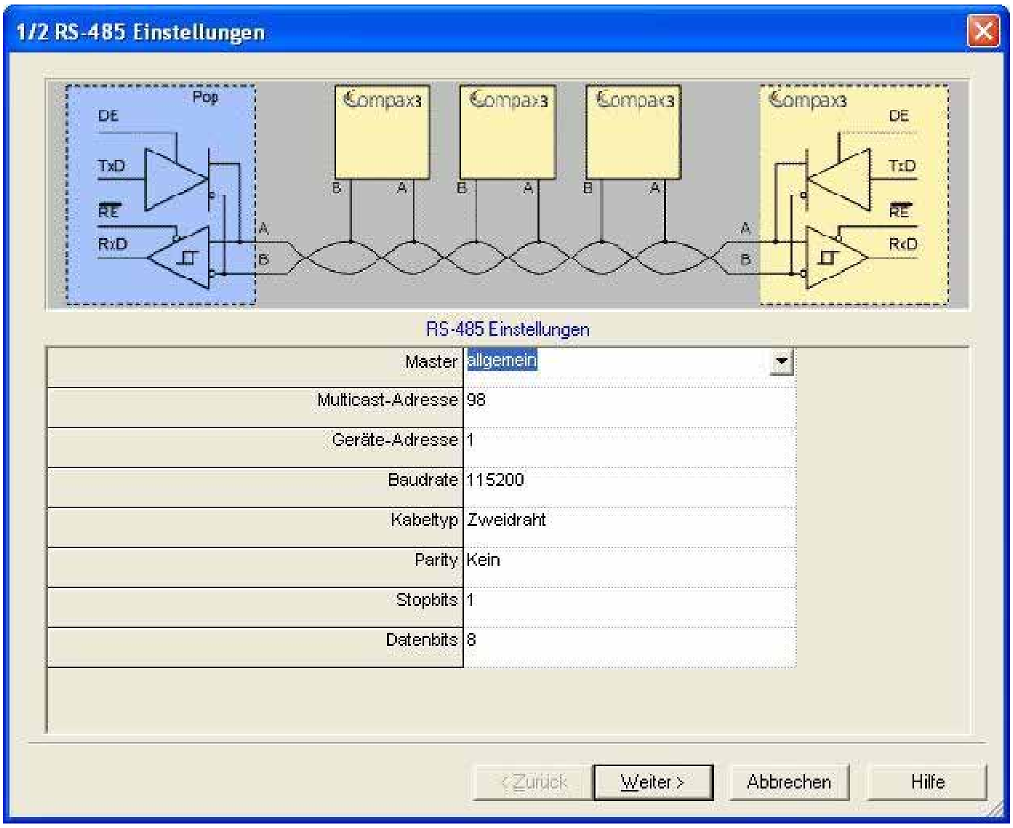
S3: 

S4: 

S5: 

C3 ServoManager RS485 wizard settings:

download with configuration in RS232 mode°!



Communication settings C3S/C3M:

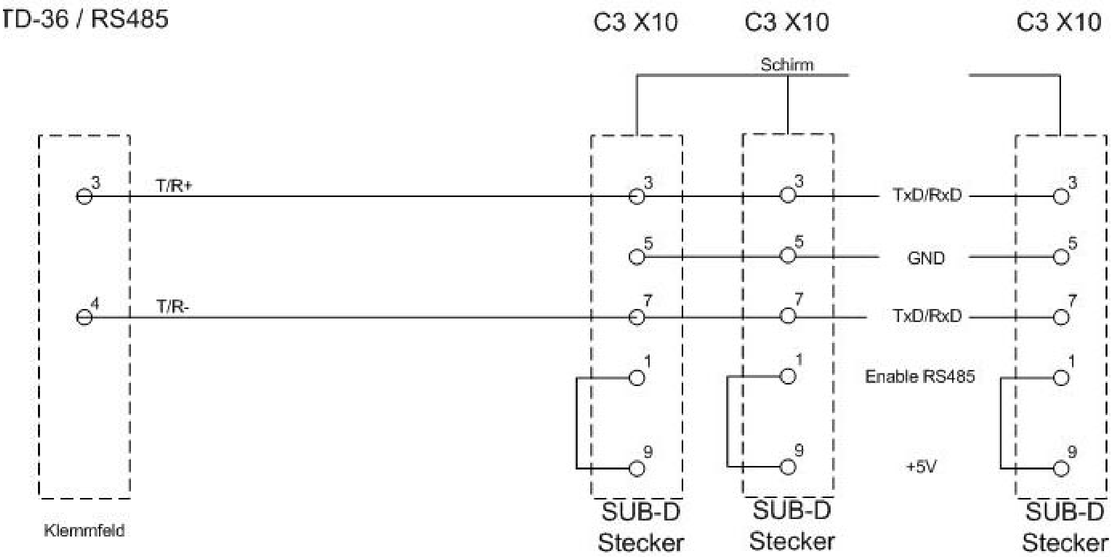
Object	Function	Value
810.1	Protocol	16 (two wire)
810.2	Baud rate	115200
810.3	NodeAddress	1..254
810.4	Multicast Address	

Connection plan TD-36 / Compax3 S

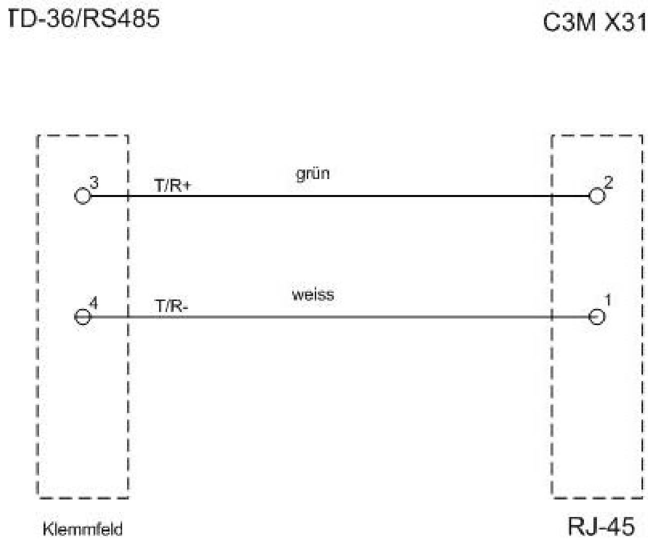
RS-422/485

Position	Direction*	Description		Product marking
No. 1	In	R+ (A') Receive	RS-422/485 4-wire	R+
No. 2	In	R– (B') Receive	RS-422/485 4-wire	R–
No. 3	Out	T+ (A) Transmit	RS-422/485 4-wire	T/R+
	In/Out	T+ (A/A') Transmit/Receive	RS-485 2-wire	
No. 4	Out	T– (B) Transmit	RS-422/485 4-wire	T/R–
	In/Out	T+ (A/A') Transmit/Receive	RS-485 2-wire	

* Direction relative to this unit



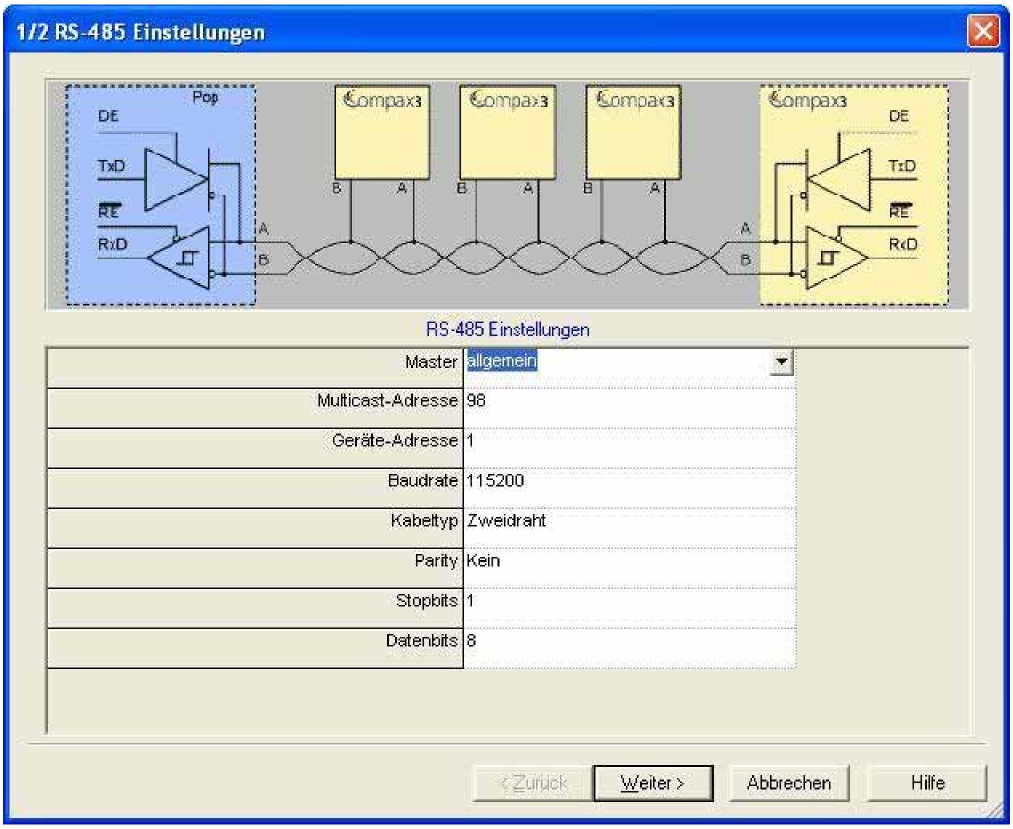
Connection plan TD-36 / Compax3 M



5.5.7. C3 settings for RS485 two wire operation

C3 ServoManager RS485 wizard settings:

download with configuration in RS232 mode°!



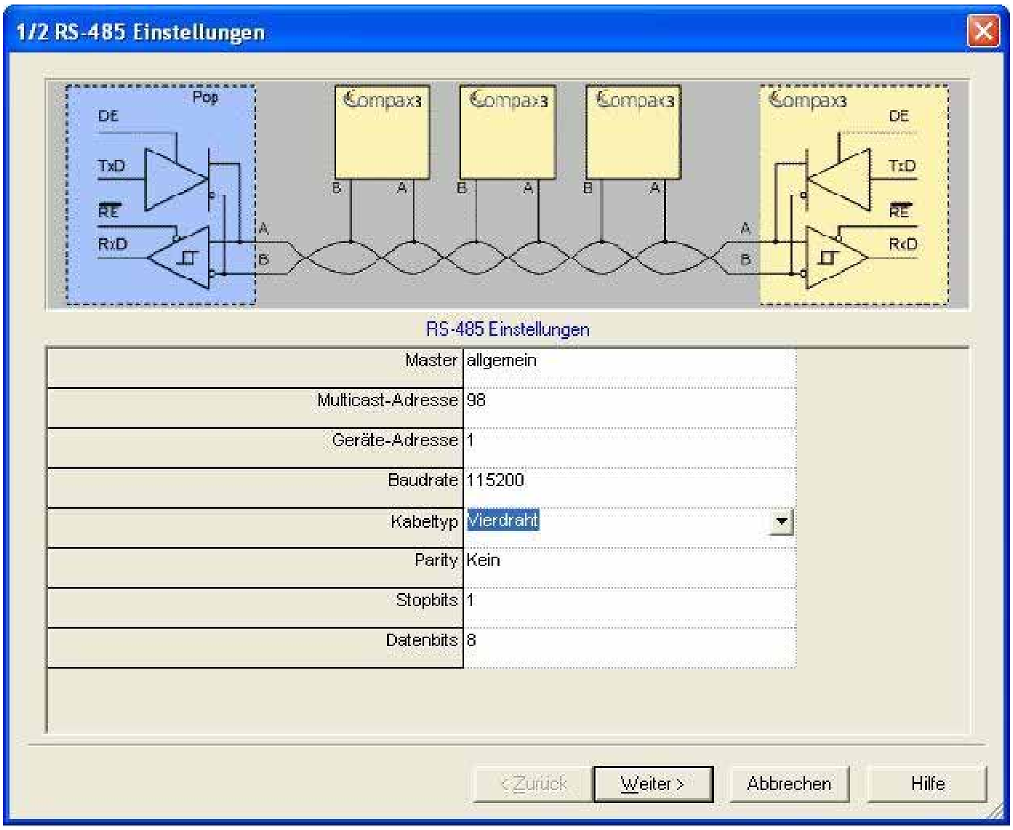
Communication settings C3S/C3M:

Object	Function	Value
810.1	Protocol	16 (two wire)
810.2	Baud rate	115200
810.3	NodeAddress	1..254
810.4	Multicast Address	

5.5.8. C3 settings for RS485 four wire operation

C3 ServoManager RS485 wizard settings:

download with configuration in RS232 mode



Communication settings C3S/C3M:

Object	Function	Value
810.1	Protocol	0 (four wire)
810.2	Baud rate	115200
810.3	NodeAddress	1..254
810.4	Multicast Address	

5.6 COM port protocol

In this chapter you can read about:

You can communicate with Compax3 in order to read or write objects via plug X10 (or X3 on the mains module of Compax3M) on the front via a COM port (max. 32 nodes).

As a rule 2 records are possible:

- ASCII record simple communication with Compax3
- Binary record: fast and secure communication with Compax3 by the aid of block securing.

Switching between the ASCII and the binary record via automatic record detection.

interface settings **(see page 391)**

Wiring

RS232: **SSK1** (see page 369)
RS485: like **SSK27** (see page 370) / RS485 is activated by +5V on X10/1.
USB: SSK33/03 (only for Compax3M)

5.6.1. RS485 setting values

If ”Master=Pop” was selected, only the settings compatible with the Pops (Parker Operator Panels) made by Parker are possible.

Please note that the connected Pop has the same RS485 setting values.

You can test this with the "PopDesigner" software.

"Master=General" makes all Compax3 settings possible.

Multicast Address

You can use this address to allow the master to access multiple devices simultaneously.

Device Address

The device address of the connected Compax3 can be set here.

Baud rate

Adjust the transfer speed (baud rate) to the master.

Connection Type

Please choose between **two-wire and four-wire RS485** (see page 61).

Protocol

Adjust the protocol settings to the settings of your master.

5.6.2. ASCII - record

The general layout of a command string for Compax3 is as follows:

[Adr] command CR

Adr	RS232: no address RS485: Compax3 address in the range 0 ... 99 Address settings can be made in the C3 ServoManager under "RS485 settings"
Command	valid Compax3 command
CR	End sign (carriage return)

Command

A command consists of the representable ASCII characters (0x21 .. 0x7E). Lower cases are converted automatically into capitals and blanks (0x20) are deleted, if they are not placed between two quotation marks.
Separator between places before and after the decimal is the decimal point (0x2E).
A numeric value can be given in the Hex-format if it is preceded by the "$" sign.
Values can be requested in the Hex-format if the CR is preceded additionally by the "$" sign.

Answer strings

All commands requesting a numeric value from Compax3 are acknowledged with the respective numeric value in the ASCII format followed by a CR without preceding command repetition and following statement of unit. The length of these answer strings differs depending on the value.
Commands requesting an Info-string (e.g. software version), are only acknowledged with the respective ASCII character sequence followed by a CR, without preceding command repetition. The length of these answer strings is here constant.
Commands transferring a value to Compax3 or triggering a function in Compax3 are acknowledged by:

>CR

if the value can be accepted resp. if the function can be executed at that point in time.
If this is ot the case or if the command syntax was invalid, the command is acknowledged with

!xxxxCR

The 4 digit error number **xxxx** is given in the HEX format; you will find the meaning in the **appendix** (see page 326).

RS485 answer string

When using RS485, each answer string is preceded by a *" (ASCII - character: 0x2A).

Compax3 commands

Read object

RS232: O [$] Index , [$] Subindex [$]

RS485: Address O [$] Index , [$] Subindex [$]

The optional "$" after the subindex stands for "hex-output" which means that an object value can also be requested in hex;
e.g. "**O $0192,2$**": (Object 402.2)

Write object

RS232: O [$] Index , [$] Subindex = [$] Value [; Value2 ; Value3 ; ...]

RS485: Address O [$] Index , [$] Subindex = [$] Value [; Value2 ; Value3 ; ...]

The optional "$" preceding Index, Subindex and value stands for "Hex-input" which means that Index, Subindex and the value to be transferred can also be entered in hex (e.g. **O $0192,2=$C8**).

5.6.3. Binary record

The binary record with block securing is based on 5 different telegrams:
- 2 request telegrams which the control sends to Compax3 and
- 3 response telegrams which Compax3 returns to the control.

Telegram layout

Basic structure:

Start code	address	Number of data bytes - 1	Data				block securing	
SZ	A	L	D0	D1	...	Dn	Crc(Hi)	Crc(Lo)

The start code defines the frame type and is composed as follows:

Bit		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Frame type		Frame identification				PLC		Gateway	address
RdObj	Read object	1	0	1	0	x	1	x	x
WrObj	Write object	1	1	0	0	x	1	x	x
Rsp	Answer	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
Ack	Positive command acknowledgement	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
Nak	Negative command acknowledgement	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1

Bits 7, 6, 5 and 4 of the start code form the telegram identification; Bit 2 is always ”1”.

Bits 3, 1 and 0 have different meanings for the request and response telegrams.

The address is only necessary for RS484.

Request telegrams

-> Compax3

- the address bit (Bit 0 = 1) shows if the start code is followed by an address (only for RS485; for RS232 Bit 0 = 0)
- the gateway bit (Bit 1 = 1) shows if the message is to be passed on. (Please set Bit 1 = 0, as this function is not yet available)
- the PLC bit (Bit 3 = 1) allows access to objects in the PLC/Pop format
  U16, U32: for integer formats (see bus formats: Ix, Ux, V2)
  IEEE 32Bit Floating Point: for broken formats (bus formats: E2_6, C4_3, Y2, Y4; without scaling)
  With Bit 3 = 0 the objects are transmitted in the DSP format.
  DSP formats:
  24 Bit = 3 Bytes: Integer INT24 or Fractional FRACT24
  48 Bit = 6 Bytes: Real REAL48 (3 Byte Int, 3 Byte Fract) / Double Integer DINT48 / Double Fractional DFRACT48

Response telegram **Compax3>**

- Bits 0 and 1 are used to identify the response
- Bit 3 is always 0

The maximum number of data bytes in the request telegram is 256, in the response telegram 253.
The block securing (CRC16) is made via the CCITT table algorithm for all characters.
After receiving the start code, the timeout monitoring is activated in order to avoid that Compax3 waits in vain for further codes (e.g. connection interrupted) The timeout period between 2 codes received is fixed to 5ms (5 times the code time at 9600Baud)

Write object – WrObj telegram

SZ	Adr	L	D0	D1	D2	D3 ... Dn	Crc(Hi)	Crc(Lo)
0xCX		n	Index(Hi)	Index(Lo)	Subindex	Value	0x..	0x..

Describing an object by a value.

Positive acknowledgement – Ack-telegram

SZ	L	D0	D1	Crc(Hi)	Crc(Lo)
0x06	1	0	0	0x..	0x..

Answer from Compax3 if a writing process was successful, i.e. the function could be executed and is completed in itself.

Negative acknowledgement – Nak - telegram

SZ	L	D0	D1	Crc(Hi)	Crc(Lo)
0x07	1	F-No.(Hi)	F-No.(Lo)	0x..	0x..

Answer from Compax3 if access to the object was denied (e.g. function cannot be executed at that point in time or object has no reading access). The error no. is coded according to the DriveCom profile resp. the CiA Device Profile DSP 402.

Read object – RdObj - telegram

SZ	Adr	L	D0	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	...	Dn	Crc(Hi)	Crc(Lo)
0xAX		n	Index1(Hi)	Index1(Lo)	Subindex1	Index2(Hi)	Index2(Lo)	Subindex2	...	...	0x..	0x..

Reading one or several objects

Answer – Rsp - telegram

SZ	L	D0 ... Dx-1	Dx ... Dy-1	Dy-D..	D ... D..	D ... Dn	Crc(Hi)	Crc(Lo)
0x05	n	Value1	Value 2	Value 3	Value ..	Value n	0x..	0x..

Answer from Compax3 if the object can be read.
If the object has no reading access, Compax3 answers with the Nak – telegram.

Example:

Reading object "StatusPositionActual" (o680.5):

Request: A5 03 02 02 A8 05 E1 46
Response: 05 05 FF FF FF FF FE 2D 07 B4

Writing into an Array (o1901.1 = 2350)

Request: C5 02 08 07 6D 01 00 09 2E 00 00 00 95 D5
Response: 06 01 00 00 BA 87

Block securing:

Checksum calculation for the CCITT table algorithm

The block securing for all codes is performed via the following function and the corresponding table:
The ”CRC16” variable is set to ”0” before sending a telegram.

Function call:

```
CRC16 = UpdateCRC16(CRC16, Character);
```

This function is called up for each Byte (Character) of the telegram.
The result forms the last two bytes of the telegram
Compax3 checks the CRC value on receipt and reports CRC error in the case of a deviation.

Function

```
const unsigned int _P CRC16_table[256] = {
   0x0000, 0x1021, 0x2042, 0x3063, 0x4084, 0x50a5, 0x60c6, 0x70e7,
   0x8108, 0x9129, 0xa14a, 0xb16b, 0xc18c, 0xd1ad, 0xe1ce, 0xf1ef,
   0x1231, 0x0210, 0x3273, 0x2252, 0x52b5, 0x4294, 0x72f7, 0x62d6,
   0x9339, 0x8318, 0xb37b, 0xa35a, 0xd3bd, 0xc39c, 0xf3ff, 0xe3de,
   0x2462, 0x3443, 0x0420, 0x1401, 0x64e6, 0x74c7, 0x44a4, 0x5485,
   0xa56a, 0xb54b, 0x8528, 0x9509, 0xe5ee, 0xf5cf, 0xc5ac, 0xd58d,
   0x3653, 0x2672, 0x1611, 0x0630, 0x76d7, 0x66f6, 0x5695, 0x46b4,
   0xb75b, 0xa77a, 0x9719, 0x8738, 0xf7df, 0xe7fe, 0xd79d, 0xc7bc,
   0x48c4, 0x58e5, 0x6886, 0x78a7, 0x0840, 0x1861, 0x2802, 0x3823,
   0xc9cc, 0xd9ed, 0xe98e, 0xf9af, 0x8948, 0x9969, 0xa90a, 0xb92b,
   0x5af5, 0x4ad4, 0x7ab7, 0x6a96, 0x1a71, 0x0a50, 0x3a33, 0x2a12,
   0xdbfd, 0xcbdc, 0xfbbf, 0xeb9e, 0x9b79, 0x8b58, 0xbb3b, 0xab1a,
   0x6ca6, 0x7c87, 0x4ce4, 0x5cc5, 0x2c22, 0x3c03, 0x0c60, 0x1c41,
   0xedae, 0xfd8f, 0xcdec, 0xddcd, 0xad2a, 0xbd0b, 0x8d68, 0x9d49,
   0x7e97, 0x6eb6, 0x5ed5, 0x4ef4, 0x3e13, 0x2e32, 0x1e51, 0x0e70,
   0xff9f, 0xefbe, 0xdfdd, 0xcffc, 0xbf1b, 0xaf3a, 0x9f59, 0x8f78,
   0x9188, 0x81a9, 0xb1ca, 0xa1eb, 0xd10c, 0xc12d, 0xf14e, 0xe16f,
   0x1080, 0x00a1, 0x30c2, 0x20e3, 0x5004, 0x4025, 0x7046, 0x6067,
   0x83b9, 0x9398, 0xa3fb, 0xb3da, 0xc33d, 0xd31c, 0xe37f, 0xf35e,
   0x02b1, 0x1290, 0x22f3, 0x32d2, 0x4235, 0x5214, 0x6277, 0x7256,
   0xb5ea, 0xa5cb, 0x95a8, 0x8589, 0xf56e, 0xe54f, 0xd52c, 0xc50d,
   0x34e2, 0x24c3, 0x14a0, 0x0481, 0x7466, 0x6447, 0x5424, 0x4405,
   0xa7db, 0xb7fa, 0x8799, 0x97b8, 0xe75f, 0xf77e, 0xc71d, 0xd73c,
   0x26d3, 0x36f2, 0x0691, 0x16b0, 0x6657, 0x7676, 0x4615, 0x5634,
   0xd94c, 0xc96d, 0xf90e, 0xe92f, 0x99c8, 0x89e9, 0xb98a, 0xa9ab,
   0x5844, 0x4865, 0x7806, 0x6827, 0x18c0, 0x08e1, 0x3882, 0x28a3,
   0xcb7d, 0xdb5c, 0xeb3f, 0xfb1e, 0x8bf9, 0x9bd8, 0xabbb, 0xbb9a,
   0x4a75, 0x5a54, 0x6a37, 0x7a16, 0x0af1, 0x1ad0, 0x2ab3, 0x3a92,
   0xfd2e, 0xed0f, 0xdd6c, 0xcd4d, 0xbdaa, 0xad8b, 0x9de8, 0x8dc9,
   0x7c26, 0x6c07, 0x5c64, 0x4c45, 0x3ca2, 0x2c83, 0x1ce0, 0x0cc1,
   0xef1f, 0xff3e, 0xcf5d, 0xdf7c, 0xaf9b, 0xbfba, 0x8fd9, 0x9ff8,
   0x6e17, 0x7e36, 0x4e55, 0x5e74, 0x2e93, 0x3eb2, 0x0ed1, 0x1ef0
};

unsigned int UpdateCRC16(unsigned int crc,unsigned char value) {

unsigned int crc16;

crc16 = (CRC16_table[(crc >> 8) & 0x00FF] ^ (crc << 8)
  ^ (unsigned int)(value));

return crc16;

}
```

You will find this function on the Compax3 CD under RS232_485\Function UpdateCRC16.txt!

5.7 Remote diagnosis via Modem

In this chapter you can read about:

Caution!

As the transmission via modem may be very slow and interference-prone, the operation of the Compax3 ServoManager via modem connection is on your own risk!

The function setup mode as well as the ROLL mode of the oscilloscope are not available for remote diagnosis!

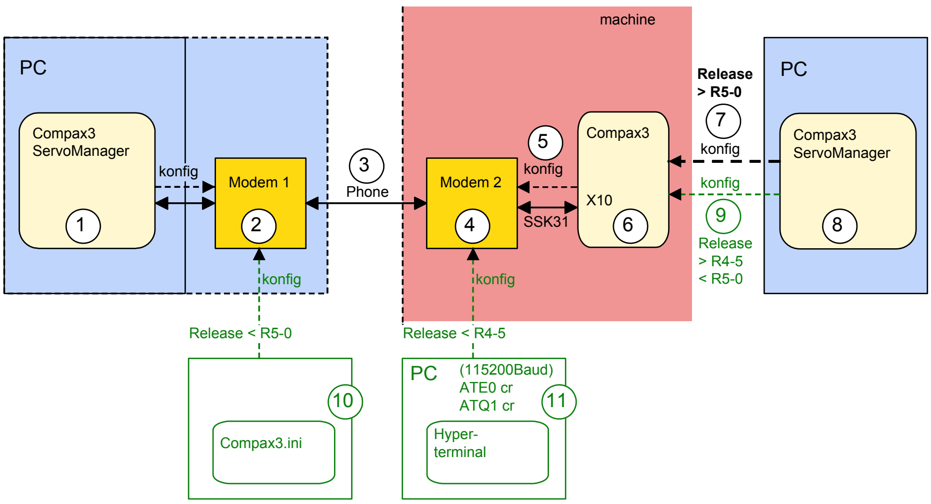
It is not recommended to use the logic analyzer in the Compax3 IEC61131-3 debugger due to the limited bandwidth.

Requirements:

For modem operation, a direct and stable telephone connection is required. Operation via a company-internal telephone system is not recommended.

5.7.1. Structure

Layout and configuration of a modem connection ServoManager - Compax3:



The green part of the drawing shows the proceeding for Compax3 release versions < R5-0!
The proceeding for Compax3 release versions < R5-0 is described in an application example (.../modem/C3_Appl_A1016_*language*.pdf on the Compax3 CD).

Connection Compax3 ServoManager <=> Compax3

The Compax3 ServoManager (1) establishes a RS232 connection with modem 1 (PC internal or external).
Modem 1 dials modem 2 via a telephone connection (3).
Modem 2 communicates with Compax3 (6) via RS232.

Configuration

Modem 1 is configured via the Compax3 ServoManager (1)
Modem 2 can be configured via Compax3 (on place), triggered by putting **SSK31** (see page 373) on X10. For this, the device must be configured before. This can be made locally before the system / machine is delivered with the aid of the Compax3 ServoManager (8).

The transmission was tested with a TD33 modem made by "**Westermo** http://www.westermo.com". The configuration with this standard modem is especially simple.
Other modem types are also possible.

5.7.2. Configuration of local modem 1

- Menu "Options: Communication settings RS232/RS485..." must be opened
- Select "Connection via Modem"
- Under "name" you can enter a name for the connection
- Enter the target telephone number.
  Note: If an ISDN telephone system is operated within a company network, an additional "0" may be required in order to get out of the local system into the comany network before reaching the outside line with an additional "0".
- The timeout periods are set to reasonable standard values according to our experience.
- Select the modem type: "Westermo TD-33" or "user-defined modem"
  - For "Westermo TD-33", no further settings are required.
  - For "user-defined modem", additional settings are only required, if the modem does not support standard AT commands.
    Then you can enter special AT commands.
  - **Note:** When operating the local modem on a telephone system, it may be necessary to make a blind dialling. Here, the modem does not wait for the dialling tone. For the Westermo TD33, the additional command sequence is ATX3.
- Select the COM interface where the modem is connected.
- Close the window and establish the connection with button (open/close COM port).
- The connection is interrupted when the COM port is closed.

- Select the modem type: "Westermo TD-33" or "user-defined modem"
  - For "Westermo TD-33", no further settings are required.
  - For "user-defined modem", additional settings are only required, if the modem does not support standard AT commands.
    Then you can enter special AT commands.
  - **Note:** When operating the local modem on a telephone system, it may be necessary to make a blind dialling. Here, the modem does not wait for the dialling tone. For the Westermo TD33, the additional command sequence is ATX3.

5.7.3. Configuration of remote modem 2

Settings in Compax3 under "configure communication: Modem settings":

- Modem initialization = "ON": After the SSK31 modem cable has been connected, Compax3 initializes the modem
- Modem initialization after Power On = "ON": After Power on of Compax3, the device initializes the modem
- Modem check = "ON": a modem check is performed
- The timeout periods are set to reasonable standard values according to our experience.
- Select the modem type: "Westermo TD-33" or "user-defined modem"
  - For "Westermo TD-33", no further settings are required.
  - For "user-defined modem", additional settings are only required, if the modem does not support standard AT commands.
    Then you can enter special AT commands.
  - **Note:** When operating the local modem on a telephone system, it may be necessary to make a blind dialling. Here, the modem does not wait for the dialling tone. For the Westermo TD33, the additional command sequence is ATX3.
- in the following wizard window, a specific download of the modem configuration can be made.

Note:

If a configuration download is interrupted, the original settings in the non volatile memory of the Compax3 are still available.
You have to finish the communication on the PC side and to reset the Compax3 via the 24V supply before you can start a new trial.

Reinitialization of the remote modem 2

Remove cable on Compax3 X10 and connect again!

5.7.4. Recommendations for preparing the modem operation

Preparations:

- Settings in Compax3 under "configure communication: Modem settings":
  - Modem initialization: "ON"
  - Modem initialization after Power On: "ON"
  - Modem check: "ON"
- Deposit SSK31 cable in the control cabinet.
- Install modem in the control cabinet and connect to telephone line.

Remote diagnosis required:

- On site:
  - Connect modem to Compax3 X10 via SSK31
  - Modem is automatically initialized
- Local:
  - connect modem to telephone line
  - Establish cable connection to modem (COM interface)
  - Select "connection via modem" under "options: communication settings RS232/RS485...".
  - Select modem under "selection"
  - Enter telephone number
  - Select COM interface (PC - modem)
  - Establish connection with button  (open/close COM port).

6. Compax3 - Objects

In this chapter you can read about:

6.1 Object overview I12 T11

Object-No.	Object name	Object	Access
170.2	C3.AnalogInput0_Gain	Gain analog input 0	r/w
170.4	C3.AnalogInput0_Offset	Analog input Offset 0	r/w
2100.20	C3.ControllerTuning_ActuatingSpeedSignalFilt_us	Control signal filter of velocity control	r/w
2100.8	C3.ControllerTuning_CurrentBandwidth	Current regulator bandwidth	r/w
2100.9	C3.ControllerTuning_CurrentDamping	Current loop - Damping	r/w
2100.21	C3.ControllerTuning_FilterAccel_us	Filter - Actual acceleration	r/w
2100.11	C3.ControllerTuning_FilterAccel2	Filter actual acceleration 2	r/w
2100.10	C3.ControllerTuning_FilterSpeed2	Filter actual velocity 2	r/w
2230.20	C3.D_CurrentController_Ld_Lq_Ratio	Ratio direct to quadrature inductance	r/w
2230.24	C3.D_CurrentController_VoltageDecouplingEnable	Activation of the voltage decoupling	r/w
990.1	C3.Delay_MasterDelay	Setpoint delay for bus master	r/w
84.4	C3.DeviceSupervision_DeviceAdr	Current RS485 address of the C3M	ro
84.3	C3.DeviceSupervision_DeviceCounter	Number of devices in the C3M combination	ro
84.5	C3.DeviceSupervision_OperatingTime	Hours of operation of the C3MP in s	ro
84.2	C3.DeviceSupervision_ThisDevice	Device number in the C3M combination	ro
85.1	C3.Diagnostics_DeviceState	C3MP operating status	ro
120.3	C3.DigitalInput_DebouncedValue	Status of digital inputs	ro
120.2	C3.DigitalInput_Value	Status of digital inputs	ro
121.2	C3.DigitalInputAddition_Value	Input word of I/O option	ro
133.3	C3.DigitalOutputAddition_Value	Output word for I/O option	r/w
550.2	C3.ErrorHistory_1	Error (n-1) in the error history	ro
87.1	C3.ErrorHistoryNumber_1	Error 1	ro
86.1	C3.ErrorHistoryPointer_LastEntry	Pointer to current error	ro
88.1	C3.ErrorHistoryTime_1	Error point in time 1	ro
2020.1	C3.ExternalSignal_Position	Position from external signal source	ro
2010.20	C3.FeedForward_EMF	EMC feedforward	r/w
2011.2	C3.FeedForwardExternal_FilterAccel	External Acceleration Feed Forward Filter Time Constant	r/w
2011.5	C3.FeedForwardExternal_FilterAccel_us	Filter time constant ext. Acceleration	r/w
2011.1	C3.FeedForwardExternal_FilterSpeed	External Speed Feed Forward Filter Time Con-stant	r/w
2011.4	C3.FeedForwardExternal_FilterSpeed_us	Filter time constant ext. Velocity	r/w
2220.22	C3.Q_CurrentController_BackEMF	Parameter motor force constant	r/w
2220.20	C3.Q_CurrentController_Inductance	Parameter motor inductance	r/w
2220.21	C3.Q_CurrentController_Resistance	Parameter motor resistance	r/w
2210.17	C3.SpeedController_ActualBandwidth	Replacement time constant for the velocity control	ro
2120.7	C3.SpeedObserver_DisturbanceAdditionEnable	Switch to enable disturbance compensation	r/w
2120.5	C3.SpeedObserver_DisturbanceFilter	Time constant disturbance filter	r/w
2120.1	C3.SpeedObserver_TimeConstant	Rapidity of the speed monitor	r/w
682.5	C3.StatusAccel_Actual	Status of actual acceleration unfiltered	ro
682.6	C3.StatusAccel_ActualFilter	Status of filtered actual acceleration	ro
682.4	C3.StatusAccel_DemandValue	Status demand acceleration	ro
682.7	C3.StatusAccel_FeedForwardAccel	Status acceleration feed forward	ro
690.5	C3.StatusAutocommutation_Itterations	Current increase steps automatic commutation	ro
688.2	C3.StatusCurrent_Actual	Status of actual current RMS (torque producing)	ro
688.19	C3.StatusCurrent_ActualDINT	Actual current r.m.s.	ro
688.8	C3.StatusCurrent_ControlDeviationIq	Status of control deviation of current control RMS	ro
688.31	C3.StatusCurrent_DecouplingVoltageUd	Signal decoupling of direct current controller	ro
688.32	C3.StatusCurrent_FeedForwardbackEMF	Signal EMC feedforward	ro
688.14	C3.StatusCurrent_FeedForwordCurrentJerk	Status of current & jerk feedforward	ro
688.9	C3.StatusCurrent_PhaseU	Status of current phase U	ro
688.10	C3.StatusCurrent_PhaseV	Status of current phase V	ro
688.1	C3.StatusCurrent_Reference	Status of setpoint current RMS (torque forming)	ro
688.18	C3.StatusCurrent_ReferenceDINT	Target current r.m.s.	ro
688.13	C3.StatusCurrent_ReferenceJerk	Status of demand jerk setpoint generator	ro
688.11	C3.StatusCurrent_ReferenceVoltageUq	Status of current control control signal	ro
688.22	C3.StatusCurrent_ReferenceVoltageVector	Provided voltage pointer	ro
688.30	C3.StatusCurrent_VoltageUd	Provided voltage of direct current controller	ro

688.29	C3.StatusCurrent_VoltageUq	Provided voltage of quadrature current controller	ro
683.2	C3.StatusDevice_ActualDeviceLoad	Status of device load	ro
683.3	C3.StatusDevice_ActualMotorLoad	Status of long-term motor load	ro
683.5	C3.StatusDevice_ObservedDisturbance	Status of observed disturbance	ro
692.4	C3.StatusFeedback_EncoderCosine	Status of analog input cosine	ro
692.3	C3.StatusFeedback_EncoderSine	Status of analog input sine	ro
692.2	C3.StatusFeedback_FeedbackCosineDSP	Status of cosine in signal processing	ro
692.1	C3.StatusFeedback_FeedbackSineDSP	Status of sine in signal processing	ro
692.5	C3.StatusFeedback_FeedbackVoltage[Vpp]	Status of feedback level	ro
680.5	C3.StatusPosition_Actual	Status actual position	ro
680.13	C3.StatusPosition_ActualController	Status actual position without absolute reference	ro
680.12	C3.StatusPosition_DemandController	Status demand position without absolute referen-ce	ro
680.4	C3.StatusPosition_DemandValue	Status demand position	ro
680.6	C3.StatusPosition_FollowingError	Status of tracking error	ro
680.23	C3.StatusPosition_LoadControlActual	Actual position of the load	ro
680.20	C3.StatusPosition_LoadControlDeviation	Position difference load-motor (unfiltered)	ro
680.22	C3.StatusPosition_LoadControlDeviationFiltered	Position difference load-motor (filtered)	ro
681.5	C3.StatusSpeed_Actual	Status actual speed unfiltered	ro
681.9	C3.StatusSpeed_ActualFiltered	Status actual speed filtered	ro
681.12	C3.StatusSpeed_ActualScaled	Filtered actual speed	ro
681.13	C3.StatusSpeed_DemandScaled	Setpoint speed of the setpoint generator	ro
681.10	C3.StatusSpeed_DemandSpeedController	Status demand speed controller input	ro
681.4	C3.StatusSpeed_DemandValue	Status demand speed of setpoint generator	ro
681.6	C3.StatusSpeed_Error	Status control deviation of speed	ro
681.11	C3.StatusSpeed_FeedForwardSpeed	Status speed feed forward	ro
684.2	C3.StatusTemperature_Motor	Status of motor temperature	ro
684.1	C3.StatusTemperature_PowerStage	Status of power output stage temperature	ro
685.3	C3.StatusVoltage_AnalogInput0	Status of analog input 0	ro
685.4	C3.StatusVoltage_AnalogInput1	Status of analog input 1	ro
685.1	C3.StatusVoltage_AuxiliaryVoltage	Status of auxiliary voltage	ro
685.2	C3.StatusVoltage_BusVoltage	Status DC bus voltage	ro
1901.1	C3Array.Col01_Row01	variable Column 1 Row 1	r/w
1902.1	C3Array.Col02_Row01	variable Column 2 Row 1	r/w
1903.1	C3Array.Col03_Row01	variable Column 3 Row 1	r/w
1904.1	C3Array.Col04_Row01	variable Column 4 Row 1	r/w
1905.1	C3Array.Col05_Row01	variable Column 5 Row 1	r/w
1906.1	C3Array.Col06_Row01	variable Column 6 Row 1	r/w
1907.1	C3Array.Col07_Row01	variable Column 7 Row 1	r/w
1908.1	C3Array.Col08_Row01	variable Column 8 Row 1	r/w
1909.1	C3Array.Col09_Row01	variable Column 9 Row 1	r/w
1910.1	C3Array.Indirect_Col01	Indirect table access Column 1	r/w
1900.1	C3Array.Pointer_Row	Pointer to table row	r/w
170.3	C3Plus.AnalogInput0_FilterCoefficient	Filter of analog input 0	r/w
171.3	C3Plus.AnalogInput1_FilterCoefficient	Filter of analog input 1	r/w
2190.2	C3Plus.AutoCommutationControl_InitialCurrent	Start current of automatic commutation	r/w
2190.4	C3Plus.AutoCommutationControl_MotionReduction	Motion reduction Automatic commutation	r/w
2190.8	C3Plus.AutoCommutationControl_PeakCurrent	Reduction of the peak current	r/w
2190.3	C3Plus.AutoCommutationControl_PositionThreshold	Motion limit for automatic commutation	r/w
2190.1	C3Plus.AutoCommutationControl_Ramptime	Ramp slope current slope AK	r/w
2190.10	C3Plus.AutoCommutationControl_Reset	Reset automatic commutation	r/w
2190.7	C3Plus.AutoCommutationControl_StandstillThreshold	Optimization of the standstill threshold	r/w
1100.3	C3Plus.DeviceControl_Controlword_1	Control word CW	r/w
1000.3	C3Plus.DeviceState_Statusword_1	Status word SW	r/w
1000.4	C3Plus.DeviceState_Statusword_2	Status word 2	r/w
85.3	C3Plus.Diagnostics_DCbus_Current	C3MP DC intermediate current	ro
85.2	C3Plus.Diagnostics_DCbus_Voltage	C3MP DC intermediate voltage	ro
85.5	C3Plus.Diagnostics_RectifierLoad	C3MP usage in %	ro
85.4	C3Plus.Diagnostics_TemperatureHeatSink	C3MP temperature of heat dissipator	ro
550.1	C3Plus.ErrorHistory_LastError	Current error (n)	ro
2020.7	C3Plus.ExternalSignal_Accel_Munits	Acceleration of the external signal source	ro

2020.6	C3Plus.ExternalSignal_Speed_Munits	Speed value of the external signal source	ro
3920.7	C3Plus.HEDA_SignalProcessing_OutputGreat	Output of the Heda Tracking Filter	ro
1130.13	C3Plus.HOMING_edge_position	Distance MN (zero) initiator - motor zero	r/w
2201.11	C3Plus.LoadControl_FilterLaggingPart	Time constant of position difference filter	r/w
2150.2	C3Plus.NotchFilter_BandwidthFilter1	Bandwidth of notch filter 1	r/w
2150.5	C3Plus.NotchFilter_BandwidthFilter2	Bandwidth of notch filter 2	r/w
2150.3	C3Plus.NotchFilter_DepthFilter1	Depth of notch filter 1	r/w
2150.6	C3Plus.NotchFilter_DepthFilter2	Depth of notch filter 2	r/w
2150.1	C3Plus.NotchFilter_FrequencyFilter1	Center frequency of notch filter 1	r/w
2150.4	C3Plus.NotchFilter_FrequencyFilter2	Center frequency of notch filter 2	r/w
1111.3	C3Plus.POSITION_accel	Acceleration for positioning	r/w
1111.4	C3Plus.POSITION_decel	Deceleration for positioning	r/w
1111.5	C3Plus.POSITION_jerk_accel	Acceleration jerk for positioning	r/w
1111.6	C3Plus.POSITION_jerk_decel	Deceleration jerk for positioning	r/w
1111.1	C3Plus.POSITION_position	Target position	r/w
1111.2	C3Plus.POSITION_speed	Speed for positioning	r/w
2200.20	C3Plus.PositionController_DeadBand	Deadband of position controller	r/w
2200.21	C3Plus.PositionController_FrictionCompensation	Friction compensation	r/w
2200.11	C3Plus.PositionController_TrackingErrorFilter	Following error filter of the position controller	r/w
2200.24	C3Plus.PositionController_TrackingErrorFilter_us	Time constant following error filter of positon controller	r/w
670.4	C3Plus.StatusTorqueForce_ActualForce	Status of actual force	ro
670.2	C3Plus.StatusTorqueForce_ActualTorque	Status of actual torque	ro
110.1	C3Plus.Switch_DeviceFunction	Value of the function switch on C3M	ro
3300.9	C3Plus.TouchProbe_IgnoreZone_End	End of Registration lock-out zone (StopIgnore)	r/w
3300.8	C3Plus.TouchProbe_IgnoreZone_Start	Beginning of Registration lock-out zone (StartI-gnore)	r/w
2109.1	C3Plus.TrackingfilterHEDA_TRFSpeed	Time constant tracking filter HEDA-process positi-on	r/w
2107.1	C3Plus.TrackingfilterPhysicalSource_TRFSpeed	Time constant tracking filter physical source	r/w
2110.4	C3Plus.TrackingfilterSG1_AccelFilter	Filter effect of acceleration filter setpoint encoder	r/w
2110.7	C3Plus.TrackingfilterSG1_AccelFilter_us	Filter time constant acceleration setpoint genera-tor	r/w
2110.3	C3Plus.TrackingfilterSG1_FilterSpeed	Filter effect of speed filter setpoint encoder	r/w
2110.6	C3Plus.TrackingfilterSG1_FilterSpeed_us	Filter time constant velocity setpoint generator	r/w
2110.1	C3Plus.TrackingfilterSG1_TRFSpeed	Time constant tracking filter setpoint encoder	r/w

6.2 Detailed object list

A detailed object list can be found in the corresponding online help.

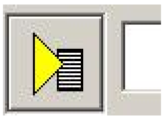
7. Status values

In this chapter you can read about:

A list of the status values supports you in optimization and commissioning.
Open the optimization function in the C3 ServoManager (double-click on optimization in the tree)
You will find the available status values in the lower right part of the window under selection (TAB) ”Status values”
You can pull them into the oscilloscope (upper part of the left side) or into the status display (upper part of the right side) by the aid of the mouse (drag and drop).
The status values are divided into 2 groups (user levels):
standard: here you can find all important status values
advanced: advanced status values, require a better knowledge

Switching of the user level

The user level can be changed in the optimization window (left hand side lower part under selection (TAB) "optimization") with the following button.



7.1 D/A-Monitor

A part of the status values can be output via the D/A monitor channel 0 (X11/4) and channel 1 (X11/3).In the following status list under D/A monitor output: possible / not possible).
The reference for the output voltage can be entered individually in the reference unit of the status value.

Example: Output Object 2210.2: (actual position unfiltered)

In order to get an output voltage of 10V at $3000min^{-1}$, please enter 50Umd/s ($=3000min^{-1}$) as "value of the signal at 10V".

Hint

The unit of measurement of the D/A monitor values differs from the unit of measurement of the status values.

7.2 Status values

Additional information on the topic of "status values" can be found in the online help of the device.

8. Error

Standard error reactions:
Reaction 2: Downramp with "de-energize" **then apply brake** (see page 289) and finally de-energize.
For errors with standard reaction 2 the **error reaction can be changed** (see page 155).

Reaction 5: switch-off of the current immediately (without ramp), application of the brake.

Caution! A Z-axis may drop down due to the brake delay times

Most pending errors can be acknowledged with Quit!

The following errors must be acknowledged with Power on:

0x7381, 0x7382, 0x7391, 0x7392, 0x73A0

Object 550.1 displays error:
value 1 means "no error".

The errors as well as the error history can be viewed in the C3 ServoManager under optimization (at the top right of the optimization window).

8.1 Error list

Detailed information on the topic of the "error list" can be found in the online help of the device.

9. Order code

In this chapter you can read about:

9.1 Order code device: Compax3

Example: C3S025V2F10I10T10M00	C3								
Device model: Compax3									
Single axis	S								--
Highpower	H								--
Multi-axis device	M								
Device currents static/dynamic; supply voltage									
2.5A / 5A ; 230VAC (single phase)	S	025	V2						--
6.3A / 12.6A ; 230VAC (single phase)	S	063	V2						--
10A / 20A ; 230VAC (three phase)	S	100	V2						--
15A / 30A ; 230VAC (three phase)	S	150	V2						--
1.5A / 4.5A ; 400VAC (three phase)	S	015	V4						--
3.8A / 7.5A ; 400VAC (three phase)	S	038	V4						--
7.5A / 15.0A ; 400VAC (three phase)	S	075	V4						--
15.0A / 30.0A ; 400VAC (three phase)	S	150	V4						--
30.0A / 60.0A ; 400VAC (three phase)	S	300	V4						--
50A / 75A ; 400VAC (three phase)	H	050	V4						--
90A / 135A ; 400VAC (three phase)	H	090	V4						--
125A / 187.5A ; 400VAC (three phase)*	H	125	V4						--
155A / 232.5A ; 400VAC (three phase)*	H	155	V4						--
5.0A / 10.0A ; 400VAC (three phase)	M	050	D6						
10A / 20A ; 400VAC (three phase)	M	100	D6						
15A / 30A ; 400VAC (three phase)	M	150	D6						
30A / 60A ; 400VAC (three phase)	M	300	D6						
Feedback:									
Resolver Feedback				F10					
SinCos© (Hiperface)				F11					
Encoder, Sine-cosine with/without hall				F12					
Interface:									
Step/direction / analogue input					I10	T10	M00		
Positioning with inputs/outputs					I11	T11	M00		
Positioning via I/Os or RS232 / RS485/USB					I12				
Profibus DP V0/V1/V2 (12Mbaud)					I20				
CANopen					I21				
DeviceNet					I22				
Ethernet Powerlink					I30				
EtherCAT					I31				
C3 powerPLmC (Multi-axis control)					C10		M00		
C3 powerPLmC (Multi-axis control) with Profibus					C13		M00		
Technology functions:									
Positioning						T11			
Motion control programmable according to IEC61131-3						T30			
Motion control programmable according to IEC61131-3 & electronic cam extension						T40			
Options:									
no additional supplement							M00		
Expansion 12 digital I/Os & HEDA (Motionbus)							M10		
HEDA (Motionbus)							M11		
Expansion, 12 digital I/Os							M12		
Safety technology only C3M:									
no safety technology	M		D6						S0
Safe torque off	M		D6						S1

*external voltage supply for ventilator fan required. Available in two versions for single phase feed:
Standard: 220/240VAC: 140W, on request: 110/120VAC: 130W

9.2 Order code for mains module: Compax3MP

Example: C3MP10D6USBM00	C3M	P		D6	USB	M00
Device model: Compax3M						
Power module		P				
Nominal power; supply voltage						
10kW; 400VAC (3-phase)			10	D6		
20kW; 400VAC (3-phase)			20	D6		
Interface:						
USB connection					USB	
Options:						
no additional supplement						M00

9.3 Accessories order code

Order Code connection set for Compax3S

					/		
for C3S0xxV2	ZBH 02/01	ZBH	0	2	/	0	1
for C3S0xxV4 / S150V4 / S1xxV2	ZBH 02/02	ZBH	0	2	/	0	2
for C3S300V4	ZBH 02/03	ZBH	0	2	/	0	3

Order Code connection set for Compax3MP/Compax3M

					/		
for C3M050D6, C3M100D6, C3M150D6	ZBH 04/01	ZBH	0	4	/	0	1
for C3M300D6	ZBH 04/02	ZBH	0	4	/	0	2
for C3MP10	ZBH 04/03	ZBH	0	4	/	0	3
C3MP20	ZBH 04/03	ZBH	0	4	/	0	4

Order code for feedback cables

						/		
for Resolver (2	for MH / SMH motors		REK	4	2	/	...	...(1
for Resolver (2	for MH / SMH motors	(cable chain compatible)	REK	4	1	/	...	...(1
for SinCos© – Feedback devices (2	for MH / SMH motors	(cable chain compatible)	GBK	2	4	/	..	...(1
for EnDat 2.1 (2	for MH / SMH motors	(cable chain compatible)	GBK	3	8	/	..	...(1
Encoder – Compax3			GBK	2	3	/	...	...(1
for LXR linear motors		(cable chain compatible)	GBK	3	3	/	...	...(1
for BLMA linear motors		(cable chain compatible)	GBK	3	2	/	...	...(1

(x **Note on the cable** (see page 332)

Order code for motor cables(2

					/	
for SMH / MH56 / MH70 / MH105(3	($1.5mm^2$; up to 13.8A)		MOK	5 5	/	... ...(1
for SMH / MH56 / MH70 / MH105(3	($1.5mm^2$; up to 13.8A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	5 4	/	... ...(1
for SMH / MH56 / MH70 / MH105(3	($2.5mm^2$; up to 18.9A)		MOK	5 6	/	... ...(1
for SMH / MH56 / MH70 / MH105(3	($2.5mm^2$; up to 18.9A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	5 7	/	... ...(1
for MH145 / MH205(4	($1.5mm^2$; up to 13.8A)		MOK	6 0	/	... ...(1
for MH145 / MH205(4	($1.5mm^2$; up to 13.8A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	6 3	/	... ...(1
for MH145 / MH205(4	($2.5mm^2$; up to 18.9A)		MOK	5 9	/	... ...(1
for MH145 / MH205(4	($2.5mm^2$; up to 18.9A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	6 4	/	... ...(1
for MH145 / MH205(4	($6mm^2$; up to 32.3A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	6 1	/	... ...(1
for MH145 / MH205(4	($10mm^2$; up to 47.3A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	6 2	/	... ...(1

(x **Note on the cable** (see page 332)

Order Code braking resistors

				/	
for C3S063V2 or C3S075V4	56Ω / $0.18kW_{cont}$	BRM	0 5	/	0 1
for C3S075V4	56Ω / $0.57kW_{cont}$	BRM	0 5	/	0 2
for C3S025V2 or C3S038V4	100Ω / $60W_{cont}$	BRM	0 8	/	0 1
for C3S150V4	47Ω / $0.57kW_{cont}$	BRM	1 0	/	0 1
for C3S150V2, C3S300V4 and C3MP20D6	4/01:15Ω / $_{0.57kWcont}$ 4/02:15Ω / $_{0.74kWcont}$	BRM	0 4	/	0 ...
for C3S300V4 and C3MP20D6	4/03:15Ω / $1.5kW_{cont}$				
for C3S100V2	22Ω / $0.45kW_{cont}$	BRM	0 9	/	0 1
for C3H0xxV4	27Ω / $3.5kW_{cont}$	BRM	1 1	/	0 1
for C3MP10D6 and with C3MP20D6 (2x30Ω parallel)	30Ω / $0.5kW_{cont}$	BRM	1 3	/	0 1
for C3MP10D6, (2x15Ω in series) CeMP20D6	15Ω / $0.5kW_{cont}$	BRM	1 4	/	0 1
for C3H1xxV4	18Ω / $4.5kW_{cont}$	BRM	1 2	/	0 1

Order code mains filter Compax3S

			/	
for C3S025V2 or S063V2	NFI	0 1	/	0 1
for C3S0xxV4, S150V4 or S1xxV2	NFI	0 1	/	0 2
for C3S300V4	NFI	0 1	/	0 3

Order code mains filter Compax3H

			/	
for C3H050V4	NFI	0 2	/	0 1
for C3H090V4	NFI	0 2	/	0 2
for C3H1xxV4	NFI	0 2	/	0 3

Order code mains filter Compax3MP

				/	
for C3MP10	Reference axis combination 3x480V 25A 6x10m motor cable length	NFI	0 3	/	0 1
for C3MP10	Reference axis combination 3x480V 25A 6x50m motor cable length	NFI	0 3	/	0 2
for C3MP20	Reference axis combination 3x480V 50A 6x50m motor cable length	NFI	0 3	/	0 3

Order code for motor output filter (for Compax3S, Compx3M >20m motor cable)

up to 6,3 A rated motor current	MDR	0	1	/	0	4
Up to 16 A rated motor current	MDR	0	1	/	0	1
up to 30 A rated motor current	MDR	0	1	/	0	2

Order code for interface cables and plugs

PC – Compax3 (RS232)		SSK	0	1	/	...	...(1
PC - Compax3MP (USB)		SSK	3	3	/	...	...
on X11 (Ref/Analog) and X13 at C3F001D2	with flying leads	SSK	2	1	/	...	...(1
on X12 / X22 (I/Os digital)	with flying leads	SSK	2	2	/	...	...(1
on X11 (Ref /Analog)	for I/O terminal block	SSK	2	3	/	...	...(1
on X12 / X22 (I/Os digital)	for I/O terminal block	SSK	2	4	/	...	...(1
PC ⇔ POP (RS232)		SSK	2	5	/	...	...(1
Compax3 ⇔ POP (RS485) for several C3H on request		SSK	2	7	/	../	...(6
Compax3 HEDA ⇔ Compax3 HEDA or PC ⇔ C3powerPLmC Compax3 I30 ⇔ Compax3 I30 or C3M-multi-axis communication		SSK	2	8	/	../	...(5
Compax3 X11 ⇔ Compax3 X11 (encoder coupling of 2 axes)		SSK	2	9	/	...	...(1
Compax3 X10 ⇔ Modem		SSK	3	1	/	...	
Compax3H adapter cable ⇔ SSK01 (length 15cm, delivered with the device)		SSK	3	2	/	2	0
Compax3H X10 RS232 connection control ⇔ Programming interface (delivered with the device)		VBK	1	7	/	0	1
Bus terminal connector (for the 1st and last Compax3 in the HEDA Bus/or multi-axis system).		BUS	0	7	/	0	1
Profibus cable (2	non prefabricated	SSL	0	1	/	...	...(1
Profibus plug		BUS	0	8	/	0	1
CAN-Bus cable (2	non prefabricated	SSL	0	2	/	...	...(1
CANbus connector		BUS	1	0	/	0	1

(x **Note on the cable** (see page 332)

Order Code operating module

Operating module (for Compax3S and Compax3F)	BDM	0	1	/	0	1

Order Code terminal block

for I/Os without luminous indicator	for X11, X12, X22	EAM	0	6	/	0	1
for I/Os with luminous indicator	for X12, X22	EAM	0	6	/	0	2

Order Code decentralized input terminals

PIO 2DI 24VDC 3.0ms	2-channel digital input terminal	PIO	4	0	0
PIO 4DI 24VDC 3.0ms	4-channel digital input terminal	PIO	4	0	2
PIO 8DI 24VDC 3.0ms	8-channel digital input terminal	PIO	4	3	0
PIO 2AI DC ± 10V differential input	2 channel analog input terminal (± 10V differential input)	PIO	4	5	6
PIO 4AI 0-10VDC S.E.	4 channel analog input terminal (0-10V signal voltage)	PIO	4	6	8
PIO 2AI 0 -20mA differential input	2 channel analog input terminal (0 -20mA differential input)	PIO	4	8	0

Order Code decentralized output terminals

PIO 2DO 24VDC 0.5A	2 channel digital output terminal (output voltage 0.5A)	PIO	5	0	1
PIO 4DO 24VDC 0.5A	4 channel digital output terminal (output voltage 0.5A)	PIO	5	0	4
PIO 8DO 24VDC 0.5A	8 channel digital output terminal (output voltage 0.5A)	PIO	5	3	0
PIO 2AO 0-10VDC	2 channel analog output terminal (0-10V signal voltage)	PIO	5	5	0
PIO 2AO 0 -20mA	2 channel analog output terminal (0-20mA signal voltage)	PIO	5	5	2
PIO 2AO DC ± 10V	2 channel analog output terminal (± 10V signal voltage)	PIO	5	5	6

Order Code CANopen Fieldbus Coupler

CANopen Standard	max. vectorial sum current for bus terminals 1650mA at 5V	PIO	3 3 7
CANopen ECO	max. vectorial sum current for bus terminals 650mA at 5V	PIO	3 4 7

(1 Length code 1

Length [m]	1,0	2,5	5,0	7,5	10,0	12,5	15,0	20,0	25,0	30,0	35,0	40,0	45,0	50,0
Order code	01	02	03	04	05	06	07	08	09	10	11	12	13	14

Example:

SSK01/09: length 25m
(2 Colours according to DESINA
(3 with motor plug
(4 with cable eye for motor terminal box

(5Length code 2 for SSK28

Length [m]	0,17	0,25	0,5	1,0	3,0	5,0	10,0
Order code	23	20	21	01	22	03	05

(6 Order code: SSK27/nn/..

Length A (Pop - 1. Compax3) variable (the last two numbers according to the length code for cable, for example SSK27/nn/01)
Length B (1. Compax3 - 2. Compax3 - ... - n. Compax3) fixed 50 cm (only if there is more than 1 Compax3, i.e. nn greater than 01)
Number n (the last two digits)

Examples:

SSK27/05/.. for connecting from Pop to 5 Compax3.
SSK27/01/.. for connection from Pop to one Compax3

MOK55 and MOK54 can also be used for linear motors LXR406, LXR412 and BLMA.
(x **Note on the cable** (see page 332)

10. Compax3 Accessories

In this chapter you can read about:

10.1 Parker servo motors

In this chapter you can read about:

10.1.1. Direct drives

In this chapter you can read about:

10.1.1.1 Feedback systems for direct drives

The Feedback option F12 makes it possible to operate linear motors as well as torque motors. Compax3 supports the following feedback systems:

Special encoder systems for direct drives	**Option F12**
Analog hall sensors	◆ Sine - cosine signal (max. 5Vss; typical 1Vss) 90° offset ◆ U-V Signal (max. 5Vss; typical 1Vss) 120° offset.
Encoder (linear or rotatory)	◆ Sine-cosine (max. 5Vss; typical 1Vss) (max. 400kHz) or ◆ TTL (RS422) (max. 5MHz) with the following modes of commutation: ◆ **automatic commutation** (see page 334) or ◆ Digital hall sensors (e.g. DiCoder©)
Digital, bidirectional interface	◆ All EnDat 2.1 or EnDat 2.2 feedback systems with incremental track (sine-cosine track) ◆ linear or rotary ◆ max. 400kHz Sine-Cosine
Distance coded feedback systems	◆ Distance coding with 1VSS - Interface ◆ Distance coding with RS422 - Interface (Encoder)

The motor performs automatic commutation after:

- Power on,
- A configuration download or
- An IEC program download

The time duration (typically 5-10 sec) of automatic commutation can be optimized with the start current (see in the optimization display of the C3 ServoManager; given as a percentage of the reference current). Note that values that are too high will cause Error 0x73A6 to be triggered.
Typically the motor moves by 4% of the pitch length or, with rotary direct drives 4% of 360°/number of pole pairs - maximum 50%.

Note the following conditions for automatic commutation

- During automatic commutation the end limits are not monitored.
- Actively working load torques are not permitted during automatic commutation.
- Static friction deteriorates the effect of automatic commutation.
- With the exception of missing commutation information, the controller/motor combination is configured and ready for operation (parameters correctly assigned for the linear motor/drive). The feedback and the direction of the field of rotation in effect must match.
- The auto-commutating function must be adapted to fit the mechanics if necessary during commissioning.

10.1.1.2 Linear motors

Parker offers you a number of systems of linear motor drives:

Linear motors	Feed force (continuous/dynamic)	Stroke length:
LMDT ironless linear servo motors:	26 ... 1,463N	amost any
LMI iron-cored linear servo motors:	52 ... 6,000N	64 ... 999mm
Linear motors of the LXR series:	315N / 1,000N	up to 3m
Linear motor module BLMA:	605N / 1,720N	up to 6m

10.1.1.3 Torque motors

Parker offers you an extensive range of torque motors that can be adapted to your application. Please contact us for information.
Additional information can be found on the **Internet** http://www.parker-automation.com in the direct drives section.

10.1.2. Rotary servo motors

Parker offers you an extensive range of servo motors that can be adapted to your application. Please contact us for information.
Additonal information can be found on the **Internet** (http://apps.parker.com/divapps/eme/EME/Literature_List/dokumentationen/SMH_MH_Kat%20dt.pdf, , http://apps.parker.com/divapps/eme/EME/Literature_List/dokumentationen/SMH_MH_Cat%20fra.pdf, , http://apps.parker.com/divapps/eme/EME/Literature_List/dokumentationen/SMH_MH_Cat%20engl.pdf,)
or on the CD supplied in the documentations file:
Catalogue = SMH_MH_Kat engl.pdf
User guide = SMH_MH-Manual engl.pdf

Suitable servo motors for Compax3H are available on request!

10.2 EMC measures

In this chapter you can read about:

10.2.1. Mains filter

For radio disturbance suppression and for complying with the emission limit values for **CE conform operation** (see page 17)we offer mains filters:
Observe the maximum permitted length of the connection between the mains filter and the device:

- unshielded <0.5m;
- shielded < 5m (fully shielded on ground – e.g. ground of control cabinet)

Order code mains filter Compax3S

for C3S025V2 or S063V2	NFI	0	1	/	0	1
for C3S0xxV4, S150V4 or S1xxV2	NFI	0	1	/	0	2
for C3S300V4	NFI	0	1	/	0	3

Order code mains filter Compax3MP

for C3MP10	Reference axis combination 3x480V 25A 6x10m motor cable length	NFI	0	3	/	0	1
for C3MP10	Reference axis combination 3x480V 25A 6x50m motor cable length	NFI	0	3	/	0	2
for C3MP20	Reference axis combination 3x480V 50A 6x50m motor cable length	NFI	0	3	/	0	3

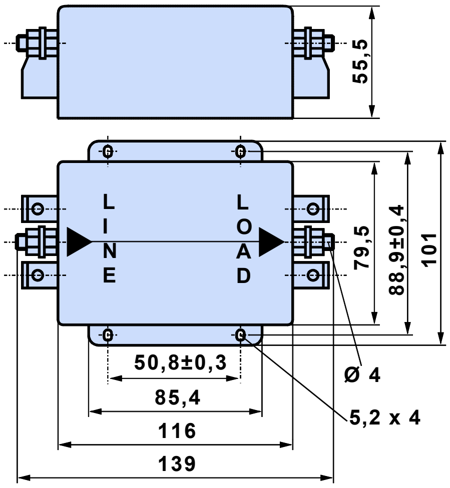
Order code mains filter Compax3H

for C3H050V4	NFI	0	2	/	0	1
for C3H090V4	NFI	0	2	/	0	2
for C3H1xxV4	NFI	0	2	/	0	3

10.2.1.1 Mains filter NFI01/01

for Compax3 S025 V2 and Compax3 S063 V2

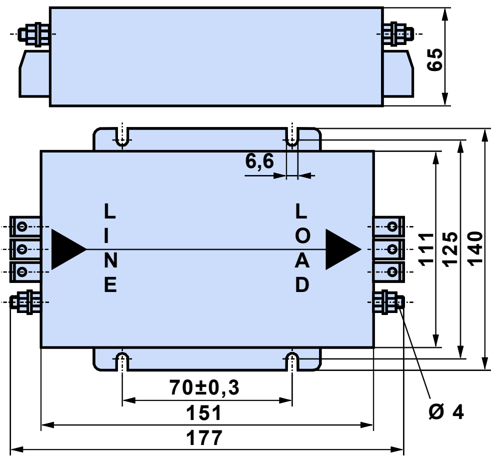
Dimensional drawing:



10.2.1.2 Mains filter NFI01/02

for Compax3 S0xx V4, Compax3 S150 V4 and Compax3 S1xx V2

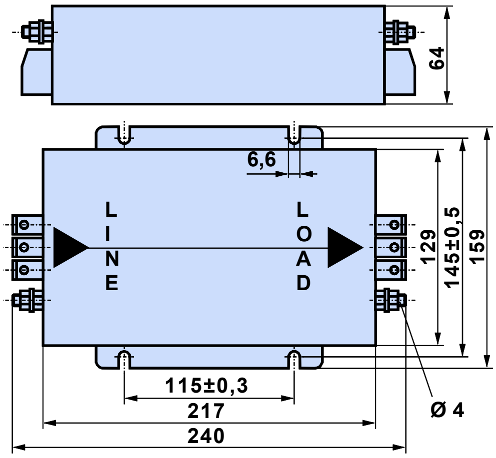
Dimensional drawing:



10.2.1.3 Mains filter for NFI01/03

for Compax3 S300

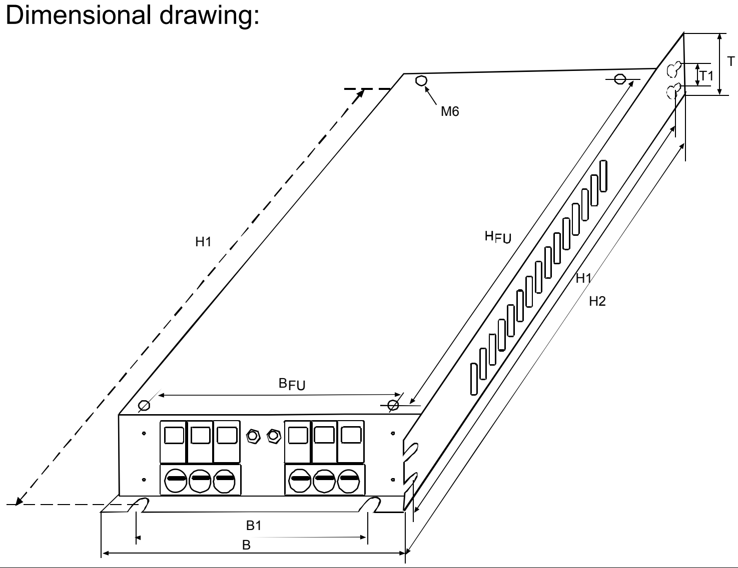
Dimensional drawing:



10.2.1.4 Mains filter NFI02/0x

Filter for mounting below theCompax3 Hxxx V4 housing

Dimensional drawing:



Stated in mm	Filter type	Dimensions				Hole distances			Distances		Weight	Grounding clamp	Connection clamp
		B	H	H2	T	B1	H1	T1	BFU	HFU	kg		
C3H050V4	NFI02/01	233	515	456	70	186	495	40	150	440	4,3	M6	16mm^2
C3H090V4	NFI02/02	249	715	649	95	210	695	40	150	630	8,5	M8	50mm^2
C3H1xxV4	NFI02/03	249	830	719	110				150	700	15,0	M10	95mm^2

10.2.1.5 Mains filter NFI03/01 & NFI03/03

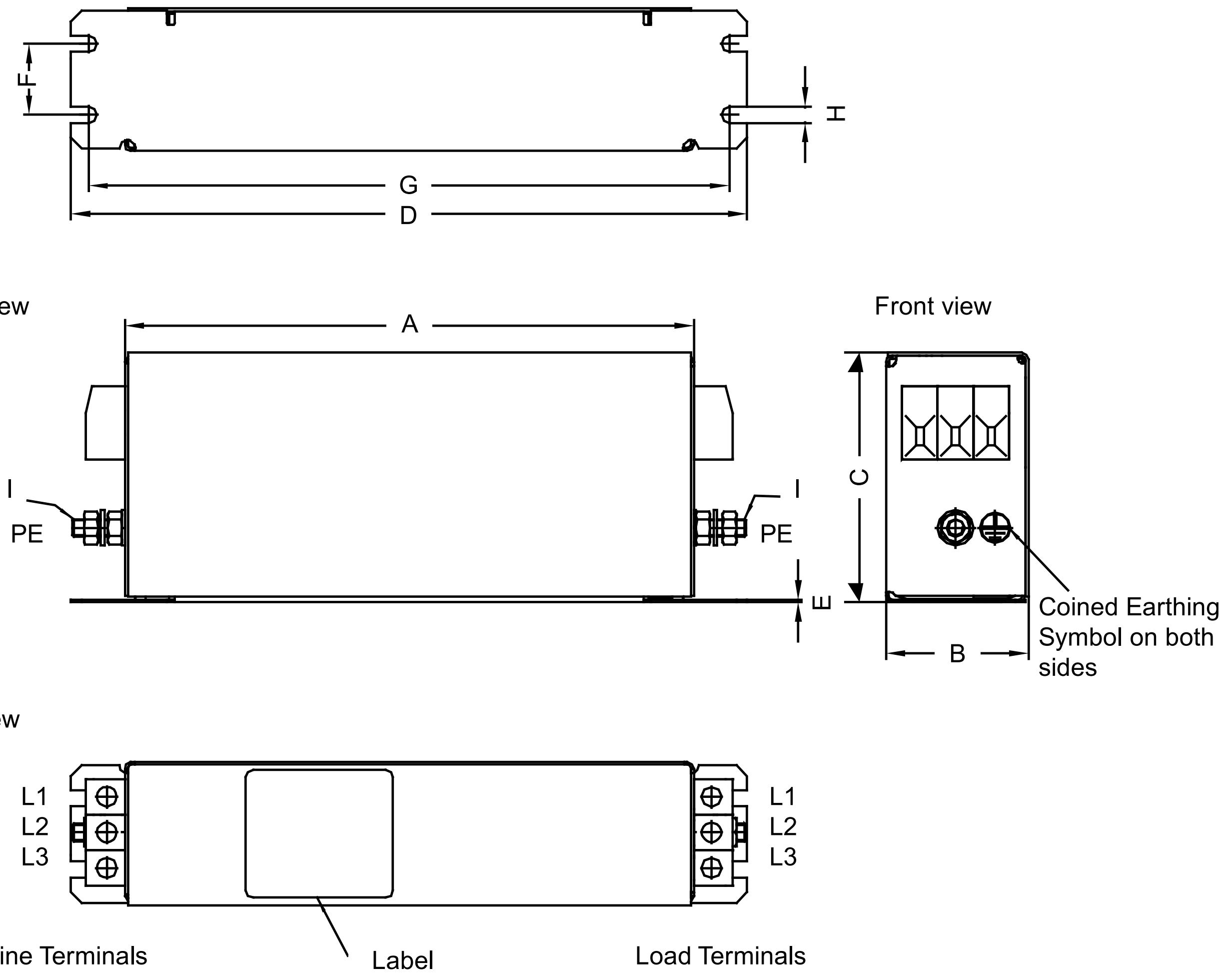
for Compax3MP10D6 and Compax3MP20D6

Dimensional drawing:

Bottom view

Side view

Top view



Filter type										Weight	GND(I)	Connection clamp
	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H		kg		
NFI03/01	240	50	85	270	0,8	30	255	5,4		1,5	M5	$10mm^2$
NFI03/03	220	85	90	250	1,0	60	235	5,4		2,4	M6	$16mm^2$

Stated in mm

10.2.1.6 Mains filter NFI03/02

for Compx3MP10D6

Dimensional drawing:
On request

10.2.2. Motor output filter

We offer motor output filters for disturbance suppression when the motor connecting cables are long (>20m):

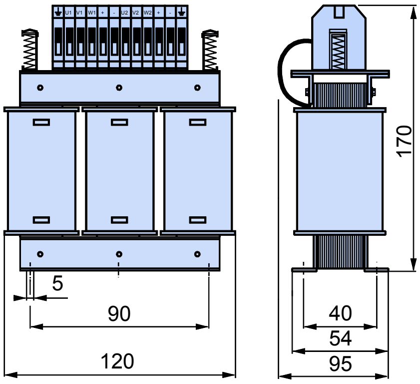
Order code for motor output filter (for Compax3S, Compx3M >20m motor cable)

up to 6,3 A rated motor current	MDR	0	1	/	0	4
Up to 16 A rated motor current	MDR	0	1	/	0	1
up to 30 A rated motor current	MDR	0	1	/	0	2

10.2.2.1 Motor output filter MDR01/04

up to 6.3A nominal motor current (3.6mH)

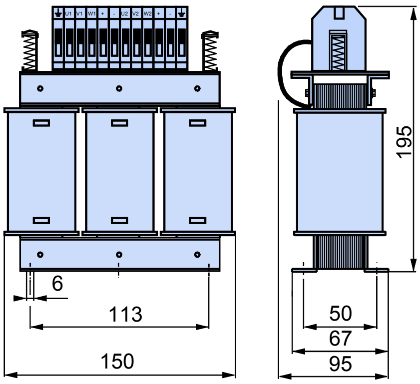
Dimensional drawing:



10.2.2.2 Motor output filter MDR01/01

Up to 16 A nominal motor current (2mH)

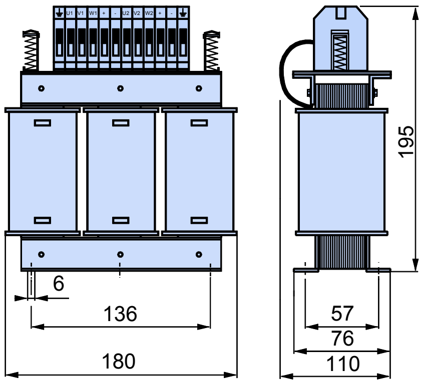
Dimensional drawing:



10.2.2.3 Motor output filter MDR01/02

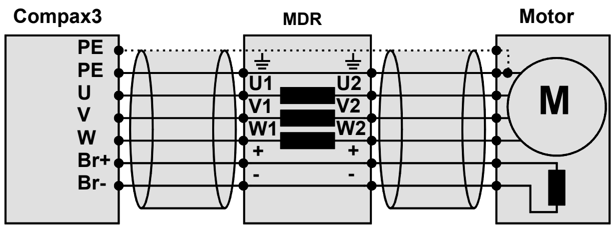
up to 30A nominal motor current (1.1mH)

Dimensional drawing:



Weight: 5.8kg

10.2.2.4 Wiring of the motor output filter



10.2.3. Mains filter

Mains filters serve for reducing the low-frequency interferences on the mains side. Further information on request.

10.3 Connections to the motor

In this chapter you can read about:

Under the designation "REK.." (resolver cables) and "MOK.." (motor cables) we can deliver motor connecting cables in various lengths to order. If you wish to make up your own cables, please consult the cable plans shown below:

Order code for motor cables[2]

for SMH / MH56 / MH70 / MH105[3]	($1.5 mm^2$; up to 13.8A)		MOK	5	5	/	...	...[1]
for SMH / MH56 / MH70 / MH105[3]	($1.5 mm^2$; up to 13.8A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	5	4	/	...	...[1]
for SMH / MH56 / MH70 / MH105[3]	($2.5 mm^2$; up to 18.9A)		MOK	5	6	/	...	...[1]
for SMH / MH56 / MH70 / MH105[3]	($2.5 mm^2$; up to 18.9A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	5	7	/	...	...[1]
for MH145 / MH205[4]	($1.5 mm^2$; up to 13.8A)		MOK	6	0	/	...	...[1]
for MH145 / MH205[4]	($1.5 mm^2$; up to 13.8A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	6	3	/	...	...[1]
for MH145 / MH205[4]	($2.5 mm^2$; up to 18.9A)		MOK	5	9	/	...	...[1]
for MH145 / MH205[4]	($2.5 mm^2$; up to 18.9A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	6	4	/	...	...[1]
for MH145 / MH205[4]	($6 mm^2$; up to 32.3A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	6	1	/	...	...[1]
for MH145 / MH205[4]	($10 mm^2$; up to 47.3A)	(cable chain compatible)	MOK	6	2	/	...	...[1]

[x] **Note on the cable** (see page 332)

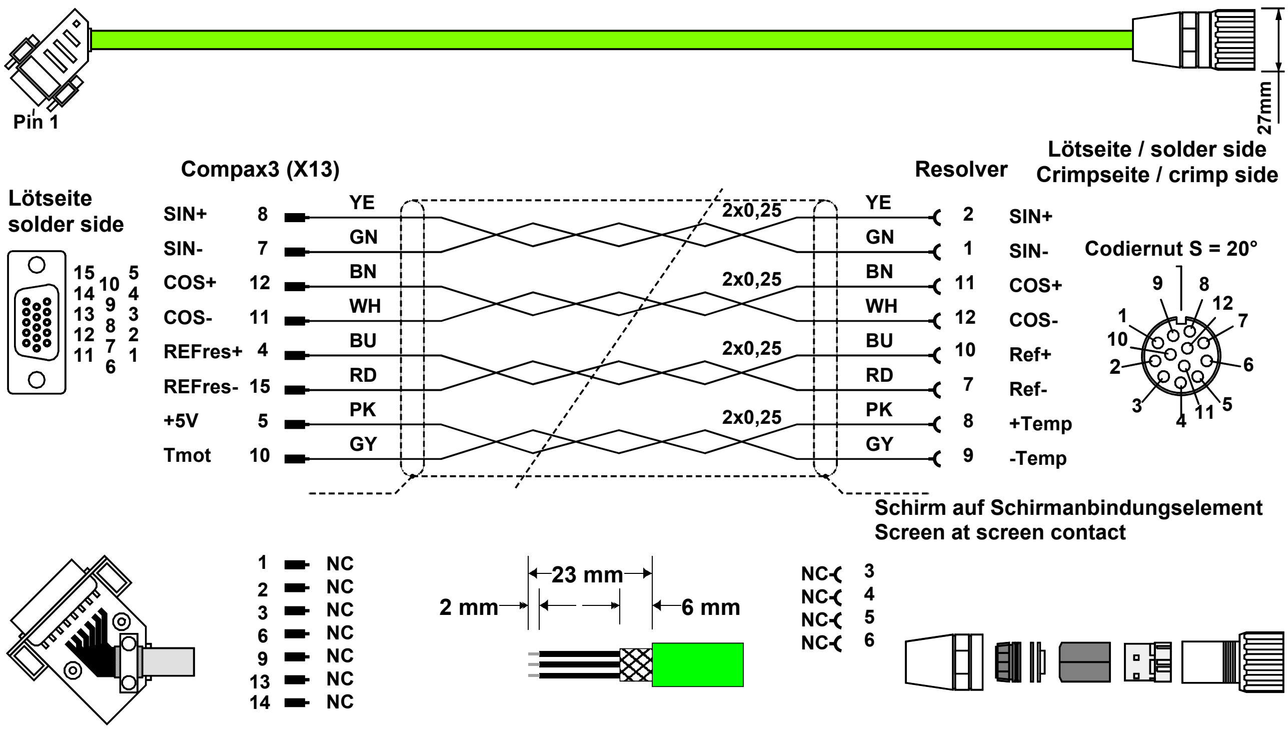
Order code for feedback cables

for Resolver [2]	for MH / SMH motors		REK	4	2	/	...	...[1]
for Resolver [2]	for MH / SMH motors	(cable chain compatible)	REK	4	1	/	...	...[1]
for SinCos© – Feedback devices [2]	for MH / SMH motors	(cable chain compatible)	GBK	2	4	/	..	...[1]
for EnDat 2.1 [2]	for MH / SMH motors	(cable chain compatible)	GBK	3	8	/	..	...[1]
Encoder – Compax3			GBK	2	3	/	...	...[1]
for LXR linear motors		(cable chain compatible)	GBK	3	3	/	...	...[1]
for BLMA linear motors		(cable chain compatible)	GBK	3	2	/	...	...[1]

[x] **Note on the cable** (see page 332)

10.3.1. Resolver cable

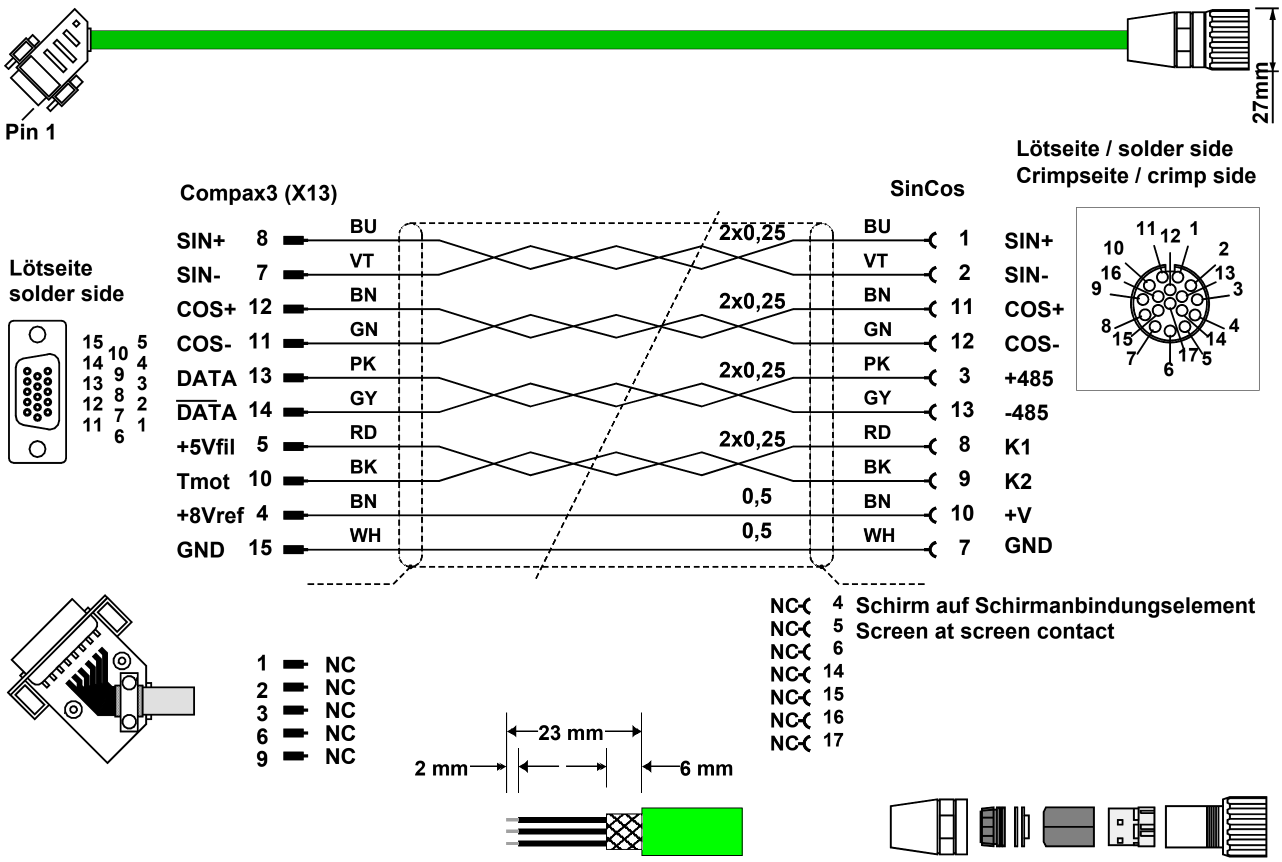
REK42/..



The same cable (with changed conductor coloring) is available under the designation REK41/.. in a version which is suitable for cable chain systems.
You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

10.3.2. SinCos© cable

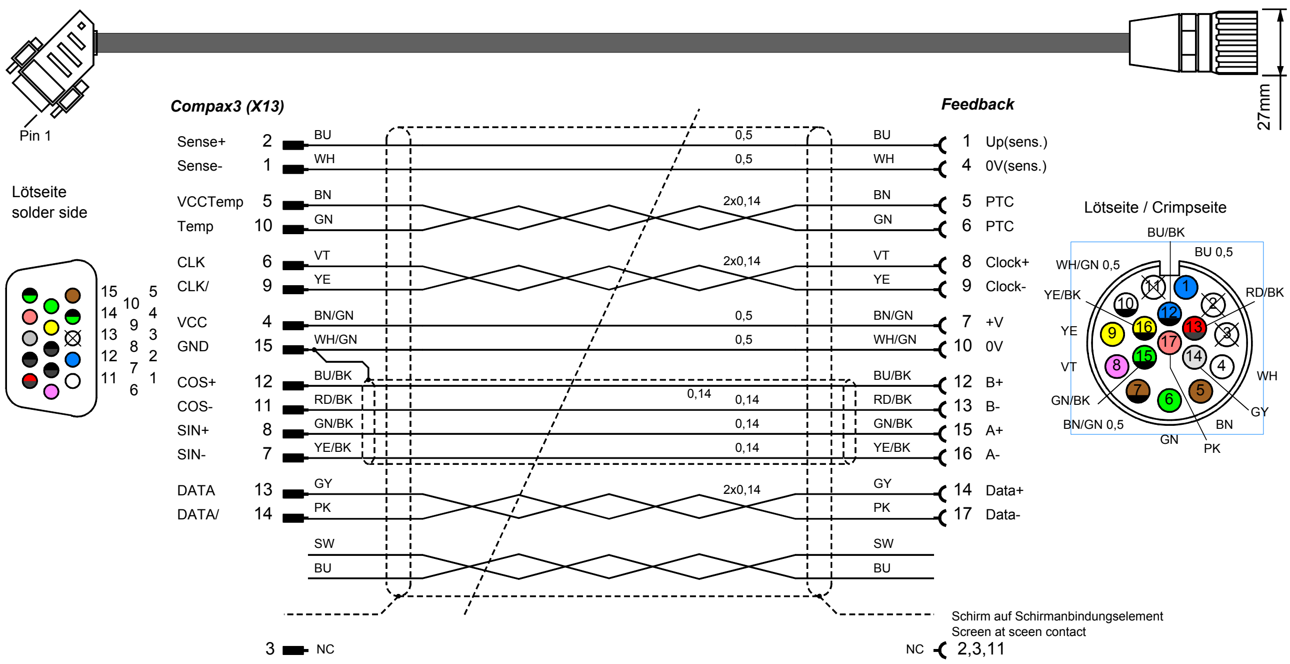
GBK24/..: Cable chain compatible



You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

10.3.3. EnDat cable

GBK38/..: (cable chain compatible)



You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

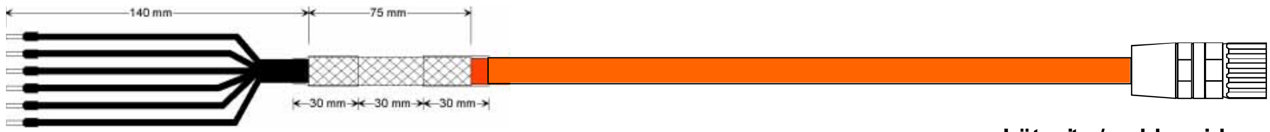
10.3.4. Overview of motor cables

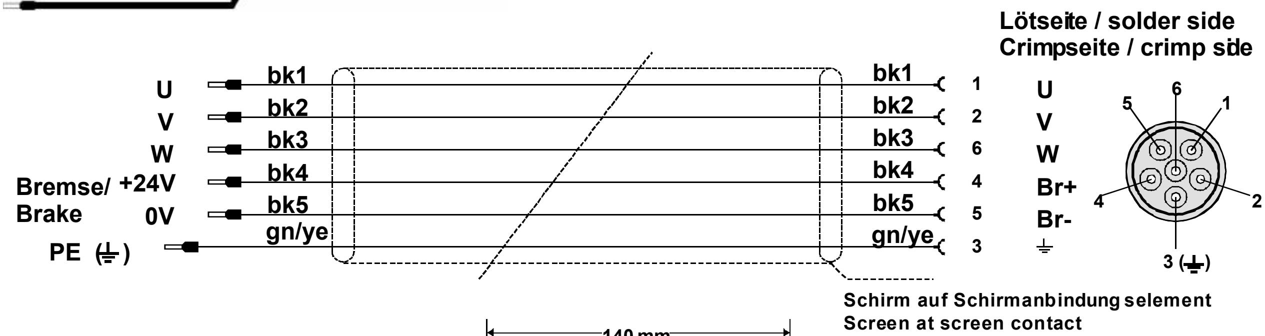
Cross-section / max. permanent load	Motor connector SMH motors MH56, MH70, MH105		Motor terminal box MH145, MH205	
	standard	cable chain compatible	standard	cable chain compatible
1.5mm² / up to 13.8A	MOK55	MOK54	MOK60	MOK63
2.5mm² / up to 18.9A	MOK56	MOK57	MOK59	MOK64
6mm² / up to 32.3A	-	-	-	MOK61
10mm² / up to 47.3A		--	-	MOK62

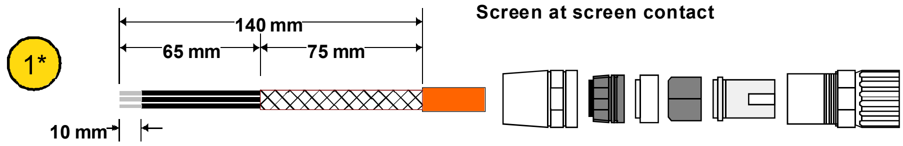
10.3.5. Motor cable with plug

MOK55/.. (max. 13.8A)

Cable: 6x1,5mm²







1*
- Strip cable on 140mm
- Cut off shield for about 65mm, loosen, fold back over external cover (for about 75mm) and fix with insulating tape.
- Fix 2x approx. 30mm shrinking hose (adhesive)
- Strip ends of lines for 10mm and fix terminal sleeves 1.5

MOK54/..: (max. 13.8A) cable chain compatible

Same structure (conductor coloring may be changed) as MOK55/.. available in cable chain compatible version.

MOK56/..: (max. 18.9A)

Same structure (conductor coloring/designations may be changed) as MOK55/.. but with 6x2.5mm² .

MOK57/..: (max. 18.9A) cable chain compatible

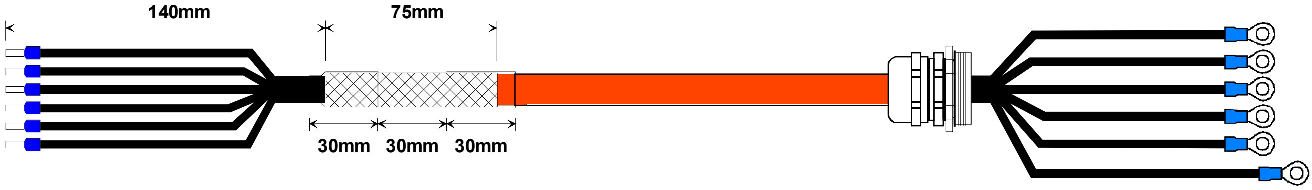
Same structure (conductor coloring / designation may be changed) as MOK55, but with 4x2.5 + 2x1mm² and cable chain compatible.

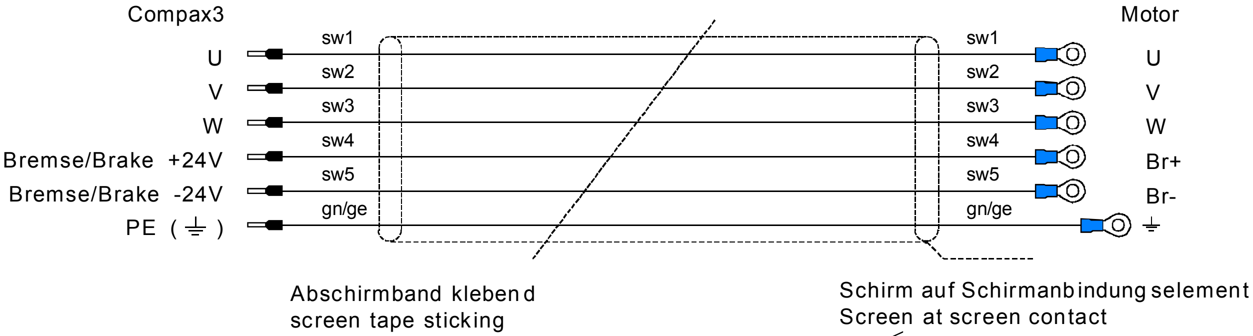
You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

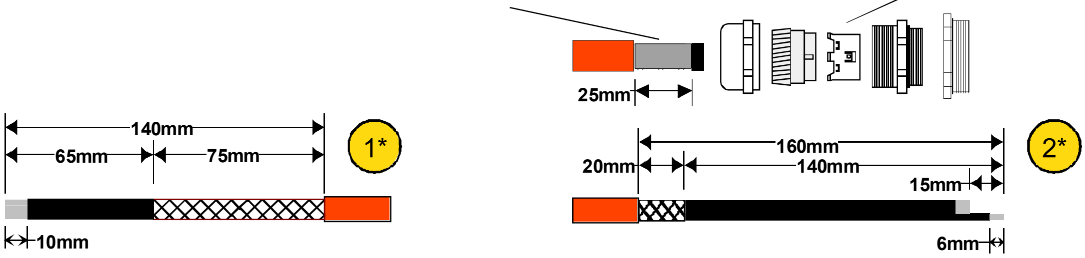
10.3.6. Motor cable for terminal box

Design on the example of MOK59/..: (max. 18.9A) standard

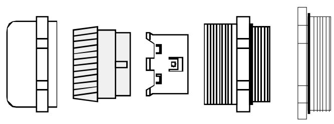
Cable: 6x2.5mm²



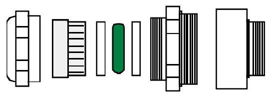




MOK59/.., MOK60/.., MOK63/.., MOK64/..



MOK62/.., MOK61/..



1*
- Strip cable on 140mm
- Cut off shield for about 65mm, loosen, fold back over external cover (for about 75mm) and fix with insulating tape.
- Fix 2x approx. 30mm shrinking hose (adhesive)
- Strip ends of lines for 10mm and fix terminal sleeves 2.5

2*
- Strip cable on 160mm
- Cut off shield for 140mm, fix rest on a length of 20mm with isolating tape (width 25mm, length 80mm)
- Cut off bck1, bck2, bck3, bck4, bck5 by approx. 15mm (gn/ye about 15mm longer)
- Strip end of lines for about 6mm and fix with cable eyes M6

Please note the two different shield connection elements!

Additional motor cables for the terminal box with similar layout:

MOK62/.. (max. 47.3A) cable chain compatible with 4x10mm² + 2x1mm²

MOK61/..: (max. 32.3A) cable chain compatible with 4x6mm² + 2x1mm²

MOK60/.. (max. 13.8A) standard with 6x1,5mm²

MOK63/.. (max. 13.8A) cable chain compatible with 6x1.5mm²

MOK64/.. (max. 18.9A) cable chain compatible with 6x2.5mm²

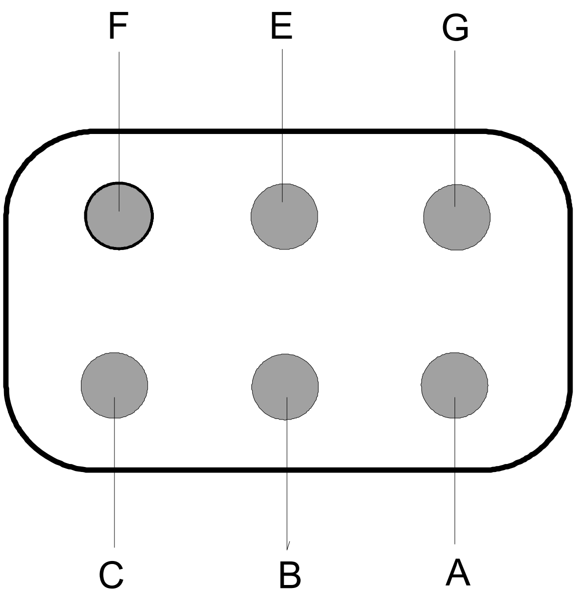
Designation of the conductors

The designations of the conductors varies according to the cable type:

U	U1	sw1	black
V	V2	sw2	Brown
W	W3	sw3	blue
BR+	BR1	sw4	red
BR-	BR2	sw5	green

You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

10.3.6.1 Connection of terminal box MH145 & MH205

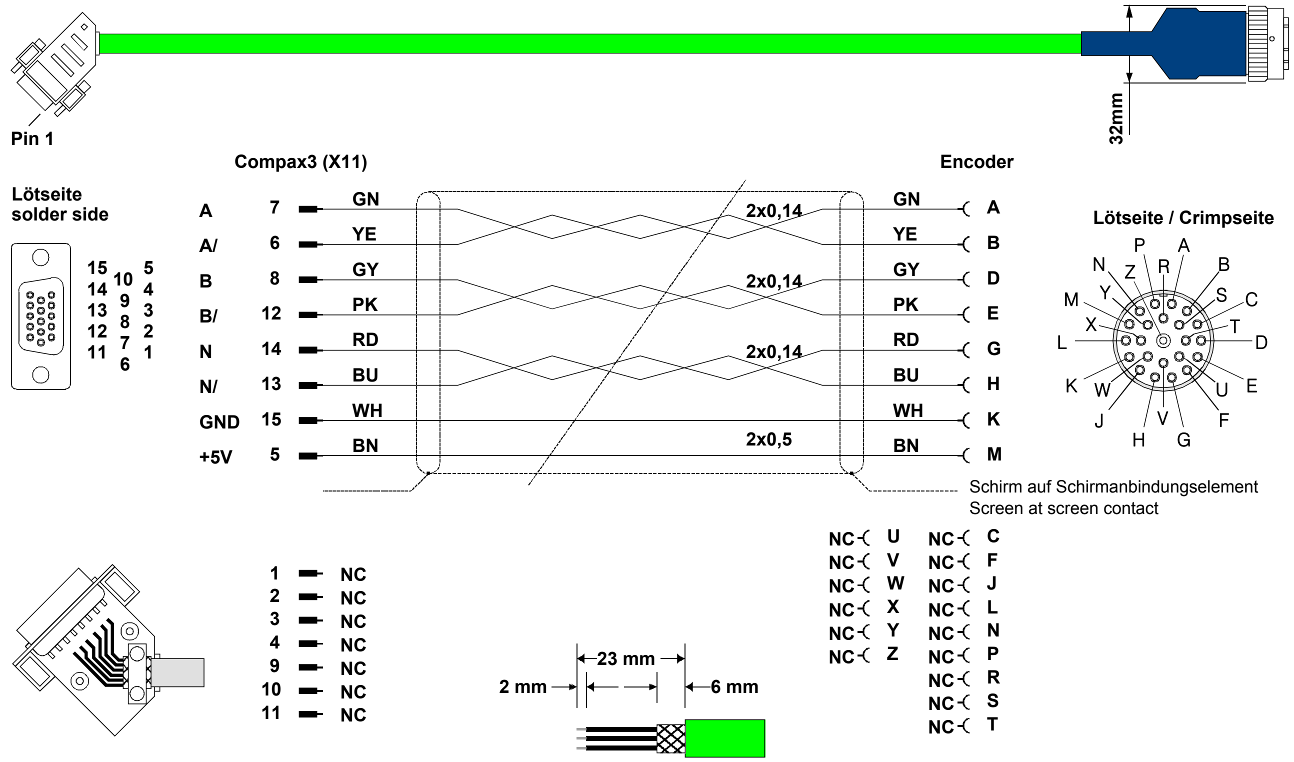


Terminal	Assignment
A	Phase U
B	Phase V
C	Phase W
E	PE
F	Brake (+ red for MH205)
G	Brake (- blue for MH205)

Additional designations can be found on the connection cable clamping board - motor (interal).

10.3.7. Encoder cable

GBK23/..: Connection Encoder - Compax3



You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

10.4 External braking resistors

In this chapter you can read about:

Danger!

Hazards when handling braking resistors!

Housing temperature up to 200°C!
Dangerous voltage!
The device may be operated only in the mounted state!
The external braking resistors must be installed such that contact with the human body is prevented.
Install the connecting leads at the bottom.
Observe the instructions on the resistors (warning plate).

Please note that the length of the supply cable must not exceed 2m!

Ballast resistors for Compax3

Braking Resistor **(see page 350)**	**Device**	**Rated Power**
BRM08/01 (100Ω)	Compax3S025V2 Compax3S015V4 Compax3S038V4	60W
BRM05/01 (56Ω)	Compax3S063V2 Compax3S075V4	180W
BRM05/02 (56Ω)	Compax3S075V4	570W
BRM10/01 (47Ω)	Compax3S150V4	570W
BRM04/01 (15Ω)	Compax3S150V2 Compax3S300V4 Compax3MP20D6	570W
BRM04/02 (15Ω)	Compax3S150V2 Compax3S300V4 Compax3MP20D6	740W
BRM04/03 (15Ω)	Compax3S300V4 Compax3MP20D6	1500W
BRM09/01 (22Ω)	Compax3S100V2	570W
BRM11/01 (27Ω)	Compax3H0xxV4	3500W
BRM13/01 (30Ω)	Compax3MP10D6 Compax3MP20D6**	500 W
BRM14/01 (15Ω)	Compax3MP10D6* Compax3MP20D6	500 W
BRM12/01 (18Ω)	Compax3H1xxV4	4500W

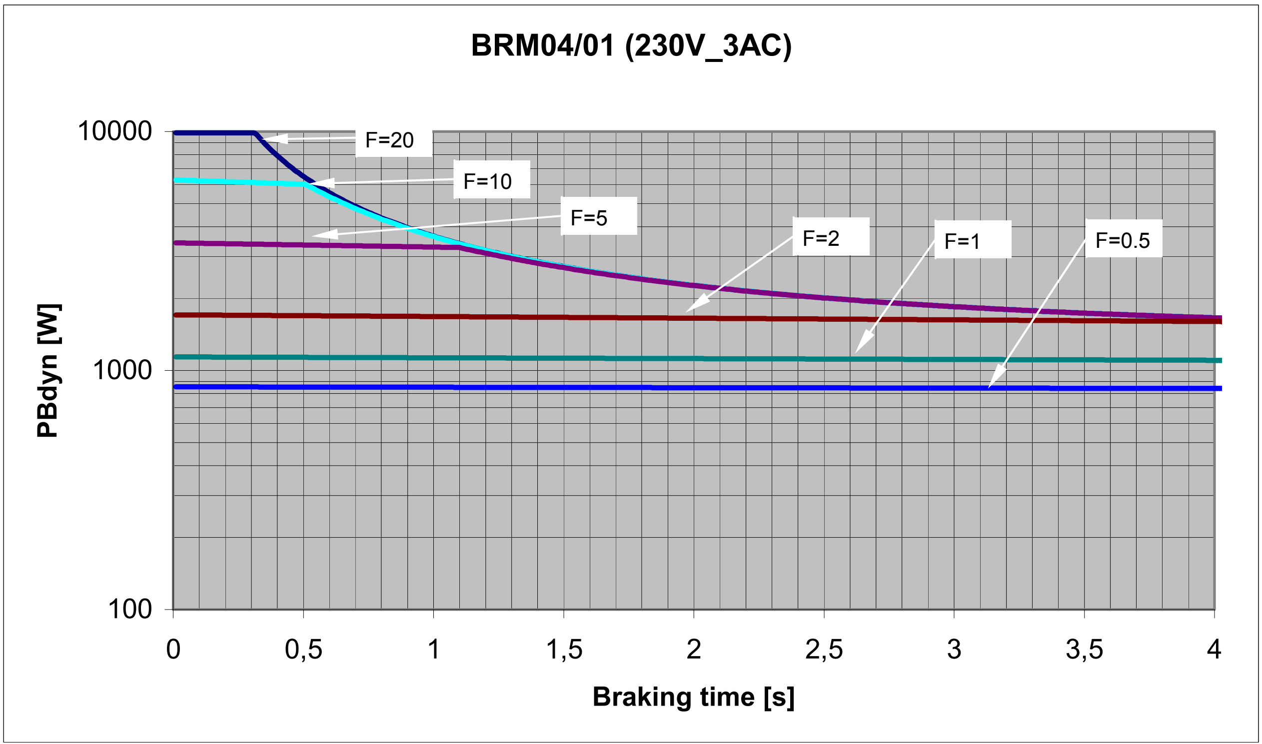
*for Compax3MP10D6 2x15Ω in series
**for Compax3MP20D6 2x30Ω parallel

10.4.1. Permissible braking pulse powers of the braking resistors

In this chapter you can read about:

The diagrams show the permissible braking pulse powers of the braking resistors in operation with the assigned Compax3.

10.4.1.1 Calculation of the BRM cooling time



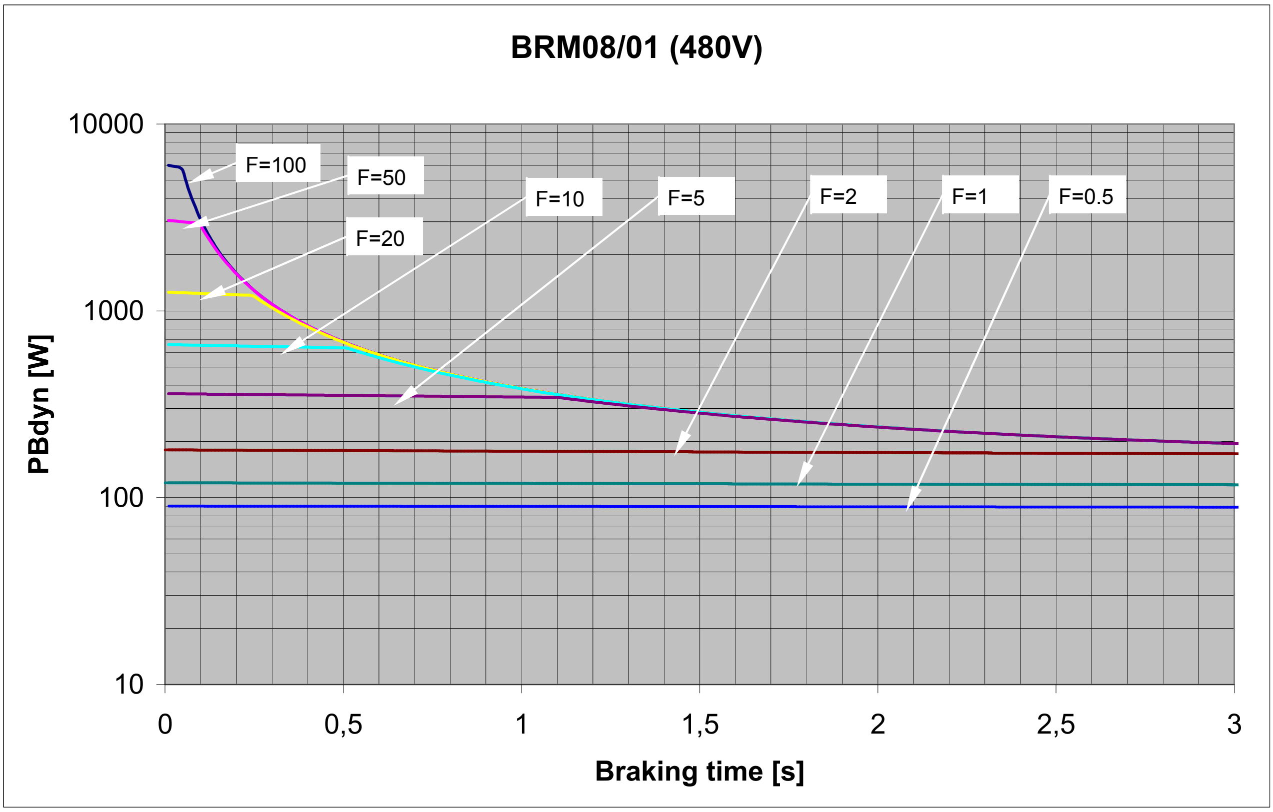
F = Factor
Cooling time = F * braking time
Example 1: For a braking time of 1s, a braking power of 1kW is required. The Diagram shows the following:
The required values can be found in the range between characteristic F = 0.5 and F = 1. In order to achieve operating safety, please select the higher factor, this means that the required cooling time is 1s.

F	*	Braking time	= cooling time
1	*	1s	= 1s

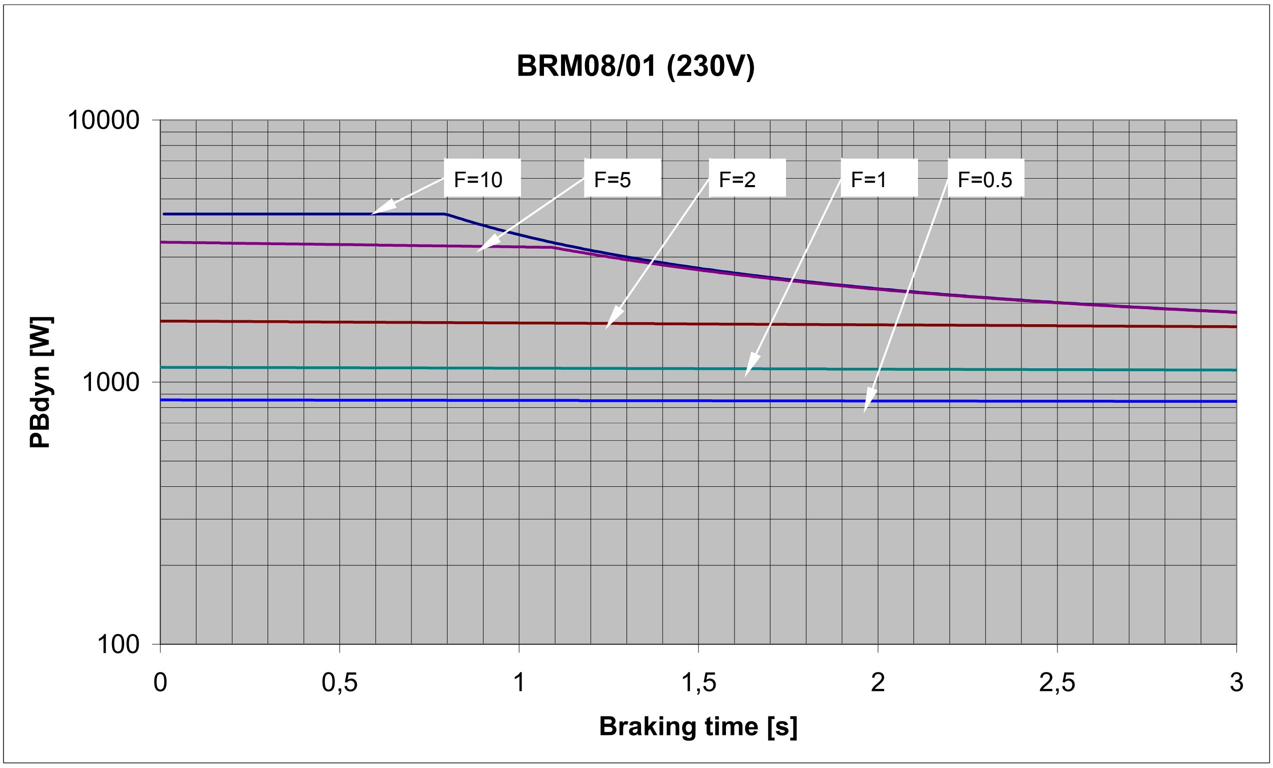
Example 2: For a braking time of 0.5s, a braking power of 3kW is required. The Diagram shows the following:
The required values can be found in the range between characteristic F = 2 and F = 5. In order to achieve operating safety, please select the higher factor, this means that the required cooling time is 2.5s.

F	*	Braking time	= cooling time
5	*	0.5s	= 2.5s

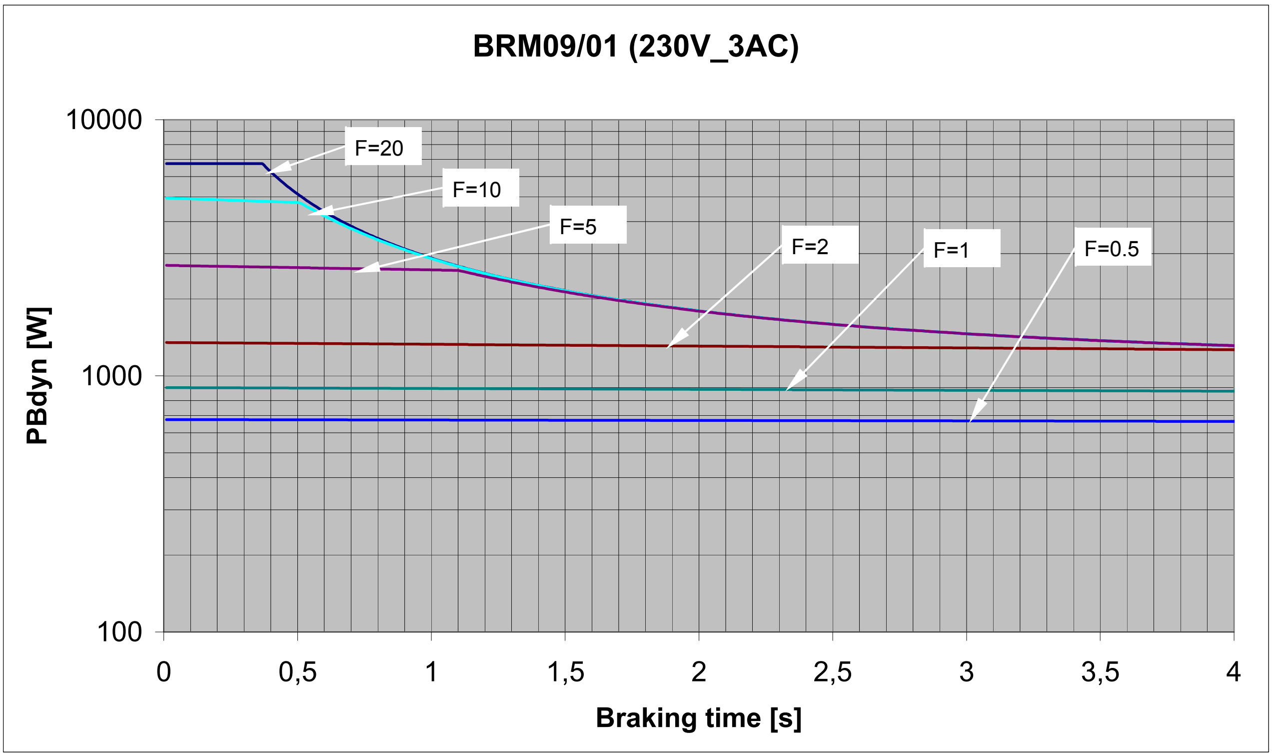
10.4.1.2 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM08/01 with C3S015V4 / C3S038V4



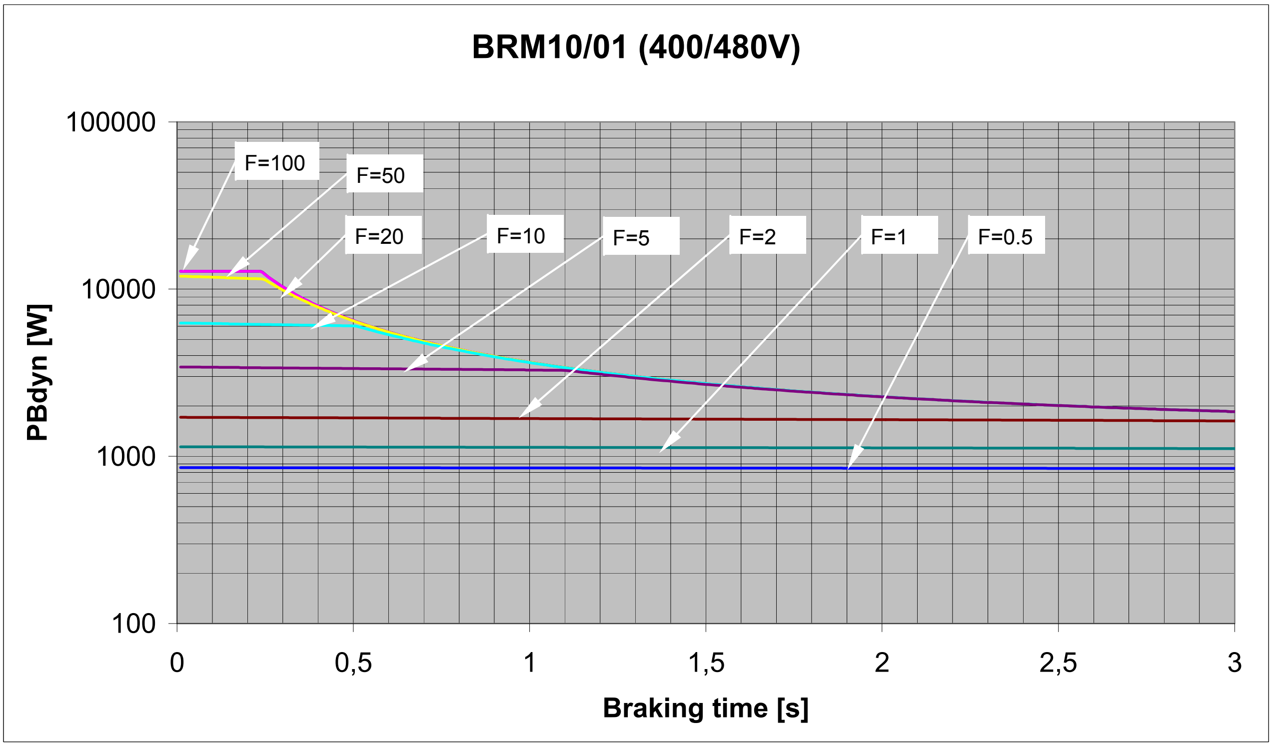
10.4.1.3 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM08/01 with C3S025V2



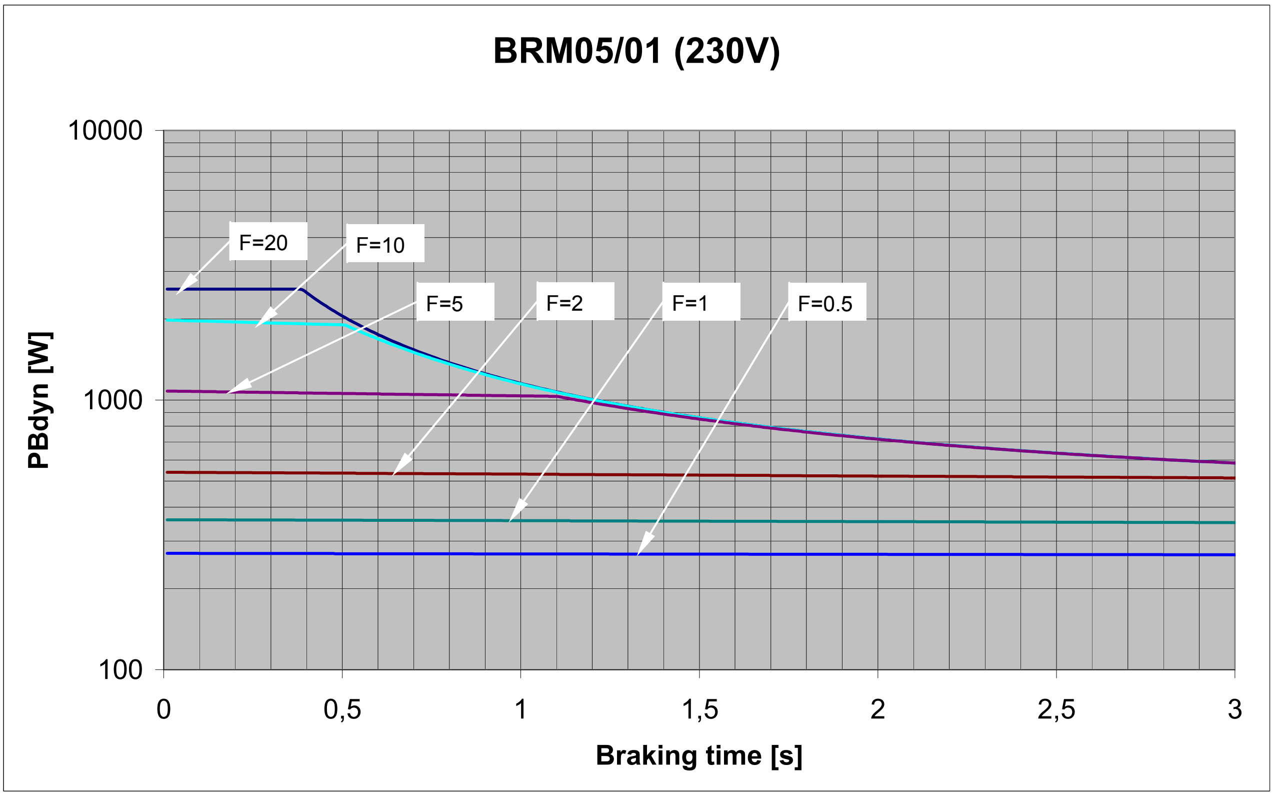
10.4.1.4 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM09/01 with C3S100V2



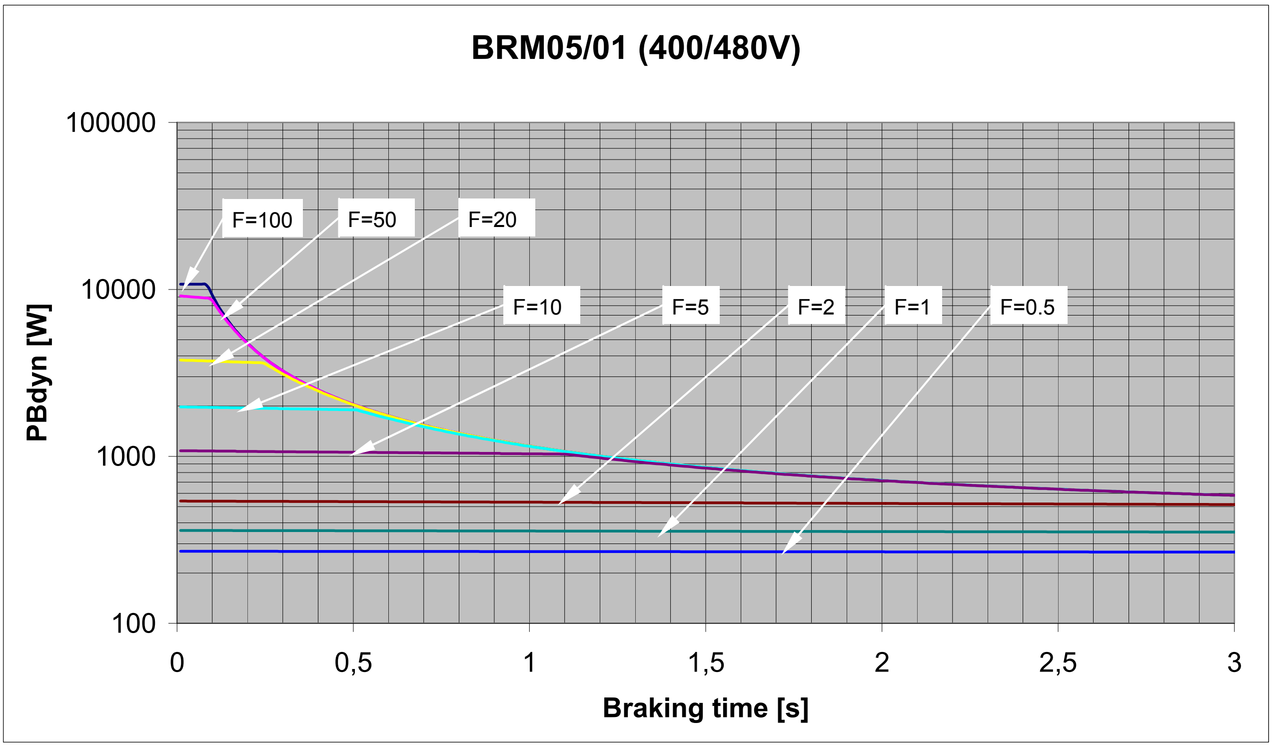
10.4.1.5 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM10/01 with C3S150V4



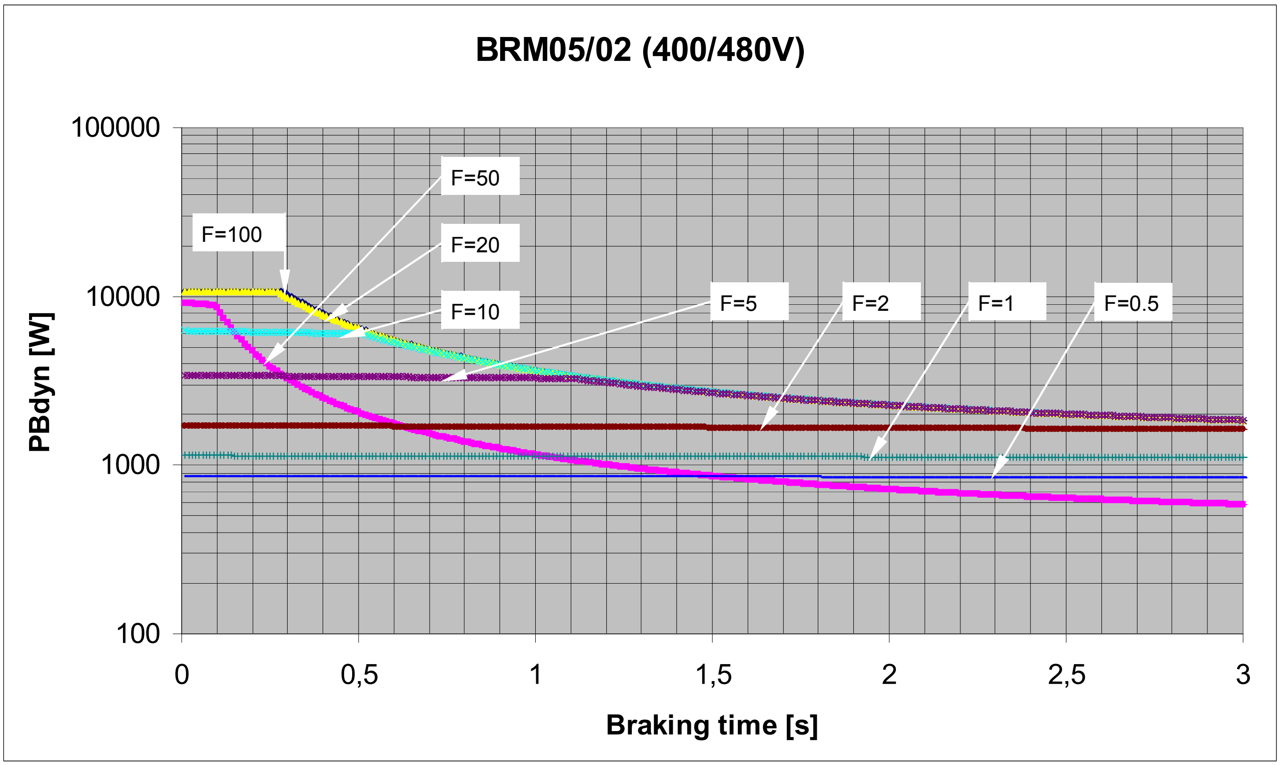
10.4.1.6 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM05/01 with C3S063V2



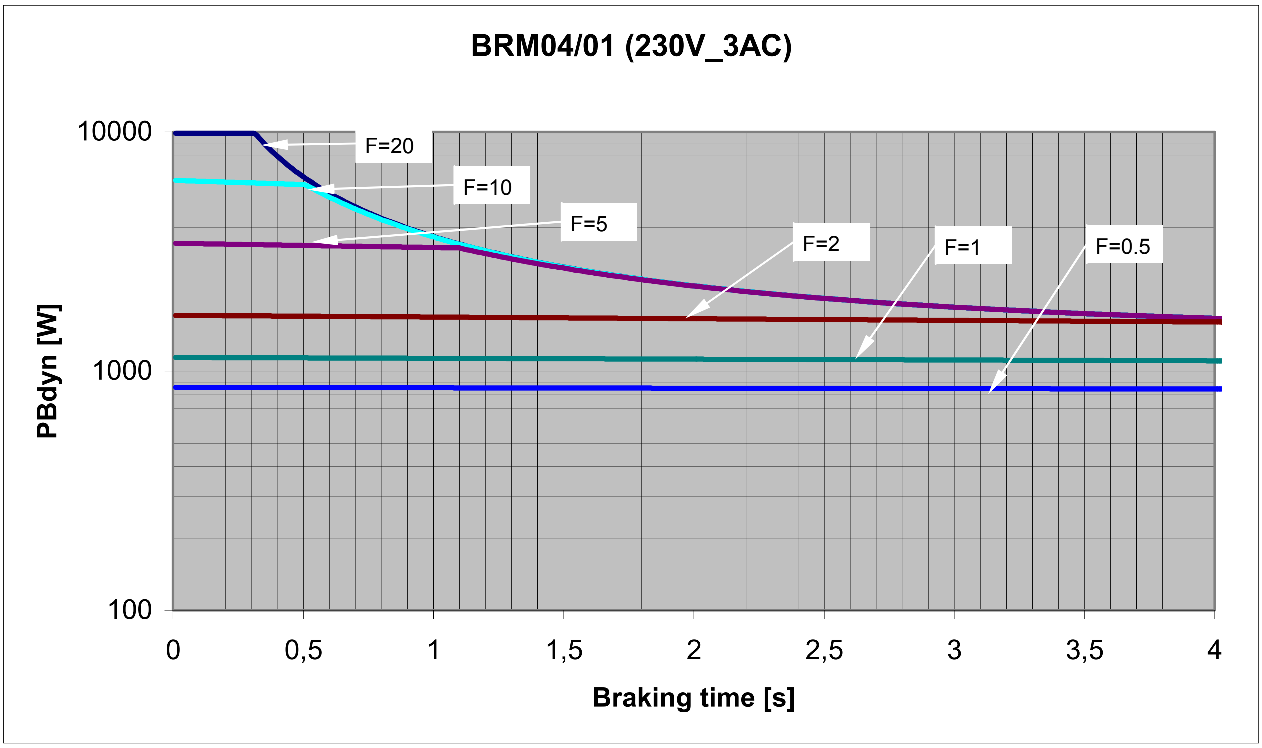
10.4.1.7 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM05/01 with C3S075V4



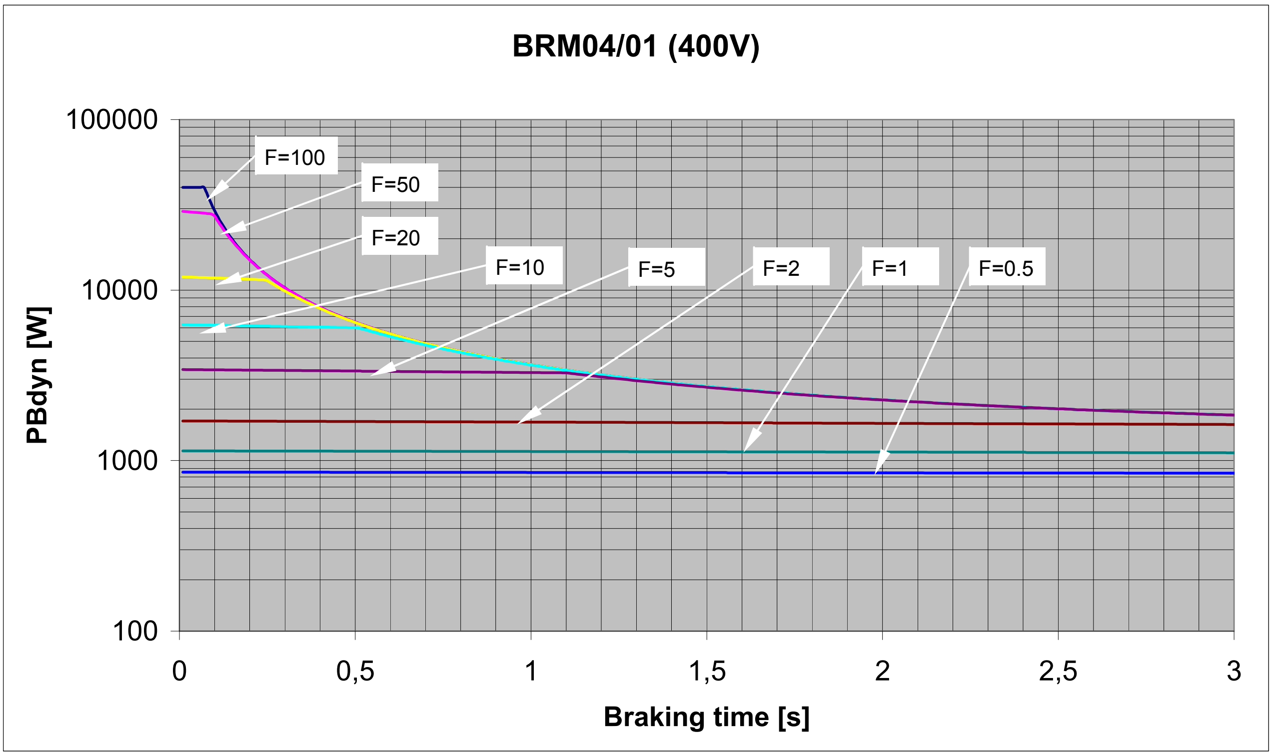
10.4.1.8 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM05/02 with C3S075V4



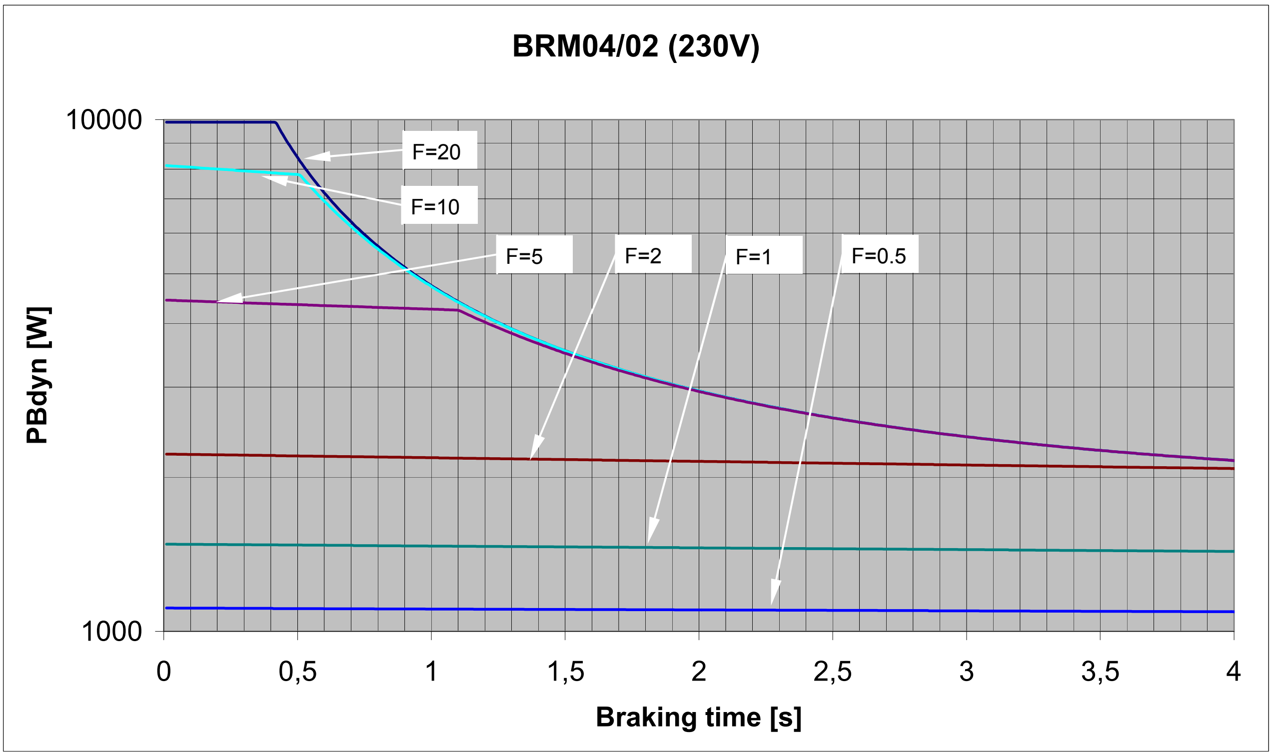
10.4.1.9 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM04/01 with C3S150V2



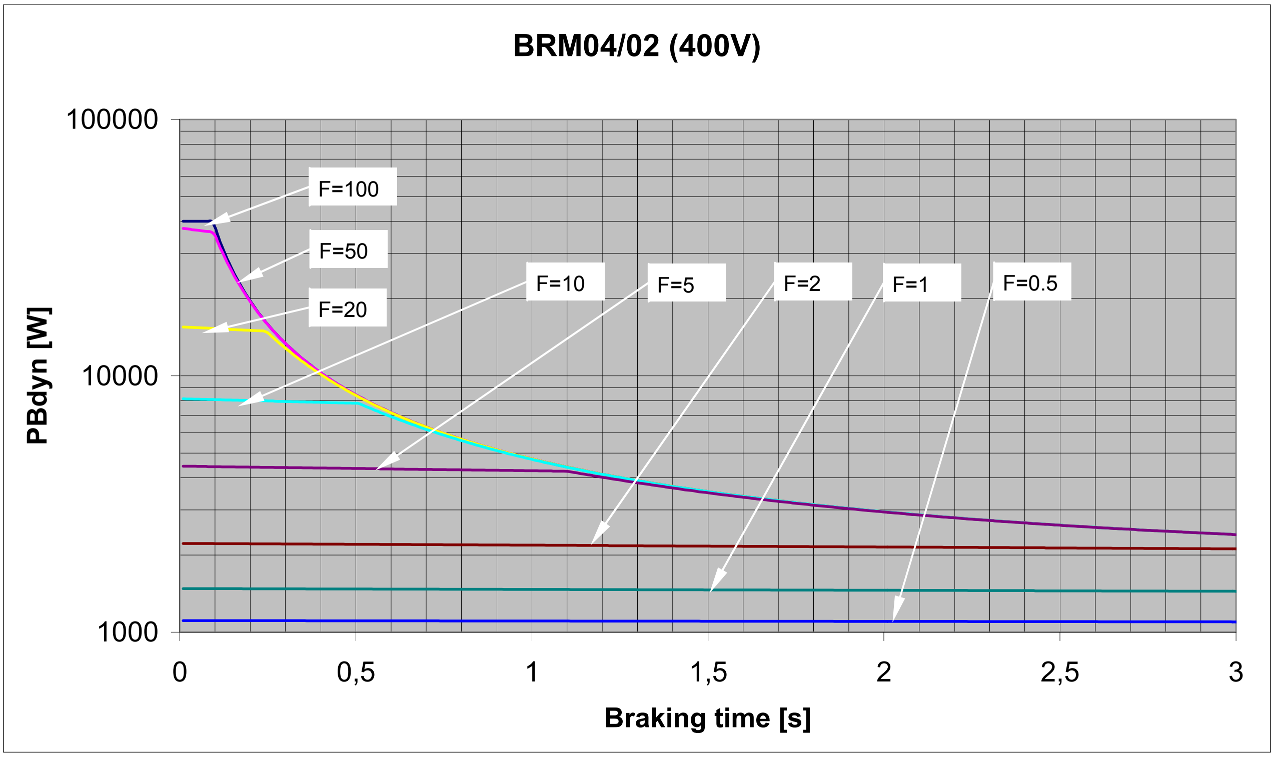
10.4.1.10 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM04/01 with C3S300V4



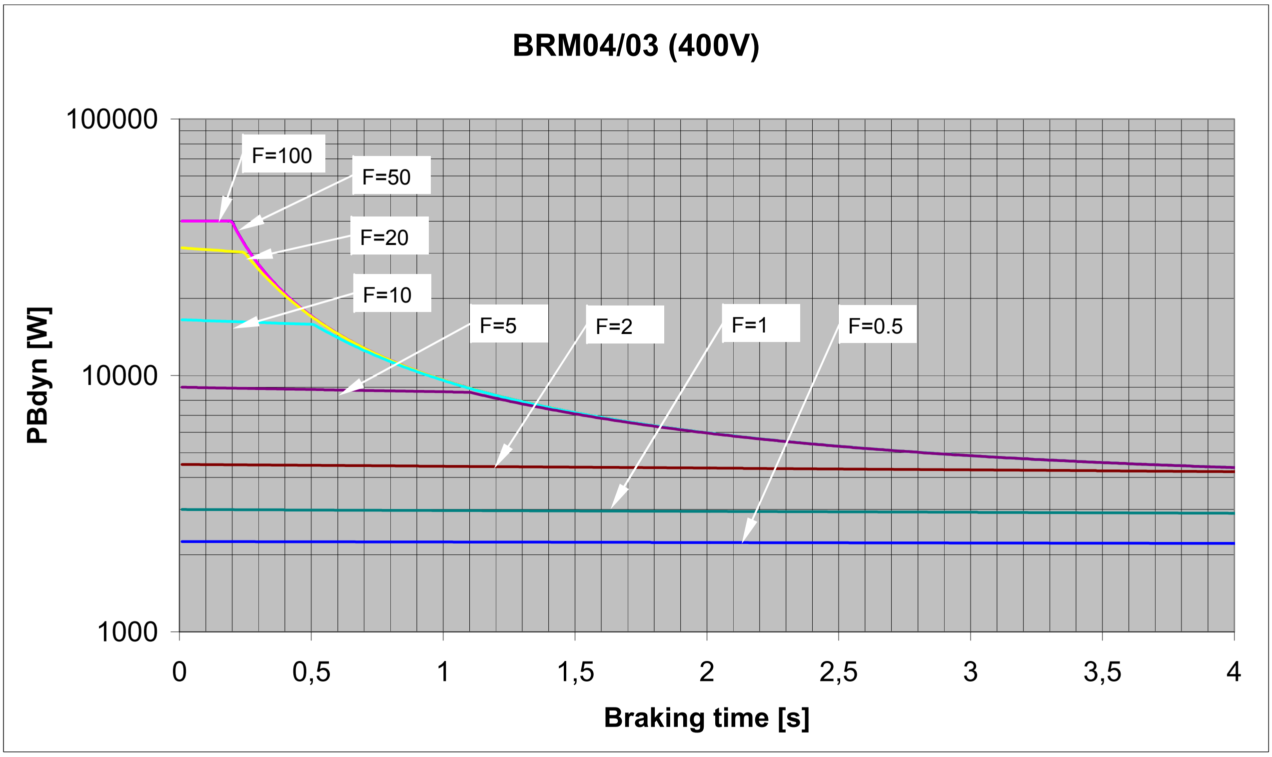
10.4.1.11 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM04/02 with C3S150V2



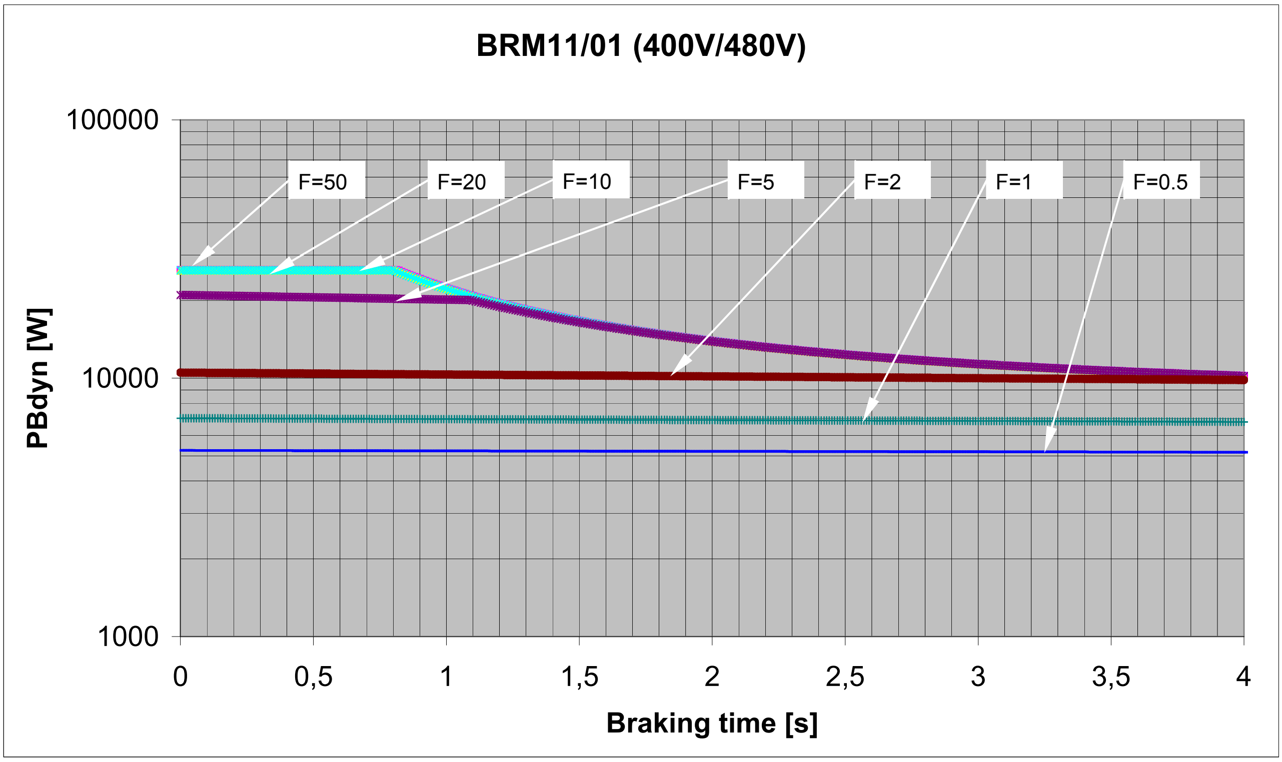
10.4.1.12 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM04/02 with C3S300V4



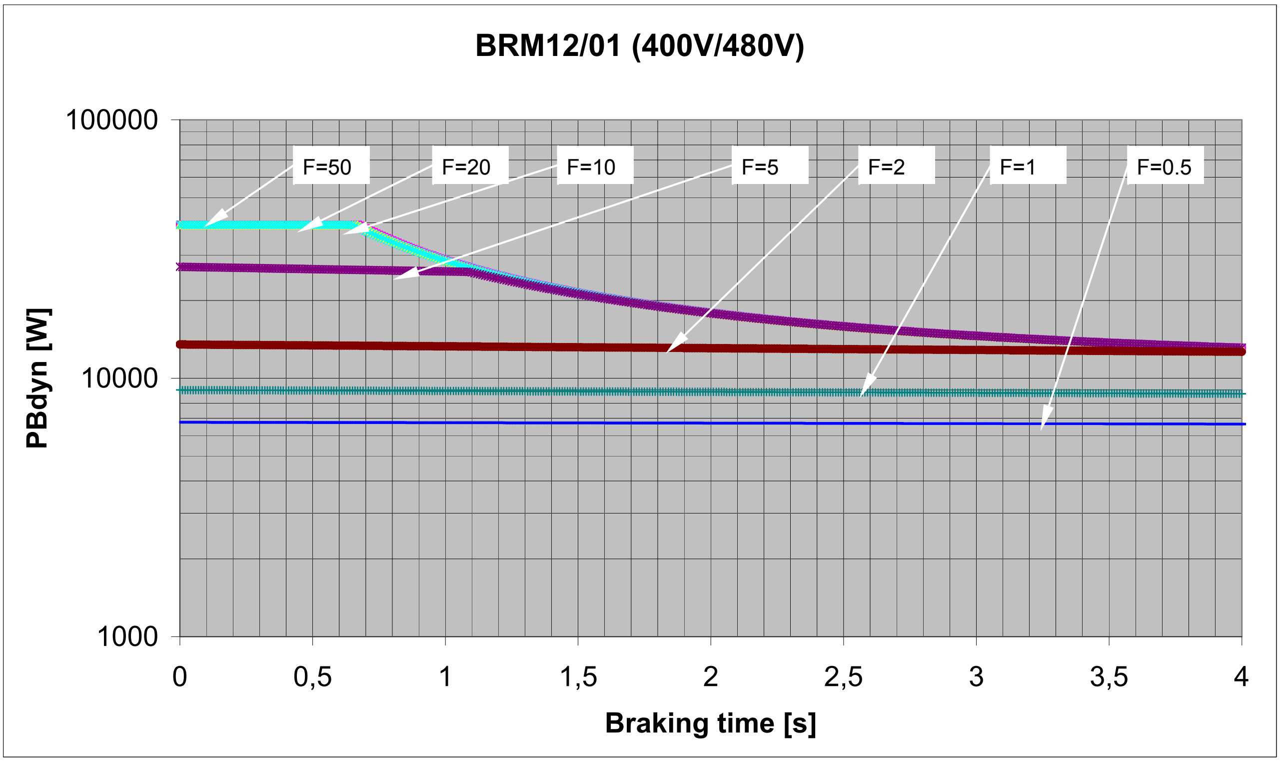
10.4.1.13 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM04/03 with C3S300V4



10.4.1.14 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM11/01 with C3H0xxV4



10.4.1.15 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM12/01 with C3H1xxV4



10.4.1.16 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM13/01 with C3MP10D6

On request

10.4.1.17 Permissible braking pulse power: BRM14/01 with C3MP10D6

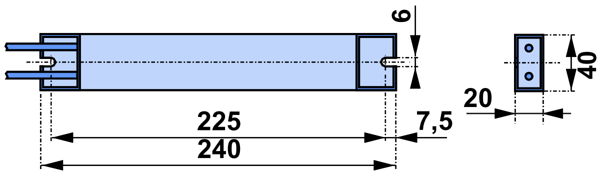
On request

10.4.2. Dimensions of the braking resistors

In this chapter you can read about:

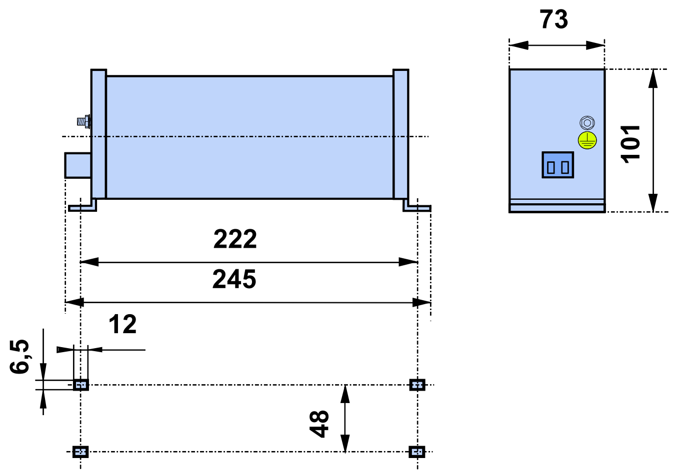
10.4.2.1 BRM8/01braking resistors

Dimensional drawing:



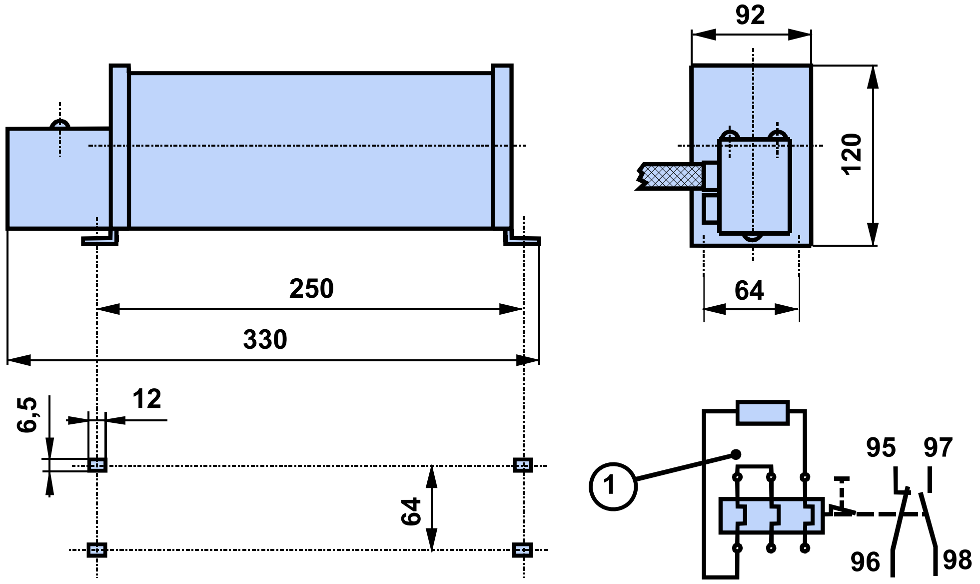
10.4.2.2 BRM5/01 braking resistor

Dimensional drawing:



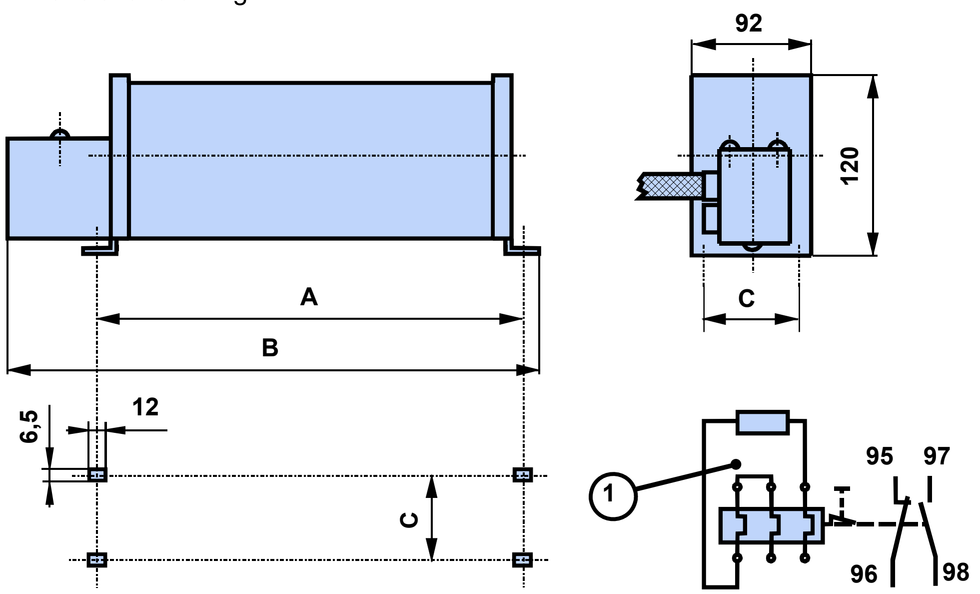
10.4.2.3 Braking resistor BRM5/02, BRM9/01 & BRM10/01

Dimensional drawing:



10.4.2.4 Braking resistor BRM4/0x

Dimensional drawing:



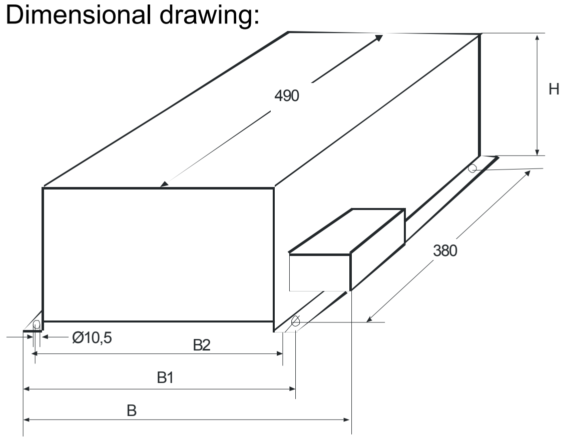
1: thermal current overload cut-off

Dimensions in mm:

Size:	BRM4/01	BRM4/02	BRM4/03
A	250	300	540
B	330	380	620
C	64	64	64

10.4.2.5 Braking resistor BRM11/01 & BRM12/01

Dimensional drawing:

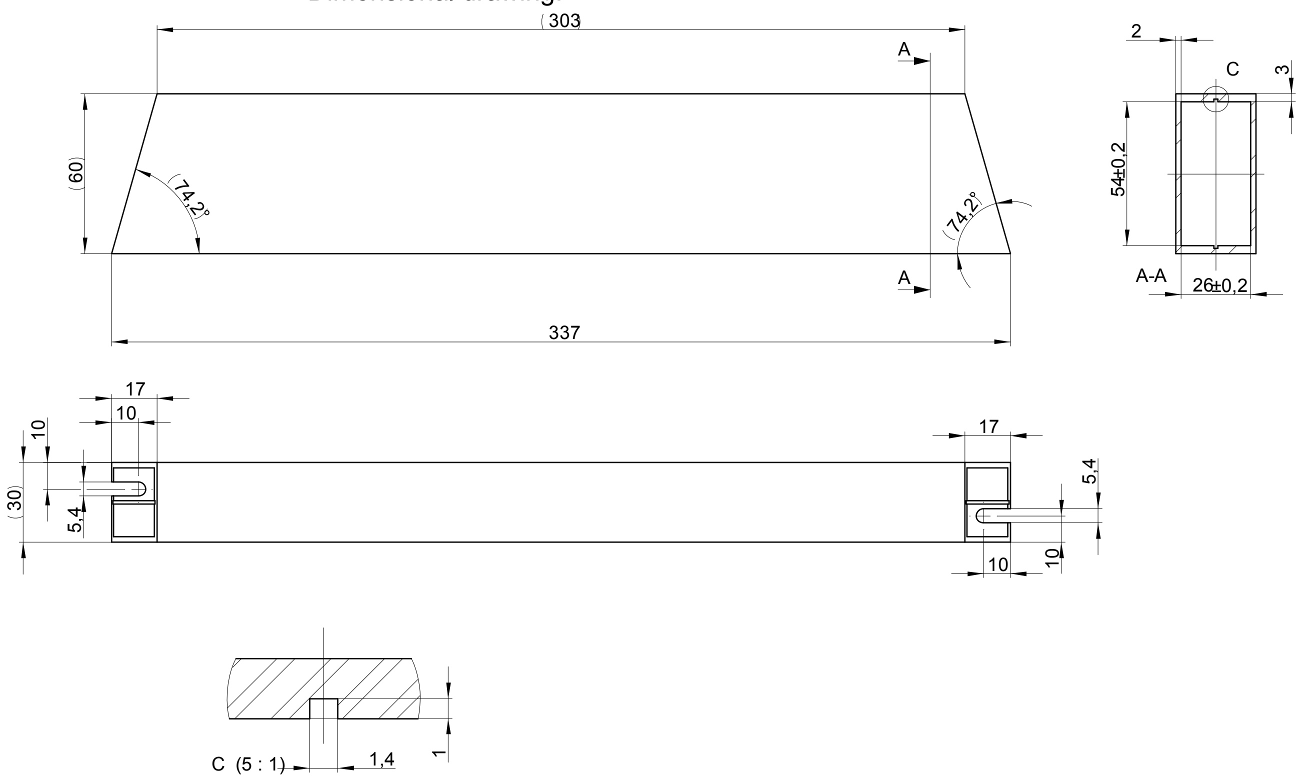


Dimensions in mm:

	BRM11/01	BRM12/02
B	330	
B1	295	
B2	270	
H	260	
Weight	6,0	7,0

10.4.2.6 Braking resistor BRM13/01 & BRM14/01

Dimensional drawing:



Stated in mm

10.5 Connection set for Compax3S

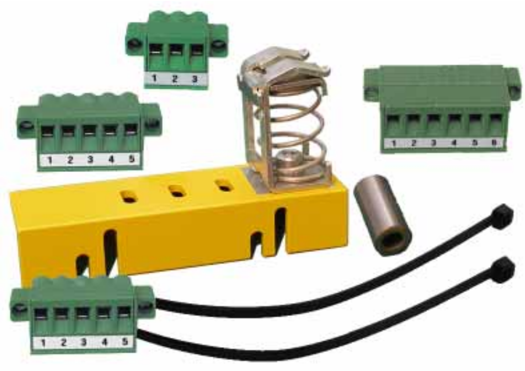
The connection set which is available as accessory comprises:

- a shield terminal with large contact area for the motor cable shield, and
- the mating plug connectors for the Compax3 plug connectors X1, X2, X3, and X4
- a toroidal core ferrite for a cable of the motor holding brake
- Lacing cord

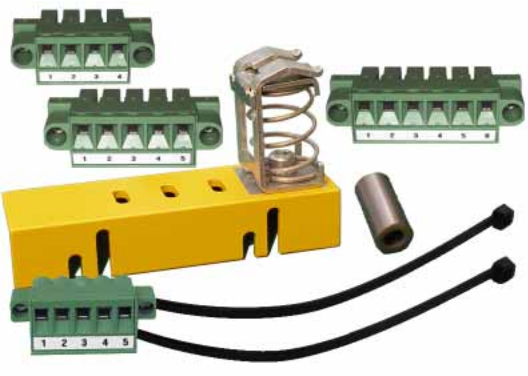
Order Code connection set for Compax3S

					/		
for C3S0xxV2	ZBH 02/01	ZBH	0	2	/	0	1
for C3S0xxV4 / S150V4 / S1xxV2	ZBH 02/02	ZBH	0	2	/	0	2
for C3S300V4	ZBH 02/03	ZBH	0	2	/	0	3

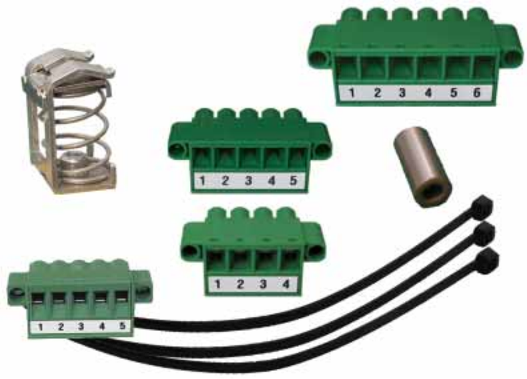
ZBH02/01: for Compax3 S0xx 1AC V2



ZBH02/02: for Compax3 S0xx 3AC V4, Compax3 S150 3AC V4 and Compax3 S1xx 3AC V2



ZBH02/03: for Compax3 S300 3AC V4



10.6 Connection set for Compax3MP/Compax3M

The connection set which is available as accessory comprises:

for Compx3M

- Cable clamps in different sizes for large area shielding of the motor cable, the screw for the cable clamp as well as
- the matching plug for the Compax3M connectors X14, X15, X43
- a toroidal core ferrite for a cable of the motor holding brake
- an interface cable (SSK28/23) for communication within the axis combination

for Compx3MP

- the matching plug for the Compax3MP connectors X9, X40, X41
- 2 bus terminal connectors (BUS07/01) for mains module and the last axis controller in the combination
-

Order Code connection set for Compax3MP/Compax3M

					/		
for C3M050D6, C3M100D6, C3M150D6	ZBH 04/01	ZBH	0	4	/	0	1
for C3M300D6	ZBH 04/02	ZBH	0	4	/	0	2
for C3MP10	ZBH 04/03	ZBH	0	4	/	0	3
C3MP20	ZBH 04/03	ZBH	0	4	/	0	4

ZBH04/01: for Compax3M050-150D6

ZBH04/02: for Compax3M300D6

ZBH04/03: for Compx3MP10D6

ZBH04/04: for Compax3MP20D6

10.7 Operator control module BDM

Order Code operating module

Operating module (for Compax3S and Compax3F)	BDM	0	1	/	0	1

Flexible service and maintenance

Functions:

- Mobile or stationary handling: can remain on the unit for display and diagnostic purposes, or can be plugged into any unit.
- Can be plugged in while in operation
- Power supply via Compax3 servo control
- Display with 2 times 16 places.
- Menu-driven operation using 4 keys.
- Displays and changing of values.
- Display of Compax3 messages.
- Duplication of device properties and IEC61131-3 program to another Compax3 with identical hardware.
- Additional information can be found int he BDM manual This can be found on the Compax3 CD or on our Homepage: **BDM-manual** (http://apps.parker.com/divapps/EME/EME/Literature_List/dokumentationen/BDM .pdf).

10.8 EAM06: Terminal block for inputs and outputs

Order Code terminal block

for I/Os without luminous indicator	for X11, X12, X22	EAM	0	6	/	0	1
for I/Os with luminous indicator	for X12, X22	EAM	0	6	/	0	2

The terminal block EAM06/.. can be used to route the Compax3 plug connector X11 or X12 for further wiring to a terminal strip and to a Sub-D plug connector.

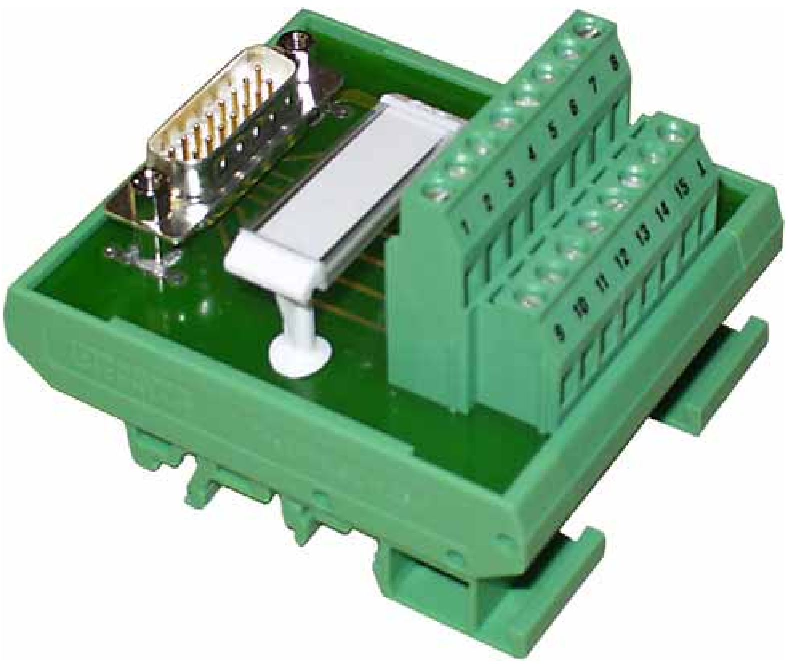
Via a supporting rail (Design: or) the terminal block can be installed on a mounting rail in the control cabinet.
EAM06/ is available in 2 variants:

- EAM06/01: Terminal block for X11, X12, X22 without luminous indicator
- EAM06/02: Terminal block for X12, X22 with luminous indicator

Corresponding connecting cables EAM06 - Compax3 are available:

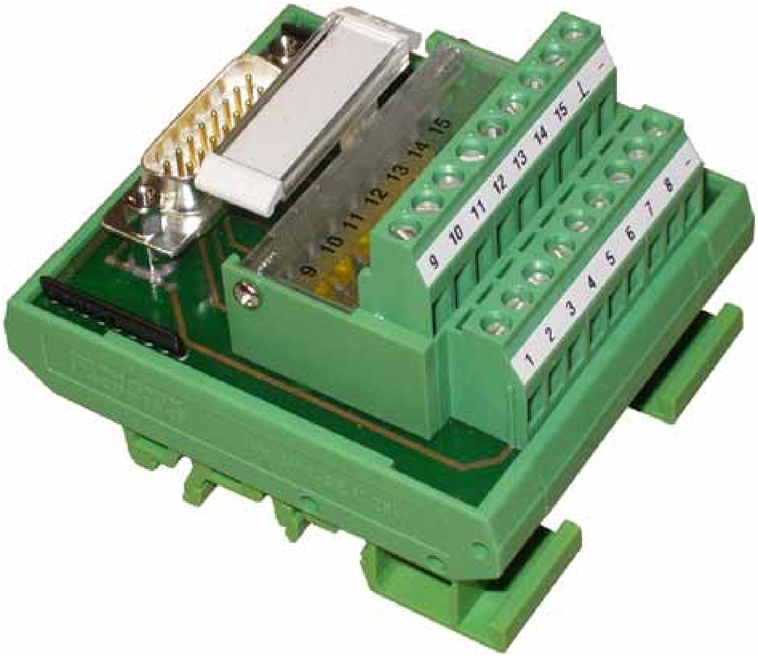
- from X11 - EAM06/01: SSK23/..
- from X12, X22 - EAM06/xx: SSK24/..

EAM6/01: Terminal block without luminous indicator for X11, X12 or X22



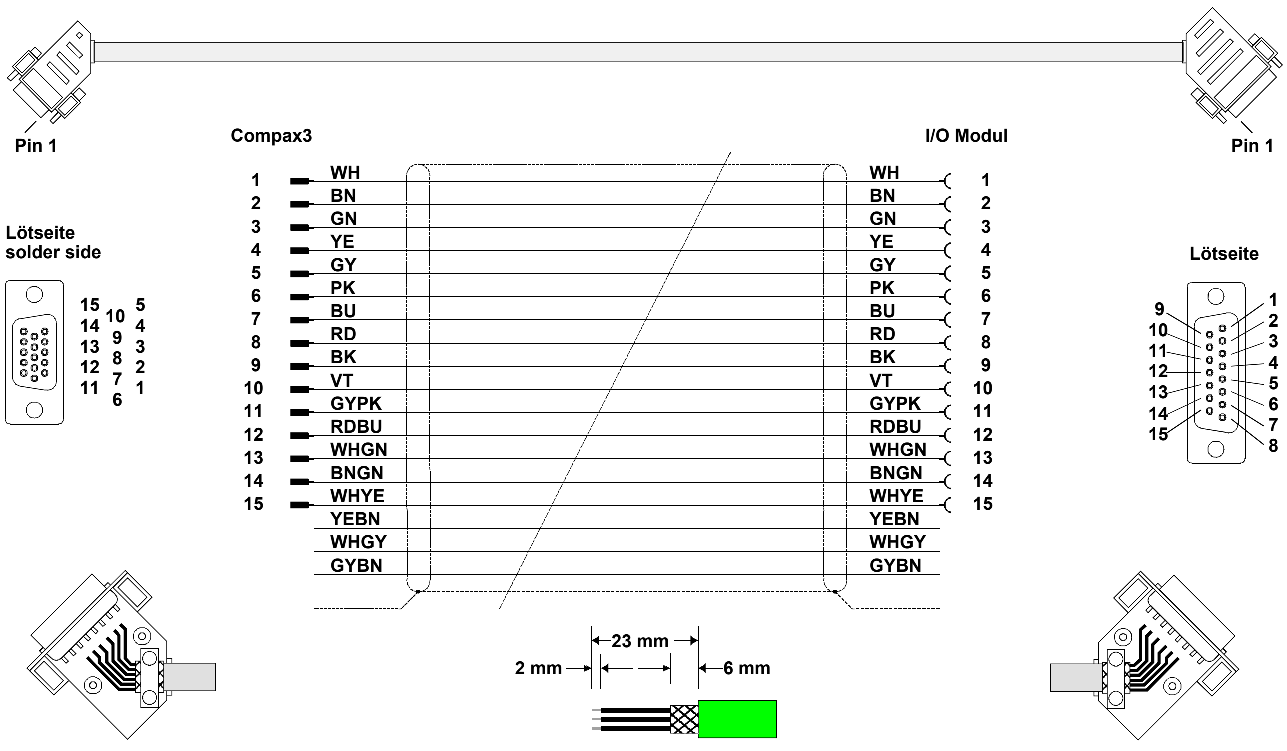
Width: 67.5mm

EAM6/02: Terminal block with luminous indicator for X12, X22

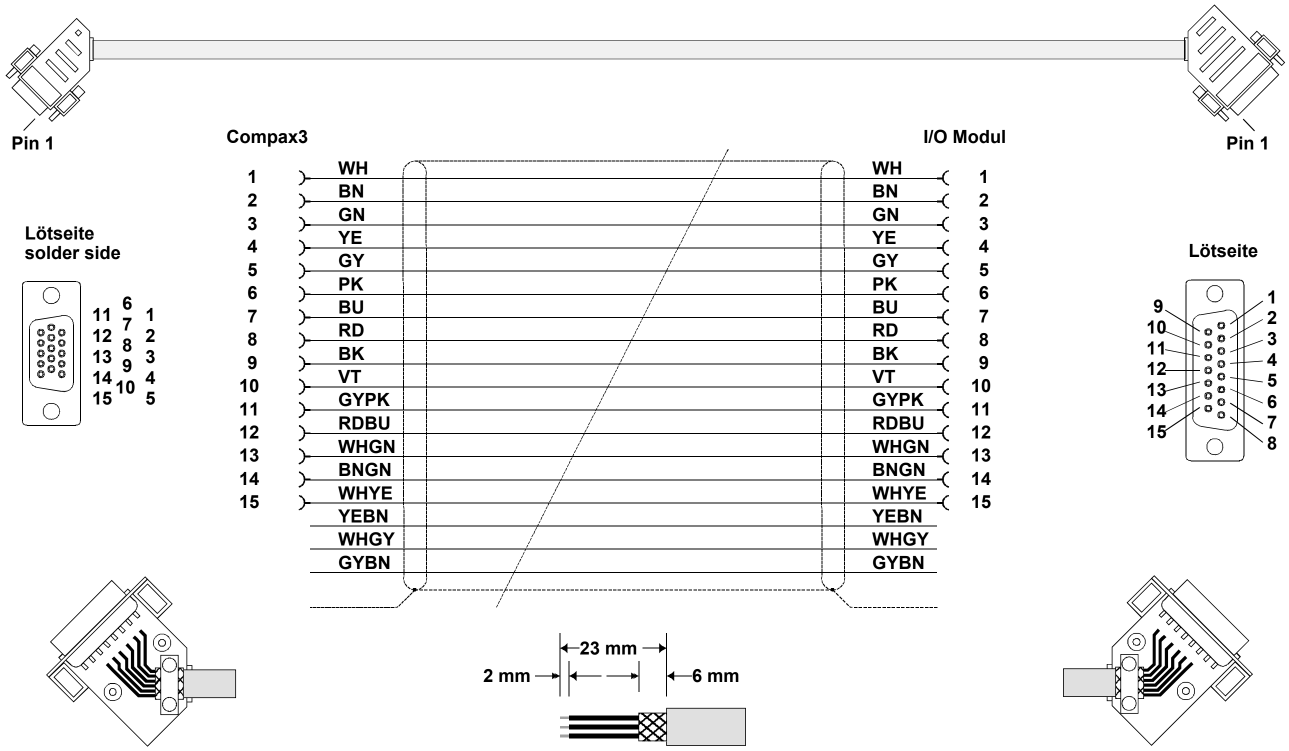


Width: 67.5mm

Cable plan SSK23/..: X11 to EAM 06/01



Cable plan SSK24/..: X12 to EAM 06/xx



10.9 Interface Cables

In this chapter you can read about:

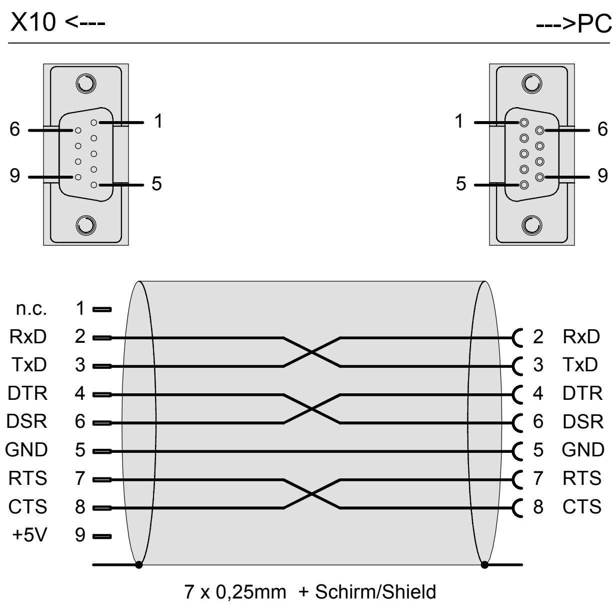
Order code for interface cables and plugs

PC – Compax3 (RS232)		SSK	0	1	/	...	...(1
PC - Compax3MP (USB)		SSK	3	3	/	...	...
on X11 (Ref/Analog) and X13 at C3F001D2	with flying leads	SSK	2	1	/	...	...(1
on X12 / X22 (I/Os digital)	with flying leads	SSK	2	2	/	...	...(1
on X11 (Ref /Analog)	for I/O terminal block	SSK	2	3	/	...	...(1
on X12 / X22 (I/Os digital)	for I/O terminal block	SSK	2	4	/	...	...(1
PC ⇔ POP (RS232)		SSK	2	5	/	...	...(1
Compax3 ⇔ POP (RS485) for several C3H on request		SSK	2	7	/	../	...(6
Compax3 HEDA ⇔ Compax3 HEDA or PC ⇔ C3powerPLmC Compax3 I30 ⇔ Compax3 I30 or C3M-multi-axis communication		SSK	2	8	/	../	...(5
Compax3 X11 ⇔ Compax3 X11 (encoder coupling of 2 axes)		SSK	2	9	/	...	...(1
Compax3 X10 ⇔ Modem		SSK	3	1	/	...	
Compax3H adapter cable ⇔ SSK01 (length 15cm, delivered with the device)		SSK	3	2	/	2	0
Compax3H X10 RS232 connection control ⇔ Programming interface (delivered with the device)		VBK	1	7	/	0	1
Bus terminal connector (for the 1st and last Compax3 in the HEDA Bus/or multi-axis system).		BUS	0	7	/	0	1
Profibus cable (2	non prefabricated	SSL	0	1	/	...	...(1
Profibus plug		BUS	0	8	/	0	1
CAN-Bus cable (2	non prefabricated	SSL	0	2	/	...	...(1
CANbus connector		BUS	1	0	/	0	1

(x **Note on the cable** (see page 332)

10.9.1. RS232 cable

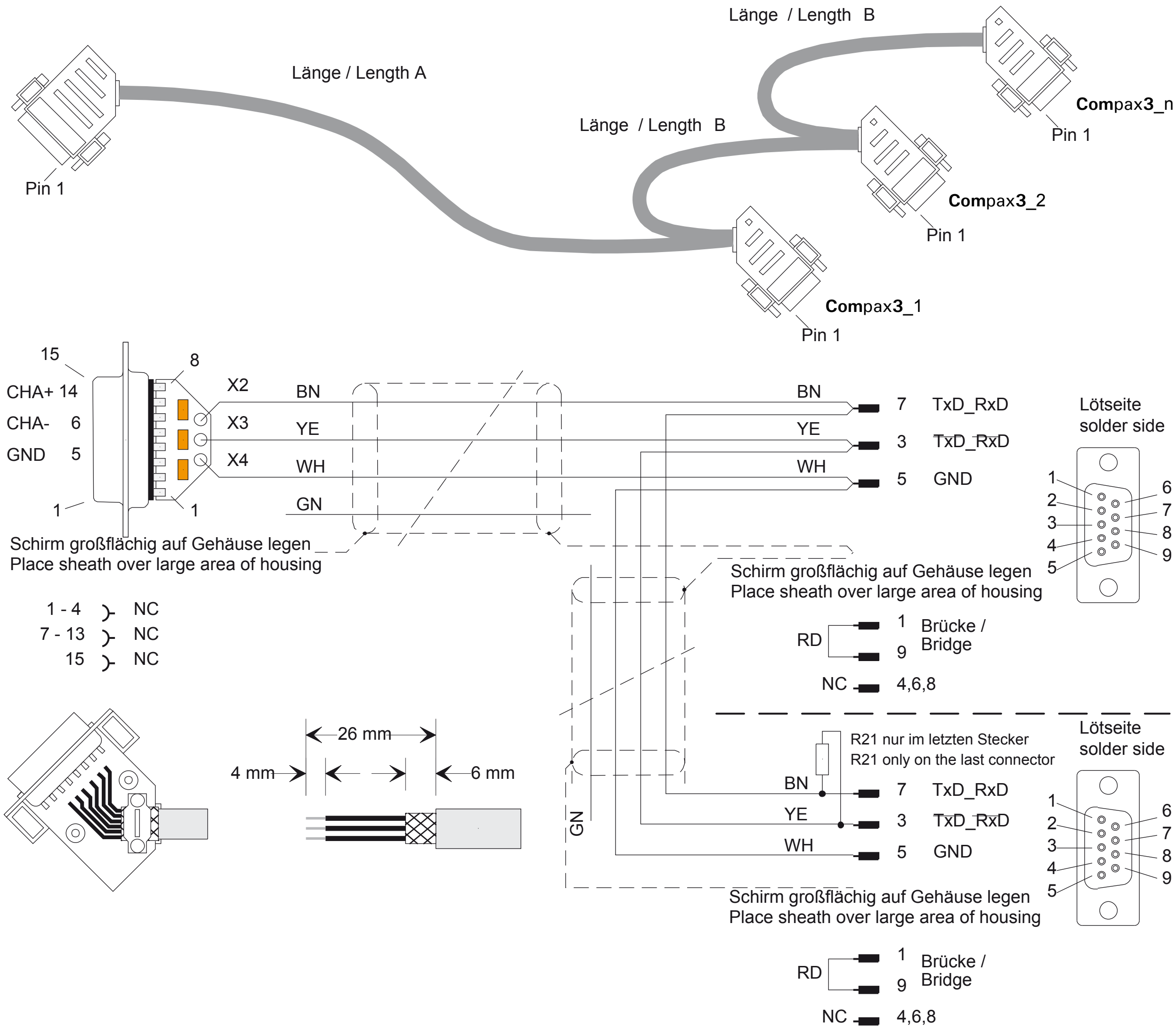
SSK1/..



You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

10.9.2. RS485 cable to Pop

SSK27: Connection Pop - Compax3 - Compax3 - ...



R21 = 220 Ohm

(6 Order code: SSK27/nn/..

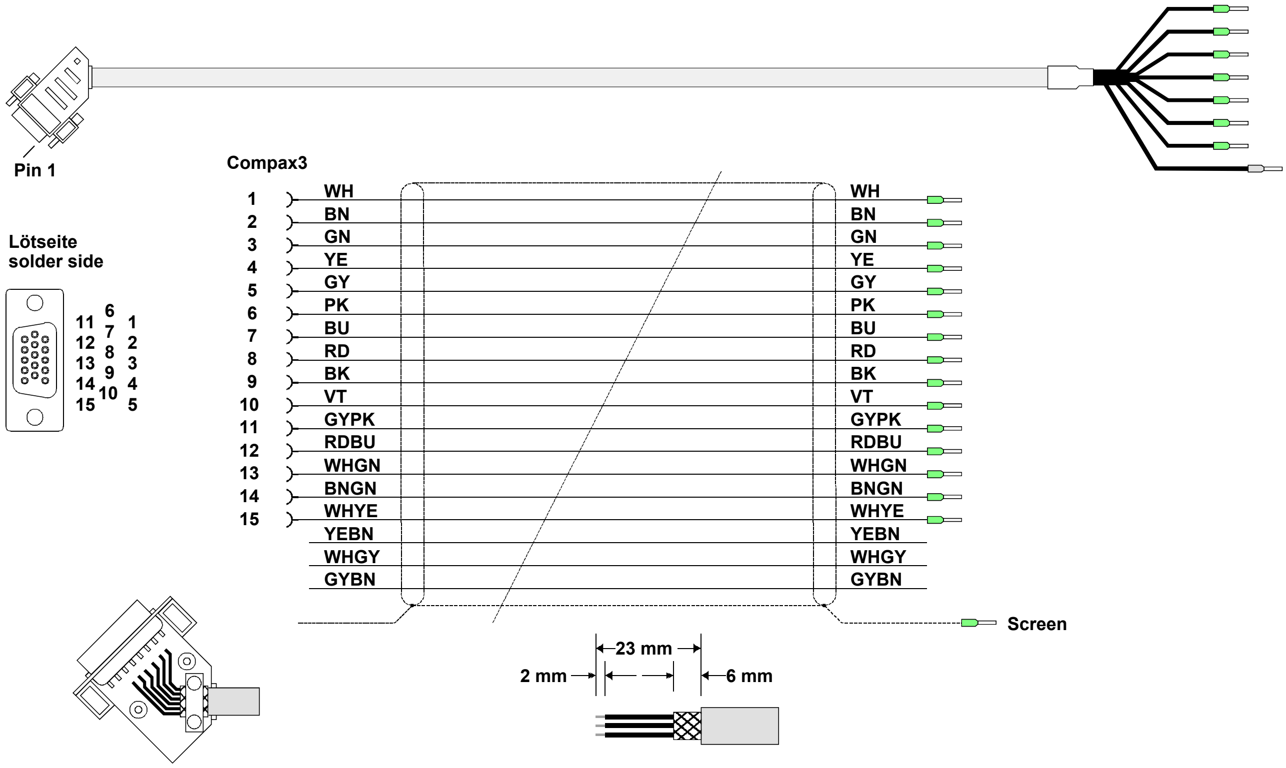
Length A (Pop - 1. Compax3) variable (the last two numbers according to the length code for cable, for example SSK27/nn/01)
Length B (1. Compax3 - 2. Compax3 - ... - n. Compax3) fixed 50 cm (only if there is more than 1 Compax3, i.e. nn greater than 01)
Number n (the last two digits)

Examples:

SSK27/05/.. for connecting from Pop to 5 Compax3.
SSK27/01/.. for connection from Pop to one Compax3

10.9.3. I/O interface X12 / X22

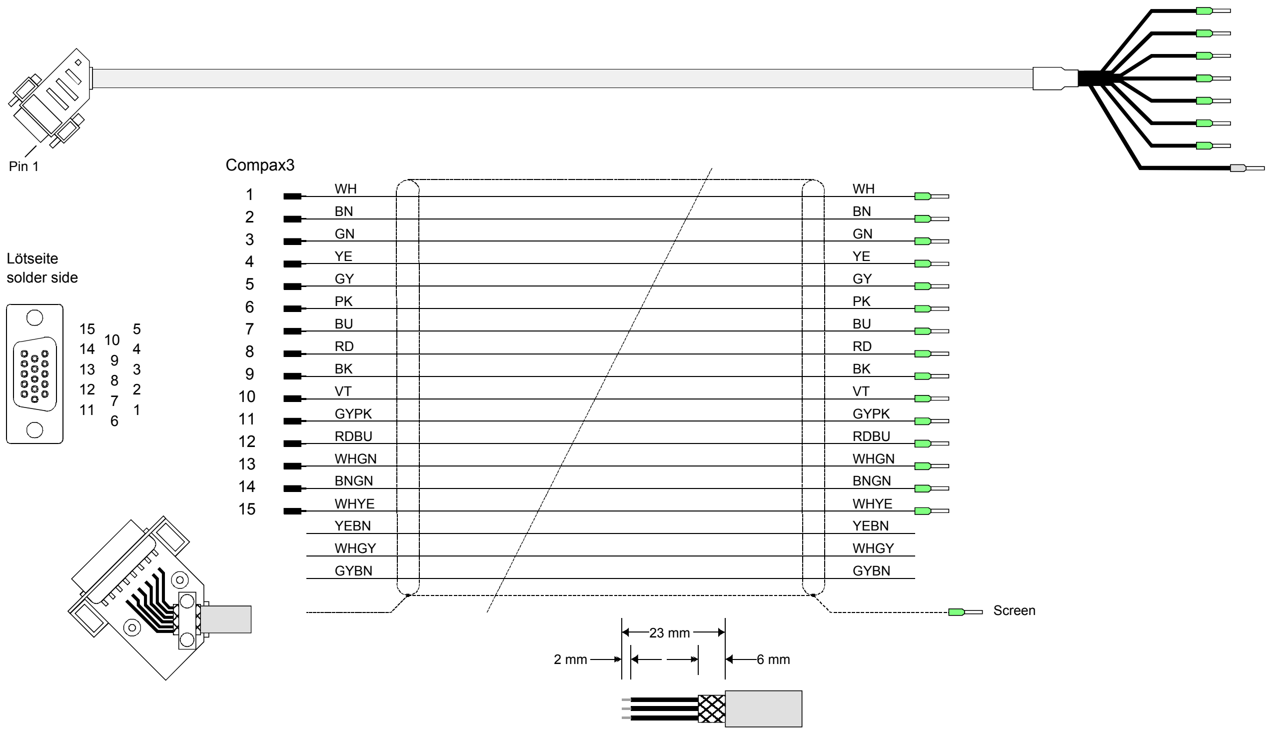
SSK22/..: Cable for X12 / X22 with flying leads



You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

10.9.4. Ref X11

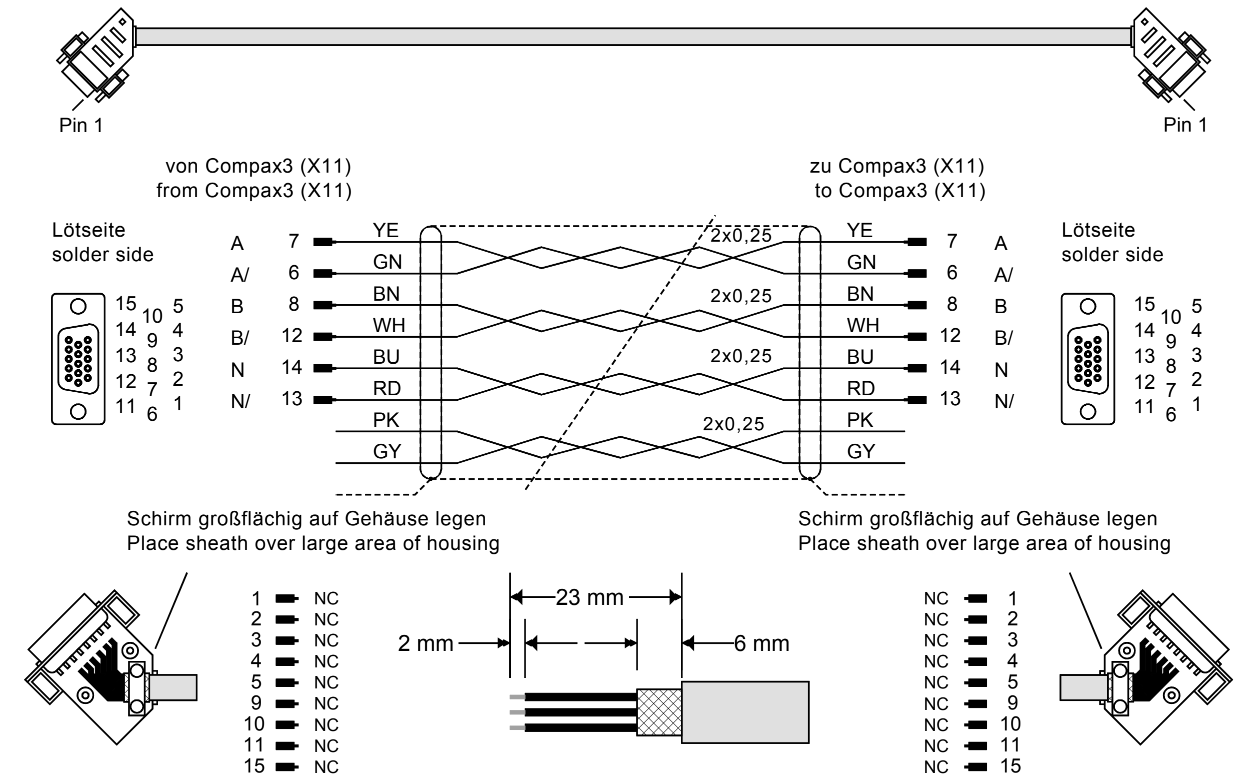
SSK21/..: Cable for X11 with flying leads



You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

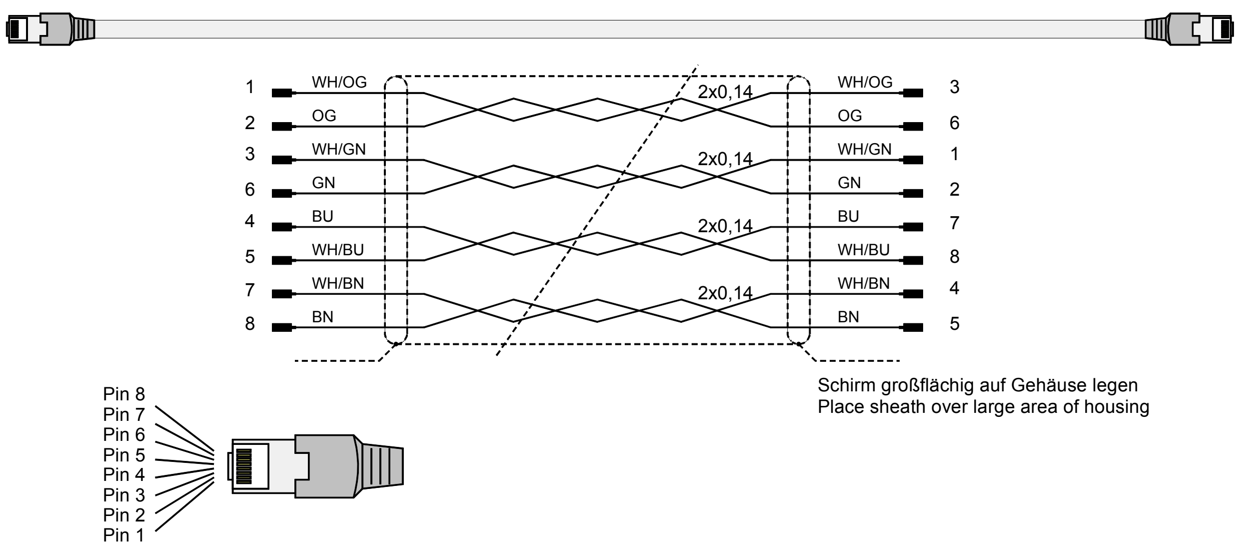
10.9.5. Encoder coupling of 2 Compax3 axes

SSK29/..: Cable from Compax3 X11 to Compax3 X11



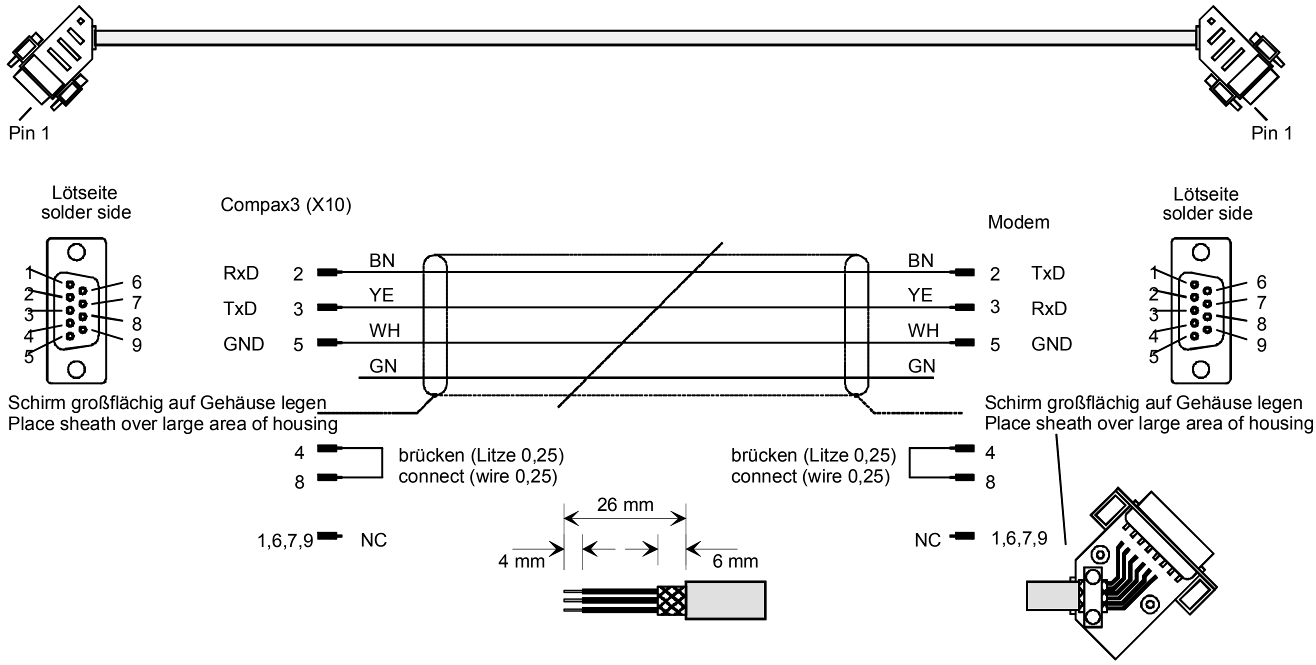
You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

Layout of SSK28:



10.9.6. Modem cable SSK31

SSK31/..



You will find the length code in the **accessories order code** (see page 329).

10.10 Options M1x

In this chapter you can read about:

10.10.1. Input/output option M12

An optional input/output extension is available for Compax3. This option is named M12 and offers 12 digital 24V inputs/outpus (Ports) on X22.
The use of the option as inputs or outputs is programmable in groups of 4 (via the object 133.4).
The outputs are written via the object 133.3 "Output word for the I/O option"; this applies only for the ports defined as output.
The inputs are read via the object 121.2 " Input word for the I/O option"; all ports are being read, also the outputs.

10.10.1.1 Assignment of the X22 connector

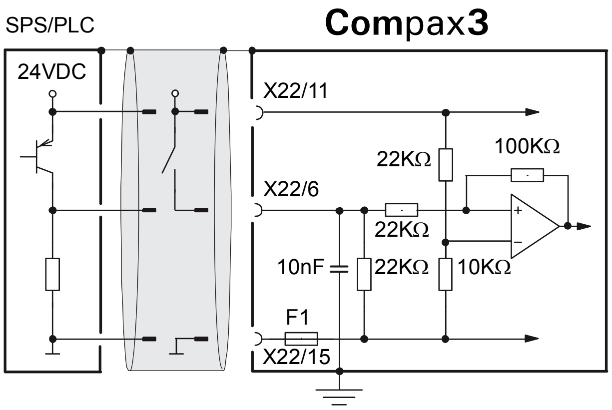
PIN X22/	Input/output	I/O /X22 High density/Sub D	Access via IEC module:
1	n.c.	Reserved	
2	O0/I0	Output 0 / Input 0 - adjustable	C3_IOAddition_0
3	O1/I1	Output 1 / Input 1 - adjustable	
4	O2/I2	Output 2 / Input 2 - adjustable	
5	O3/I3	Output 3 / Input 3 - adjustable	
6	O4/I4	Output 4 / Input 4 - adjustable	C3_IOAddition_1
7	O5/I5	Output 5 / Input 5 - adjustable	
8	O6/I6	Output 6 / Input 6 - adjustable	
9	O7/I7	Output 7 / Input 7 - adjustable	
10	O8/I8	Output 8 / Input 8 - adjustable	C3_IOAddition_2 (not 24VDC)
11	E	24 VDC power supply	
12	O9/I9	Output 9 / Input 9 - adjustable	
13	O10/I10	Output 10 / Input 10 - adjustable	
14	O11/I11	Output 11 / Input 11 - adjustable	
15	E	Gnd 24 V	

The **assignment can be adjusted** (see page 137, see page 138).
All inputs and outputs have 24V level.
Maximum load on an output: 100mA

Maximum capacitive load: 50nF (max. 4 Compax3 inputs)

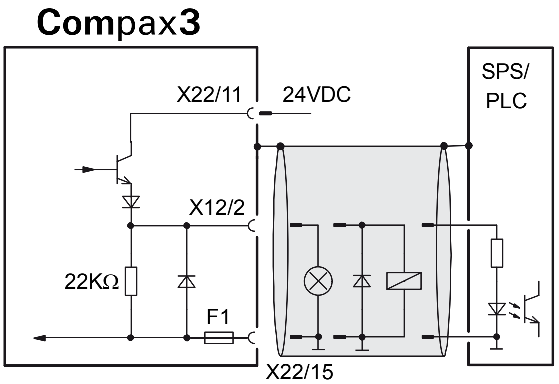
Caution! The 24VDC power supply (X22/11) must be supplied from an external source and must be protected by a 1.2A delayed fuse!

Input wiring of digital inputs



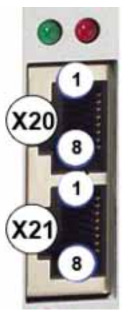
The circuit example is valid for all digital inputs!
F1: quick action electronic fuse; can be reset by switching the 24VDC supply off and on again.

Output wiring of digital outputs



The circuit example is valid for all digital outputs!
The outputs are short circuit proof; a short circuit generates an error.
F1: quick action electronic fuse; can be reset by switching the 24VDC supply off and on again.

10.10.2. HEDA (motion bus) - Option M11



	RJ45 (X20)	RJ45 (X21)
PIN	HEDA in	HEDA out
1	Rx	Tx
2	Rx/	Tx/
3	Lx	Lx
4	-	Reserved
5	-	Reserved
6	Lx/	Lx/
7	-	Reserved
8	-	Reserved

Function of the HEDA LEDs

Green LED (left)

HEDA module energized

Red LED (right)

Error in the receive area
Possible causes:

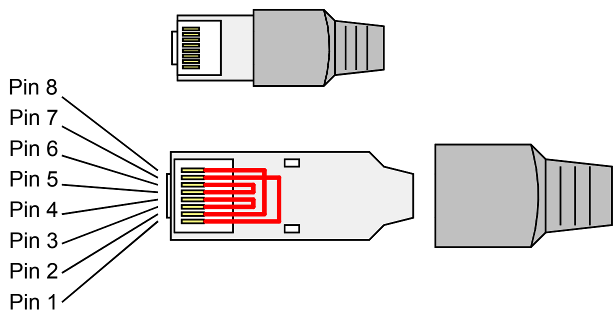
- at the Master
  - no slave sending back
  - Wrong cabling
  - Terminal plug is missing
  - several masters are sending in the same slot
- at the slave
  - several masters in the system
  - no master active
  - Terminal plug is missing
  - no transmission from one or several receive slots (neither by the master nor by another slave)

HEDA-wiring:

HEDA-Master

Layout of SSK28 (see page 331, see page 372)

Design of the HEDA bus terminator BUS 07/01:



Jumpers: 1-7, 2-8, 3-4, 5-6

Function of the HEDA LEDs

Green LED (left)

HEDA module energized

Red LED (right)

Error in the receive area
Possible causes:

- at the Master
  - no slave sending back
  - Wrong cabling
  - Terminal plug is missing
  - several masters are sending in the same slot
- at the slave
  - several masters in the system
  - no master active
  - Terminal plug is missing
  - no transmission from one or several receive slots (neither by the master nor by another slave)

10.10.3. Option M10 = HEDA (M11) & I/Os (M12)

The M10 option includes the M12 input/output option and the HEDA M11 option.

11. Specifications

Mains connection Compax3S0xxV2 1AC

Controller type	S025V2	S063V2
Supply voltage	Single phase 230VAC/240VAC 80-253 VAC/50-60Hz	
Input current	6Aeff	13Aeff
Maximum fuse rating per device (=short circuit rating)	10 A (MCB miniature circuit breaker)	16 A (MCB miniature circuit breaker)

Mains connection Compax3S1xxV2 3AC

Controller type	S100V2	S150V2
Supply voltage	Three phase 3* 230VAC/240VAC 80-253 VAC/50-60Hz	
Input current	10Aeff	13Aeff
Maximum fuse rating per device (=short circuit rating)	16 A (MCB miniature circuit breaker)	20 A (MCB miniature circuit breaker)

Mains connection Compax3SxxxV4 3AC

Controller type	S015V4	S038V4	S075V4	S150V4	S300V4
Supply voltage	Three phase 3*400VAC/480VAC 80-528VAC / 50-60Hz				
Input current	3Aeff	6Aeff	10Aeff	16Aeff	22Aeff
Maximum fuse rating per device(=short circuit rating)	6A	10A	16A	20A	25A
	MCB miniature circuit breaker				D*

* for **UL conform operation** (see page 20): MCB miniature circuit breaker S273-K.

Mains connection Compax3MP10D6

Device type Compax3MP10	230V	400V	480V
Supply voltage	230VAC ±10% 50-60Hz	400VAC ±10% 50-60Hz	480VAC ±10% 50-60Hz
Rated voltage	3AC 230V	3AC 400V	3AC 480V
Input current	22Aeff	22Aeff	18Arms
Output voltage	325VDC ±10%	565VDC ±10%	680VDC ±10%
Output power	6kW	10 kW	10 kW
Maximum fuse rating per device (=short circuit rating)	MCB miniature circuit breaker according to DIVQ.GuideInfo Recommendation: (ABB) S203 UP-25K (480VAC)		

Mains connection Compax3MP20D6

Device type Compax3MP20	230V	400V	480V
Supply voltage	230VAC ±10% 50-60Hz	400VAC ±10% 50-60Hz	480VAC ±10% 50-60Hz
Rated voltage	3AC 230V	3AC 400V	3AC 480V
Input current	44Arms	44Arms	35Arms
Output voltage	325VDC ±10%	565VDC ±10%	680VDC ±10%
Output power	12kW	20kW	20kW
Maximum fuse rating per device (=short circuit rating)	MCB miniature circuit breaker 50A according to DIVQ.GuideInfo Recommendation: (ABB) S203-U50K (440VAC) Fuses 80A / 660VAC per supply leg according to UL-Guide JFHR2 Recommendation: Bussmann 170M		

Mains connection Compax3HxxxV4

Controller type	H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
Supply voltage	Three phase 3*400VAC/480VAC 350-528VAC / 50-60Hz			
Input current	54Aeff	93Aeff	118Aeff	140Aeff
Maximum fuse rating per device(=short circuit rating)	60A	100A	125A	150A
	JDDZ class K5, JDRX class H	JDDZ class H5, JDRX class H		

Control voltage 24VDC Compax3S and Compax3H

Controller type	Compax3
Voltage range	21 - 27VDC
Mains module	with switch-on current limitation, due to capacitive load
Fuse	MCB miniature circuit breaker or "delayed action fuse", due to capacitive load
Current drain of the device	0.8A
Total current drain	0.8 A + Total load of the digital outputs + current for the motor holding brake
Ripple	0.5Vpp
Requirement according to safe extra low voltage (SELV)	yes
Short-circuit proof	conditional (internally protected with 3.15AT)

Control voltage 24VDC Compax3MP / Compax3M

Device type	Compax3MP / Compax3M
Voltage range	21 - 27VDC
Mains module	with switch-on current limitation, due to capacitive load
Fuse	MCB miniature circuit breaker or "delayed action fuse", due to capacitive load
Current drain of the device	C3MP10D6: 0.2A C3MP20D6: 0.3A
Total current drain	C3M050D6: 0.85A C3M100D6: 0.85A C3M150D6: 0.85A C3M300D6: 1.0A + Total load of the digital outputs + current for the motor holding brake
Ripple	0.5Vpp
Requirement according to safe extra low voltage (SELV)	yes
Short-circuit proof	conditional (internally protected with 3.15AT)

Output data Compax3S0xx at 1*230VAC/240VAC

Controller type	S025V2	S063V2
Output voltage	3x 0-240V	3x 0-240V
Nominal output current	2.5Arms	6.3Aeff
Pulse current for 5s	5.5Aeff	12.6Aeff
Power	1kVA	2.5kVA
Switching frequency	16kHz	16kHz
Power loss for In	30W	60W

Output data Compax3S1xx at 3*230VAC/240VAC

Controller type	S100V2	S150V2
Output voltage	3x 0-240V	3x 0-240V
Nominal output current	10Aeff	15Aeff
Pulse current for 5s	20Aeff	30Aeff
Power	4kVA	6kVA
Switching frequency	16kHz	8kHz
Power loss for In	80 W	130W

Output data Compax3Sxxx at 3*400VAC

Controller type	S015V4	S038V4	S075V4	S150V4	S300V4
Output voltage	3x 0-400V				
Nominal output current	1.5Aeff	3.8Aeff	7.5 Aeff	15Aeff	30Aeff
Pulse current for 5s	4.5Aeff	9.0Aeff	15Aeff	30Aeff	60Aeff
Power	1kVA	2.5kVA	5kVA	10kVA	20kVA
Switching frequency	16kHz	16kHz	16kHz	8kHz	8kHz
Power loss for In	60W	80 W	120W	160W	350W

Output data Compax3Sxxx at 3*480VAC

Controller type	S015V4	S038V4	S075V4	S150V4	S300V4
Output voltage	3x 0-480V				
Nominal output current	1.5Aeff	3.8Aeff	6.5Aeff	13.9Aeff	30Aeff
Pulse current for 5s	4.5Aeff	7.5 Aeff	15Aeff	30Aeff	60Aeff
Power	1.25kVA	3.1kVA	6.2kVA	11.5kVA	25kVA
Switching frequency	16kHz	16kHz	16kHz	8kHz	8kHz
Power loss for In	60W	80 W	120W	160W	350W

Output data Compax3Mxxx at 3*230VAC

Device type Compax3	M050D6	M100D6	M150D6	M300D6
Power Input	325VDC ±10%			
Output voltage	3x 0-230V (0...500Hz)			
Nominal output current	5Aeff	10Aeff	15Aeff	30Aeff
Pulse current for 5s *	10Aeff	20Aeff	30Aeff	60Aeff
Power	2kVA	4kVA	6kVA	12kVA
Switching frequency	8kHz	8kHz	8kHz	8kHz
Power loss for In	70W+**	90W+**	120W+**	270W+**

*Turning frequency for pulse current: f>5Hz
** Maximum additinal losses with option card 5W.

Output data Compax3Mxxx at 3*400VAC

Device type Compax3	M050D6	M100D6	M150D6	M300D6
Power Input	565VDC ±10%			
Output voltage	3x 0-400V (0...500Hz)			
Nominal output current	5Aeff	10Aeff	15Aeff	30Aeff
Pulse current for 5s *	10Aeff	20Aeff	30Aeff	60Aeff
Power	3.33kVA	6.66kVA	10kVA	20kVA
Switching frequency	8kHz	8kHz	8kHz	8kHz
Power loss for In	70W+**	90W+**	120W+**	270W+**

*Turning frequency for pulse current: f>5Hz
** Maximum additinal losses with option card 5W.

Output data Compax3Mxxx at 3*480VAC

Device type Compax3	M050D6	M100D6	M150D6	M300D6
Power Input	680VDC ±10%			
Output voltage	3x 0-480V (0...500Hz)			
Nominal output current	4Aeff	8Arms	12.5Arms	25Arms
Pulse current for 5s *	8Arms	16Arms	25Arms	50Aeff
Power	3.33kVA	6.66kVA	10kVA	20kVA
Switching frequency	8kHz	8kHz	8kHz	8kHz
Power loss for In	70W+**	90W+**	120W+**	270W+**

*Turning frequency for pulse current: f>5Hz
** Maximum additinal losses with option card 5W.

Output data Compax3Hxxx at 3*400VAC

Controller type	H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
Output voltage	3x 0-400V			
Nominal output current	50Aeff	90Aeff	125Aeff	155Aeff
Pulse current for 5s *	75Aeff	135Aeff	187.5Aeff	232.5Aeff
Power	35kVA	62kVA	86kVA	107kVA
Switching frequency	8 kHz	8 kHz	8 kHz	8 kHz
Power loss for In	880W	900W	1690W	1970W

* during low speeds, the overload time is reduced to 1s. Limit:
< 2.5 electric rev/s (= actual revolutions/s * number of pole pairs) resp. > 2.5 Pitch/s

Output data Compax3Hxxx at 3*480VAC

Controller type	H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
Output voltage	3x 0-480V			
Nominal output current	43Aeff	85Aeff	110Aeff	132Aeff
Pulse current for 5s *	64.5Aeff	127.5Aeff	165Aeff	198Aeff
Power	35kVA	70kVA	91kVA	109kVA
Switching frequency	8kHz	8kHz	8kHz	8kHz
Power loss for In	850W	1103W	1520W	1800W

* during low speeds, the overload time is reduced to 1s. Limit:
< 2.5 electric rev/s (= actual revolutions/s * number of pole pairs) resp. > 2.5 Pitch/s

Resulting nominal and peak currents depending on the switching frequency

Compax3S0xxV2 at 1*230VAC/240VAC

Switching frequency*		S025V2	S063V2
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**2.5A$_{eff}$**	**6.3A$_{eff}$**
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**5.5A$_{eff}$**	**12.6A$_{eff}$**
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	2.5A$_{eff}$	5.5A$_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	5.5A$_{eff}$	12.6A$_{eff}$

Compax3S1xxV2 at 3*230VAC/240VAC

Switching frequency*		S100V2	S150V2
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**-**	**15A$_{eff}$**
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**-**	**30A$_{eff}$**
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**10A$_{eff}$**	12.5A$_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**20A$_{eff}$**	25A$_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	8A$_{eff}$	10A$_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	16A$_{eff}$	20A$_{eff}$

Compax3S0xxV4 at 3*400VAC

Switching frequency*		S015V4	S038V4	S075V4	S150V4	S300V4
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	-	-	-	**15A$_{eff}$**	**30A$_{eff}$**
	I_{peak} (<5s)	-	-	-	**30A$_{eff}$**	**60A$_{eff}$**
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**1.5A$_{eff}$**	**3.8A$_{eff}$**	**7.5A$_{eff}$**	10.0A$_{eff}$	26A$_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**4.5A$_{eff}$**	**9.0A$_{eff}$**	**15.0A$_{eff}$**	20.0A$_{eff}$	52A$_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	1.5A$_{eff}$	2.5A$_{eff}$	3.7A$_{eff}$	5.0A$_{eff}$	14A$_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	3.0A$_{eff}$	5.0A$_{eff}$	10.0A$_{eff}$	10.0A$_{eff}$	28A$_{eff}$

Compax3S0xxV4 at 3*480VAC

Switching frequency*		S015V4	S038V4	S075V4	S150V4	S300V4
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	-	-	-	**13.9A$_{eff}$**	**30A$_{eff}$**
	I_{peak} (<5s)	-	-	-	**30A$_{eff}$**	**60A$_{eff}$**
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	**1.5A$_{eff}$**	**3.8A$_{eff}$**	**6.5A$_{eff}$**	8.0A$_{eff}$	21.5A$_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	**4.5A$_{eff}$**	**7.5A$_{eff}$**	**15.0A$_{eff}$**	16.0A$_{eff}$	43A$_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	1.0A$_{eff}$	2.0A$_{eff}$	2.7A$_{eff}$	3.5A$_{eff}$	10A$_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	2.0A$_{eff}$	4.0A$_{eff}$	8.0A$_{eff}$	7.0A$_{eff}$	20A$_{eff}$

The values marked with grey are the pre-set values (standard values)!
*corresponds to the frequency of the motor current

Resulting nominal and peak currents depending on the switching frequency

Compax3MxxxD6 at 3*400VAC

Switching frequency*		M050D6	M100D6	M150D6	M300D6
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$5A_{eff}$	$10A_{eff}$	$15A_{eff}$	$30A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$10A_{eff}$	$20A_{eff}$	$30A_{eff}$	$60A_{eff}$
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$3.8A_{eff}$	$7.5A_{eff}$	$10A_{eff}$	$20A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$7.5A_{eff}$	$15A_{eff}$	$20A_{eff}$	$40A_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$2.5A_{eff}$	$3.8A_{eff}$	$5A_{eff}$	$11A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$5A_{eff}$	$7.5A_{eff}$	$10A_{eff}$	$22A_{eff}$

Compax3MxxxD6 at 3*480VAC

Switching frequency*		M050D6	M100D6	M150D6	M300D6
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$4A_{eff}$	$8A_{eff}$	$12.5A_{eff}$	$25A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$8A_{eff}$	$16A_{eff}$	$25A_{eff}$	$50A_{eff}$
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$3A_{eff}$	$5.5A_{eff}$	$8A_{eff}$	$15A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$6A_{eff}$	$11A_{eff}$	$16A_{eff}$	$30A_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$2A_{eff}$	$2.5A_{eff}$	$4A_{eff}$	$8.5A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$4A_{eff}$	$5A_{eff}$	$8A_{eff}$	$17A_{eff}$

The values marked with grey are the pre-set values (standard values)!
*corresponds to the frequency of the motor current

Resulting nominal and peak currents depending on the switching frequency

Compax3HxxxV4 at 3*400VAC

Switching frequency*		H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$50A_{eff}$	$90A_{eff}$	$125A_{eff}$	$155A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$75A_{eff}$	$135A_{eff}$	$187.5A_{eff}$	$232.5A_{eff}$
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$33A_{eff}$	$75A_{eff}$	$82A_{eff}$	$100A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$49.5A_{eff}$	$112.5A_{eff}$	$123A_{eff}$	$150A_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$19A_{eff}$	$45A_{eff}$	$49A_{eff}$	$59A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$28.5A_{eff}$	$67.5A_{eff}$	$73.5A_{eff}$	$88.5A_{eff}$

Compax3HxxxV4 at 3*480VAC

Switching frequency*		H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
8kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$43A_{eff}$	$85A_{eff}$	$110A_{eff}$	$132A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$64.5A_{eff}$	$127.5A_{eff}$	$165A_{eff}$	$198A_{eff}$
16kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$27A_{eff}$	$70A_{eff}$	$70A_{eff}$	$84A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$40.5A_{eff}$	$105A_{eff}$	$105A_{eff}$	$126A_{eff}$
32kHz	$I_{nominal}$	$16A_{eff}$	$40A_{eff}$	$40A_{eff}$	$48A_{eff}$
	I_{peak} (<5s)	$24A_{eff}$	$60A_{eff}$	$60A_{eff}$	$72A_{eff}$

The values marked with grey are the pre-set values (standard values)!
*corresponds to the frequency of the motor current

Resolution of the motor position

For option F10: Resolver	◆ Position resolution: 16Bit (= 0.005°) ◆ Absolute accuracy: ±0,167°
For option F11: SinCos©	◆ Position resolution: 13.5Bit/Encoder sine period => 0.03107°/encoder resolution
For option F12:	◆ Maximum position resolution ◆ Linear: 24 Bits per motor magnet spacing ◆ Rotary: 24 bits per motor revolution ◆ Resolution for analog hall sensors with 1Vss signal (e.g. EnDat): 13.5 bits / graduation of the scale of the encoder ◆ For RS 422 encoders: 4x encoder resolution ◆ Accuracy of the feedback zero pulse acquisition = accuracy of the feedback resolution ◆ Resolution for analog hall sensors with 1Vss signal: 13.5 bits / motor magnet spacing

Precision

The exactitude of the position signal is above all determined by the exactitude of the feedback system used.

Motors and feedback systems supported

Motors **Direct drives** ◆ Linear motors ◆ Torque motors	◆ Sinusoidal commutated synchronous motors ◆ Maximum rotating field frequency: 1,000Hz ◆ Max. velocity at 8 pole motors: 15000min^{-1}. ◆ General max. speed: 60*1000/number of pole pairs in [min^{-1}]. ◆ Max. number of poles = 600 ◆ Sinusoidal commutated asynchronous motors ◆ Maximum rotating field frequency: 1,000Hz ◆ Max. speed: 60*1000/number of pole pairs - slip in [min^{-1}]. ◆ Field suppression: typically up to triple (higher on request). ◆ Temperature sensor: KTY84-130 (insulated according to EN60664-1 or IEC60664-1) ◆ 3 phase synchronous direct drives
Position encoder (Feedback)	**Option F10: Resolver Feedback**
LTN:	◆ JSSBH-15-E-5 ◆ JSSBH-21-P4 ◆ RE-21-1-A05 ◆ RE-15-1-B04
Tamagawa:	◆ 2018N321 E64
Siemens:	◆ 23401-T2509-C202
	Option F11: SinCos©
	◆ Singleturn (SICK|Stegmann) ◆ Multiturn (SICK|Stegmann) Absolute position up to 4096 motor revolutions. ◆ Rotary feedback with HIPERFACE® interface: e.g.: SRS50, SRM50, SKS36, SKM36, SEK52

Special encoder systems for direct drives	**Option F12**
Analog hall sensors	◆ Sine - cosine signal (max. 5Vss; typical 1Vss) 90° offset ◆ U-V Signal (max. 5Vss; typical 1Vss) 120° offset.
Encoder (linear or rotatory)	◆ Sine-cosine (max. 5Vss; typical 1Vss) (max. 400kHz) or ◆ TTL (RS422) (max. 5MHz) with the following modes of commutation: ◆ **automatic commutation** (see page 334) or ◆ Digital hall sensors (e.g. DiCoder©)
Digital, bidirectional interface	◆ All EnDat 2.1 or EnDat 2.2 feedback systems with incremental track (sine-cosine track) ◆ linear or rotary ◆ max. 400kHz Sine-Cosine
Distance coded feedback systems	◆ Distance coding with 1VSS - Interface ◆ Distance coding with RS422 - Interface (Encoder)

Feedback error compensation

Feedback error compensation	◆ Automatic feedback error compensation (offset & amplification) for analog hall sensors and sine-cosine encoder can be activated in the MotorManager.

Motor holding brake output

Motor holding brake output	Compax3
Voltage range	21 – 27VDC
Maximum output current (short circuit proof)	1.6A
Minimum output current	150 mA
Securing of brake Compax3M	3.15A

Braking operation Compax3S0xxV2 1AC

Controller type	S025V2	S063V2
Capacitance / storable energy	560µF / 15Ws	1120µF / 30Ws
Minimum braking- resistance	100Ω	56Ω
Recommended nominal power rating	20 ... 60W	60 ... 180W
Maximum continuous current	8A	15A

Braking operation Compax3S1xxV2 3AC

Controller type	S100V2	S150V2
Capacitance / storable energy	780µF / 21Ws	1170µF / 31Ws
Minimum braking- resistance	22Ω	15Ω
Recommended nominal power rating	60 ... 450W	60 ... 600W
Maximum continuous current	20A	20A

Braking operation Compax3SxxxV4 3AC

Controller type	S015V4	S038V4	S075V4	S150V4	S300V4
Capacitance / storable energy	235µF / 37Ws	235µF / 37Ws	470µF / 75Ws	690µF / 110Ws	1100µF / 176Ws
Minimum braking- resistance	100Ω	100Ω	56Ω	33Ω	15Ω
Recommended nominal power rating	60 ... 100W	60 ... 250W	60 ... 500 W	60 ... 1000 W	60 ... 1000 W
Maximum continuous current	10A	10A	15A	20A	30A

Braking operation Compax3MxxxD6 (axis controller)

Device type Compax3	M050	M100	M150	M300
Capacitance / storable energy	110µF/ 18Ws at 400V 10Ws at 480V	220µF/ 37Ws at 400V 21Ws at 480V	220µF/ 37Ws at 400V 21Ws at 480V	440µF/ 74Ws at 400V 42Ws at 480V

Braking operation of Compax3HxxxV4

Controller type	H050V4	H090V4	H125V4	H155V4
Capacitance / storable energy	2600µF / 602Ws	3150µF / 729Ws	5000µF / 1158Ws	5000µF / 1158Ws
Minimum braking- resistance	24Ω	15Ω	8Ω	8Ω
Maximum continuous current	30A	45A	83A	83A

Ballast resistors for Compax3

Braking Resistor (see page 350)	Device	Rated Power
BRM08/01 (100Ω)	Compax3S025V2 Compax3S015V4 Compax3S038V4	60W
BRM05/01 (56Ω)	Compax3S063V2 Compax3S075V4	180W
BRM05/02 (56Ω)	Compax3S075V4	570W
BRM10/01 (47Ω)	Compax3S150V4	570W
BRM04/01 (15Ω)	Compax3S150V2 Compax3S300V4 Compax3MP20D6	570W
BRM04/02 (15Ω)	Compax3S150V2 Compax3S300V4 Compax3MP20D6	740W
BRM04/03 (15Ω)	Compax3S300V4 Compax3MP20D6	1500W
BRM09/01 (22Ω)	Compax3S100V2	570W
BRM11/01 (27Ω)	Compax3H0xxV4	3500W
BRM13/01 (30Ω)	Compax3MP10D6 Compax3MP20D6**	500 W
BRM14/01 (15Ω)	Compax3MP10D6* Compax3MP20D6	500 W
BRM12/01 (18Ω)	Compax3H1xxV4	4500W

*for Compax3MP10D6 2x15Ω in series
**for Compax3MP20D6 2x30Ω parallel

Size / weight of Compax3S

Controller type	Dimensions HxWxD [mm]	Weight [kg]
Compax3S025V2	191 x 84 x 172	2.0
Compax3S063V2	191 x 100 x 172	2.5
Compax3S015V4	248 x 84 x 172	3.1
Compax3S100V2	248 x 115 x 172	4.3
Compax3S150V2	248 x 158 x 172	6.8
Compax3S038V4	248 x 100 x 172	3.5
Compax3S075V4	248 x 115 x 172	4.3
Compax3S150V4	248 x 158 x 172	6.8
Compax3S300V4	380 x 175 x 172	10.9

Minimum mounting distance: 15mm at the sides, above & below 100mm

Protection type IP20

Drawings, Mounting **(see page 69)**

Size / weight of Compax3MP/Compax3M

Device type	Dimensions HxWxD [mm]	Weight [kg]
Compax3MP10D6	360 x 50 x 263	3,95
Compax3MP20D6	360 x 100 x 263	
Compax3M050D6	360 x 50 x 263	3,5
Compax3M100D6	360 x 50 x 263	3,6
Compax3M150D6	360 x 50 x 263	3,6
Compax3M300D6	360 x 100 x 263	

Protection type IP20

Size / weight of Compax3H

Controller type	Dimensions HxWxD [mm]	Weight [kg]
Compax3H050V4	453 x 252 x 245	17,4
Compax3H090V4	668.6 x 257 x 312	32,5
Compax3H125V4	720 x 257 x 355	41
Compax3H155V4	720 x 257 x 355	41

Protection class IP20 when mounted in a control cabinet (not for Compax3H1xxxV4)

Drawings, Mounting **(see page 69)**

Safety technology Compax3S

Safe torque-off as per EN954-1, category 3 **Certified: (BG-PRÜFZERT certification number: 0403005)**	◆ For implementation of the ”protection against unexpected start-up” function described in EN1037. ◆ Note the circuit examples **circuit examples** (see page 78).

Safety technology Compax3MP / Compax3M

Safety technology as an option **State-of-the-art safety technology** **EN ISO 13849**	◆ Please respect the stated safety technology on the **type designation plate** (see page 12) and the circuitry examples

Compax3M S1 Option: Signal inputs for connector X14

Nominal voltage of the inputs	24V
Required isolation of the 24V control voltage	Grounded protective extra low voltage, PELV
Protection of the STO control voltage	1A
Number of inputs **Signal inputs via opto-coupler**	2 Low = 0...7V DC or open High = 15...30V DC I_{in} at 24V DC: 8mA
STO1/	Low = STO activated High = STO deactivated
STO2/	Low = STO activated High = STO deactivated
Switch-off time with unequal input statuses (max. reaction time)	20 seconds
Grouping of safety level	Category 3 PL=d PFH=1.01 x 10-7h-1

UL certifiction for Compax3S

conform to UL:	◆ according to UL508C
Certified	◆ E-File_No.: E235 342

The UL certification is documented by a ”UL” logo on the device (type specification plate).

”UL” logo

UL certifiction for Compax3M

conform to UL:	◆ according to UL508C
Certified	◆ E-File_No.: E235 342

The UL certification is documented by a ”UL” logo on the device (type specification plate).

Insulation requirements

Protection class	Protection class I according to EN60664-1
Protection against human contact with dangerous voltages	According to En 61800-5-1
Overvoltage category	Voltage class III according to EN 60664-1
Degree of contamination	Degree of contamination 2 according to EN 60664-1 and EN 61800-5-1

Environmental conditions Compax3S and Compax3H

General ambient conditions	According to **EN 60 721-3-1 to 3-3** Climate (temperature/humidity/barometric pressure): Class 3K3	
Permissible ambient temperature:		
Operation Storage Transport	0 to +45 C Class 3K3 -25 to +70 C Class 2K3 –25 to +70 C Class 2K3	
Tolerated humidity:	No condensation	
Operation Storage Transport	<= 85% class 3K3 <= 95% class 2K3 <= 95% class 2K3	(Relative humidity)
Elevation of operating site	<=1000m above sea level for 100% load ratings <=2000m above sea level for 1% / 100m power reduction Please inquire for greater elevations	
Mechanic resonances:	EN 60068-2-6 (sinusoidal excitation)	
Sealing	IP20 protection class according to EN 60 529	

Cooling Compax3S and Compax3H

Cooling mode:	C3S025V2 ... S150V4: Convection C3S300V4 & C3H: Forced air ventilation with fan in the heat dissipator **Air flow rate:** 459m^3/h (C3H)
Supply:	C3S300V4, C3H050, C3H090 internal C3H125, C3H155 external 220/240VAC: 140W, 2.5µF, Stator - 62Ω Optionally on request: 110/120VAC: 130W, 10µF, Stator - 16Ω **Circuit breaker:** 3A

EMC limit values Compax3S and Compax3H

EMC interference emission	Limit values according to EN 61 800-3, Limit value class C3/C4 without additional mains filter: **Information on C2 limit value classes** (see page 17)
EMC disturbance immunity	Industrial area limit values in accordance with EN 61 800-3

Environmnental conditions Compax3MP / Compax3M

General ambient conditions	According to EN 60 721-3-1 to 3-3 Climate (temperature/humidity/barometric pressure): Class 3K3	
Permissible ambient temperature:		
Operation Storage Transport	0 to +40 C Class 3K3 –25 to +70 C –25 to +70 C	
Tolerated humidity:	No condensation	
Operation Storage Transport	<= 85% class 3K3 <= 95% <= 95%	(Relative humidity)
Elevation of operating site	<=1000m above sea level for 100% load ratings <=2000m above sea level for 1% / 100m power reduction Please inquire for greater elevations	
Sealing	IP20 protection class according to EN 60 529	
Mechanic resonances:	Class 2M3, 20m/s^2;8-200Hz	

Cooling Compax3MP / Compax3M

Cooling mode:	Forced air ventilation with fan in the heat dissipator

EMC limit values Compax3MP/Compax3M

EMC interference emission	Limit values according to EN 61 800-3, Limit value class C3 with mains filter.
EMC disturbance immunity	Industrial area limit values in accordance with EN 61 800-3

EC directives and harmonised EC norms

Low voltage directive 2006/95/EC	EN 61800-5-1, Standard for electric power drives with settable speed; requirements to electric safety EN 60664-1, isolation coordinates for electricale equipment in low-voltage systems EN 60 204-1, machinery standard partly applied
EC-EMC-directive 2004/108/EC	EN 61 800-3, EMC norm Product standard for variable speed drives

COM ports

RS232	◆ 115200 baud ◆ Word length: 8 bits, 1 start bit, 1 stop bit ◆ Hardware handshake XON, XOFF
RS485 (2 or 4-wire)	◆ 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600 or 115200 baud ◆ Word length 7/8 bit, 1 start bit, 1 stop bit ◆ Parity (can be switched off) even/odd ◆ 2 or 4-wire
USB (Compax3M)	◆ USB 2.0 Full Speed compatible

Load position control

Dual Loop Option	◆ 2. Feedback system for the control of the load position is possible.

Signal interfaces

Signal inputs / signal sources	◆ Encoder – input track A/B (RS422) ◆ up to max. 10MHz ◆ internal quadrature of the resolution ◆ Step / direction input (24V-level) Max. 300kHz at ≥50Ω source impedance and minimum pulse width of 1,6µs. ◆ +/-10V analog input 14Bit; 62.5µs scanning rate. ◆ SSI Feedback
Signal outputs	◆ Encoder simulation ◆ 1...16384 increments/revolution or pitch ◆ Limit frequency 620kHz ◆ Bypass function with encoder feedback with feedback module F12.(Limit frequency 5MHz).
Signal transmission	HEDA (option M10 or M11) Exchange of process values: ◆ from Slave to Master ◆ from Slave to Master and ◆ from Slave to Slave.

Functions

Motion control via I/Os (Option M10 or M12 required) or via RS232 / RS485	◆ up to 31 motion sets possible with the following functions. ◆ Absolute positioning ◆ Relative positioning ◆ Electronic Gearbox (Gearing) ◆ Reg-related positioning (precision < 1µs) ◆ Speed control ◆ Stop - Set ◆ Definition of status bits for sequence control (with M10 or M12) ◆ ◆ Specification of speed, acceleration, deceleration and jerk ◆ Different machine zero modes ◆ Absolute / continuous operation
Actual position	◆ Encoder Simulation ◆ Resolution: 4 - 16384 Increments / revolution
Signal monitor	◆ 2 channels ±10 V analog ◆ Resolution: 8 Bit
8 digital inputs (24V level) (standard)	◆ Energize motor/Ackn; Stop; Manual+, Manual-, Reg input, 2 limit switches, machine zero initiator,
8 additional digital inputs (with M10 or M12 Option)	◆ Address 0 – 4, Start, 2nd Stop, open brake, ◆ 24V level
4 digital outputs	◆ Error, Position/Speed/Gear reched, power output stage currentless, motor stationary with current with setpoint value 0. ◆ Loading max. 100mA
4 additional digital outputs (with M10 or M12 Option)	◆ Ref detected / referenced, status bits Bit 1 - 3

12. Index